PVC

Practical Guide to Polyvinyl Chloride

PVC

S.G. Patrick

Practical Guide to Polyvinyl Chloride

S.G. Patrick

Rapra Technology Limited

Shawbury, Shrewsbury, Shropshire, SY4 4NR, United Kingdom
Telephone: +44 (0)1939 250383 Fax: +44 (0)1939 251118
http://www.rapra.net

First Published in 2005 by

Rapra Technology Limited

Shawbury, Shrewsbury, Shropshire, SY4 4NR, UK

©2005, Rapra Technology Limited

All rights reserved. Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this publication may be photocopied, reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior permission from the copyright holder.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Every effort has been made to contact copyright holders of any material reproduced within the text and the authors and publishers apologize if any have been overlooked.

ISBN: 1-85957-511-01

Typeset, printed and bound by Rapra Technology Limited

Cover printed by The Printing House Limited, Crewe

Contents

1 **Introduction** 1

1.1 Background 1

1.2 History 2

1.3 Major Advantages and Limitations 2

1.3.1 Major Advantages 2

1.3.2 Limitations 3

1.4 Applications 3

1.5 Competitive Materials 3

1.6 Market Share and Consumption Trend 3

1.7 Industry Outline and Major Suppliers 4

1.8 Material Pricing 5

1.9 Safety, Health, and Environmental Issues 6

1.9.1 Phthalate Plasticisers 6

1.9.2 Heat Stabilisers 7

1.9.3 Bisphenol A/Alkylphenols 7

1.9.4 Epoxidised Soya Bean Oil (ESBO) 8

1.9.5 Green Product Procurement Policies/Eco-labelling 8

1.9.6 End-of-life Issues 8

1.9.7 Fire Performance 8

2 **PVC Resins** 11

2.1 Raw Starting Materials 11

2.2 Vinyl Chloride Manufacture 12

2.3 Polymerisation 12

2.3.1 Homopolymers 13

2.3.2 Copolymers and Terpolymers 15

2.3.3 Chlorinated PVC (C-PVC) 17

2.4 PVC Resin Characterisation 17

2.4.1 Molecular Weight 17

2.4.2 Particle Size 17

2.4.3 Bulk Powder Properties 18

2.4.4 Porosity 18

2.5 Storage and Transportation 18

2.6 Role of Additives 18

2.7 Identification 19

3 **PVC Additives** 21

3.1 Heat Stabilisers [1] 21

3.1.1 Solid Form 22
3.1.2 Liquid Stabilisers 24

3.2 Plasticisers 27

3.2.1 PVC/Plasticiser Compatibility [3, 4] 27
3.2.2 Plasticisation Process 28
3.2.3 Plasticiser Influence on Physical Properties 29
3.2.4 Plasticiser Choice and Selection [13] 30
3.2.5 Plasticiser Types 32

3.3 Impact Modifiers 40

3.4 Process Aids 42

3.5 Lubricants 42

3.6 Fillers 43

3.6.1 Calcium Carbonate 44
3.6.2 Other Fillers 44

3.7 Flame Retardants (FR) and Smoke Suppressants (SS) 44

3.8 Pigments 45

3.8.1 Titanium Dioxide (TiO_2) 45
3.8.2 Other Inorganic Pigments 46
3.8.3 Organic Pigments 47
3.8.4 Pigment Concentrates and Masterbatches 47

3.9 Microbiocides 47

3.10 Blowing Agents 48

3.11 Antioxidants and Light Stabilisers 49

3.12 Other PVC-P Additives 49

3.12.1 Antistatic Agents 49
3.12.2 Viscosity and Rheology Modifiers 49
3.12.3 Bonding Agents/Adhesion Promoters 50

4 **Testing and Properties** 53

4.1 Density 53

4.2 Water Absorption 53

4.3 Mechanical Properties 53

4.3.1 Hardness 54
4.3.2 Tensile Properties 55
4.3.3 Flexural Properties 56
4.3.4 Impact Properties 57
4.3.5 Fatigue 58

4.4 Thermal Properties 59

4.4.1 Thermal Conductivity 59
4.4.2 Heat Deflection Temperature 59

4.4.3 Vicat Softening Point ... 60
4.4.4 Linear Expansion Coefficient ... 60
4.4.5 Specific Heat Capacity ... 60
4.4.6 Cold Flex Temperature ... 60

4.5 Electrical Properties ... 60
4.5.1 Volume Resistivity ... 61
4.5.2 Dielectric Constant or Relative Permittivity ... 61
4.5.3 Loss Modulus or Dissipation Factor ... 62
4.5.4 Breakdown Voltage or Dielectric Strength ... 62
4.5.5 Arc Resistance ... 62

4.6 Fire Properties ... 62
4.6.1 Self-ignition Temperature ... 62
4.6.2 Flame Ignition Temperature ... 63
4.6.3 Limiting Oxygen Index (LOI) ... 63
4.6.4 NBS Cone Calorimeter ... 63
4.6.5 Smoke Evolution ... 64
4.6.6 Fire Performance of PVC ... 64
4.6.7 Fire Testing in the EU ... 65

4.7 Optical Properties ... 67
4.7.1 Transparency ... 67
4.7.2 Gloss Level ... 68
4.7.3 Colour ... 68

4.8 Surface Properties ... 68
4.8.1 Abrasion Resistance ... 68
4.8.2 Surface Resistivity ... 69

4.9 Biological Behaviour ... 69
4.9.1 Assessment under Food and Water Legislation ... 69
4.9.2 Assessment under Medical Legislation ... 72
4.9.3 Sterilisation ... 74

4.10 Resistance to Micro-organisms ... 76

4.11 Performance in Service ... 76
4.11.1 Maximum Continuous Use Temperature ... 76
4.11.2 Stability to Light, UV Radiation, and Weathering ... 76
4.11.3 Chemical Resistance ... 77
4.11.4 Permeability ... 78

5 Design ... 83

5.1 Design Considerations for PVC-U Materials ... 83
5.1.1 Pipe ... 83
5.1.2 Exterior Construction Applications ... 85
5.1.3 Interior Construction Applications ... 89

5.2 Design Considerations for PVC-P Materials ... 89
5.2.1 Electrical Cable ... 89
5.2.2 Resilient Flooring ... 90
5.2.3 Wall Covering ... 91
5.2.4 Roofing Membranes ... 92
5.2.5 Coated Metal ... 93

5.2.6 Toys and Baby Care Items 93
5.2.7 Safety and Personal Protection 93
5.2.8 Automotive and Transport 94
5.2.9 Advertising Banners 95

6 **Processing of PVC** 97

6.1 Dry Blend Mixing 97
6.1.1 High Intensity 97
6.1.2 Low Intensity 98
6.2 Liquid PVC Blending 98
6.3 Gelation 99
6.4 Melt Processing 100
6.4.1 Melt Compounding 100
6.4.2 Extrusion 101
6.5 Injection Moulding 104
6.6 Extrusion Blow Moulding 105
6.7 Calendering 105
6.8 Plastisol Moulding Processes 106
6.8.1 Rheology 106
6.8.2 Spreading or Coating 106
6.8.3 Rotational, Slush, and Dip Moulding 107
6.9 Powder Moulding Processes 107
6.9.1 Fluidised Bed 107

7 **Property Enhancement of PVC** 109

7.1 Crosslinked PVC 109
7.1.1 Chemical Crosslinking 109
7.1.2 Irradiation Crosslinking 110
7.2 Orientation 110
7.2.1 Pipe 110
7.2.2 Sheet 111
7.3 Blends and Alloys 111
7.3.1 Flexibilisers/Internal Plasticisers 111
7.3.2 Ultrahigh Molecular Weight (UHMW) PVC 112
7.4 Nanocomposites 113
7.4.1 Melt Intercalation 113
7.4.2 Solvent Method 114
7.4.3 *In Situ* Polymerisation 114
7.5 Wood Composites 114

8 Post-processing and Assembly 117

8.1 Post-processing 117
8.1.1 Thermoforming 117
8.1.2 Printing and Coating 117

8.2 Assembly Techniques ... 119
8.2.1 Welding ... 119
8.2.2 Adhesion ... 121
8.3 Mechanical Assembly ... 122
8.3.1 Machining, Cutting, and Fastening ... 122

9 Sustainable Development ... 123
9.1 Environmental Attack and Response ... 123
9.2 Vinyl 2010/Chlorine Industry Sustainability Commitments ... 125
9.2.1 Chlorine Generation ... 126
9.2.2 PVC Production Industry Charters ... 126
9.2.3 Conversion with Additives ... 128
9.3 End of Life and Waste Management ... 132
9.3.1 PVC-rich Waste: Mechanical Recycling ... 133
9.3.2 PVC Feedstock Recycling ... 138
9.3.3 Incineration/Energy Recovery ... 139
9.3.4 Controlled Landfill ... 140
9.4 Life Cycle Assessments ... 140
9.4.1 Eco-profiles ... 141
9.5 Social Factors ... 142

10 Causes of Failure ... 145

Abbreviations and Acronyms ... 147

Index ... 153

1 Introduction

1.1 Background

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) is a product based on the earth's natural resources: salt and gas or oil. Salt water electrolysis yields chlorine (in addition to caustic soda and hydrogen). Ethylene can be derived from naphtha when oil is refined or from natural gas. Chlorine and ethylene can be combined to form the monomer vinyl chloride. PVC results from the polymerisation of vinyl chloride.

PVC cannot be processed on its own due to its very low thermal stability and high melt viscosity. Therefore, it is necessary to combine with the polymer a number of suitable additives to give a wide and varied range of properties to satisfy many different end-use applications. It is this scope for generating a wide range of properties through appropriate formulation that gives PVC a broad application coverage that is unmatched by any other commodity thermoplastic. Its durability (85% is used in medium- to long-term lifespan applications), linked to its cost effectiveness, has made it the second largest commodity plastic after polyethylene (PE).

PVC is a thermoplastic, meaning that it has the property of softening or fusing when heated and hardening when cooled. Thermoplastic materials, correctly formulated, can undergo this process many times without undergoing any appreciable chemical change. PVC has primarily an amorphous structure, i.e., lacking positional order on the molecular scale, and shows typical characteristics of dimensional stability up to the glass transition temperature (T_g): creep resistance, low shrinkage, impact resistance but notch sensitive, and good transparency. T_g is the temperature at which a glassy polymer, such as PVC, softens into a viscous rubbery phase, indicating when the amorphous regions gain enough thermal energy to begin sliding past one another at an observable rate. For PVC, this lies in the region of 80 °C. Being amorphous, PVC has no distinct melting point, but 170–180 °C is the temperature range at which the polymer undergoes significant change.

Although primarily amorphous, there is also a crystalline phase amounting to around 10% of the matrix.

The properties of PVC are influenced by its average molecular weight and its molecular weight distribution. PVC compounds are based on the combination of the polymer and additives that give the formulation necessary for the end use. The convention for recording the additive concentration is based on parts per hundred of the PVC resin (phr).

The compound is generated by intimately mixing together the ingredients. The mixture is subsequently converted into a gelled material under the influence of heat (and shear). Depending on the type of PVC and additives, the compound prior to gelation is normally a free-flowing powder known as a dry blend.

PVC compounds can be formulated, using plasticisers, into flexible materials, usually called PVC-P. An alternative compound form for PVC-P is a liquid in the form of a paste or liquid dispersion. Dry blend compounds without plasticiser, for rigid applications, are designated PVC-U.

1.2 History

The existence of the vinyl chloride monomer was reported by Liebig and Regnault in 1835, but the ability of this monomer to polymerise was not fully known at that time. The effect of sunlight on vinyl chloride was later investigated by Baumann in 1878, when it was observed that a tough white substance formed as a result.

Very little significant advance was then made until 1912–1916 when Fritz Klatte discovered the basis for the production of PVC. Patents were granted for the manufacture of vinyl chloride by reacting hydrogen chloride gas with acetylene at 180 °C in the presence of metal chlorides as catalysts. The patents also referred to polymerisation by sunlight and suggested some use for the polymer. The PVC patents were allowed to lapse and the first commercial production of PVC started in the late 1920s, in the USA, with expansion in the 1930s.

Pilot plant production of PVC resins began in Germany in 1931. The beginning of PVC as a technically useful product stemmed from the patent disclosures of Semon of the BF Goodrich Company and Reid of Carbide and Carbon Chemicals in 1933–1934. It was discovered that PVC became a flexible material that resembled rubber or leather when it was heated in the presence of a high-boiling-point liquid. This led to the use of phthalate esters as plasticisers for PVC giving a material that was processable at acceptable melt temperatures into products that were permanently soft and flexible.

The industrial production of PVC using emulsion and suspension technology had occurred in Germany, the USA, and the UK by the start of World War II. During the war, the acute shortage of rubber accelerated developments in this area, particularly in electrical cable insulation and sheathing.

During this period, heat stabilisers were first used in PVC formulations. In a further development during World War II, German engineers produced rigid sheet and pipe, although PVC-U was generally considered too brittle for practical use. Early PVC processing was carried out on machinery originally developed for rubber and celluloid, namely compounding, calendering, compression moulding, and extrusion.

1.3 Major Advantages and Limitations

1.3.1 Major Advantages

PVC is extremely cost effective in comparison to other plastics with a high degree of versatility in end-use and processing possibilities, as the reader will note from the following chapters. It is durable, easily maintained, and can be produced in a large range of colours. Outdoor weathering is also extremely good from suitably formulated material. Similarly, PVC can be used for food contact and medical applications. Clarity is good.

It has a good combination of stiffness (particularly at low wall thickness) and impact strength, linked to non-flammability in rigid use. The dimensional stability is also good at ambient temperatures. It has resistance to many different chemicals, oils, and greases, and also has good water vapour barrier properties. In its flexible form, it has good electrical insulation properties. It also has high strength-to-weight ratio with toughness and can be decorated with different techniques.

PVC has also been able to adapt well to changing needs and environments. The industry has also started to tackle end-of-life issues.

1.3.2 Limitations

In comparison to other thermoplastics, the specific gravity of PVC is higher and heat distortion and softening temperatures are relatively low. Continuous service temperature is also relatively low.

It is more difficult to melt process, due to thermal stability and high shear issues, e.g., injection moulding of PVC-U is not straightforward. PVC-U has limited solvent stress cracking resistance and becomes brittle at low temperatures unless impact modified.

There have been, and still are, issues and perceptions over environmental and health acceptance covering vinyl chloride monomer (VCM), dioxins, phthalate plasticisers, and lead (and cadmium) based heat stabilisers (see Chapter 9). As a result, PVC has lost market share in some consumer-driven markets where 'PVC free' has been used as a green marketing tool.

Mixed plastic waste containing PVC can cause processing problems due to thermal stability issues – so the polymer is not well regarded by some recyclers.

1.4 Applications

PVC is used in a very wide range of differing applications, ranging from short to long life. Around 60% of its applications have a lifetime of more than 40 years. Applications can be classified under the categories shown in **Table 1.1**. By far, the biggest market area is in construction (>60%).

1.5 Competitive Materials

Polyolefins are the main competitive materials for pipe, cable, and flooring, primarily due to the constant environmental pressures on PVC.

Polyethylene terephthalate (PET) has already partially replaced PVC in some rigid packaging applications. PET displays physical property similarities to PVC with a similar cost. It has superior performance in carbonated beverage bottles. The recycling of PET packaging waste is also seen to be less problematical when separated from municipal waste.

For good transparency, high impact strength, and good chemical resistance methyl methacrylate-acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (MABS) copolymer, also known as transparent actylonitrile-butadiene-styrene, could be a potential higher-cost alternative for specific PVC-U areas.

1.6 Market Share and Consumption Trend

PVC vies with polypropylene (PP) to be the second largest commodity thermoplastic, in volume terms, after PE. Annual global consumption in 2002 was in excess of 25 million tonnes with the global consumption of the five major thermoplastics (polystyrene (PS) and PET being the others) at around 130 million tonnes (source: Hydro Polymers).

The global PVC market is growing at 3–4% per year, but this varies widely across the regions. Most growth is in Asia (particularly China) with the mature Western Europe market estimated to grow at around 3% per year. Eastern Europe will be higher and the North American market is still growing (source: ECVM). In 2004 production in the USA increased by 8.8% with a sales growth of 6.6% over the preceding year (American Plastics Council news release on *www.vinylinfo.org*).

Table 1.1 Typical applications of PVC (rigid and flexible)	
Construction	Window frames, doors, roller shutters, potable pressure pipe, sewage and drainage pipe, guttering, cladding, roofing membrane, cable duct and conduit, flooring, wall covering, reservoir lining, fencing, corrugated and insulation sheet, slats and blinds
Electrical	Keyboards, computers, power tools, electrical cable, telecommunication cable, duct, fuse boxes, wall plugs
Automotive	Interior trim, dashboard skin, coated fabric for seat coating and door panels, wire harness systems, window seals and gaskets, windscreen sandwich film, sealant for underbody and joints, sound insulation, decorative and protective profiles, tarpaulins
Medical	Pharmaceutical blister packs, blood and plasma bags, tubing for dialysis, endotracheal, and feeding, infusion kits, surgical and examination gloves, inhalation masks, pouches for waste products (colostomy bags, etc.)
Packaging	Food packaging: PVC-U: thermoformed blister packs/display trays/egg boxes, tamper-evident packaging, bottles for mineral water/fruit squash/cooking oils PVC-P: cling and stretch film for wrapping food products (including meat), cap seals/closures and food can linings/hose and tubing for drinks transportation
	Non-food packaging: Trays, containers, and bottles for cosmetics, medicines, and detergents, bottle cap sealing closures, adhesive tapes, shrink film
Leisure and Sports	Toys, footballs, buoyancy aids, life vests, leisure boats, garden hose, temporary structures, coated garden tool handles, gloves (garden), luggage; credit and debit cards, smart cards, identity cards
Clothing	Raincoats, shoe soles, boots, imitation leather, fashion items
Office	Office supplies, e.g., folders, ring binders, covers
Miscellaneous	Conveyor belting, polyurethane sealants (PVC component gives non-sag consistency), waterproof membranes (for road foundations and tunnels), wire fencing, furniture coating, inks, lacquers and adhesives, valves and fittings (chemical industry), gauntlet gloves, upholstery

1.7 Industry Outline and Major Suppliers

The PVC industry consists of resin producers, compounders, additive suppliers, and processors. Most processors specialise in processes linked to either PVC-U or PVC-P applications. In some cases, such as pipe and window frame manufacturing, the processed PVC is marketed directly by the processor. In other cases, the processor passes on the PVC in semi-finished form to another company for completion.

There has been much rationalisation of resin producers in the last twenty years due to consolidation transactions. The major PVC industry participants are shown in **Table 1.2** for 2003.

Table 1.2 Nameplate capacity (based on suppliers' information)			
Western Europe	kt per year	World	kt per year
EVC	1400	Shin-Etsu (Shintech)[1] – USA, Japan and W Europe	3230
SolVin	1300	Formosa – Taiwan and USA	2550
Arkema[2]	940	Oxy Vinyls – USA and Canada	2050
Vinnolit	650	EVC – W Europe	1400
Hydro Polymers	475	SolVin – W Europe	1300
Tessenderlo (LVM)	475	Georgia Gulf – USA	1220
Shin-Etsu[3]	440	LG Chem – Korea and China	1130
Vestolit	350	Arkema – W Europe	940
Cires	200	Vinnolit – W Europe	650
Aiscondel	160	Kanegafuchi – Japan	530

[1] Shin-Etsu has announced that they will build and operate an integrated facility for the manufacture of chlorine, caustic soda, VCM and PVC in the USA. PVC capacity will be 580 kt per year for completion by the end of 2007.

[2] Arkema has announced an investment plan to shut down some plants and expand others.

[3] Shin-Etsu has announced an expansion of capacity by 100 kt.

The world PVC capacity in 2003 has been estimated at around 34 million metric tonnes, a doubling of capacity in comparison to 1980. The biggest increase has been in Asia, which accounts for around 40% of the capacity. West Europe has around 20% with North America at 25%. Capacity will increase further by 2010 to approximately 40 million metric tonnes, primarily in Asia (source: CMAI).

1.8 Material Pricing

Pricing is influenced by supply chain factors, such as the supply/demand balance for ethylene dichloride (EDCL)/VCM, plant capacity utilisation, and demand in the market.

Figure 1.1 shows the average PVC price movement, for Europe, in €/tonne since February 2003.

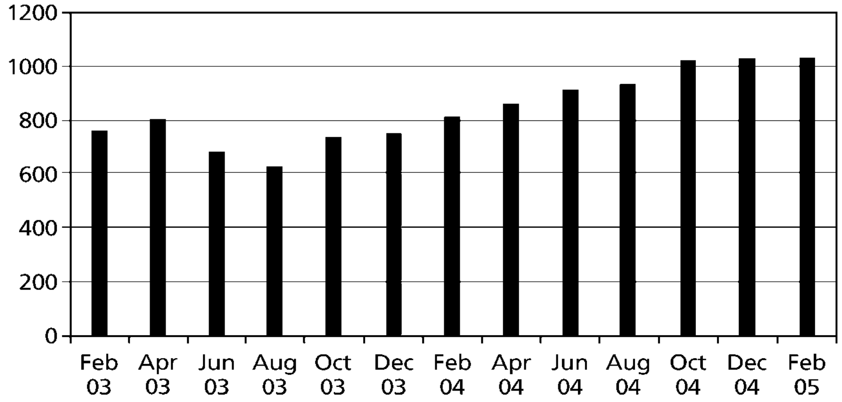


Figure 1.1 PVC price movement (€/tonne). (Source: EPN.)

The North American price for PVC (14th March 2005) was approximately US$0.57/pound (source: Plastics News, *www.plasticsnews.com*).

Table 1.3 shows a snapshot comparison of PVC with other commodity plastics.

Table 1.3 Polymer prices, February 2005 (source: EPN)

Material	Price (€/tonne)
PVC pipe grade	1000–1030
PVC high-quality grade	1040–1070
High-density PE (average)	1110–1150
Linear low-density PE	1160–1190
Low-density PE	1230–1260
PP	1080–1130
PP copolymer	1130–1170
PS general purpose	1230–1270
PS high impact	1380–1420
PET	1320–1370

1.9 Safety, Health, and Environmental Issues

Safety, health, and environmental (SHE) issues have been a major concern, worldwide, for the PVC industry. Some issues have been debated and have receded into the background but others are still potential issues to be resolved. Some of the issues are covered in this section, but full information is available in Chapter 9.

1.9.1 Phthalate Plasticisers

Concerns have been raised at regular intervals in Europe and the USA regarding the possible negative impact of phthalates on the environment and human health due to alleged carcinogenic, endocrine modulating, reproductive, and other effects. In particular, their use in toys, healthcare products, and flooring has raised much debate and analysis at various levels, primarily concerning migration out of the flexible PVC. Strong viewpoints against the continuing use of phthalates have been expressed by non-governmental organisations (NGO) such as Greenpeace, Friends of the Earth, and WWF. They have also become a ‘political football’ at EU level.

There is an overall perception developing, linked to a lack of understanding between hazard and risk, that phthalates are not fully acceptable materials for the plasticisation of PVC.

The main phthalates under investigation are butylbenzyl phthalate (BBP), dibutyl phthalate (DBP), di-2-ethylhexyl phthalate (DEHP), diisononyl phthalate (DINP), and diisodecyl phthalate (DIDP) (see Section 3.2). These phthalates accounted for about 90% of the 900,000 tonnes of plasticisers used for PVC plasticisation in Europe in 2003. Investigations concerning phthalates include EU risk assessments based on sound science but the political positions on flexible PVC and phthalates cannot be ignored.

Hundreds of studies have been carried out on phthalates and there are regular updates on the regulatory position on various websites including those of the European Council for Plasticisers and Intermediates (*www.ecpi.org*) and the Phthalate Esters Panel of the American Chemistry Council (*www.phthalates.org*).

DINP, the most commonly used plasticiser in soft toys and items intended to be put into children's mouths, has had a positive EU and USA (Consumer Product Safety Commission) risk assessment, provided that recommended migration limits have been adhered to.

However, on the basis of the precautionary principle (see Section 9.2.3), an EU ban on the use of DEHP, DBP, and BBP in toys and babycare items was proposed in September 2004. In addition, DINP and DIDP would be banned in toys and childcare items that can be put in the mouth by children under three years old. DEHP is the only phthalate that has European Pharmacopoeia approval for flexible PVC medical devices. There has been some academic work carried out to reduce DEHP migration from flexible PVC.

1.9.2 Heat Stabilisers

1.9.2.1 Lead-based Stabilisers

Lead-based stabilisers are primarily used, extensively for PVC-U applications in Europe and the Far East, e.g., pipe, fittings and profile, lead stabilisers have been very cost-effective heat stabilisers. For similar reasons, plus good insulation resistance, lead stabilisers have also been used in PVC-P in wire and cable across the world. Their toxicity hazards have been well known and controlled, particularly in relation to worker exposure.

However, the EU hazard classification and labelling (which focuses on worker protection) of lead stabilisers as reprotoxic, harmful, dangerous for the environment, and producing dangerous cumulative effects, and their presence (heavy metal) causing issues for waste management strategies, resulted in their agreed phase-out in Europe (see Section 9.2.3.4).

A new European standard reducing the lead level in drinking water by 2013 was an additional factor (see Section 4.9.1.2).

1.9.2.2 Organotin Stabilisers

Organotin stabilisers have been caught up in the 'elimination of heavy metal' discussions. There are also improved analytical techniques now available to detect very low levels of organotin species in different environments. The identification of a perceived hazard, of course, must be related to the chance of that hazard having an effect (the risk) and this is not always appreciated.

1.9.3 Bisphenol A/Alkylphenols

Bisphenol A has been used as an inhibitor at the PVC polymerisation stage and as an antioxidant. There has been some concern over possible health hazards and its use in the polymerisation stage has been voluntarily stopped or restricted to levels that do not exceed the predicted no-effect concentration in waste water, and so on. The determination of the content of bisphenol A in, and its migration from, PVC film has been carried out [1].

Nonylphenol can be generated from some liquid heat stabilisers (in addition to many other possible sources) and it has been identified as persistent and oestrogenic [2].

1.9.4 Epoxidised Soya Bean Oil (ESBO)

ESBO is a heat stabiliser and secondary plasticiser used in PVC-P applications. It has food contact approval up to certain limits but there have been some health/political issues (see Section 9.2.3.4, subsection on epoxidised soya bean oil). The possible use of genetically modified soya bean oil in the manufacture of ESBO has also raised some discussion.

The migration of ESBO from PVC-P used in gaskets for sealing baby food jars has been determined [3].

1.9.5 Green Product Procurement Policies/Eco-labelling

As a result of the ongoing environmental debate, various organisations and local authorities have banned the use of PVC in applications where they have control of the purchasing specification, e.g., windows for local authority housing. This has been unfairly labelled under a green procurement policy.

There is a growing debate at EU and at municipality network level about the direct use of eco-labels for green public procurement (GPP). These eco-labels are managed by the EU Eco-labelling Board (comprising of 25 national competent bodies) which takes decisions about the 'ecological criteria'. Across Europe, there are several examples of discriminatory GPP measures against PVC products. The PVC industry, via the European Council of Vinyl Manufacturers (ECVM) and Vinyl 2010 (see Section 9.4), are working to counter these actions.

1.9.6 End-of-life Issues

Recycling and solid waste disposal are major issues facing the PVC industry (along with many other materials).

Incineration has issues of perception concerning dioxins and acid generation, with disposal of the furnace residue also seen to be problematical. In addition, the public perception of incineration as a means of energy recovery is not positive. The possibility of landfill disposal is also a challenge, due to concerns about potential leaching out of heavy metals and phthalates. The shortage of suitable areas for landfill generally and even more so for hazardous waste will severely restrict this disposal route in the future.

Recycling of post-consumer waste is in its infancy, as far as the polymer industry is concerned. There are many issues concerning collection, separation, and processing into suitable applications. The primary issue is, of course, the start-up costs associated with a recycling operation in comparison to current costs of virgin material processed into existing applications.

1.9.7 Fire Performance

In Section 4.6.7 mention is made of the single burning item (SBI) test method and the upcoming Euroclasses for reaction to fire performance of construction materials. These include fire growth

rates, possibly smoke growth rates, and acid fume tests. For PVC, there could be potential issues in satisfying whatever classifications are established for use in particular applications. In addition to arguing the relevancy of some of these tests, reformulation may be necessary.

References

1. J. Lopez-Cervantes and P. Paseiro-Losada, *Food Additives and Contaminants*, 2003, **20**, 6, 596.

2. *ENDS Report*, 2002, **327**, 13.

3. L. Hammarling, H. Gustavson, K. Svensson, S. Karlsson and A. Oskarsson, *Food Additives and Contaminants*, 1998, **15**, 2, 203.

2 PVC Resins

2.1 Raw Starting Materials

The starting materials for commercial polyvinyl chloride (PVC) production are ethylene and chlorine. Ethylene is derived from a cracking process involving feedstock based on oil or natural gas hydrocarbons, such as ethane, propane, or butane. The process involves catalysis at high temperatures and pressures to produce ethylene and other co-products, such as propylene and butadiene. The ethylene is further processed to separate it from the co-products.

Chlorine is manufactured industrially, in the manufacture of caustic soda, by the cell electrolysis of salt water (saturated brine). Approximately 35% of Europe's chlorine production goes into PVC production. Three different electrolysis processes are currently in use (*www.eurochlor.org*):

- Mercury cell – which uses a mercury cathode (–) along the cell bottom and titanium anodes (+) located above. The application of a direct electrical current liberates chlorine at the anode with sodium dissolving into the mercury cathode to form an amalgam. In a separate reactor, the amalgam reacts with water to produce hydrogen and caustic soda solution (50%). This regenerates the mercury, which is returned to the electrolytic cell. The process is very energy intensive and appropriate measures are necessary to protect the workforce and the environment from the effects of mercury. The current emission standard, of a maximum 2 g per tonne of capacity installed, is being met by treatment of the spent brine before discharge. However, the industry has been criticised for its poor environmental performance in the past on mercury discharge. This process was the first to be performed on an industrial scale and was the most common process in Europe. For cost and environmental issues, mercury cell operations are now being phased out.

- Diaphragm cell – which uses titanium/steel alloy anodes with a porous diaphragm, standing on an iron grid cathode, to prevent the chlorine and sodium hydroxide from remixing. Hydrogen is also liberated. The process, developed in the USA, uses less energy than the mercury cell process but, as a more dilute caustic soda solution is obtained, water evaporation (more energy) is necessary to concentrate the solution. Unreacted salt also has to be removed. The process is used more widely in the USA where energy costs have been lower than in the EU. The diaphragm was originally asbestos based, with a short lifetime, which resulted in the need to dispose of large quantities of asbestos. The asbestos is now being replaced by longer life polymers.

- Membrane cell – where the cell is divided into two compartments by a membrane acting as an ion exchanger. The anodic compartment contains a saturated sodium chloride brine solution and the cathodic compartment contains water. The process is similar to the diaphragm process but the ion-selective polymer membrane only allows the sodium cations to pass through. At the negatively charged cathode, the hydrogen ions, in the water, are reduced to hydrogen gas. At the positively charged anode, chloride ions are oxidised to chlorine gas. The sodium cations flow through the membrane to form sodium hydroxide with the hydroxyl ions remaining after removal of the hydrogen ions. Energy consumption is similar to the diaphragm cells giving very pure sodium hydroxide with negligible environmental impact.

The overall reaction process for diaphragm and membrane cells is:

$2NaCl + 2H_2O \rightarrow 2NaOH + Cl_2 + H_2$

The European chlorine industry is in discussions with the EU regarding sustainable development issues, including voluntary agreements covering energy efficiency optimisation, minimisation of water use, emissions reduction, optimisation of hydrogen use, and the safe transportation of chlorine (see Section 9.2.1).

2.2 Vinyl Chloride Manufacture

Vinyl chloride monomer (VCM) is produced from the direct chlorination of ethylene, using a catalyst, with pyrolysis of the resulting ethylene dichloride (or 1,2-dichloroethane; EDCL) in a cracking unit. An oxychlorination unit, in which recycled hydrogen chloride is reacted with further ethylene feedstock in the presence of catalyst and oxygen, is also employed to generate further quantities of EDCL while excess hydrogen is oxidised to form water. The integrated operation combines these three reaction steps such that vinyl chloride is made from chlorine, ethylene, and oxygen:

- Direct chlorination to EDCL: $CH_2{=}CH_2$ (ethylene) + Cl_2 (chlorine) $\rightarrow$ CH_2ClCH_2Cl (EDCL)
- Oxychlorination to EDCL: $CH_2{=}CH_2 + 2HCl + ½O_2 \rightarrow CH_2ClCH_2Cl + H_2O$

EDCL is liquid at room temperature and normal atmospheric pressure. Transportation is relatively straightforward.

- EDCL cracking (thermal decomposition at high pressure and high temperature): CH_2ClCH_2Cl $\rightarrow$ $CH_2{=}CHCl$ (vinyl chloride) + HCl (hydrochloric acid)

The process also includes VCM and EDCL purification stages and a by-product separation and disposal stage. A by-product of the EDCL cracking phase is acetylene due to the EDCL cracking all the way. Consequently, the HCl recycle stream is usually passed through a hydrogenation reactor to convert it back to ethylene. This in turn produces more EDCL.

A new patented technology, based on ethane-to-VCM, is also being developed by EVC International NV. The process is based on ethane (which is much cheaper than ethylene) reacting with HCl or chlorinated hydrocarbons and oxygen using a novel catalyst system.

VCM boils at –13.4 °C and is normally stored and shipped as a liquid under pressure. It forms explosive mixtures with air and is toxic (carcinogen).

2.3 Polymerisation

PVC plants can be fully integrated (the preferred option), but various levels of integration also exist in relation to being supplied with VCM and/or EDCL.

Polymerisation is based on the free radical polymerisation of VCM using initiators, such as organic peroxides, in thick-walled, high-pressure-rated steel vessels. The reaction is strongly exothermic requiring the vessels to be jacketed and the use of a condenser to remove the heat of reaction. The choice of polymerisation method depends on the ultimate application and the economics of the process.

A broad range of peroxide types are available and are typically classified by one hour half-life temperatures of between 40 and 90 °C. The initiator controls the flux of radicals and this determines the VCM polymerisation rate. The initiator type or types are chosen to suit the particular PVC grade to be manufactured. Normally supplied in aqueous suspensions or emulsions, the concentration can range from 0.05 to 0.15%. The molecular weight is generally controlled by the reaction time and temperature. Stirring conditions also influence the process.

European Council of Vinyl Manufacturers (ECVM) member companies have agreed voluntary charters covering environmental standards relating to VCM and PVC production. These are covered in Section 9.2.2.

2.3.1 Homopolymers

After polymerisation, the VCM repeat unit is linked in a head-to-tail fashion with the number of units ranging between 500 and 1500. This corresponds to a theoretical molecular weight range of approximately 40,000–170,000. The properties of PVC are influenced by the average molecular weight and the molecular weight distribution (MWD).

The chemical structure deviates from the theoretical chain with chain branching occurring during polymerisation. Details are given in Section 3.1.

Commercial PVC polymers are essentially amorphous but also have a crystalline phase amounting to approximately 10% and a two-dimensionally ordered nematic phase depending on the processing history.

The glass transition temperature (T_g) of PVC homopolymers lies in the region of 80 °C.

2.3.1.1 Suspension Polymerisation Process

Suspension-polymerised PVC (S-PVC) is manufactured when VCM is polymerised in large-scale batch reactors (autoclaves) in the presence of water, initiators (organic peroxides) that are soluble in VCM, and a protective colloid/suspending agent (e.g., polyvinyl alcohols) to stabilise the suspension. Other additives are chain-transfer/chain-extending and chain-terminating agents, antioxidants, pH regulators, and anti-foaming agents. Depending on the dosage and nature of the protective colloid and the stirring conditions, the monomer droplets can agglomerate to a greater or lesser extent in the course of the polymerisation. The reaction can be chemically short-stopped when the desired conversion has been reached. The reaction is normally allowed to run until about 90% of the VCM has been polymerised.

The suspended droplets of liquid monomer are progressively converted to solid or porous PVC particles which are insoluble in the monomer. Unreacted VCM is stripped from the polymer and recycled. The water is separated by centrifuging. The polymer is then dried, typically in fluidised bed drying equipment. Prior to the start-up of the next polymerisation cycle, the reactor is cleaned and coated with an anti-fouling agent.

The typical mean particle (grain) size of S-PVC is 100–180 μm with a range of 50–250 μm. The particles are complex and irregular in shape with a dense semi-permeable skin.

S-PVC is the most common type of resin (around 80% of total PVC produced worldwide) used in both rigid and flexible applications and grades are formulated to meet an extensive range of requirements, such as high plasticiser absorption for flexible products, or high bulk density and good powder flow required for rigid extrusion. Grades are available from a K value (molecular mass) of 50 up to 80.

2.3.1.2 Microsuspension Polymerisation Process

Microsuspension PVC is produced when VCM is mixed in a vessel with water, an initiator soluble in VCM, and an emulsifier. These components are circulated through a mixing pump (homogeniser) which causes the mixture to disperse into very fine droplets, before being placed in an autoclave. The droplets are coated with surfactant which stabilises them during the reaction. Initiation and polymerisation occur within the droplets. After polymerisation, the autoclave contains a stable dispersion of fine particles of PVC in water. As the name of the process implies, the PVC particle diameter is smaller, within the range 0.2–3 μm. Porosity is very low.

After the production of polymer, the subsequent operations for obtaining the final product are similar to those of the emulsion polymerisation process.

Microsuspension-polymerised PVC is used for producing plastisols and paste in combination with emulsion-polymerised PVC.

2.3.1.3 Emulsion Polymerisation Process

Emulsion-polymerised PVC (E-PVC) is produced in an autoclave when VCM is polymerised in the presence of water, a water-soluble initiator (peroxosulfate, and so on), and an emulsifier (anionic surfactants). The addition of copper or iron can also be used to increase the decomposition rate of the initiator (redox catalyst). At the end of the polymerisation stage, the autoclave contains a stable dispersion of fine PVC particles in water. Non-ionic surfactants can be added at this stage. From this milky emulsion (latex), the PVC is separated from the water by evaporation in spray drying equipment. A milling process follows to modify the agglomerate size before final size classification.

As the resin retains most of the emulsifiers used during polymerisation, special properties, such as improved thermal stability and greater ease of processing, are conferred on the polymer.

A larger elementary particle size can be achieved by seeding the initial emulsion system. PVC polymer latex is introduced and the particles of the new polymer grow on the seed.

The process can be in batches, semi-continuous, with the monomer added in stages, or a continuous emulsion polymerisation process with monomer and other ingredients continuously fed into the reactor and the latex withdrawn from the bottom.

The primary particles are solid, smooth-surfaced spheres which are clustered into irregularly shaped aggregates after drying, with a typical particle size of 5.50 μm. When broken down in the paste mixing process (see Section 6.2), the particle size is in the region of 0.5 μm with a range of 0.1–3.0 μm.

When E-PVC resins are mixed with a liquid plasticiser, a paste (or plastisol) is produced due to the surfactant layer around the grain surface preventing plasticiser adsorption at room temperature. Consequently these resins are called paste resins which are used in a wide range of speciality applications such as coating, dipping, or spreading. Resins are available for differing viscosity and flow requirements, speed of gelation, clarity, and gloss level. K values range between 60 and 82.

E-PVC and microsuspension-polymerised PVC account for around 10% of total PVC produced. They are also known as dispersion resins.

2.3.1.4 Mass or Bulk Polymerisation Process

In this process, the polymer is polymerised in the absence of a carrier, such as water. The mass (or bulk) polymerisation of VCM is carried out by a two-stage process. In the first stage (prepolymeriser) vigorous agitation is necessary to obtain the desired particle size distribution. Monomer and initiator are charged and polymerisation proceeds to about 10% conversion at which time the formed particles are dispersed in the bulk of the VCM. In the second stage (polymeriser) this material is slowly agitated and additional monomer and initiator are added. Polymerisation continues to approximately 20% conversion at which time all of the liquid VCM is absorbed into the porous structure of the grains leaving only dry powder. Polymerisation continues to 70–90% conversion and the unreacted monomer is recovered.

Particle size and range are similar to suspension polymer but the particles have highly spherical shapes, with higher bulk density and porosity. The heat stability and fusion properties are superior. Particular uses for this material are linked to high transparency and good plasticising properties.

The cost benefits of this process (no drying stage) are offset to some extent by difficulties in removing VCM traces from the polymer and the level of oversized material that is generated.

The number of suppliers offering PVC produced by this process is restricted to licensees of the original Pechiney St Gobain (now Arkema – formally Atofina) technology, and accounts for <10% of world PVC production.

2.3.1.5 Structure and Stability

Commercially produced PVC is inherently thermally unstable, due to some chain branching during polymerisation. Hence a heat stabiliser system is essential. The degradation process is shown in **Figure 2.1**. This reaction leads to polymer molecules with conjugated polyene sequences of 2–25 double bonds. Polymer discolouration occurs from seven double bonds onwards, starting with yellowing and deteriorating to brown and black. Subsequent secondary reactions, if not prevented, lead to chain scission and crosslinking.

2.3.2 Copolymers and Terpolymers

A number of commercial vinyl chloride copolymers are predominantly made up of VCM units with comonomer units randomly distributed in minor proportions. The suspension polymerisation process is normally used.

Grafted copolymers obtained by vinyl chloride polymerisation and polyacrylic elastomer grafting give high bulk density resins for products with high impact strength suitable for outdoor applications. The separate addition of acrylate impact modifiers to the PVC formulation is covered in Section.3.3.

A vinyl chloride – ethylene–vinyl acetate (EVA) terpolymer system also gives products with superior impact strength suitable for outdoor environments. The modifier component is a 45% vinyl acetate EVA copolymer with PVC grafted on it. EVA modification depends on a network structure.

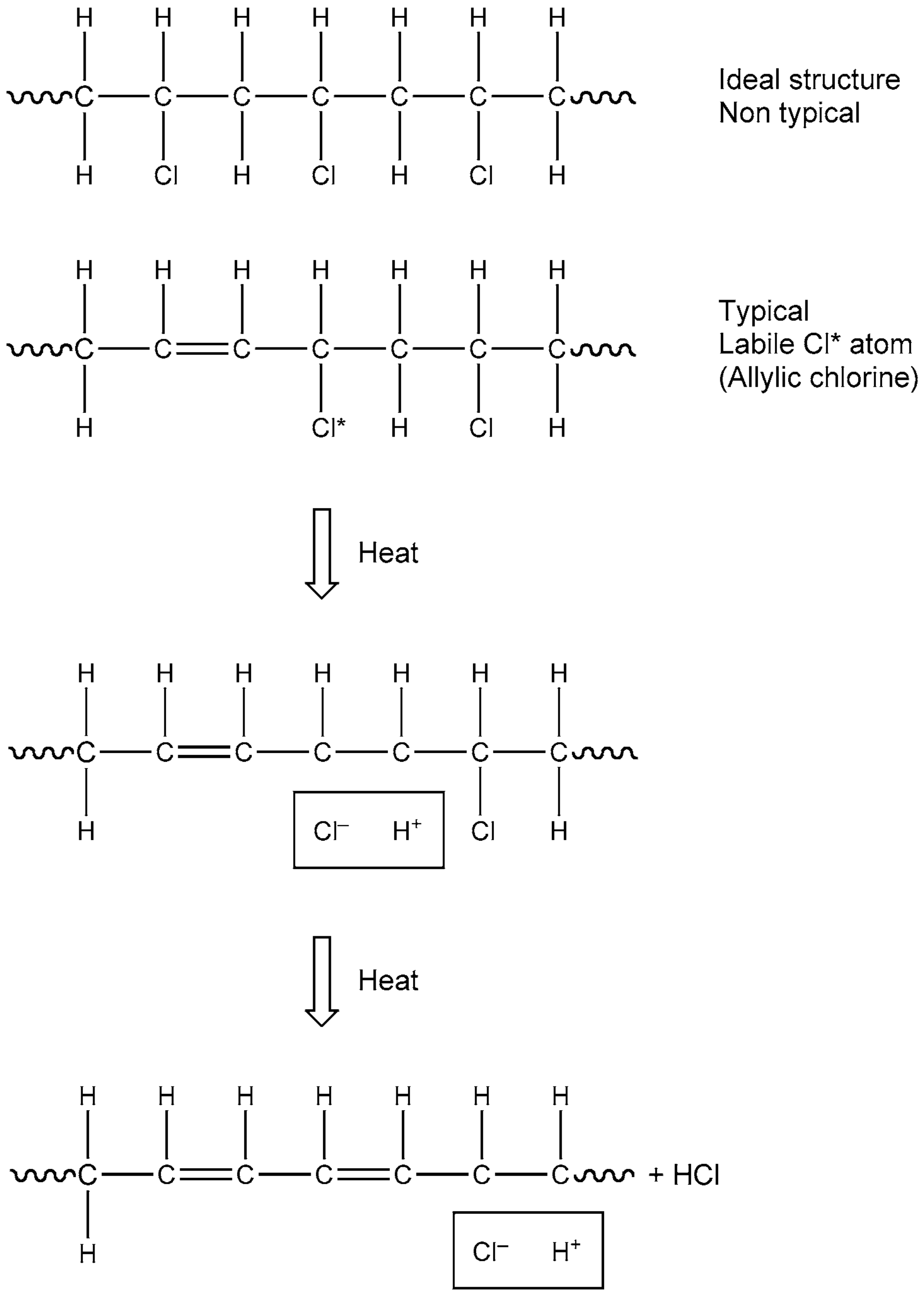


Figure 2.1 PVC structure and degradation process

Vinyl chloride–vinyl acetate copolymers are produced containing 5–15% of vinyl acetate. These materials, having a lower T_g, can be processed at considerably lower temperatures and are particularly suited for thermoforming. Finished products are highly transparent. These grades are the basis of so-called vinyl records.

2.3.3 Chlorinated PVC (C-PVC)

C-PVC is manufactured by chlorination of PVC polymer thereby raising the chlorine content from 56% to around 66%. Chlorination takes place primarily at the CH_2 groups along the polymer chain so that the resulting structure becomes virtually a copolymer of vinyl chloride with 1,2-dichloroethylene.

Chlorination of PVC reduces the forces of attraction between the molecular chains. C-PVC is also essentially amorphous. Both of these factors allow C-PVC to be stretched more easily and to a greater extent than PVC above its T_g,. C-PVC has a T_g, approximately 50% higher than PVC but also has a higher melt viscosity in processing. The upper service temperature for C-PVC is approximately 100 °C in comparison to that of PVC at 60 °C. The number of C-PVC suppliers is very limited.

2.4 PVC Resin Characterisation

2.4.1 Molecular Weight

PVC resins are polymerised to different molecular weights to suit the particular processing technique and end-use application requirements. The resin contains a random distribution of molecular weights and therefore number-average molecular weight (M_n) and weight-average molecular weight (M_w) can be measured by various techniques. M_n is the arithmetic mean, representing the total weight of the molecules present, divided by the total number of molecules. M_w emphasises the mass of the molecules, so that the contributions of molecules, according to their size, are more significant. The MWD, which is M_w divided by M_n is a measure of the polydispersity of a polymer mixture, i.e., how widely distributed the range of molecular weights are in the mixture. Obviously, a ratio of ~1.0 indicates that the molecular weight range is narrow.

Normally, however, for production control, the dilute solution (1% in cyclohexanone at 30 °C) viscosity of the resin is used and the average molecular weight can be calculated from the Mark–Houwink–Sakurada equation expressed in terms of the Fikentscher K value or viscosity number (DIN EN ISO 1628-2E [1]/ISO 1628-2 [2]). Commercially available PVC grades are supplied in Europe with K values ranging from 50 to 80.

In the USA the molecular weight is expressed as inherent viscosity; the higher the inherent viscosity, the higher the molecular weight. The inherent viscosity or logarithmic viscosity number (η_{inh}) is expressed in decilitres per gram. Therefore, commercial PVC resins are available with an inherent viscosity range of 0.50 to 1.15 (K value 47 to 76). In Asia the polymerisation degree (according to JIS K-6720 and JIS K-6720-2 [3]) is used. Polymerisation degree figures from 600 to 1810 cover K values of 55 to 80.

2.4.2 Particle Size

The PVC particle size range and distribution influences bulk handling and processing characteristics. Various techniques can be utilised to measure particle size and range including sedimentation and optical and electrical sensing. However, sieve analysis is the most common technique quoted on data sheets. Different grades of suspension resins give percentage retention, on a 0.063 mm sieve, in the region of 90–95% and on a 0.250 mm sieve, around 1–5%. This technique can be used to measure particles above 30 μm (0.030 mm) in size and is based on a water method (ISO 1624 [4]).

Microsuspension and emulsion grades give very low retention figures on 0.125 mm (0.20%) sieve size with a mechanical flushing sieve test method (ISO 787-18 [5]). Where the alternative ISO 1624 test method is used, very low retention figures over 0.063 mm (1.0%) and 0.106 mm (0.05%) sieve sizes are typical.

2.4.3 Bulk Powder Properties

Apparent bulk density and packed bulk (or tapped) density are important properties. The bulk density determines the weight of resin that can be stored in a vessel and the amount a mixer can hold. It also has a major influence on extruder output rates. The bulk density of a resin depends upon its morphology, particle structure, and particle size distribution. For suspension resins, bulk density is typically in the range 450–550 kg/m^3 for grades designed for plasticised applications and 550–650 kg/m^3 for rigid applications - ASTM D1895-96 [6] applies.

The packed density is based on the ability of the resin to occupy the smallest space without physical distortion and is usually 10–30% greater than the bulk density.

Another important consideration is powder flow time, as it governs the speed and ease of polymer discharge from a silo or from a mixer. This is influenced by the PVC particle shape, size distribution, and compound formulation ingredients.

2.4.4 Porosity

Porosity is an indicator of free space in a PVC grain and the ability of the grain to absorb plasticiser. High porosity is obviously desirable for flexible applications requiring high plasticiser loads. For rigid applications, a certain porosity level is necessary to absorb additives. Porosity can be assessed by different test methods. The determination of plasticiser absorption, at room temperature, is carried out using a centrifugal technique (ISO 4608 [7]/ASTM D3367-98 [8]) using di-2-ethylhexyl phthalate (DEHP) as the plasticiser. Plasticiser absorption figures in the region of 25–35% are typical for S-PVC grades for flexible applications. Correspondingly, this test gives figures in the region 15–20% for S-PVC grades for rigid applications.

The determination of hot plasticiser absorption, for testing PVC pastes (ISO 4612 [9]), utilises a laboratory planetary mixer linked to torque measurement (Brabender®) where the difference in time between the plasticiser input and the dry point (where the torque starts to increase) is measured.

2.5 Storage and Transportation

Storage and transportation in bulk (as compared to 25 kg bags on pallets) is the most popular form of handling of PVC resin. Road tankers of 20 tonnes capacity are common. Big bags, made of woven polypropylene (PP), are used for 1 tonne lots.

2.6 Role of Additives

PVC formulations can include many different types of additives that assist in imparting a large range of physical and chemical characteristics. This versatility is the main reason why PVC has been so

successful as a commodity thermoplastic, from medical applications such as tubing and blood bags to long-life applications such as window frames and rainwater goods. The unique polar characteristics of PVC permit a wide range of appropriate additives to be incorporated within the polymer. The various factors that can be influenced are shown in **Table 2.1** and depend on the particular end use.

Table 2.1 Formulation factors
Cost efficiency
Process characteristics/output
Reprocessability/recycling
Clarity level
Density
Surface finish – gloss to matt
Light stability/weathering
Softness/hardness
Flexibility/stiffness
Fire properties
Electrical properties
Post-processing treatment
Impact strength – ductile/brittle
Chemical resistance
Colour
End-use legislative requirements
Operating temperature environment

2.7 Identification

The classic test for identifying PVC is to carefully apply a small flame and observe the flame colour and generated odours. Unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U) burns with a greenish-edged flame and there is a smell of hydrochloric acid. There may be some sputtering and removal of the flame source will result in the PVC flame extinguishing. Plasticised-PVC (PVC-P) will behave similarly, but may continue burning. The plasticiser smell will also become more evident.

Density is also higher than most other plastics and this can be utilised in water flotation testing (to determine if it sinks). However, it should be noted that acrylonitrile–butadiene–styrene and polycarbonate have similar densities.

The surface of the material may also assist in identification, with PVC-U being horn like and without a waxy feel, such as for PP or polyethylene.

More scientific analytical tests are based on the identification of various components [10]. Infrared spectroscopy can be used to carry out an analysis (by noting the wavelengths that the substance absorbs) and identify the material by reference to a standards database. One approach is to press a

thin film of the sample using a temperature above its glass transition temperature and to record a transmission spectrum. Alternatively, the sample could be dissolved in tetrahydrofuran, the resulting solution cast into a film, and dried prior to generating the transmission spectrum. With PVC-P, a certain amount of preparation work is required to effectively remove the interference of the plasticiser. This involves a solvent (methanol) extraction to remove the organic species.

Pyrolysis gas chromatography (GC) can also be used to generate a pyrogram which can be compared to reference standards. This involves thermal decomposition of the polymer and analysing the thermal decomposition products using GC. The GC process separates the organic compounds, due to differences in their partitioning behaviour between the mobile gas phase and the stationary phase, in a separation column. The principal diagnostic pyrolysis species from PVC are hydrogen chloride, benzene, and chlorobenzenes.

Metal stabilisation components, such as lead, barium, tin, or zinc, can also be an indication that the polymer is PVC. X-ray fluorescence spectroscopy is a common technique which operates on the basis of analysing the emission spectrum generated when an atom is externally excited. The X-rays irradiate the sample, which then emits fluorescent X-ray radiation, which is characteristic of each element present. Measurement of the intensity of the emitted energy will also indicate the amount present in the sample. This technique can also be used to measure the calcium content, i.e., filler.

References

1. DIN EN ISO 1628-2, Plastics - *Determination of Viscosity of Polymers in Dilute Solution using Capillary Viscometers - Part 2: Poly(Vinyl Chloride) Resins*, 1999.

2. ISO 1628-2, *Plastics - Determination of the Viscosity of Polymers in Dilute Solution Using Capillary Viscometers - Part 2: Poly(Vinyl Chloride) Resins*, 1998.

3. JIS K6720-1, *Plastics - Homopolymer and Copolymer Resins of Vinyl Chloride - Part 1: Designation System and Basis for Specifications*, 1999.

4. JIS K6720-2, *Plastics - Homopolymer and Copolymer Resins of Vinyl Chloride - Part 2: Preparation of Test Samples and Determination of Properties*, 1999.

5. ISO 1624, *Plastics - Vinyl Chloride Homopolymer and Copolymer Resins - Sieve Analysis in Water*, 2001.

6. ISO 787-18, *General Methods of Test for Pigments and Extenders - Part 18: Determination of Residue on Sieve - Mechanical Flushing Procedure*, 1983.

7. ASTM D1895-96, *Standard Test Methods for Apparent Density, Bulk Factor, and Pourability of Plastic Materials*, 2003.

8. ISO 4608, *Plastics - Homopolymer and Copolymer Resins of Vinyl Chloride for General Use - Determination of Plasticizer Absorption at Room Temperature*, 1998.

9. D3367-98, *Standard Test Method for Plasticizer Sorption of Poly(Vinyl Chloride) Resins Under Applied Centrifugal Force*, 2004.

10. ISO 4612, *Plastics - Preparation of PVC Pastes for Test Purposes - Planetary-Mixer Method*, 1999.

11. M.J. Forrest, *Analysis of Plastics*, Rapra Review Report No.149, 13, 5, Rapra Technology, Shrewsbury, UK, 2002.

3 PVC Additives

The main groups of additives are listed in **Table 3.1** and the description of their activity should be self-evident.

Table 3.1 Additives
Heat stabiliser
Plasticiser
Impact modifier
Process aid
Lubricant
Filler
Flame retardant/smoke suppressant
Pigment
Blowing agent
Biocide
Viscosity modifier
Antistatic agent
Antioxidant
Ultraviolet absorber
Antifogging agent
Bonding agent

3.1 Heat Stabilisers [1]

As already explained in Section 2.3.1, commercially produced polyvinyl chloride (PVC) is inherently thermally unstable, due to structural defects formed during polymerisation and during processing. The degradation process has already been shown in Section 2.3.1.5 with the labile Cl* atoms being the initiation sites of PVC heat degradation. Examples of structure defects are shown in **Figure 3.1**. Other examples of initiation sites are the 2,4-dichlorobutyl branches and the presence of peroxy groups, and so on.

Heat stabilisers retard dehydrochlorination and autoxidation and reduce fragmentation. In addition, they cure existing damage. They also help to maintain light stability during use.

The thermal degradation process can be followed by analysis of the colour generated in a static or dynamic environment, usually with reference to a standard. Alternatively, heat stability can be measured on a time basis, based on hydrogen chloride (HCl) evolution.

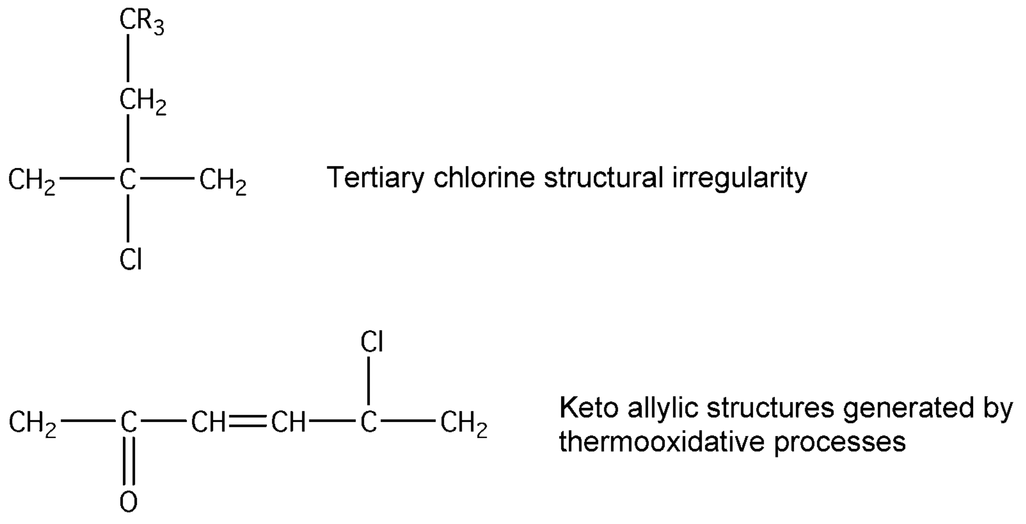


Figure 3.1 PVC structure defects.

The role of the heat stabiliser can be summarised as follows:

- Substitute structural defects for more stable groups.
- Stop the dehydrochlorination zipper effect by substituting the allylic chloride formed during degradation.
- Scavenge evolved HCl which has a prodegradant effect.
- React with free radicals formed (antioxidant) to avoid discoloration and crosslinking by thermal, high-stress, or photochemical processes.
- May provide lubrication.

There are many different types of heat stabilisers based on different metal salts or soaps, acting synergistically, for PVC. These are covered in the following sections.

3.1.1 Solid Form

3.1.1.1 Lead Stabilisers

Lead compounds, usually based on a mixture of lead salts, e.g., tribasic lead sulfate ($3PbO{\cdot}PbSO_4{\cdot}H_2O$) or dibasic lead phosphite ($2PbO{\cdot}PbHPO_3{\cdot}\frac{1}{2}H_2O$), and lead soaps with some lubricating action, dibasic lead stearate ($2PbO{\cdot}Pb(C_{17}H_{35}COO)_2$) or normal lead stearate ($Pb(C_{17}H_{35}COO)_2$), have been very cost-effective heat stabilisers for many years. They primarily function as very efficient HCl absorbers. Dibasic lead phosphite is also a very effective light stabiliser. They are particularly suitable for wire and cable electrical insulation because of their complete non-conductivity and the inert nature of the chlorides formed with HCl.

Technical limitations to their use have been opacity and sulfur staining. Their cumulative toxicity has been mainly concerned with worker exposure and consequently they have been heavily regulated. Apart from wire and cable, their use has been restricted to unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U) applications in Europe and Asia. North America has never accepted lead compounds in PVC-U applications, preferring the use of organotin compounds. This is covered later in Section 3.1.2.1.

Non- or low-dusting products, which include the lead components in a safe handling state, in combination with lubricants (one-pack), have been available for many years in different product forms: flake, granule, tablet, and dosage packs. These one-packs are tailored to suit the processing technique, primarily extrusion and injection moulding, and end-use specification.

However, the EU hazard and labelling classification of lead stabilisers as reprotoxic with possible risk of impaired fertility and dangerous for the environment, in addition to their harmful and dangerous cumulative effects has resulted in their agreed phase-out in Europe (see Section 9.2.3.4). Another complicating factor is their presence (heavy metal) causing issues for waste management strategies.

A new UK standard reducing the lead level in drinking water between 2003 and 2013 was an additional factor.

3.1.1.2 Calcium Zinc-based Stabilisers (Ca Zn) [2]

One of the most successful developments in recent years has been the progress made in solid Ca Zn stabiliser formulations to replace lead on a cost-effective basis. It has also been important that the components of these systems have a satisfactory low-toxicity profile.

Ca Zn formulations are a complex blend consisting primarily of:

- Calcium soap (stearate or laurate)
- Zinc soap (stearate or laurate)
- Acid scavengers such as a hydrotalcite, zeolite, and metal oxides/hydroxides
- Organic co-stabilisers such as the diketone stearoyl benzoylmethane
- Antioxidant
- Polyols, and so on.

Calcium stearate acts as an acid acceptor in addition to providing lubrication.

Zinc stearate is used to improve initial and early colour, in combination with the co-stabiliser. This functions by the co-stabiliser complexing the zinc stearate and so preventing the early formation of zinc chloride, which is a prodegradant. It should also be noted that PVC resins may react differently in the presence of zinc (zinc sensitive) and this has an influence on stabiliser formulations.

Synthetic hydrotalcites and zeolites (already used in other industries) have been developed for use in PVC stabilisation. These form addition complexes at degrading sites. Such sites tend to be deactivated and the catalytic and highly mobile HCl captured before elimination of further HCl. Hydrotalcites have a layer structure based on magnesium aluminium hydroxycarbonates containing exchangeable anions. Zeolites are crystalline sodium aluminosilicates with a cubic crystal structure of zeolite A. They are microporous with uniform pores and a high internal surface area.

Antioxidants are included at very low levels to inhibit the oxidation of the polymer matrix arising not only from thermal processing but also from subsequent photochemical and environmental influences.

Various Ca Zn-based systems, usually supplied as a one-pack including lubricants, are now available to suit the different heat stability and rheology requirements for pipe, fittings, profile, and wire and cable applications. Non-dusting product forms have also been developed, due to the light and fluffy nature of the Ca Zn soaps (stearates). Typical addition levels for Ca Zn one-packs range from 2.0 to 4.0 phr.

Solid Ca Zn systems have also been developed for plasticised-PVC (PVC-P) applications as replacements for liquid Ba Zn stabilisers where volatility and emissions may be an issue at the processing and end-use stages. Specific Ca/Zn systems are also available for food contact and medical use meeting the strict regulations that these materials have to satisfy.

Calcium and zinc are essential to life at low doses. The recommended daily intake for zinc is approximately 15 mg for adults. At high doses, toxic effects are observable. Zinc stearate is under review, under the EU Existing Chemicals Directive (see Section 9.2.3.4, subsection on zinc risk assessment).

3.1.1.3 Calcium Organic-based Stabilisers

Another major development has been the replacement of zinc with a specific organic co-stabiliser that does not rely on zinc to generate good initial and early colour. The performance of the patented uracil co-stabiliser is linked to the efficiency of conjugation and electron transfer to retard dehydrochlorination and shorten polyene sequences. Zinc-free stabilisers are claimed to have a better processing window (no influence from zinc sensitivity) than Ca Zn, although initially there were also some mistaken perceptions about zinc being a 'heavy metal'. Organic-based systems have been developed as lead replacements for rigid pipe and pipe fittings.

3.1.2 Liquid Stabilisers

3.1.2.1 Organotin Compounds

Organotin compounds are primarily based on methyl, butyl, or octyl derivatives, usually mixtures of dialkyl and monoalkyl, bound to the tin atom through a covalent C–Sn bond. Taking up the other positions are high molecular weight, highly ionic organic groups linked through a sulfur atom (mercaptide) or oxygen atom (carboxylate). The general formula is R_xSnL_{4-x}.

Tin Mercaptides

R can be methyl, butyl, or octyl (mono- or dialkylation). L is 2-ethyhexyl thioglycolate (as used in rigid bottles and films) or 2-mercaptoethyloleate (reverse ester).

The performance of organotin mercaptides is not only based on the tin metal content, but on the organotin species, mercaptide ligand chemistry, and organic co-stabiliser. In North America, the use of lower cost, reverse ester thiotins is common for PVC-U applications covering pipe, profile and sidings, and foam.

Tin, acting as a base, reacts with the HCl initially released during PVC processing (the base strength being such so as not to extract HCl from the PVC). The monoalkyltin mercaptide acts quickly to react with the labile chlorine to generate the corresponding trichloride which can further catalyse decomposition. The dialkyltin mercaptide neutralises this compound and the resulting dichloride does not catalyse any further decomposition, and also reactivates the mono-stabiliser. In addition the organotin mercaptide stabilisers are very effective antioxidants. Addition levels are 0.5–1.5 phr.

The main features of tin mercaptide stabilisers are that they provide good initial and long-term colour hold coupled with excellent clarity, linked to their good compatibility (due to high molecular weights and ester function in the mercaptan ligands).

The methyl and octyl versions are approved (up to a maximum level) for use in rigid food contact and medical applications. Limitations to their use include their relatively high cost and unpleasant odour and their use is now almost exclusively in PVC-U applications.

Tin Carboxylates

R is predominantly butyl (dialkylation). L is alkyl maleate or laurate.

Organotin maleates are relatively less efficient than the tin mercaptides but have superior light stability due to the presence of the maleic acid structure which is able to react with conjugated double bonds (Diels–Alder reaction). They usually also contain antioxidants at a low level. Addition levels are 1.5–3.0 phr. They require particular lubrication systems due to their anti-lubricating effect.

In Europe, the annual production of tin mercaptides and carboxylates has remained fairly static around the 14 kt level (*www.vinyl2010.org*). This primarily reflects an effective decrease of PVC use in packaging.

3.1.2.2 Mixed Metal Compounds

Liquid mixed metal stabilisers are used almost exclusively in PVC-P applications. The stabilisers are formulated to suit specific requirements, such as clarity, good initial colour, long-term stability, compatibility with filled, pigmented systems, and suitability for post-processing techniques. Usually a good compromise of all the necessary requirements is achieved, but specific stabiliser formulations are designed to meet one or two specific needs.

Liquid mixed metal heat stabilisers are blends of metal soaps or salts, in combination with organophosphite esters and co-stabilisers in a liquid medium. The soaps or salts can be ethylhexanoate, nonylphenate, *para-tert*-butylbenzoate, oleate, and so on.

Aryl-alkyl or alkyl organophosphites are liquid esters, which replace the labile chlorine (particularly in the presence of zinc), scavenge HCl, decompose peroxides, and act as complex Lewis acids (by accepting electron pairs). They also assist in the solubilisation of the stabiliser components.

Manufacture is based on *in situ* reaction of the metal oxides or hydroxides with the appropriate acid components. In addition to cost performance criteria, important aspects are storage stability, easy handling, and low odour.

Strongly basic carboxylates, derived from barium or calcium, are mostly HCl scavengers. Zinc and cadmium carboxylates are also able to scavenge HCl, but also substitute the allylic chlorine atoms. The

synergism between the two types is attributed to a fast exchange reaction between zinc or cadmium chloride and barium or calcium carboxylates. These reactions regenerate the active zinc (or cadmium) carboxylate and also avoid the catalytic effect in PVC degradation of zinc (or cadmium) chlorides.

Epoxidised soyabean oil (ESBO) or octyl epoxy stearate at 2.0–5.0 phr is normally also included in PVC-P formulations. This is a secondary stabiliser/plasticiser which acts as an HCl scavenger.

One issue with liquid stabilisers is the emission of volatile components (phenol from the organophosphite, solvent from the liquid dispersion medium, and so on) during processing and from the end-use application, e.g., floor and wall coverings. Analytical techniques are now available to detect volatile organic compounds (VOC) and so influence stabiliser developments to improve this aspect.

Barium Cadmium (Ba Cd)

Ba Cd-based systems (which may also include zinc) have been available for many years due to their excellent cost effectiveness in combination with good initial colour and long-term stability. However, in the European area, their use was voluntarily phased out by the PVC industry in 2001, due to severe restrictions relating to environmental and toxicity (carcinogenic) concerns over cadmium (which accumulates in the body). Ba Zn stabilisers were the preferred option.

Cadmium-based stabilisers are still used in the USA and Asia Pacific areas, but are coming under increasing health and environmental scrutiny. Ba Zn systems have been and continue to be developed.

Barium Zinc (Ba Zn)

Ba Zn-based systems now have the majority market share for stabilisation of PVC-P in Europe due to extensive formulation development based on increasing the barium content and the important role of organic co-stabilisers. Examples of organic co-stabilisers are the diketone dibenzoylmethane, dehydroacetic acid and pyrrolidine-2,4-diones.

Calcium Zinc (Ca Zn)

Traditionally Ca Zn has been less effective as a heat stabiliser, but much work has been carried out to develop more sophisticated and higher efficiency heat stabilisers, primarily to replace Ba Zn. This is based on the fact that barium is a heavy metal. However, there is no evidence of health or environmental concerns. Barium does not build up in the body and in the USA, the Environmental Protection Agency has concluded that barium is unlikely to cause cancer in humans by ingestion. It is also not regulated in air.

Components of Ca Zn stabiliser systems are similar to those present in Ba Zn but vary in concentration.

In Europe, the annual production figure of European Stabiliser Producers Association (ESPA) members for liquid Ba Zn and Ca Zn is approximately 14 kt (*www.vinyl2010.org*).

3.2 Plasticisers

Plasticisers are added to PVC to achieve flexibility and workability. The flexibility or softness is determined by the type of plasticiser and level used in relation to the PVC (phr). They also operate as an internal lubricant between the PVC molecules. Based on high-boiling organic esters, e.g., phthalates, adipates, trimellitates, phosphates, and so on, addition levels can be as low as 20 phr for semi-rigid to 100 phr for very flexible applications.

Plasticisers act to reduce the glass transition temperature (T_g) of PVC. For many uses a reduction of T_g to ambient temperature is required. When PVC is heated in the presence of a plasticiser, the plasticiser penetrates and swells the resin particles. This results in the polar groups in the PVC resin being freed from each other and plasticiser polar groups interacting with the resin polar groups. As long as there is sufficient compatibility between polymer and plasticiser, the plasticiser will be retained in the flexible product that results. There is no chemical reaction between the plasticiser and the PVC and so it can be considered as a two-phase blend. The action of these materials is known as external plasticisation.

The ability of PVC to accept high plasticiser levels is attributed to regions of order (microcrystallites) within a predominantly amorphous polymer structure, being reduced but not eliminated by incorporation of the plasticiser. Plasticisers are held in solution by dipolar attraction within the amorphous regions whilst inter-chain association, through the microcrystallites, provides elastic recovery from deformation.

The internal structure of fully processed PVC-P is far from homogeneous. In addition to inhomogeneity at the molecular level, there is evidence for retention of some particulate structure even when, for practical purposes, it is regarded as being fully fused.

3.2.1 PVC/Plasticiser Compatibility [3, 4]

Any theoretical treatment of plasticiser/polymer compatibility is likely to refer to the solubility parameter (σ). Compatibility occurs when there is a close match of values between the plasticiser and polymer repeat unit. Various calculations for solubility parameters are available, namely Hildebrand (using cohesive energy density) and Hansen (extending this approach to include dispersion, polar, and hydrogen-bonding components in a three-dimensional space). It has been shown that solubility parameters are capable of classifying plasticisers of a given family in terms of their compatibility with PVC, but are of limited use for comparing different family groups.

The polarity parameter (Φ) has also been developed for predicting the relative compatibility of ester plasticisers with PVC. Van Veersen and Meulenberg proposed the A_p/P_o polarity ratio, which shows a good correlation with plasticiser activity. This ratio is equal to the number of carbon atoms present in the plasticiser molecule (excluding aromatic and carboxylic acid carbon atoms), A_p, divided by the number of ester (polar) groups present, P_o. This is then correlated with the molar mass of the plasticiser. Low values indicate high compatibility and give useful prediction of monomeric plasticiser activity. However, results show that the polarity ratio alone is not able to compare plasticiser activities from different families.

Neither parameter seems to apply to polymeric plasticiser compatibility.

A rapid practical test for ranking the compatibility of different plasticisers with PVC is the solution temperature or solid–gel transition temperature (T_m). This is the temperature at which a heterogeneous

mixture of excess plasticiser and a controlled reference suspension-PVC resin is observed to change to a single phase. Low solution temperature is indicative of high compatibility and good processability.

Interaction and activity parameters have also been used to measure compatibility. The Flory–Huggins interaction parameter (χ) utilises a statistical mechanical treatment of a lattice model of polymer solutions. This was applied to plasticisers by Anagnostopoulos to calculate the interaction parameter on the basis of the solid–gel transition temperature and using the molar volume of the plasticiser. Results show a good indication of ease of processing for a given plasticiser with a given resin, but will not give estimates of plasticising performance in the final product.

It should also be borne in mind that plasticiser compatibility limits can be influenced by the presence of other plasticisers and organic additives, particularly if they have a lower compatibility [5].

3.2.2 Plasticisation Process

Two stages occur during the plasticisation of PVC. The first stage is gelation, whereby the PVC particles adsorb the plasticiser due to an increase in temperature. This results in a weak gel. The second stage is fusion, resulting from further heating (above 150 °C), whereby the PVC particles and the plasticiser melt together giving a homogeneous material. Six steps have been identified that occur during these stages [6] after mixing:

- Plasticiser molecules irreversibly penetrate the porous PVC structure.
- Plasticiser adsorption occurs with plasticiser solvating the resin surface.
- Plasticiser absorption occurs with PVC particles swelling and the total volume of the material decreasing. The temperature depends on the plasticiser solvating capability.
- As the result of applied heat, major changes occur with the plasticiser forming clusters among the polymer segments, penetrating into the molecular structure. The mixture becomes a melted homogeneous material.
- With continued application of heat, the material behaves like a fluid melt.
- With cooling, the polymer hardens due to crystallisation and the creation of weak van der Waals forces and hydrogen bonding between the plasticiser molecules and the polymer segments. These changes may take hours or days (to develop the mechanical properties to a maximum).

Various theories have been developed to explain the mechanism of plasticiser action in PVC. Classic theories are based on lubricity and gel formation. The free volume theory followed on some years later.

3.2.2.1 Lubricity and Gel Theories

The lubricity theory, attributed primarily to Kirkpatrick, Clark, and Houwink [7-9], is based on the assumption that the resin rigidity arises from intermolecular friction which binds the chains together in a rigid network. When heated, these frictional forces are weakened, allowing the plasticiser molecules between the chains. Some solvent action is also suggested. Once incorporated into the polymer bulk, the plasticiser molecules shield the chains from each other, so preventing the reformation of the rigid network. However, this theory cannot explain why some materials are efficient plasticisers while others are not.

The gel theory [10] extends the lubricity theory by suggesting that the plasticiser acts by breaking the resin–resin attachments and interactions, and by masking these centres of attachment from each other, so preventing their reformation. The polymer structure is maintained by an internal three-dimensional honeycomb structure or gel.

An empirical approach [11] has analysed the prerequisites for a polymer to be plasticised. For PVC, the polymer chains are sufficiently long to have some strength even though the plasticiser forces them apart. In addition, PVC chains are linear and the crystallinity is very low, with chlorine atoms separating chains to reduce van der Waals forces and forming dipoles that act as points of attraction between nearby chains. If a liquid is introduced into the PVC polymer with the same order of cohesion energy as the polymer, it will remain stable. Polar groups in a plasticiser are essential for good compatibility. When plasticiser molecules are introduced into the polymer mass, polymer chains are separated by the smaller liquid molecules, which are then able to line up their dipoles with the polymer dipoles.

3.2.2.2 Free Volume Theory

The free volume theory extends the lubricity and gel theories and also allows a quantitative assessment of the plasticisation process.

Free volume is a measure of the internal space available in a polymer for the movement of the polymer chain, which imparts flexibility to the resin. The free volume is derived from the specific volume and it has been established that the specific volume of polymers decreases linearly with the temperature until the T_g is reached [12]. Unplasticised PVC is seen to possess very little free volume, whereas resins, which are flexible in their own right, are seen as having relatively large amounts of free volume. Plasticisers act to increase the free volume of the resin and also to ensure that the free volume is maintained as the resin–plasticiser mixture is cooled from the melt. By combining all three theories, it can be seen that plasticiser molecules not interacting with the polymer chain must simply fill free volume created by those molecules that do. These molecules may also be seen to provide a screening effect preventing interactions between the neighbouring polymer chains, thus preventing the rigid polymer network reforming on cooling.

In PVC-P, free volume can arise from motion of the main chain, side chains, and chain ends. These motions can be increased by increasing the number of end groups, increasing side chain length, including segments of low steric hindrance and low intermolecular attraction, and so on.

3.2.3 Plasticiser Influence on Physical Properties

The primary criterion for assessing a plasticiser's effect on the properties of PVC is softness or hardness (see Section 4.3.1). Shore A hardness is the most commonly used international scale. British Standard softness is a scale running in the reverse direction. As plasticiser levels increase, the hardness, of course, decreases and the elongation at break increases. Tensile strength and 100% extension modulus decrease.

The flexibility of plasticised PVC is strongly temperature dependent with reversible stiffening and embrittlement at low temperatures (see Section 4.3.3, **Figure 4.5**). The low-temperature performance of plasticisers is assessed by cold flex temperature (the temperature at which the torsional modulus of rigidity of a PVC-P sheet reaches a standard value) and cold crack temperature (the temperature at which 50% of a set of specimens are fractured by a standard impact) (see Section 4.4.6, **Figure 4.6**).

Electrical insulation properties such as volume resistivity (see Section 4.5.1) are dependent on plasticiser structure.

The incorporation of any plasticiser detracts from PVC's flame retardancy. This applies even to the superior flame retardant properties obtained from addition of phosphate or chlorinated paraffin plasticisers.

3.2.4 Plasticiser Choice and Selection [13]

The main factors that influence plasticiser choice are determined by the specification requirement of the finished product and depend on:

- Manufactured cost including formulation and processing (how easily the formulation can be processed and formed into the end product). Plastisol viscosity, if appropriate, would also come into this category.
- Compatibility – to ensure the flexible material remains stable and free of component separation during service.
- Plasticisation efficiency – the correct plasticiser type and the level of addition necessary to achieve the required modification of PVC end properties.
- Permanence including migration resistance, extractability, and volatility under service conditions.

3.2.4.1 Migration Resistance/Extractability

Since the liquids used as PVC plasticisers are completely miscible with other organic liquids, contact between PVC-P and oils or solvents results in plasticiser depletion. The fastest extraction of plasticisers is shown by low molecular weight polar solvents, such as esters, ketones, and ethers. With such extractants, absorption by the PVC is an important factor, since it opens up the polymer structure thereby facilitating plasticiser migration.

For applications involving prolonged contact with oils, fats, greases, or solvents, acceptably low rates of extraction can be achieved by the use of polymeric plasticisers (see Section 3.2.5.11). For complete extraction resistance, the use of a plasticising polymer (see Section 7.3.1) would be necessary.

Another aspect to consider is if the PVC-P is in contact with another polymer for which the plasticiser has some affinity. Plasticiser migration can occur across the polymer interface resulting in softening and blistering of surface coatings, adhesive bond failure, and environmental stress cracking of rigid thermoplastics. The effects are greatest for plasticisers with linear structures, low molecular weight, and a solubility parameter matching that of the receiving polymer.

3.2.4.2 Migration/Volatility

Since plasticisers are not bound chemically to the polymer and are held by relatively weak intermolecular forces, most are capable of migrating to the surface. From there an evaporation process may be possible into the surrounding atmosphere, depending on the temperature. It is this migration aspect that has resulted in so much of the discussion around environmental and health

issues (see Section 9.2.3.1). In addition, transmission into the atmosphere at ambient temperature of the plasticiser residues, within an enclosed space, has also raised concerns regarding indoor air quality influencing the health of occupants.

The large-tonnage phthalate plasticisers, used in most PVC-P applications, have molecular weights in the range 390–450. While their vapour pressures at ambient temperature are too low to measure, with increasing temperature the rate of evaporation increases rapidly to a point where plasticiser depletion can have a serious effect on physical properties. Hence volatility is one of the primary performance criteria for plasticisers and defines their suitability for service at elevated temperatures. Volatile loss of plasticisers from PVC-P in service is nearly always controlled by evaporation rate, diffusion through the polymer being sufficiently rapid to replenish surface loss.

The cable industry uses a spectrum of plasticisers with different levels of volatility according to the rated temperature of operation of the end product.

The automotive industry is also concerned with the volatility of plasticisers used in car interior trim. Windscreen fogging is the reduction of clarity of the windscreen caused primarily by condensation of plasticiser vapour.

At PVC processing temperatures, the rate of volatile loss of plasticisers is orders of magnitude higher than in end-product service. Plasticiser process fumes are eliminated by incineration or scrubbing of the extracted exhaust air prior to emission into the atmosphere. In some applications, it is desirable or necessary to select plasticisers to minimise fume generation.

3.2.4.3 Stability in Service

At service temperatures in excess of 70 °C, atmospheric oxidation of plasticisers can lead to changes in mechanical properties exceeding the effects of plasticiser depletion caused by volatile loss. Decomposition of peroxy groups present at low concentrations in the oxidised plasticiser leads to initiation of dehydrochlorination of the PVC polymer. The effect is generally most marked for plasticiser structures containing branched alkyl groups, such as diisononyl phthalate (DINP) and diisodecyl phthalate (DIDP). It is common practice for a hindered phenolic antioxidant, diphenylol propane, to be incorporated at a level of 0.1–0.5% in plasticisers used for high-temperature applications.

Plasticiser selection has a strong influence on the photostability of PVC and this plays a part in formulation for applications to be used outdoors. The first step in natural photodegradation is absorption of solar ultraviolet (UV) radiation. This effect is shown, to varying degrees, by aromatic esters but not by aliphatic esters. The subsequent formation of damaging free radicals is then favoured by the presence of branched alkyl chains. Thus, adipates show better UV stability than straight chain phthalates, which in turn are better than branched chain phthalates.

The weak link in the structure of most plasticisers is the ester group which can be broken at ambient temperatures by both alkaline hydrolysis and by esterases (enzymes present in widely encountered micro-organisms). Both mechanisms are influenced by steric factors, the most linear ester structures tending to show the greatest susceptibility to breakdown. The use of microbiocides is covered in Section 3.9.

3.2.5 Plasticiser Types

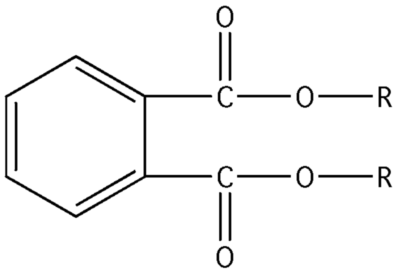
Plasticisers are often classified according to their particular functions. These can be as follows:

- Primary – which means that it has a sufficient level of compatibility with PVC to be able to be used as sole plasticiser at all addition levels giving a useful modifying effect.
- Secondary – has limited compatibility with PVC and normally can only be used in mixtures with a primary plasticiser.
- Extender – can be used as a lower cost, partial replacement for a primary plasticiser.
- General purpose/commodity – can be used as a primary plasticiser in almost all PVC-P applications giving satisfactory performance at optimum cost.
- High temperature – low volatility and resistant to loss during service at relatively high air temperatures.
- Low temperature – resistant to reversible stiffening and embrittlement of PVC-P at low service temperatures.
- Non- or low-migratory – exhibits a low level, or rate, of migration into materials with which the plasticised product comes into contact in service (can be air, liquids, and solids). This will be very dependent on the nature of the extracting medium.
- Fast fusing – may also be called highly solvating and indicating strong intermolecular interaction with the polymer, together with rapid penetration. Permits the use of lower processing temperatures and/or shorter process times.
- Low viscosity – gives low viscosity and good viscosity stability to PVC plastisols at relatively low plasticiser levels. Normally has low viscosity itself.

Table 3.2 gives a feel for the large range of plasticisers available to the formulator to meet performance requirements linked to satisfactory processability.

3.2.5.1 Branched and Linear Phthalate Esters

The most common plasticisers are the family of phthalate esters produced by the esterification of phthalic anhydride with various branched or linear alcohols (**Figure 3.2**). R can be C_6 to C_{13} with C_8, C_9, and C_{10} esters being the most common.



(R = Alcohol chain)

Figure 3.2 Phthalate esters

Table 3.2 Plasticiser types and applications		
Plasticiser type	**Characteristics**	**Typical use**
Commodity phthalate esters		
C_8	Good fusion rate and viscosity (plastisols).	General purpose and reference point for comparison. Medical devices.
Di-2-ethylhexyl phthalate (DEHP)/dioctyl phthalate		
Diisooctyl phthalate		
C_9	Slightly less efficient but lower volatility than C_8. Move to this category from C_8 for health and environmental issues.	
DINP		Toys and general purpose.
C_{10}		
DIDP		General purpose with good low-temperature performance.
Di-2-propylheptyl phthalate		Cable.
C_7	Good solvation.	
Diisoheptyl phthalate		Flooring/coating plastisols.
C_{13}	High gelation temperature. Low extraction, good migration resistance.	High-temperature cable insulation.
Diisotridecyl phthalate		
Speciality phthalate esters		
$<C_8$	Fast fusing, high volatility, lower plasticising efficiency. Improved low-temperature flexibility *versus* BBP.	
Dibutyl phthalate (DBP), diisobutyl phthalate, butylbenzyl phthalate (BBP), dihexyl phthalate		Flooring.
C_{11} Diisoundecyl phthalate	Low-volatility isophthalate.	
C_7–C_{11} L911P, L810P, L711P, L9P, L11P	Linear and semi-linear phthalates for low-volatility and low-viscosity applications.	Low temperature, low fogging.
Trimellitate esters		
Tris-2-ethylhexyl trimellitate (TEHTM)/trioctyl trimellitate (TOTM)	Better extraction and migration resistance. Good high-temperature but poorer low-temperature performance.	High-specification electrical cable insulation and sheathing. Medical devices.
Trimellitate ester of mixed semi-linear C_7 and C_9 alcohols (L79TM)		Automotive interior (low fogging).
Trimellitate ester of mixed C_8 and C_{10} linear alcohols (L810TM)		
Aliphatic esters		
C_8		
Di-2-ethylhexyl adipate (DEHA)/dioctyl adipate (DOA)	Improved low-temperature performance, higher volatility. Low-viscosity plastisols.	Blending plasticiser. Used in combination with polymeric plasticiser for food cling wrap.

Table 3.2 Continued		
C_9	Much less volatile than DEHA.	
Diisononyl adipate (DINA)		Phthalate blends.
C_{10}		
Diisodecyl adipate (DIDA)		
C_8	Superior low-temperature performance, good flexibility, inferior extraction resistance.	Specialised applications with extremely demanding low-temperature flexibility (cable sheathing).
Di-2-ethylhexyl sebacate (DOS), di-2-ethylhexyl azelate		
C_{10}		
Diisodecyl sebacate (DIDS)		
Phosphate esters		
Isobutylated or isopropylated triaryl phosphate esters. Alkyl aryl phosphate esters. Trialkyl phosphate esters	Flame retardants with excellent permanence.	Electrical cable and general applications requiring flame retardancy – tents, conveyor belting, and so on.
Secondary plasticisers		
Chlorinated paraffins	Have some compatibility constraints and can influence heat stability.	Used in conjunction with primary plasticisers to give volume cost savings.
Chlorine content (52%)	Similar volatility to C_8 phthalate.	Flooring, cable, extrusion, and sheet.
Chlorine content (45%)	Low viscosity, good low temperature.	Plastisols (flooring, wall covering), moulding, and hose extrusion.
ESBO, epoxidised linseed oil, octyl epoxy stearate or tallate	Primary use as secondary heat stabilisers but also impart flexibility. Compatible only at relatively low addition levels.	General use.
Polymeric plasticisers		
Polymeric adipates of differing molecular weight. Phthalic polyesters. Caprolactone-derived polyesters	More difficult to process/less compatible but excellent resistance to extraction. High cost.	Applications requiring excellent permanence and chemical resistance.

3.2.5.2 Branched Phthalates

2-Ethylhexanol, the feedstock for DEHP, is derived from propylene. Isononanol and isodecanol, used to manufacture DINP and DIDP, respectively, can be produced via the so-called 'oxo' route, based on polygas olefins, by the carbonylation of the olefin. This process (hydroformylation) acts to add a carbon atom to the olefin chain by reaction with carbon monoxide and hydrogen under temperature, pressure, and catalyst conditions. Polygas olefins are mixtures with carbon numbers between 6 and 12, synthesised from C_3/C_4 refinery olefin streams. Due to the distribution of the C=C double bonds in the olefin and the varying effectiveness of certain catalysts, the position of the

added carbon atom can vary and an isomer distribution is generally created in such a reaction. The precise nature of this distribution can vary. Consequently, these alcohols are termed isoalcohols and the subsequent phthalates isophthalates. DINP and DIDP, manufactured this way, are C_9 rich and C_{10}, rich, respectively. An alternative isononanol process for DINP is based on a C_8 olefin produced by dimerisation of *n*-butene. This type has a less branched structure and while interchangeable with the polygas-derived DINP, some performance improvements can be observed.

DEHP, DINP, and DIDP are subject to EU risk assessments (see Section 9.2.3.1).

3.2.5.3 Linear Phthalates

The alcohols used for linear phthalates are generally mixtures produced by hydroformylation of linear α-olefin fractions derived from ethylene. In practice, these alcohols contain between 50 and 80% straight chain components, the remainder being lightly branched.

The main linear phthalate used in Europe is based on C_9–C_{11} alcohol mixtures (designated 911P or L911P or di (nonyl, undecyl) phthalate).

In the USA a wider range of linear phthalates are available, due to pricing being closer to the commodity branched chain phthalates. Therefore, the L711P product, based on a 70% linear $C_7/C_9/C_{11}$ alcohol, has been established for some time.

In addition, mainly linear phthalates based on C_9 (dinonyl phthalate) and C_{11} (diundecyl phthalate) are available. A mean chain length of 11 is the practical upper limit for linear phthalate plasticisers, due to increased melting points for phthalates with higher chain length.

3.2.5.4 Links between Structure and Performance of Phthalate Plasticisers

The dependence of phthalate properties and performance on alkyl carbon number and degree of branching is well known and follows the following general rules.

Increasing the carbon number gives:

- Lower density, higher viscosity, and, for linear phthalates, higher melting point.
- Lower volatility, slower migration, lower extraction by polar media.
- Slower PVC processing requiring higher temperatures to compensate.
- Reduced softening efficiency at normal temperature, but improved cold flex properties.

Reduced branching gives:

- Lower viscosity.
- Tendency to freeze to give waxy solids, rather than progressively increasing in viscosity as temperature is lowered.
- Reduced volatility, but faster migration.
- Slightly lowered compatibility with PVC in the presence of secondary plasticisers.

- Slightly improved softening efficiency at normal temperatures and significantly better cold flex properties.
- Better thermooxidative stability and photostability.
- Reduced resistance to chemical hydrolysis and biodegradation.

3.2.5.5 Butylbenzyl Phthalate (BBP)

This is by far the most important product in the benzyl phthalates category and is produced by the reaction between the sodium salt of monobutyl phthalate and benzyl chloride (**Figure 3.3**).

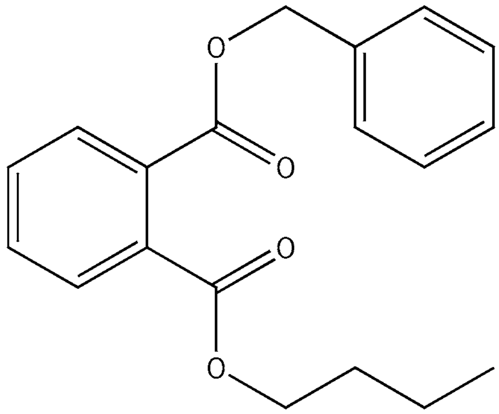


Figure 3.3 Butylbenzyl phthalate

Due to its chemical asymmetry, it is a highly solvating plasticiser for PVC and is the reference standard for fast fusion. Its major use is in cushion vinyl flooring and sealing compounds. BBP is subject to EU risk assessment (see Section 9.2.3.1).

3.2.5.6 Phthalate Alternatives

Several alternatives to phthalate esters have been promoted, primarily due to the considerable media, legislative, and scientific attention given to phthalates. Most suggested alternatives already have a niche use in specific PVC-P applications, but have still to undergo extensive data generation for risk assessments.

Alkyl sulfonic phenyl esters (Mesamoll, Lanxess Deutschland GmbH) have been proposed to replace DEHP/DINP in toys, coated fabrics, sheet, film, and so on. They have very good processing characteristics with high hydrolysis resistance in performance.

Benzoate esters have already been used for some time, particularly in the USA. Dipropylene glycol dibenzoate is a highly solvating plasticiser used as an alternative to BBP in flooring. New blends have been introduced for plastisols also to replace DINP. The replacement of DBP is also possible.

Di-isononyl-cyclohexane-1,2-dicarboxylate (Hexamoll, DINCH, BASF AG) has been developed for so-called sensitive markets, covering toys, medical devices and food contact applications. Advantageous toxicological profiles, in comparison to some phthalates have been identified.

Citrate-based esters, particularly acetyl tri-*n*-butyl citrate, although much more expensive, have extensive specialist use in medical and food packaging films (US Food and Drug Administration, BgVV/BfR (German Federal Institute for Risk Assessment) approval). They have also been proposed as an alternative to DINP for toys, and so on, and to DEHP for medical devices. Additional esters are tri-*n*-butyl citrate, acetyl tri-*n*-hexyl citrate, and *n*-butyryl tri-*n*-hexyl citrate. Citrates are generally perceived as being low-risk products from the health, safety, and environmental viewpoints.

3.2.5.7 Trimellitate Esters

Trimellitates are produced by esterification of alcohols (ranging from C_7 to C_{10}) with trimellitic anhydride (TMA). TMA is similar in structure to phthalate anhydride with the exception of a third functionality on the aromatic ring (**Figure 3.4**). Consequently, esters are produced in the ratio of three moles of alcohol to one mole of anhydride.

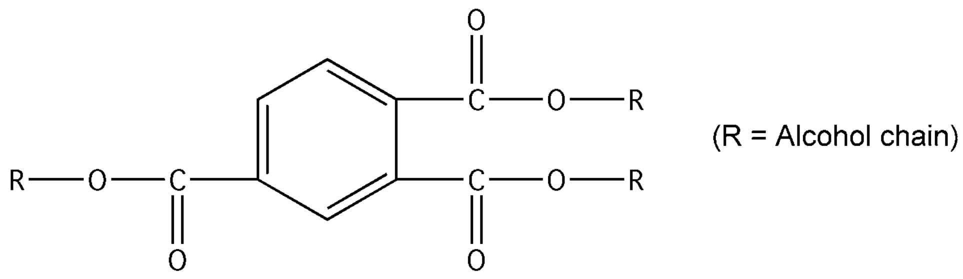


Figure 3.4 Trimellitate esters

Their higher molecular weight and bulkier molecular structure (relative to general purpose phthalates) give them lower volatility and generally greater extraction and migration resistance. Consequently, they are used in high-specification electrical cable and sheathing, and in automotive interior applications where windscreen fogging is important.

TEHTM (TOTM) is the most competitively priced and most widely used trimellitate. It is one of the very few plasticisers also accepted for use in medical devices, where its low migration favours its use in preference to DEHP. Examples are haemodialysis tubing and blood platelet storage containers.

L810TM has a particularly good combination of high- and low-temperature performance. Triisononyl trimellitate is also well established in the USA.

3.2.5.8 Aliphatic Esters

These esters of aliphatic dibasic acids have a similar structure to adipates, as shown in **Figure 3.5**.

Azelates are based on $(CH_2)_7$ and sebacates are based on $(CH_2)_8$. Both are based on natural product-derived acids (sebacic acid from castor oil), resulting in high and variable prices relative to adipates.

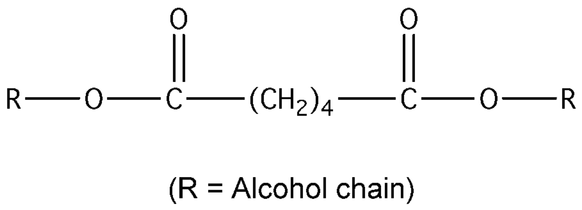


Figure 3.5 Aliphatic esters

Adipates are the most important plasticiser in this category with alcohols of similar chain length (C_8–C_{10} range) to those used in phthalate manufacture being esterified with adipic acid.

Adipates show some similar activity to phthalates but are more expensive. They have the benefit of very low viscosity and therefore are relevant for plastisols. Low-temperature flexibility is also good. However, they have higher volatility and higher migration rates. As a result, adipates are used in blends with phthalates to produce a compromise of properties.

DEHA (DOA) is the adipate used in greatest tonnage, particularly in PVC clingfilm in combination with non-migratory polyester plasticisers. DEHA is approved for food contact use within particular addition levels.

DINA and DIDA have limited compatibility in PVC and are primarily used as blending plasticisers.

The most important sebacate plasticiser is DOS which has the best low-temperature performance of any commercial plasticiser. It is also much less volatile (as expected) than DEHA. DIDS is also used. Sebacate and azelate esters have lower plasticising efficiency.

3.2.5.9 Phosphate Esters

Phosphate plasticisers have the structure shown in **Figure 3.6**.

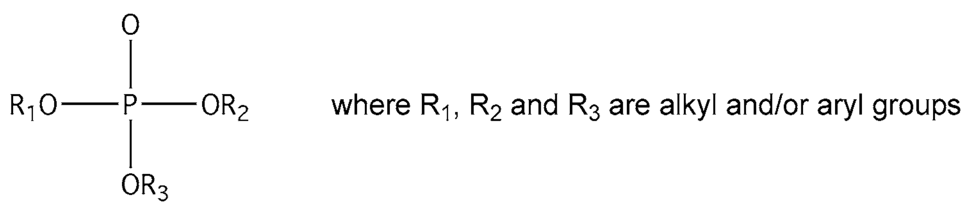


Figure 3.6 Phosphate esters

The great majority of production is of triaryl phosphates, particularly isopropylated. These are followed by the alkyl/aryl type in which R_1 and R_2 are alkyl groups and R_3 is phenyl.

The principal advantage of phosphate esters is their improved flame retardancy relative to phthalates. This is due to the formation of thermally stable pyro or polyphosphoric compounds after pyrolysis which forms a protective vitreous barrier.

The phosphates of isopropyl phenols/phenol mixtures are highly solvating plasticisers for PVC and confer more resistance to ignition and combustion than other phosphate esters.

The alkyl/aryl phosphate 2-ethylhexyldiphenyl phosphate has widespread use in flexible PVC applications. This is due to its combination of properties of plasticising efficiency, low-temperature performance, migration resistance, and fire retardancy.

The trialkyl phosphate, tris-(2-ethylhexyl) phosphate is recommended for good low-temperature resistance linked to good weathering and fire retardancy.

3.2.5.10 Secondary Plasticisers

Chlorinated paraffin plasticisers are produced by the controlled chlorination of straight chain paraffin fractions. The general formula is $C_nH_{2n+1}Cl$ where n is typically 14 to 17. These are called medium chain chlorinated paraffins (MCCP). Chlorine contents can range from 30 to 70%, but for PVC the most relevant grades contain 45 or 52% chlorine. Chlorinated paraffins have extensive use in other industries, such as metalworking and cutting fluids.

Chloroparaffins have insufficient compatibility for use as the sole plasticiser in most applications. Their use as secondary plasticisers is fairly extensive as they are significantly cheaper. They also have much greater resistance to ignition and combustion than general purpose plasticisers. Consequently, they can also be used to partially replace phosphate ester plasticisers. In some applications, an adverse effect on the thermal stability of PVC is a constraint on their use.

The use of MCCP in Europe is currently under investigation in accordance with the Existing Substance Regulations (EEC No. 793/93) (see Section 9.2.3.3).

Epoxy compounds used as PVC additives have a dual function. Firstly, their epoxy group content causes them to function as auxiliary heat stabilisers, enhancing the effectiveness of mixed metal-type stabilisers. Secondly, they have the type of structure that makes them effective plasticisers. They have limited compatibility with PVC and typical addition levels are <8 phr.

Epoxy stabilising plasticisers are of two types called epoxy oils and epoxy esters. Epoxy oils have high molecular weight and bulky structures which provide resistance to migration. Epoxidised soya bean oil (ESBO) is the most important in this group and is manufactured by epoxidation using hydrogen peroxide of refined soya bean oil. It has food contact approval (within certain limits) from various regulatory authorities. Oxirane oxygen content (epoxy level) is in the region of 6.5%.

Epoxy esters are derived from synthetic alcohols and natural product unsaturated acids. Octyl epoxy stearate (from oleic acid) is the most common product in this category. It has lower molecular weight and more linear structure than ESBO, which confers low viscosity and good low-temperature properties. Oxirane oxygen content is in the region of 4.5%, which theoretically means it is less effective than ESBO as a heat stabiliser but this is difficult to observe in practice.

3.2.5.11 Polymeric Plasticisers or Polyesters

Polyester plasticisers are typically saturated polycondensates of glycols with dibasic acids, most are typically based on propan-1,2-diol or butan-1,3-diol and adipic acid. Differing molecular weights are available to suit particular needs.

Polyester structures may be chain terminated by the inclusion of a monobasic acid or monohydric alcohol (2-ethylhexanol). Non-terminated polyesters contain acidic or hydroxy end groups which are beneficial in enhancing resistance to extraction by hydrocarbons. However, other performance aspects may be reduced.

An alternative form of polyester structure can be obtained by ring-opening and self-condensation of a lactone and some commercial polyesters are based on caprolactone with neopentyl glycol. These are low-melting-point paste solids that show processing advantages over more conventional polyesters.

For applications requiring good extraction resistance and heat ageing, polymeric esters are used. They are normally described as non-migratory plasticisers due to their resistance to extraction by hydrocarbon oils, vegetable oils, and solvents and their reduced migration into polymers (particularly non-polar types). A major application is for food contact approved use in PVC clingfilm.

Other applications exploiting the migration resistance of polyesters are high-temperature electrical tape, coated fabrics, solvent-resistant cable hose and tubing, and pond and tank liners.

These materials are relatively expensive. In addition, their lower compatibility and high viscosity (of some grades) makes them more difficult to handle and process.

3.3 Impact Modifiers

Unmodified PVC-U has relatively poor impact strength at, and below, ambient temperatures and the inclusion of an impact modifier significantly improves its performance, in particular the notch sensitivity (sensitive to stress concentrations at the notch).

Impact modification is achieved by incorporating rubber domains into the polymer matrix, which, of course, must fit well within the matrix. Good dispersion and adhesion to the PVC matrix is essential.

The mechanism for impact improvement depends on the rubber component being able to absorb impact energy without the propagation of crazes and cracks.

Examples of the different generic types of impact modifier that can be added to PVC formulations are:

- Methacrylate–butadiene–styrene (MBS) terpolymer
- Acrylate–polymethacrylate copolymer (acrylic)
- Chlorinated polyethylene (CPE)
- Ethylene–vinyl acetate copolymer (EVA)
- Acrylonitrile–butadiene–styrene terpolymer (ABS)

Addition levels are typically 5–12 phr and the incorporation of impact modifiers can influence gelation and melt viscosity. Having limited compatibility with PVC, it is believed that the impact improvement is achieved via the interruption of the homogeneous morphology into a heterogeneous structure.

Acrylic modifiers have good processing characteristics linked to reduced die swell and good outdoor weathering stability. Their use in window profile and siding applications is well documented. Based on a crosslinked butylacrylate elastomer core and polymethacrylate shell technology, produced by emulsion polymerisation, the elastic core of the modifier has a hard shell to keep the product free flowing and couple the modifier to the PVC matrix. Much work has been carried out covering various aspects of their processing and performance characteristics. Important criteria are:

- Influence on weld strength in window frame manufacture.
- The relationship with gelation level on impact strength and morphology.
- The effect on impact strength of varying crosslinking levels in the rubber component of the impact modifier.
- Relationships between melt flow and mechanical properties.

New and updated acrylic impact modifier grades are regularly being developed to meet demands for higher output with a broader processing window.

CPE impact modifiers contain around 35% chlorine and are thermoplastic in nature. With a similar melting point to PVC, they initially form a network structure which changes to a particulate structure on processing. They also have good processability and excellent weathering performance - consequently they are also used for window profiles. CPE also acts as an internal lubricant providing improved flow characteristics to the PVC polymer melt. The incorporation of relatively small amounts has been shown to improve the strength and toughness of PVC pipes.

MBS impact modifiers also depend on core shell technology, with a polybutadiene/styrene core and a polymethyl methacrylate/styrene shell. They have a wide use in PVC applications, particularly for clear packaging (bottles, film, and sheet), as the refractive indices of PVC and the modifier are similar. They are also used in pipes and fittings. They are particularly efficient for low-temperature impact improvement but are not suitable for outdoor applications.

EVA copolymers mixed with PVC are also available for impact modification with good weathering resistance. They also generally confer a lubricating action requiring modification to the lubricating system of the formulation.

Specific ABS terpolymer modifiers also process well in clear applications giving low crease whitening and excellent chemical resistance. The heat distortion temperature of ABS-modified compounds can be higher in comparison to MBS-modified componds. They are not suitable for outdoor applications.

Impact performance can be measured by different techniques (see Section 4.3.4):

- Falling weight impact – consists of a dart-shaped mass, of a specific weight, falling from a standard height onto the extruded material. The temperature at which this test is carried out is usually –10 °C. The results depend on formulation, gelation level, and profile shape.
- Tensile impact – this is a high-speed tensile test using a pendulum weight. This test is linked to the intrinsic material formulation.
- Notched impact – pendulum weight impacter. ISO 180 [14], ASTM D 256 (Izod) [15], and ISO 179-1 (single V-notch Charpy and double V-notch Charpy) [16].

It is also important to recognise the way a specimen breaks. Ductile fracture (hinge break) shows stretching or elongation until failure. There is also whitening around the broken area. Brittle fracture (complete break) occurs with little deformation happening during failure. The difference can be due to temperature, where brittle fracture occurs at lower temperatures. Alternatively, brittle fracture can also occur if insufficient impact modifier has been used or dispersion is poor.

3.4 Process Aids

Process aids are added primarily to PVC-U (including foam) to improve fusion characteristics and melt flow during the processing stage. They can also be added to improve the processability of semi-rigid PVC formulations. Addition levels are typically from 1 to 6 phr with resultant improvements in output and surface finish. Transparency can also be improved in clear formulations. Chemically, these products are either acrylic polymers (methyl methacrylate or acrylate) or styrenic copolymers (containing methacrylate). The molecular weight and T_g control their efficiency. Having high compatibility with PVC, these high-molecular-weight materials entangle the shorter PVC chains and transfer the shear generated during processing to promote fusion. The effects of processing aids can be summarised as follows:

- Melt homogeneity improvement by promoting the breakdown of PVC particles and ensuring that a homogeneous melt is obtained. Good melt homogeneity is essential for achieving good physical properties and surface finish.

- Melt strength improvement as a result of their compatibility. Good melt strength is essential for blow moulding, high-speed take off from calenders or extrusion lines, and foam applications.

- Melt extensibility and elasticity improvements to permit wider operating conditions and higher outputs.

Processing aids with a lubricating effect are made through variation of the chemical composition to give a less compatible material. This results in little effect on PVC gelation but helps metal release and reduces plate-out.

3.5 Lubricants

Lubricants classically function in two ways: (1) externally to reduce friction between the polymer melt and hot metal surfaces during processing; and (2) internally to reduce frictional forces within the polymer matrix and, in so doing, lower the effective viscosity. External lubricants, by definition, have poor compatibility with PVC and migrate to the surface to create metal release. Internal lubricants are more compatible, have high polarity, and are therefore more soluble in PVC. Both types are essential for processing of PVC-U formulations, particularly taking account of the differing shear conditions resulting from extrusion, calendering, or injection moulding. In practice, most lubricants have both external and internal characteristics, but vary in the ratio of one to the other in the way they perform. However, the correct balance and type of internal to external and addition level are crucial due to the influence on gelation level, plate-out of incompatible materials in the die and calibration equipment, and physical properties.

The main chemical classes that make up lubricants are all waxes or soaps and are as follows:

- Amide wax – ethylene bisstearamide (EBS) has a balance of internal and external behaviour.

- Hydrocarbons, which can be split up as:
    - Paraffin waxes – linear alkanes with chain lengths varying from C_{20} to C_{50} which are very external in nature. The lower molecular weights show some internal character.
    - Polyethylenes (PE) with molecular weights ranging from 500 to 1000 (C_{35}–C_{70}) with linear or branched molecular chains, differing from the paraffin waxes in end groups.
    - Oxidised polyethylene waxes which result from oxidation of PE waxes causing breaks in the molecular chains and the formation of acid groups. They are very external in nature because of excellent metal release characteristics.
- Esters of many types such as:
    - Glycerol esters such as the liquid glycerol monooleate (GMO) and the solid glycerol monostearate (GMS) which are mostly internal functioning with GMS having some external properties.
    - Montan esters, obtained from brown coal, and consisting of montanic acid esters with long chain aliphatic alcohols. Chain length is in the region C_{28}–C_{34} with a broad range of lubricant functionality and high compatibility. Particular use is in profile and calendered formulations.
- Fatty acids such as stearic acid (can be a mixture of C_{16} and C_{18}) or hydroxy stearic acid. External lubricating behaviour with some internal lubrication.
- Metallic soaps, in particular calcium stearate, which acts as an internal lubricant by improving flow but increases internal shear and mould release. Also acts as an acid scavenger. It is a very commonly used lubricant.

Assessment of lubrication performance, on a processing machine, is carried out taking account of energy consumption (motor load, screw speed, and output), surface finish, melt flow, and physical properties. In the laboratory, gelation measurement based on time and melt viscosity is carried out using a torque rheometer or mill. This takes account of the internal lubrication effect (lowering of melt viscosity with no significant change on fusion or mill stick times) and external lubrication (little influence on melt viscosity but does significantly influence fusion or mill stick times).

The addition level of internal lubricants can be in the region 0.3–1.0 phr, whereas external lubricants are added at much lower levels, e.g., 0.05–0.3 phr.

For extrusion and injection moulding of PVC-U formulations, it has become common practice to use one-packs, comprising of the stabiliser and a balanced lubrication package, which are formulated to match the particular processing and end-use performance requirements.

In PVC-P applications, the plasticiser acts as an internal lubricant and external lubricants can be added to increase output, and so on. Excessive levels or incorrect choice can cause problems with post-treatment, e.g., printing or blooming on ageing.

3.6 Fillers

For most PVC-U and PVC-P applications, fillers are added primarily to reduce formulation cost, but some are also used to enhance properties and performance. There is a balance between the cost

benefits and any acceptable deterioration in physical properties that could result. The density of the final product will increase, of course, at higher filler levels.

Another important aspect is the influence on processing with respect to output, plate-out, and surface finish.

3.6.1 Calcium Carbonate

Calcium carbonate (also known as chalk) is the most commonly used filler for PVC. This material is mined as calcite mineral, milled, and classified to a particular particle size range. Surface treatment with stearic acid can be carried out with the stearic acid converting to calcium stearate in the process. This results in improved processing and dispersion (mechanical properties) and improved moisture resistance giving better electrical properties.

Synthetically precipitated calcium carbonates (PCC) are manufactured from the natural material by calcination, hydration, recarbonation, and precipitation from solution to give a fine particle size suitable for use in high-performance areas. Surface treatment is also normal.

Particle size is important and, for some applications requiring good weathering and impact performance (window profiles), the ultrafine milled, high whiteness, natural version is normally used. Coated ultrafine and precipitated calcium carbonates are also claimed to have a positive effect on impact properties in impact-modified formulations. The abrasive wear of calcium carbonate on melt processing equipment is not considered significant but increases with increasing levels.

Chalk fillers also have extensive use in PVC-P applications where the particle size restriction is not so essential. Higher addition levels can also be accommodated. They are extensively used in wire and cable where they assist, in combination with other additives, to reduce HCl generation in a fire situation. PVC plastisols generally have high filler loadings for cost reasons but need to retain the appropriate viscosity and rheology for the processing technique. Specific grades of calcium carbonate are available for these applications.

3.6.2 Other Fillers

Depending on the geographical area, ground marble fillers, some with surface treatment, are used for PVC-U and PVC-P applications.

Ground dolomite (calcium magnesium carbonate) and limestone fillers are also used.

Talc has been used in calendered PVC compounds to increase melt cohesion and modulus of the finished material.

Calcined kaolin clays can be used in footwear (improved abrasion resistance) and cable (improved insulation properties). Kaolin has a use in plastisol formulations giving good rheological control.

3.7 Flame Retardants (FR) and Smoke Suppressants (SS)

PVC-U formulations have low flammability due to their chlorine content. This is because the chlorinated radicals react with highly reactive radicals ($HO^{\bullet}$ and $H^{\bullet}$) to give less reactive radicals which decrease the kinetics of the combustion.

The addition of plasticiser in PVC-P formulations necessitates the use of FR and SS additives for those applications where flame retardancy is required. These additives are known as functional fillers and a correct balance is necessary to achieve all the end-use specification requirements. They are predominately used in cable, conveyer belting, and roofing membrane formulations to give resistance to fire initiation and propagation. It is also important to reduce dripping in a fire situation and that as little smoke (including acid fumes) as possible is generated.

Antimony trioxide (Sb_2O_3) has been used extensively, usually in combination with phosphate ester plasticisers, giving excellent fire performance without too much influence on mechanical properties. The FR mechanism is activated by the formation of volatile antimony trichloride ($SbCl_3$) and antimony oxychloride (SbOCl) which act as radical scavengers and flame poisons. However, antimony trioxide is a suspected carcinogen and work is ongoing to replace or reduce the levels used. In addition, increased smoke evolution is seen to be a negative aspect of the use of this material.

The most recent work has involved reducing smoke emissions, a previous weakness of fire retardant PVC-P formulations. Aluminium trihydrate and magnesium hydroxide have been shown to create low smoke levels and much reduced toxic gas emission. The activity of these materials is a function of the vaporisation of their water of hydration.

Zinc borate is also an effective SS (particularly in combination with phosphate ester plasticisers) and may replace antimony trioxide. In addition to the Lewis acid effect of $ZnCl_3$ in promoting crosslinking and char formation, zinc borate may act as a low-melting glass which together with mineral hydrates and metal oxides can provide a protective barrier to impede burning.

The combination of ammonium octamolybdate and zinc stannate is also beneficial from the flame retardancy and smoke suppression aspects.

The use of a mineral based on magnesium/calcium carbonate/hydroxide has also been promoted.

It should be noted that the use of functional fillers can cause a dramatic deterioration in physical properties and processability at the addition levels necessary to achieve the requirements of flame retardancy and smoke suppression.

The use of impact modifiers and process aids in PVC-U construction products will detract from flame retardancy. Under upcoming EC standards, based on a standardised flame test method, new Euroclasses (2000/147/EC) for reaction to fire for construction products, possibly including smoke performance, will be introduced (see Section 4.6.6). This may require the incorporation of low levels of FR and SS.

3.8 Pigments

Pigments for PVC must be thermally and light stable, have good dispersability, and be compatible within the formulation. They may also need to satisfy specific regulations covering the end use, e.g., food contact, toys, and so on. Inorganic pigments are the most common type.

3.8.1 Titanium Dioxide (TiO_2)

Titanium dioxide pigments are used to give ‘bright’ whiteness and opacity. They play a very significant part in PVC pigmentation.

The opacity of a pigmented material is a function of its surface reflectivity, the refractive index of the pigment relative to the binder system, and its light scattering power. The light scattering capability is a function of particle size and/or absorption of incident light. Rutile TiO_2 has a refractive index of 2.76 in relation to PVC at 1.54, indicating the reason for its use. TiO_2 can have two crystal structures, rutile and anastase. Rutile is used in plastic applications, due to higher refractive index, better light scattering efficiency, and superior UV absorption.

Production for plastics grades is normally via the chloride process where the chloride is generated prior to conversion to the oxide.

Commercial grades are based on multilayer inorganic materials over a TiO_2 core. The layers can be silica (SiO_2) and/or alumina (Al_2O_3) which act as a barrier between the core and the resin to minimise photocatalytic degradation of the polymer. Interaction between UV radiation, moisture, and an uncoated TiO_2 surface produces free radicals, which can then oxidise the resin binder by photocatalytic degradation. There may also be a surface treatment to improve dispersion and compatibility. A controlled particle size distribution is also necessary.

Grades are available with different undertones such as a blue clean white, more neutral, and cream. These characteristics can be expressed on the brightness L* and tone b* colour scales (see Section 4.7.3).

Another term used in relation to TiO_2 pigments is durability. This relates to the weathering performance and light stability. Poor durability can mean loss of surface gloss, chalking (physical loss of pigment, as the surface is degraded), colour change, and, in the extreme, mechanical breakdown.

As explained above, in the presence of oxygen and moisture, some of the UV energy absorbed will be converted to chemical energy in the form of reactive chemical radicals. These slowly attack the polymer at the exposed surface. This weathering process is observed when tiny pits form around the embedded pigment particles. Specific TiO_2 non-chalking grades are used in PVC-U applications in Europe and significantly contribute to outdoor weathering performance by delaying this process. Addition levels are in the region of 4.0 phr.

Lower cost, controlled chalking grades of TiO_2 may be used in some PVC-U tin-stabilised applications (siding, fencing, and so on) in the USA. Addition level is significantly higher at around 10 phr. These grades operate by developing a level of chalking to maintain the specific whiteness and cleanliness of the surface over the weathering period.

Titanium dioxides for use in PVC plastisols must satisfy the need for good wettability and dispersion within a liquid medium. Paste storage stability (flocculation resistance) is also important. Aluminosilicates as pigment extenders to replace partially TiO_2 in plastisols are also available.

3.8.2 Other Inorganic Pigments

Lead (sulfo) chromate and lead chromate pigments give yellow coloration. Iron oxide is also used for yellow pigmentation. Lead (sulfo) chromate/molybdate gives an orange effect. Ultramarine blue (a sulfur-containing sodium aluminium silicate) is also used for toning or shading purposes.

Lead chromate pigments, traditionally used for pipe and cable applications, are linked with the phase-out of lead-based stabilisers. Special pigment systems based on organic or organic/inorganic combinations are available.

3.8.3 Organic Pigments

Organic pigments have high tinting strength combined with shade brilliance. They cover almost the entire colour spectrum. They are normally used in combination with inorganic pigments, particularly TiO_2, which give the opacity. Carbon black pigment may also be added at low levels as a shading component.

Typical chemical types are:

- Copper phthalocyanine (blue and green)
- Diazo condensation products (yellow, red, and brown)
- Diazo compounds, such as diarylides (yellow)
- Polycyclic compounds, such as dioxazine (violet), quinacridone (red and violet), and isoindolinone (yellow)
- Monoazo compounds, such as benzimidazolone (orange) and the azo salts (yellow)

Pigments are classified by a standardised colour index (CI) system, covering chemical type, application, hue, and physical forms. Hue indication is further classified into shade fields. The Society of Dyers and Colourists has developed and maintains this system (*www.sdc.org.uk*).

3.8.4 Pigment Concentrates and Masterbatches

The earliest type of pigment masterbatch took the form of dispersion in a plasticiser, which resulted in a paste for adding to PVC-P formulations.

More recent developments in pigmenting technology relate to ease of handling, low dust or dust free, colour concentrates, and masterbatches for PVC-U and PVC-P applications. Some are also suitable for dosing on line. Such technology covers dispersion in waxes, encapsulation (microbeads), and use of polymer-based carriers, including PVC. Concentrates and masterbatches can be supplied in a fully colour matched formulation.

3.9 Microbiocides

PVC-P materials, such as flooring and roofing material, can be prone to microbiological attack in humid or damp conditions. This can be due to micro-organisms, such as algae, bacteria, and fungi, using the plasticiser at the surface of the article as a nutrient carbon food source. This can lead to partial discoloration (pink colour or black specks) which can further cause a tacky surface where dirt can accumulate. Unpleasant odours may also be a consequence.

Biocides function by becoming active on the surface of the material to destroy micro-organisms. Constant microbiocide transfer to the surface is necessary at a rate sufficient to maintain an effective concentration at the surface. This is achieved by the process of diffusion of the plasticiser within the material, the organism also acting as a leaching solvent. Addition levels of the active ingredient are at the 400–2000 ppm level and the active biocide is normally supplied dispersed in a plasticiser or ESBO carrier.

Based on their thermal stability, compatibility, permanence, and broad-spectrum performance against different fungi, the most common microbiocides are 10,10′-oxybisphenoxyarsine (OBPA), 2-*n*-octylisothiazolin-3-one (OIT), and 4,5-dichloro-2-*n*-octylisothiazolin-3-one (DCOIT).

Various laboratory and accelerated outdoor test methods are available to determine the effectiveness of microbiocides in simulated performance situations covering weathering, water leaching, and resistance to soil burial. These are the areas where performance can be negatively influenced.

Some of the microbiocides mentioned previously also have some limited bacteriocidal activity but specific antibacterial additives may also be necessary to provide protection against bacterial infestation.

In Europe, the Biocidal Products Directive (BPD; 98/8/EC) could influence future use of particular microbiocides. The legislation aims to establish a positive list of biocide-active substances and a national authorisation of biocidal products containing active substances on the positive list. Each product must have a dossier that contains information on its biocidal efficacy, physical, chemical, and analytical properties, toxicological and ecotoxicological properties, environmental effects, and, where appropriate, any effects if brought into contact with food. The aim is to establish that the biocide is sufficiently efficacious without having unacceptable effects.

3.10 Blowing Agents

Blowing agents are solid materials that decompose to release gases at particular temperatures matching the appropriate melt viscosity necessary to retain a foam structure. There are two main types: (1) azodicarbonamide ($H_2NCON{=}NCONH_2$), which is exothermic in nature and decomposes at ~215 °C to give primarily nitrogen gas, but also NH_3, CO, and CO_2, and (2) sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$), which is endothermic and so absorbs heat as it releases carbon dioxide gas over a wide temperature range, which coincides with the processing temperature window of PVC-U foam. Various grades are available to suit particular applications and both have well-controlled particle size distribution.

The azo compounds, particularly suitable for PVC-P formulations for flooring, wall covering, leather cloth, and so on, must be specially formulated to include an activation agent, which catalyses the earlier decomposition, and so increases the total gas evolved at a lower temperature to suit the melt viscosity. Occupational exposure to azodicarbonamide dust should be avoided and granular forms improve handling. Plasticiser damped versions are also available. The foam formation depends on the gelation rate and the rheological characteristics of the gelled/fused plastisol, the rate of gas formation during the gelation phase, and the rate of heat transfer during the foaming of the plastisol. Food contact approval (sealing gaskets) for azodicarbonamide (ACDM) is being withdrawn by the EC. This is based on the presence (below 25 parts per billion – ppb) of semicarbazide, a decomposition product, of unclear toxicity. Essentially, this was based on the detection capability of new analytical techniques.

PVC-U foams incorporate sodium bicarbonate as the blowing agent (see Section 6.4.2.4) giving a fairly coarse cell structure in inward foaming formulations. ACDM is used in the PVC-U free foaming process, giving a fine cell structure, but a very thin surface skin.

The mechanical foaming of PVC-P pastes has been carried out for some time on the basis of air or gas being whisked into specially formulated plastisols, which are cured using microwave or infrared ovens. The lightweight material is used for sound deadening, gasket compounds, and domestic applications such as carpet backing.

3.11 Antioxidants and Light Stabilisers

Primary antioxidants, such as hindered phenols, operate as effective radical scavengers to protect the PVC material during processing and in use (preventing photodegradation). They react with peroxy radicals via hydrogen donation to prevent hydrogen abstraction from the polymer backbone. Phosphites and esters of 3,3-thiodipropionic acid are also used as secondary antioxidants to extend the efficiency of the primary antioxidant by reduction of oxidation intermediates. These can be added at very low levels at the polymerisation stage and in combination with the stabilising package.

Light stabilisers also prevent photodegradation. UV absorbers, such as hydroxybenzophenone or hydroxyphenyl triazole types, operate by absorbing and dissipating UV radiation as thermal energy prior to potential degradation of the polymer. No permanent chemical change occurs, so activity is retained. Addition levels and sufficient polymer thickness are critical to ensure enough absorption takes place to retard effectively photodegradation.

Hindered amine light stabilisers (HALS) are also used. They are based on derivatives of 2,2,6,6-tetramethylpiperidine and act to inhibit polymer degradation by slowing down the photochemically initiated degradation reactions. Significant stabilisation is achieved at relatively low addition levels. A cyclic process operates whereby the HALS are regenerated during the stabilisation process.

Essentially, UV radiation, temperature, and moisture can initiate material degradation (see Section 4.11.2).

3.12 Other PVC-P Additives

3.12.1 Antistatic Agents

Antistatic agents are added to PVC formulations to prevent the build-up of static electrical charges, which could lead to an electric shock or a spark causing a fire in a dusty or flammable area. Dust build-up is also reduced.

By adding an antistatic agent (complex non-ionic or cationic materials) at 5–12 phr, the surface resistivity is reduced, along with a reduction in static charge accumulation. These agents function by the formation of an antistatic layer on the surface, which by attraction of moisture and in combination with the antistatic agent itself conducts away charges.

The addition of antistatic agents can have a detrimental effect on processing, particularly heat stability, and this aspect needs to be taken into account.

An alternative method of achieving antistatic performance, although not so permanent, is to apply a coating after fabrication.

3.12.2 Viscosity and Rheology Modifiers

PVC plastisols or pastes should have a viscosity and rheology suitable for the manufacturing process, in addition to handling and storage requirements. Paste PVC resins (or blends of resins) are designed to satisfy a particular rheology profile, but sometimes the addition of a viscosity depressant is necessary. This would result in a lower and more uniform viscosity to allow easier processing, permit higher filler

levels, and eliminate the use of volatile solvents for controlling viscosity. Chemically, the products are similar to those used as antistatic agents with addition levels in the range 2.0–4.0 phr.

Rheology control additives can be added to give shear thinning rheology behaviour. At low shear rates, it is essential that the plastisol be highly viscous to prevent settlement during storage, sag after application, or penetration of a textile substrate. During application, at higher shear rates, viscosity should be as low as possible for easy application and to give good flow and levelling for a smooth even film. This behaviour may be obtained by a combination of different PVC resins with different rheological behaviours to achieve the desired rheology profile. Fumed silicas are typically used to give an overall thickening effect which leads to good anti-sag and anti-settling performance. Calcium sulfonate gels are also available for this purpose with the advantage of not influencing the viscosity at high shear.

3.12.3 Bonding Agents/Adhesion Promoters

PVC plastisols spread onto industrial fabrics based on polyester or polyamide fibres require the addition of a chemical bonding agent to improve the interfacial adhesion. Based on aromatic polyisocyanurates dispersed in a plasticiser they function by reacting with the polar groups in the synthetic fibre to give strong chemical bonding at the interface of the fabric and PVC. These materials are highly compatible with the plastisol but also reactive and the plastisol formulation has to take this into account in relation to plastisol viscosity build-up on standing. Typical areas of use are truck tarpaulins, air-supported coated fabric structures, and protective clothing. Typical addition levels are 3–5% of the total plastisol formulation.

References

1. M.H. Fisch and R. Bacaloglu in *Proceedings of PVC 99 Conference*, Brighton, UK, 1999, p.350.

2. M.T.J. Mellor and H.B. Harvey in *Proceedings of PVC 99 Conference*, Brighton, UK, 1999, p.341.

3. L. Ramos de Valle and M. Gilbert, *Plastics and Rubber and Composites Processing and Applications*, 1990, **13**, 151.

4. L. Ramos de Valle and M. Gilbert, *Plastics and Rubber and Composites Processing and Applications*, 1991, **15**, 207.

5. J.T. van Oosterhout and M. Gilbert, *Polymer*, 2003, **44**, 8081.

6. J.K. Sears and J.R. Darby, *The Technology of Plasticisers*, Wiley, New York, NY, USA, 1982.

7. A. Kirkpatrick, *Journal of Applied Physics*, 1940, **11**, 255.

8. F.W. Clark, *Chemistry and Industry*, 1941, **60**, 225.

9. R. Houwink in *Proceedings of the XI International Congress on Pure and Applied Chemistry*, London, UK, 1947, p.575.

10. A.K. Doolittle in *Plasticiser Technology, Volume 1*, Reinhold, New York, NY, USA, 1965, Chapter 1.

11. T.C. Moorshead in *Advances in PVC Compounding and Processing*, Ed., M Kaufman, Maclaren and Sons, London, UK, 1962.

12. T.G. Fox, Jr., and P.J. Flory, *Journal of Applied Physics*, 1950, **21**, 581.

13. A.S. Wilson, *Plasticisers – Selection, Applications and Implications*, Rapra Review Report No.88, Shrewsbury, UK, 1996, **8**, 4.

14. ISO 180, *Plastics - Determination of Izod Impact Strength*, 2000.

15. ASTM D256, *Standard Test Methods for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics*, 2005.

16. ISO 179-1, *Plastics - Determination of Charpy Impact Properties - Part 1: Non-Instrumented Impact Test*, 2000.

4 Testing and Properties

The mechanical and thermal properties of polyvinylchloride (PVC) are dependent on:

- The K value (molecular weight) of the PVC resin used.
- The various formulation additives appropriate to the end-use application.

For the purposes of this book, the comparison will be restricted to unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U), impact-modified PVC-U, plasticised-PVC (PVC-P), chlorinated PVC (PVC-C), and PVC-U foam (where applicable).

Information for this chapter has been obtained primarily from the Rapra Plastics Design Guide [1], MatWeb, the materials information source (*www.matweb.com*), and Hydro Polymers (*www2.hydro.com/HPS*).

4.1 Density

The typical density of PVC-U materials is 1350–1420 kg/m^3, which is higher than other thermoplastics, due to the chlorine content. Polyethylene (PE), polypropylene (PP), polystyrene (PS), and acrylonitrile–butadiene–styrene (ABS) have densities in the region of 900–1050 kg/m^3. The density is relatively unaffected by the molecular weight of the resin. Polyethylene terephthalate (PET) has a similar density to PVC.

PVC-P can have a density range of 1350–1700 kg/m^3, this wider range due to the influence of plasticiser content and other additives (particularly fillers).

PVC-C has a higher density, 1470–1520 kg/m^3, due to the higher chlorine content.

PVC-U foam density can vary, but is in the region of 700 kg/m^3.

4.2 Water Absorption

On the basis of ASTM D570 [2], water absorption for unmodified PVC-U is 0.1%. For impact-modified rigid and plasticised PVC, the water absorption can be 0.1–0.4%. This is somewhat higher than that of polyolefins and PET (0.01–0.02%).

4.3 Mechanical Properties

Mechanical properties are inevitably important properties, because most end uses involve mechanical loading under a particular service conditions. PVC, like other thermoplastics, is a viscoelastic material and mechanical properties depend on time, temperature, and stress. The influence of operating environment generally must be considered. Typical mechanical properties are shown in **Table 4.1**.

Table 4.1 Mechanical properties						
Property	**Unit**	**PVC-U**	**Impact-modified PVC**	**PVC-P**	**PVC-U foam**	**PVC-C**
Hardness, Shore; ISO 868 [3]		83–84 (D)	80 (D)	60–90 (A)	40–70 (D)	
Ultimate tensile strength; DIN 53455 [4]	MPa	50–75	40–50	10–25	15	50–55
Break to elongation; DIN EN ISO 178 [5]	%	10–50	30–100	150–400	10–15	23–50
Flexural strength; DIN EN ISO 178 [5], DIN EN ISO527-1 [6], DIN EN ISO 257-2 [7], DIN EN ISO 604 [8]	MPa	70–90	70–80			
Modulus of elasticity (flexural modulus); DIN EN ISO 179-1 [9]	GPa	2.7	2.2–2.6		0.9–1.5	2.6
U-notch Charpy impact resistance; DIN 53453 [7] (20 °C)	kJ/m^2	2–5	5–20	No break		
Double V-notch Charpy impact resistance; (23 °C)	kJ/m^2		40–75			

4.3.1 Hardness

Hardness is defined as the resistance of a material to deformation, in particular permanent deformation, indentation, or scratching. It is a relative term and should not be confused with wear and abrasion resistance.

The hardness test is used for measuring the relative hardness of soft materials and is based on the penetration of a specific indentor forced into the material under specified conditions. Two types of durometer are used, differing in the shape and dimension of the indentor. No units are attributed to hardness numbers. Shore A hardness is used for relatively soft materials and Shore D hardness for harder materials. The plasticiser content and type influence Shore A hardness (see **Figure 4.1**).

The Rockwell hardness test (ISO 2039-2; [10]) may also be quoted for rigid PVC formulations. This measures the net increase in depth impression as the load on an indentor is increased from a fixed minor load to a major load and then returned to a minor load. Hardness numbers (without units), in increasing order of hardness, are R, M, and E scales for plastics. The higher the number in each scale, the harder the material. The different Rockwell hardness scales utilise different size steel balls and different loads. Rigid PVC has a Rockwell R hardness of 80–110 depending on the grade. This can be compared with PP at 90 R, polycarbonate (PC) at 124 R, ABS at 75–115 R, PS at 100 M, and PET at 196 M.

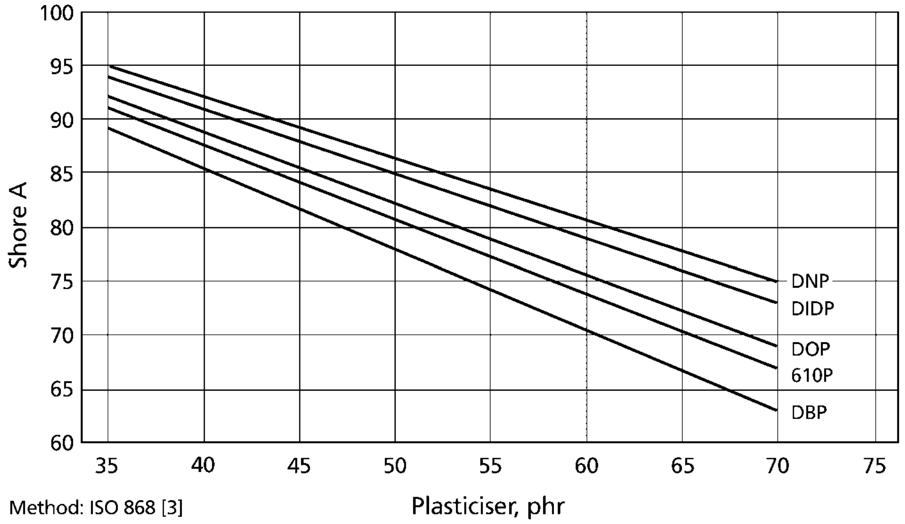


Figure 4.1 Influence of plasticiser content and type on Shore A hardness. (*Source: Hydro Polymers*) DNP: dinonyl phthalate, DIDP: diisodecyl phosphate, DOP: dioctyl phthalate, DBP: dibutyl phthalate

4.3.2 Tensile Properties

Tensile testing measures the ability of a material to withstand forces that tend to pull it apart and can determine to what extent the material stretches before breaking. Under laboratory conditions, tensile testing is carried out at a constant strain rate.

Once it has reached its high tensile strength, under a tensile load, rigid PVC flows in a plastic manner as the tensile stress is removed until plastic fracture occurs.

Tensile modulus (Young's modulus) is the force that is needed to elongate the material. For PVC-U, the tensile modulus is in the region of 3.5 GPa. The 100% modulus is the stress/strain ratio at 100% extension. In PVC-P formulations, this is influenced by plasticiser content and type (see **Figure 4.2**). **Figure 4.3** shows the relationship between 100% modulus and Shore A hardness.

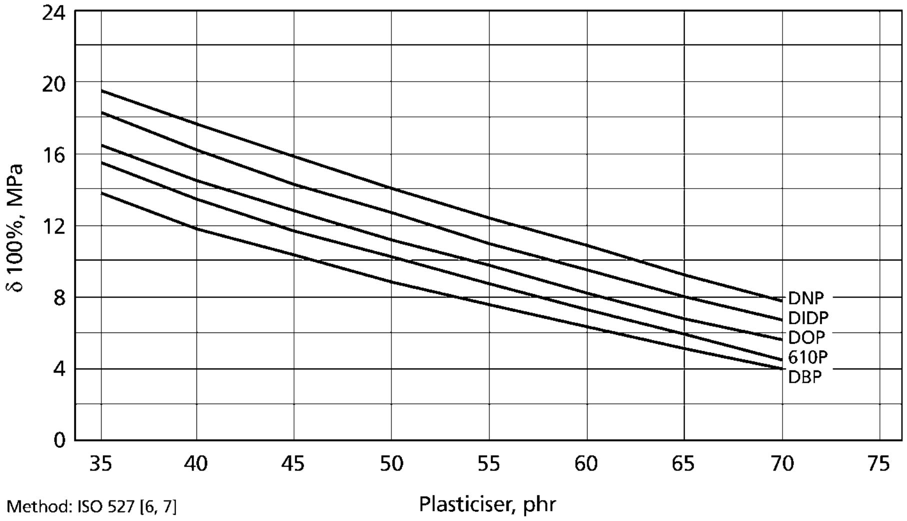


Figure 4.2 Influence of plasticiser content and type on modulus. (*Source: Hydro Polymers*)

Figure 4.3 Relationship between 100% modulus and Shore A hardness. (*Source: Hydro Polymers*)

4.3.3 Flexural Properties

Flexural property measurement measures the stress–strain behaviour in bending mode.

Flexural strength is the ability of a material to withstand bending forces applied perpendicular to its longitudinal axis. The stresses induced are a combination of compressive and tensile stresses.

Flexural modulus is a measure of the stiffness during the initial part of the bending process. **Figures 4.4 and 4.5** show the influence of temperature on flexural modulus. As expected, the influence of an impact modifier reduces flexural modulus. The superior flexural modulus at higher temperatures for PVC-C can also be seen. Increasing plasticiser content has the effect of reducing flexural modulus.

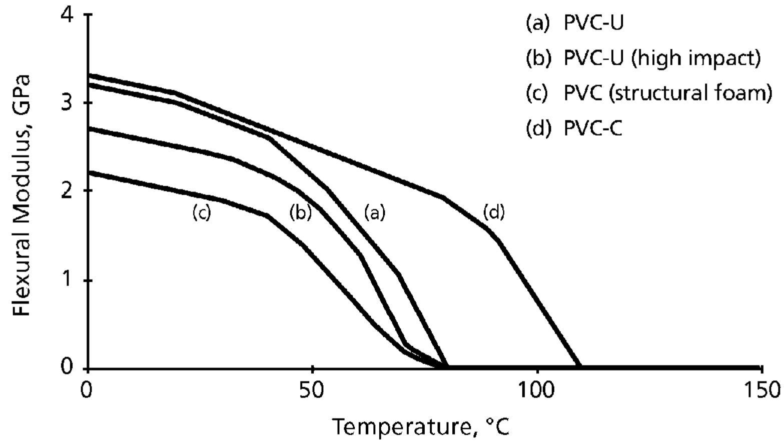


Figure 4.4 Influence of temperature on flexural modulus of various PVC-U formulations. (*Source: Rapra Plastics Design Guide*)

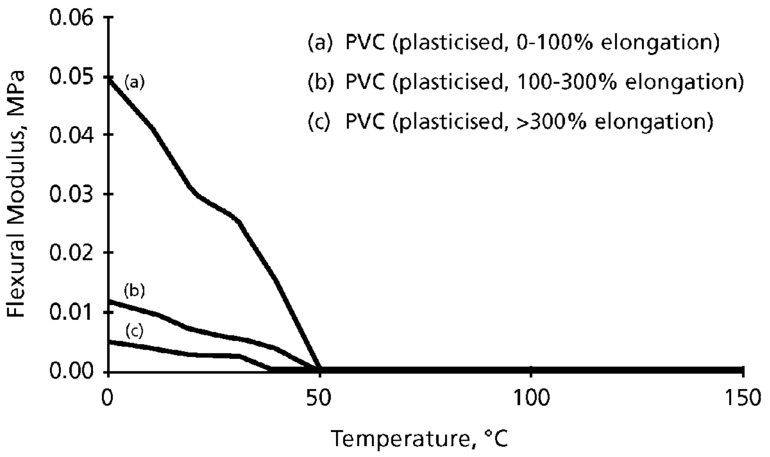


Figure 4.5 Influence of temperature on flexural modulus of PVC-P formulations with differing plasticiser content. (*Source: Rapra Plastics Design Guide*)

4.3.4 Impact Properties

Impact properties are related to material toughness, with toughness defined as the ability of PVC to absorb applied energy. Impact resistance is the ability to resist breaking under shock loading or being able to resist fracture under stress applied at high speed.

The use of a pendulum impact tester is common (set up for the different striker heads and sample supports appropriate for Charpy, Izod, or tensile impact test methods) with results expressed in terms of kinetic energy consumed by the pendulum in order to break the specimen. The test result is typically the average for 5 or 10 test specimens. Charpy or Izod tests are the most common tests with impact-modified PVC (see Section 3.3).

The specimen is usually notched with the shape of the notch usually being a V-cut, but may be a U-cut. Notch depth and geometry can vary depending on the particular test method. Notching provides a stress concentration area that promotes a failure. The mode of failure should also be noted in relation to brittle (fractures without yielding) and ductile (material yields in addition to cracking). Notched impact values of unmodified rigid PVC are significantly lower due to notch sensitivity. Impact strength is still good for unmodified PVC, providing surface notches are avoided.

Notched impact testing is used extensively as an economical quality control method to assess the notch sensitivity and impact toughness. The precision of the cutting of the notch is critical and special notch cutting equipment is available to give accurate and reproducible results.

The Izod impact test (ASTM D256 [11] and ISO 180 [12]), most common in the USA, utilises a pendulum which swings on its track and strikes a notched sample, secured at one end, on the thickness where the notch has been made. The energy lost, i.e., required to break the sample, is measured from the distance the pendulum swings after impact. The result is reported in energy lost per unit of specimen thickness (J/cm) for the ASTM method or energy lost per unit cross-sectional area at the notch (J/m^2) for the ISO method, at a standard temperature (normally 23 °C). The minimum requirement for window profile, in the USA and using this test method, is 5.3 kJ/m^2 when measured under the ISO method.

The single V-notch Charpy test (BS EN ISO 179 [13], 0.1 mm notch radius) has been common in the UK and relies on a horizontally mounted sample which is supported unclamped at both ends. The pendulum hammer (of fixed kinetic energy) strikes the sample on the thickness opposite from the notched side. The crack propagates on the opposite side from the impact. The minimum accepted figure for this method is 12 kJ/m^2 for window profile. Brittle failure is common with this test method. ISO 179-1 [44] (0.25 mm notch radius) single notch Charpy test can also be used.

In the double V-notched Charpy test (ISO 179-1), commonly used in Germany, and results quoted in **Table 4.1**, a V-notch is cut into opposite edges of the test sample with the notches precisely across from each other. The pendulum hits the face of the horizontal specimen between the notches, with crack propagation occurring at a right angle to the impact location. A ductile behaviour results when impact tested. The requirement is a minimum of 40 kJ/m^2 for window profile. This test is also used to check impact retention after artificial weathering/ageing.

The new European Standard for PVC-U window profiles, EN 12608 [15], has now imposed a new Charpy test, the ISO 179-2 [16] (0.25 mm single-V notch), to quantify the impact resistance. A double-V notch Charpy test, with a notch radius of 0.25 mm, is also specified in this standard for the assessment of the impact strength retention of extruded profile after artificial weathering. The test must be performed using instrumented equipment, on samples cut from a 4 mm thick, milled and pressed plate. This plate can be prepared from either shredded profile or directly from the dry blend or compound. For impact modified material, the minimum acceptable level is 20 kJ/m^2. There is considerable debate that such an impact test takes no account of processing variables or profile thickness effects.

4.3.5 Fatigue

Fatigue is defined as a decline in load-bearing capacity with time under load. Under conditions of constant load, this is termed static fatigue or creep rupture.

On average, the long-term allowable stress of a plastics product, operating at ambient temperatures, is no greater than one-fifth the ultimate short-term strength of the material. As the tensile strengths of unreinforced thermoplastics mainly fall within the range 20–70 MPa, this would suggest an ambient temperature range of 4–14 MPa for allowable or safe stresses. A useful body of data exists for thermoplastic piping materials, which have been subjected to long-term pressure testing at ambient and elevated temperatures. The safe allowable static tensile (hoop) stresses for 100,000 hours (11.4 years) service are shown in **Table 4.2**.

Table 4.2 Allowable stress (MPa)

	20 °C	40 °C	60 °C	80 °C
PVC-U	13.8	10.6	4.1	–
PVC-C	13.8	10.6	6.9	3.5
Impact-modified PVC	11.0	5.4	–	–
Medium-density PE	4.1	3.7	–	–
PP copolymer	5.5	3.1	1.6	0.6
PP homopolymer	6.9	4.1	2.2	1.2
Source: Rapra Plastics Design Guide				

Dynamic fatigue, which is the durability of plastics under cyclic loading, is generally less than under static loading, with amorphous thermoplastics, such as PVC-U, being particularly sensitive. Crack growth rates increase by a factor of 5,000 under cyclic loading with decreasing molecular weight (200,000–500,000).

4.4 Thermal Properties

Thermal properties are as important as mechanical properties, as PVC, like all thermoplastics, is very sensitive to temperature changes. The thermal properties typically determine use in low- and high-temperature applications. The mechanical, electrical, or chemical properties must be considered in relation to the temperatures at which the values are derived. Typical thermal properties are shown in **Table 4.3**.

Table 4.3 Thermal properties

Property	Unit	PVC-U	Impact-modified PVC	PVC-P	PVC-C
Thermal conductivity	10^{-3} W/m/K	1.9	2.5	1.3–1.6	
Heat deflection temperature at 1.8 MPa; ISO 75-1, ISO 75-2, ISO 75-3 [17-19]	°C	70–82	65–82	N/A	104–115
Vicat softening point; ISO 306 [20]	°C	75–82	73–82	N/A	106–115
Linear expansion coefficient	10^6 mm/mm/K	60–80	50–100	50–200	
Specific heat capacity	kJ/kg/K	0.9–1.0	0.9–1.2	1.2–2.0	
N/A: not available					

4.4.1 Thermal Conductivity

Thermal conductivity is the rate at which a material conducts heat energy through itself. It is the quantity of heat that passes through a unit of the material in a unit of time when the temperature difference of two faces is 1 K. It obviously influences the heating and cooling of the PVC melt during processing, as PVC tends to be an insulator.

For comparison, the thermal conductivity of PP is 0.22 and that of polytetrafluoroethylene is 0.25.

4.4.2 Heat Deflection Temperature

Heat deflection temperature (HDT) is a single-point measurement and does not give any indication of long-term heat resistance. It may be used to distinguish between those materials that are able to

sustain light loads at high temperatures. The definition of HDT is the temperature at which a standard test bar deflects 0.010 in under a stated load of 1.8 MPa, as shown in **Table 4.3**. Alternatively, the load can be 0.45 MPa which would yield a different HDT. Samples are supported at each end with the load applied on top of the sample vertically and midway between the supports. The heat transfer fluid is heated at a uniform rate. The HDT of a specimen can be affected by the presence of residual stresses, causing warpage due to stress relaxation. Compression moulded specimens are relatively stress free in comparison to injection moulded specimens.

Rigid PVC has a superior HDT at 1.8 MPa to PE and PP, but is inferior to the more expensive engineering thermoplastics such as ABS, polyamide (PA) 6, PA 66, and PC.

4.4.3 Vicat Softening Point

This is also a single-point measurement with the softening point taken as the temperature at which the specimen is penetrated to a depth of 1 mm under a specified load and a uniform rate of temperature rise. The indentor is a flat-ended needle type of 1 mm^2 circular cross-sectional area.

4.4.4 Linear Expansion Coefficient

PVC, like most plastics, generally expands when heated and contracts when cooled. The coefficient of linear thermal expansion is the fractional change in length as a result of a unit change in temperature of the material. The mean coefficient is commonly referenced to room temperature.

The coefficient of linear expansion of plastics is considerably higher than metals (as used in the manufacturing process) and this difference can lead to internal stresses and stress concentrations. Mould shrinkage of PVC-U materials is 0.4%.

4.4.5 Specific Heat Capacity

Specific heat is the quantity of heat energy necessary to raise the temperature of 1 kg of a material by 1 K. In addition to the values shown in **Table 4.3**, specific heat capacity increases to 1.6–1.9 kJ/kg/K for rigid closed-cell foam.

4.4.6 Cold Flex Temperature

Cold flex temperature is covered in Section 3.2.3.

Figure 4.6 shows the relationship between cold flex temperature and plasticiser type and content.

4.5 Electrical Properties

Typical electrical properties are shown in **Table 4.4**.

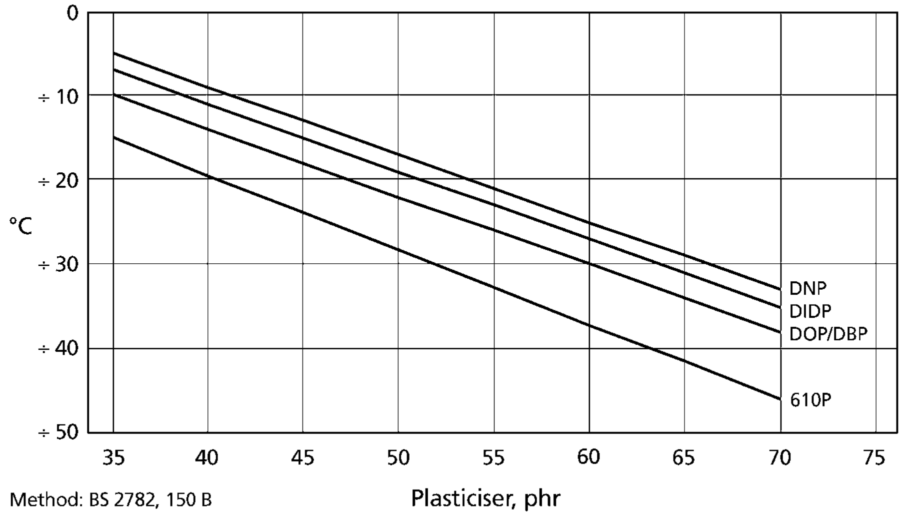


Figure 4.6 Relationship between cold flex temperature and plasticiser type and content. (*Source: Hydro Polymers*)

Table 4.4 Electrical properties

Property	Unit	Rigid PVC	Impact-modified PVC	PVC-P
Volume resistivity (at 23 °C); ASTM D257 [21]	Ω m	$>10^{14}$	$>10^{13}$	10^{9}–10^{13}
Dielectric constant (at 1 MHz, 23 °C); ASTM D150 [22]		2.8–3.1	2.8–3.1	3.3–4.5
Loss modulus (at 1 MHz, 23 °C); ASTM D150	$\tan \delta \times 10^{-4}$	60–190	60–190	40–1400
Breakdown voltage (dielectric strength)	MV/m	14–20	14–20	12–16
Arc resistance; ASTM D495 [23]	s	60–80		

4.5.1 Volume Resistivity

The volume resistivity or specific insulation resistance is the electrical resistance between opposite faces of a 1 cm cube of insulating material. It is the resistance to leakage through the body of the material. High volume resistivity is desirable in applications requiring superior insulation characteristics.

Volume resistivity falls rapidly with increasing plasticiser content and this is the reason for the wide range of values shown for plasticised PVC in **Table 4.4**.

4.5.2 Dielectric Constant or Relative Permittivity

The dielectric constant is defined as the ratio of the charge stored in an insulating material placed between two metallic plates to the charge that can be stored when the insulating material is replaced

by a vacuum. Thus the dielectric constant indicates the ability of an insulator to store electrical energy. Very low dielectric constants indicate low capacitance and so have good insulation.

4.5.3 Loss Modulus or Dissipation Factor

In all electrical applications, it is desirable to keep electrical losses to a minimum. The loss modulus or dissipation factor is a measure of electrical inefficiency of an insulating material and indicates the amount of energy (heat) dissipated by the insulating material when a voltage is applied. It is expressed as the ratio of the resistive (loss) component of the current to the capacitive component of current and is equal to the tangent of the loss angle. The value is temperature dependent with higher loss modulus at higher temperature. However, PVC is not suitable for high-frequency applications due to the high loss modulus.

4.5.4 Breakdown Voltage or Dielectric Strength

The breakdown voltage is a measure of the dielectric breakdown resistance under an applied voltage. The applied voltage, just before breakdown, is divided by the specimen thickness to give the value. The result thus depends on the thickness. In comparison to other plastics, the breakdown voltage of PVC is low with reference to low-density PE (LDPE), PP, and PS. However, PVC-P formulated for wire and cable insulation and sheathing applications is used to withstand relatively high voltage without breaking down. Similarly, high electrical resistivity makes it an excellent insulator.

4.5.5 Arc Resistance

Arc resistance is the ability of a material to resist the action of a high-voltage, low-current electrical arc close to the surface. This is usually stated in terms of time required to form electrically conductive material. Failure is characterised by carbonisation of the surface (tracking or burning). Rigid PVC has a low arc resistance in comparison to other plastics, such as PE, PP, and styrene acrylonitrile.

4.6 Fire Properties

PVC-U is inherently flame resistant due to its chlorine content. When flames are in contact with rigid PVC, it forms a protective charred layer which insulates the material below and excludes the oxygen necessary for combustion. This restricts the burning zone. The hydrogen chloride emitted also acts as a combustion inhibitor. Its peak rate of heat release is low by comparison with other materials and so does not release enough heat to support its own combustion. When the flame source is removed or extinguished, PVC-U no longer burns.

The data presented in **Table 4.5** relate to typical standard formulations and not to specifically formulated flame-retarded formulations.

4.6.1 Self-ignition Temperature

Self-ignition is ignition resulting from self-heating. For comparison with the values in **Table 4.5**, wood has a self-ignition temperature of 250 °C with PE and PP at 350 °C .

Table 4.5 Fire properties					
Property	**Unit**	**PVC-U**	**Impact-modified PVC**	**PVC-P**	**PVC-C**
Self-ignition temperature	°C	450	450		
Flame ignition temperature	°C	390	390	315	
Limiting oxygen index; ASTM D2863 [24]	%	50	45	25–35	55–75
Heat of combustion (NBS cone calorimeter); ASTM E1354 [25]	MJ/kg	20	20–25	20–30	
Peak heat release rate (NBS cone calorimeter); ASTM E1354	kW/m^2	90–110	100–150	~200	

4.6.2 Flame Ignition Temperature

The flame ignition (or auto-ignition) temperature is the minimum temperature required to initiate or to cause self-sustained combustion independent of the heat source. For comparison with PVC, wood has a flame ignition temperature of 250 °C with PE and PP at 340 °C.

Rigid PVC is very difficult to ignite using common ignition sources.

4.6.3 Limiting Oxygen Index (LOI)

The LOI test is probably the most well-known test for flammability. The test apparatus holds a small sample which is clamped vertically in a tube, in an atmosphere where the relative concentration of oxygen and nitrogen can be changed. The aim is to test the sample flammability with a small pilot flame to find the minimum oxygen concentration required to support marginal combustion in the sample. A high LOI is indicative of a less easily ignited and less flammable material. A material with an LOI of 21% will burn freely in air (which contains 21% oxygen). For comparison with PVC, wood has an LOI of 22% and PE and PP an LOI of 17%.

4.6.4 NBS Cone Calorimeter

Heat release is a key measurement required to assess the fire development of materials and products. Oxygen depletion calorimetry is now the recognised measurement method and is based on the empirical observation that heat released by burning materials is directly proportional to the quantity of oxygen used in the combustion process. A truncated conical heater is used to irradiate a test sample at a preset heat flux in the range 10–100 kW/m^2. A typical heat flux of 50 kW/m^2 would be used for more severe fire tests for building products.

The heat of combustion of wood is slightly lower when measured with this test (17 MJ/kg) with PE and PP significantly higher at 47 MJ/kg.

The peak rate of heat release for wood is higher at approximately 300 kW/m^2 with PE and PP significantly higher at around 1300 kW/m^2.

4.6.5 Smoke Evolution

One issue concerning PVC in a burning situation is the evolution of smoke. **Figure 4.7** shows a comparison between wood, PVC, and other rubber and plastic materials based on the ASTM D4100 test method [26] (Arapahoe Smoke), cancelled in 1997. This aspect can be improved with the use of smoke suppressant additives (see Section 3.7).

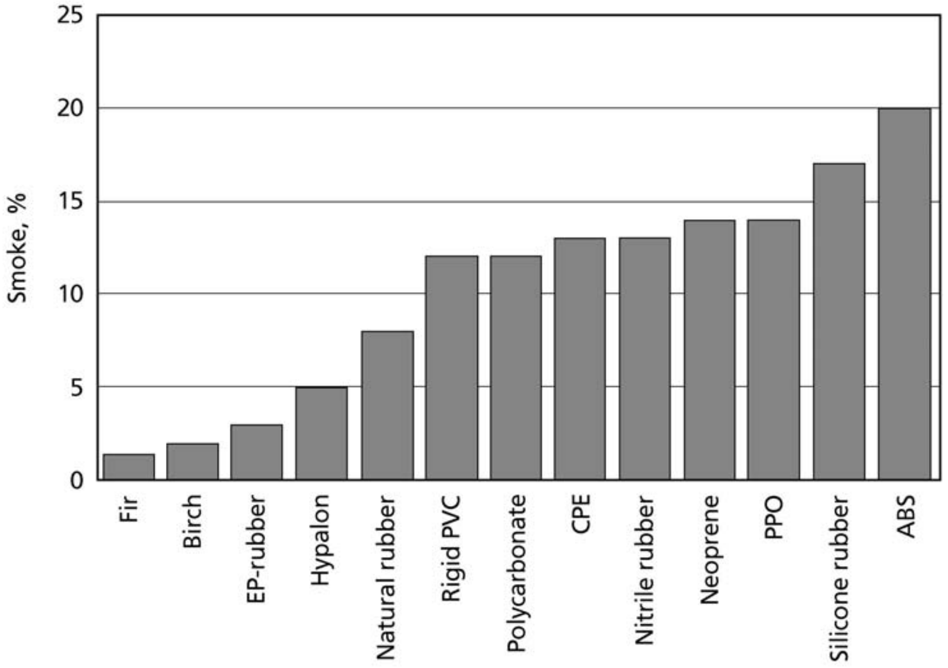


Figure 4.7 Comparison between wood, PVC, and other rubber and plastic materials based on the ASTM D4100 test method. (*Source: Hydro Polymers.*)

4.6.6 Fire Performance of PVC

Other important factors to be considered when evaluating fire performance are:

- Combustion toxicity – carbon monoxide (CO), an odourless, colourless, and narcotic gas, is produced in all fires and is universally recognised to present the greatest toxic threat in any fire situation. Low levels of this gas, which provides no warning of its presence, can cause death. PVC is no better or worse than other building materials in producing CO when burning. Other combustion products are CO_2 and HCl. Contrary to some perceptions, studies have shown that, as PVC is usually a small proportion of the mass of materials used in most buildings, HCl is produced in quantities too small to pose any unusual hazard. HCl is an irritant usually detected (painful effects on the eyes and breathing difficulties) at low concentrations and may produce the earliest effects of exposure to a fire. Studies have shown that micro-pollutants, such as dioxins, are produced in all accidental fires whether PVC is present or not [27].

- Smoke corrosion – gases produced during a typical fire can also be corrosive to metal structures and surfaces. There is no evidence that chemical reactivity from HCl gas or hydrochloric acid (when water is mixed with it) weakens steel structures [27]. However, the area of greater concern is the electronic reliability of digital equipment after a fire. Evaluations of the impact of smoke corrosivity on circuit boards have shown that PVC-P cables perform well when formulated for this application.

4.6.7 Fire Testing in the EU

There are currently a large number of different tests used across the EU for assessing fire performance. The variation and differences between the existing national tests has meant that performance comparisons of a product have been impossible. The national test methods are linked to the relevant national regulatory requirements.

The implementation of the Construction Products Directive (CPD) 89/106/EC, with its emphasis on European harmonised testing and CE marking, has resulted in extensive investigations into fire safety in the EU. In addition to reaction to fire, the CPD will also establish tests for resistance to fire and external fire spread (roofs).

The new European fire test standards will be/have been adopted directly into the national standards. Where there are conflicting existing national standards, e.g., surface spread of flame categorisation, these will be withdrawn or have their scope amended to restrict the use of products other than in construction use.

The following information is intended only to give the reader an indication of the current status on fire testing in the EU, particularly with reference to PVC products. It is not a complete overview and many issues are still under discussion.

4.6.7.1 Reaction to Fire

The Single Burning Item (SBI) Test

At the time of writing (March 2005), the SBI test method, EN 13823:2002 [28], has been introduced to harmonise across the EU, a test to determine the reaction to fire behaviour of building products (excluding floorings) when exposed to thermal attack by a single burning item. The test evaluates the potential contribution of a product to the development of a fire in a room corner near to the product. The SBI test is a room/corner test based on a propane fired sand-box burner. The specimen is mounted on a trolley that is positioned in a frame beneath an exhaust system. The reaction of the specimen to the burner is monitored instrumentally for heat and smoke release rates, and visually for physical characteristics. Fire growth rate (FIGRA) is calculated as the maximum value of the function of heat release rate *versus* time. Total heat release (THR) is also calculated. Smoke growth rate (SMOGRA) can also be determined.

This test method will be one of the methods used to categorise different performance classes for construction products, Euroclasses (2000/147/EC), for reaction to fire. Mandatory European standards are in the process of being prepared in various CEN committees to establish these Euroclasses classifications. These will eventually replace different national fire classifications. In all, seven classes, A1, A2, B, C, D, E, and F, have been established with all construction products (excluding flooring) being classified according to their performance in four tests. The F class is for performance not determined.

The SBI test is relevant for classes A2 (limited combustibility), B, C, and D (increasing fire growth and heat release rates from B through to D).

An additional classification will cover smoke release rates in one of three levels (s1 – none/little; s2 and s3 – substantial) for classes B, C, and D. E classification is assumed to generate smoke. The classification of flaming droplets/particles (d0 = none, d1, and d2) will apply to classes A2 through to D (and also E where d2 is assumed).

Radiant Panel Test for Floorings

This test, EN ISO 9239-1 [29], is designed to simulate the conditions experienced by a flooring during the early stages of a developing fire in an adjacent room. The test conditions simulate the thermal radiation levels likely to be present in this situation.

The apparatus consists of a test chamber containing the specimen mounted in a test frame on the bottom of the chamber. The radiant heat source (a porous refractory material) is heated and mounted at 30° to the horizontal at one end. A propane burner is used to ignite the test specimen, so that, when ignited, the flames generated will impinge across the specimen width. The critical heat flux at which the flame extinguishes, or alternatively after thirty minutes, is determined from the observed distances of flame spread.

A similar classification system exists for flooring products, with the classes being denoted by subscript 'fl'. This test is relevant for $A2_{fl}$, B_{fl}, C_{fl}, and D_{fl} (critical flux decreasing $A2_{fl}/B_{fl}$ through C_{fl} to D_{fl}).

Small Flame Test

The small flame ignitability test (EN ISO 11925-2 [30]) evaluates the ignitability of a product when exposed to a small flame and the test is relevant for classes B, C, D, and E and classes B_{fl}, C_{fl}, D_{fl}, and E_{fl}.

This test is the most relevant for PVC products. However, there is some concern that the good fire behaviour of PVC-U is not demonstrated in this test, particularly if smoke performance is considered. In addition, PVC, like all thermoplastics, can melt and drip leading to anomalous behaviour.

Reaction to Fire of Cables

For cables, the SBI test method is considered unsuitable for vertically mounted articles and probably the alternative test method, based on the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standard IEC 60332.3 flame propagation test [31-36], will be used. This takes into account vertically mounted cable bundles, with a propane gas burner as the ignition source located at the bottom section of the vertical stack. The classification system proposal comprises seven classes, based on FIGRA - flame spread, and heat release rate, A_{ca}, $B1_{ca}$, $B2_{ca}$, C_{ca}, D_{ca}, E_{ca}, and F_{ca}, with additional classes defined for production of smoke and burning droplets/particles. There has also been a proposal from the expert working group that acidity/corrosivity should be included as an additional classification parameter for most of the classes of reaction to fire performance for cables. The viewpoint here is that the release of acidity in the case of a fire is frequently considered a risk for the safety of people and goods. Acidity is widely considered at present the best possible approach to the toxicity requirements being developed in some European countries. There is an opposing viewpoint that acidity is an inadequate parameter for assessing the actual toxicity and takes no account of the non-acidic and toxic carbon monoxide gas release. For PVC-P use in cables, the final decision and outcome could be significant.

4.6.7.2 Resistance to Fire

Fire resistance means that structural elements such as walls and flooring withstand a fully developed fire and fulfil certain requirements. All construction products will be classified according to these requirements of performance characteristics, such as load-bearing capacity (R), integrity (E), and insulation (I). Additional characteristics may apply for relevant uses and these include thermal radiation (W), self-closing capability (C), smoke leakage (S), soot fire resistance (G), and fire protection ability (K). Mechanical action (M) will also be categorised for relevant elements.

The classification periods of fire resistance are declared in minutes from 15 to 360 in particular groupings. Relevant tests are covered under EN 1363, parts 1 and 2 [37, 38] and EN 1364 [39, 40] relating to different non-load-bearing elements.

The fire testing is primarily based on the simulation of the post-flashover fire and the smouldering fire. Other tests cover constant temperature attack, external fire exposure (e.g., emerging from a window), and very hot semi-natural fire. The test selection and fire exposure conditions will vary depending on the application.

Basically, the main test involves subjecting the item to a heated furnace environment for the desired period of time. The method of measuring the heating curve now utilises a plate thermocouple to standardise furnaces across Europe. Previously, a bead thermocouple was common. This has resulted in the tested items being subjected to more heat during the early stages of the test. This may result in more difficulties in passing some classifications.

4.7 Optical Properties

The optical properties of a material can be defined in terms of refractive index, clarity or transparency/haze, gloss, and colour. The refractive index (the amount of refraction that takes place, directly connected to the speed of light in a substance) of PVC is around 1.54. For comparison, that of PP is 1.49, that of water is 1.33, and that of glass is 1.51.

4.7.1 Transparency

PVC, both rigid and flexible, has good clarity when correctly formulated. This property is utilised in many different applications.

Flexible PVC film (cling wrap) is extensivly used for packaging of food products by allowing the customer to see the product but at the same time minimising the passage of water vapour into or out of the package. It also permits naturally occurring gases to escape from the package. An industrial use, requiring excellent clarity for flexible PVC, is hanging strip doors. Rigid PVC has uses in blister packs and blow moulded bottles.

It should also be noted that clear material can also have colour. These can vary between blue clear, water clear, and neutral clear.

4.7.2 Gloss Level

Surface gloss is linked with the ability of a surface to reflect more light in some directions than in other directions. Gloss is influenced by the refractive index, the angle of incident light, and the surface topography. Glossmeters are used, whereby gloss ratings are obtained by comparing the specular reflectance from the sample to that from a highly polished black glass standard (with a refractive index of 1.567). A 60° angle (or an 85° angle for low and medium gloss) is normally used to measure gloss level. EN ISO 2813:2000 [41] is the reference standard.

Gloss level can be influenced by the formulation ingredients but is most influenced by processing equipment conditions and techniques. See also Section 6.4.2.6.

4.7.3 Colour

The final colour of a PVC article depends, obviously, on the pigments used but heat stabilisers can have an influence with colour consistency and prevention of yellowing caused by degradation. Optical brighteners, which make materials whiter and brighter under ultraviolet (UV) light, are not generally used but may have specific uses.

The technical measurement of colour is usually based on the CIE L*a*b* colour sphere or colour space to aid the numerical classification of colour differences, providing a standard scale for comparison of colour values. The light source can be varied but, of course, must be standardised for a particular colour measurement. A typical illuminant type would be D65 which relates to neutral daylight.

L* gives the level of colour intensity. For opaque materials, L* = 0 (total black) and L* = 100 (white). For clear materials, L* = 0 (total black) and L* = 100 (colourless). a* is the red to green axis with positive a* giving the degree of redness and negative a* greenness. b* is the yellow to blue axis with positive b* giving the degree of yellowness and negative b* the blueness.

Thus, a typical shade of white could be L* = 92.70 a* = +1.60 b* = –5.10 and a pale grey (nearly white) could be L* = 83.70 a* = –0.50 b* = +0.50.

Delta (Δ) values of these figures can also be generated where ΔL*, Δa*, and Δb* indicate how much a standard and sample differ from one another in L*, a*, and b*.

The total colour difference ΔE* summarises the differences of one colour in comparison with a standard, considering their L*, a*, and b* values. ΔE* does not indicate which of these parameters are out of tolerance if ΔE* is out of tolerance. The colour standard is established from the average of several readings over time.

4.8 Surface Properties

4.8.1 Abrasion Resistance

Abrasion resistance is the degree to which a surface is able to resist rubbing or wearing away by friction. The resistance to abrasion is closely related to hardness, resiliency, and the formulation. It also depends on test conditions, type of abrasive, and development and dissipation of heat during the test cycle.

Abrasion resistance is particularly relevant to flexible PVC and is influenced by the plasticiser type and level and filler content. In general, in a clear formulation, a softer material tends to abrade less than a harder one. However, in a highly filled composition, the softer material tends to abrade more. More information on the more efficient plasticisers can be found in Section 3.2.5.

A material's ability to resist abrasion is often measured by its loss in weight when abraded with an abrader. The Taber abrasion test involves placing the test specimen on a revolving turntable with an appropriate abrading wheel under a set dead weight. The weight loss after a large number of revolutions (1,000–5,000) is measured. Different (less) abrasive wheels with different loads are possible.

4.8.2 Surface Resistivity

In common with most other polymers, plasticised PVC is a poor conductor of electricity and can accumulate static charges on the surface. This can detract from the appearance of the finished article due to dust pick-up. More seriously, sparking, caused by static discharge, can occur leading to dust or solvent/air mixture ignitions.

Surface resistivity is influenced by plasticiser type and content. The polymer grade can also have an influence.

The surface resistance of a plastic is the resistance to the flow of electrical current over its surface. Results are reported in ohms and it is important to note that environmental factors, such as temperature and humidity, can greatly influence results. Low surface resistivity is necessary in applications where the dissipation of static electricity is required, e.g., conveyor belting in mining. Flexible PVC gives surface resistivity values in the range 10^{11}–10^{12} Ω.

Decreased resistivity (and so increased conductivity) is normally achieved in flexible PVC formulations by the use of additives (see Section 3.12.1). A surface resistivity of less than 3×10^8 Ω can be obtained. For example, this is the maximum surface resistivity permitted for articles used in coalmines.

4.9 Biological Behaviour

4.9.1 Assessment under Food and Water Legislation

PVC, on its own and manufactured to the current standards, is accepted as having very low toxicity (bearing in mind that no materials are truly non-toxic) and is a safe material. The maximum residual vinyl chloride monomer (VCM) concentration standard in PVC resin destined for food and medical applications is now being met at <1 g/ton. However, the main issues come with the use of different additives in the formulation and possible by-products from polymer degradation.

In addition to being suitable for the intended application, the main requirements for food contact and potable water use are that the PVC article must not impart odour or taste. Another significant criterion is the migration of additives, monomer, catalyst residues, polymer degradation products, etc., into the food or water. The migration of these species is a function of time, temperature, and extractant type. At unacceptable levels, these species could produce potential health hazards or the formation of undesirable flavours or odours.

4.9.1.1 Food Contact

The application of PVC in contact with food and water has been covered by the relevant standards/regulations by different authorities in different countries. Within the EU there have been various directives to bring together the national standards and regulations, based on the approvals already generated nationally. The most important national standards have been generated in Germany through the BfR (Federal Institute for Risk Assessment), previously BgVV and BGA, who have access on their website to databases for plastics recommendations (*www.bfr.bund.de*).

In the EU (*http://europa.eu.int/comm/food/food/chemicalsafety/foodcontact/spec_dirs_en.htm*), food contact plastics are regulated by Directive 2002/72/EC which consolidated Directive 90/128/EEC and its amendments. This directive lists approved monomers with vinyl chloride and vinyl acetate referenced in Annex II, Section A. This reference quotes compliance to a much earlier Directive 78/142/EEC that is specific to PVC.

For VCM (a known carcinogen), the EU limit states that it should not exceed 1 mg/kg (1 ppm) in the final product and that PVC articles must not transfer any residual monomer to food when tested at an analytical sensitivity of 0.01 mg/kg (10 ppb). PVC manufacturers in Europe produce PVC resin specifically for use in food contact and medical applications that meets the 1 mg/kg requirement, obviating the need for the converter to test the packaging material for residual monomer. Vinyl acetate monomer has a restriction that the migration level into food should not exceed 12 ppm.

In the USA, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), following risk assessments carried out in different food contact applications, has taken the viewpoint that a residual VCM content of 5–50 ppb in the PVC article, depending on the application, is considered as safe.

To enforce overall and particular migration limits, special directives have set out procedures for analysis. Basic rules for migration tests, such as the conditions of contact (time, temperature, and food simulants), are supplied in Directive 82/711/EEC and amendments 93/8/EEC and 97/48/EC. If a product complies with the compositional requirements of Directive 2002/72/EC, then it can subsequently be tested for the desired condition of use. If it meets the migration requirements, then it is deemed suitable for use in applications covered by the appropriate test method. Directive 85/572/EEC gives a list of food simulants to be used in migration tests for various foodstuff types, using water, ethanol, acetic acid, and olive oil.

The Scientific Committee on Food (now the European Food Safety Authority, EFSA) evaluates the toxicological data of an additive and sets a corresponding maximum tolerable daily intake using a significant margin of safety. The directives (90/128/EEC consolidated into 2002/72/EC) have now established:

- An overall migration limit of 10 mg/dm^2 of material per article or 60 mg of substance/kg of foodstuff or food simulants for all substances migrating from a material into foodstuffs.
- A positive list of authorised monomers and other starting substances, with restrictions on their use (such as specific migration limits, SML) were applicable. Some monomers remain provisionally authorised at national level, pending a re-evaluation by the EFSA.
- A list of authorised additives and, for some of them, restrictions on their use (such as specific migration limits). In addition there also exists national limits of authorised additives. The following deadlines have been set to transform the list of authorised additives into a positive list:

- 31 December 2006, submission to EFSA for all additives currently on national lists that have not yet been evaluated.

- 31 December 2007 at the latest, EC to establish a provisional list of additives that may continue to be used, subject to national law, until evaluated by the EFSA.

• The procedures for adapting, revising, and/or completing the list of authorised substances.

Food contact plastics also include materials and articles that are in contact with water intended for human consumption, but do not cover fixed water supply equipment.

The EU continues to work (Synoptic Document) on this 'positive list' (*http://europa.eu.int/comm/food/fs/sfp/food_contact/synoptic_doc_en.pdf*). This document is not intended to include polymerisation aids, colorants, inks, and adhesives (although some appear). Pigment use must be selected from national lists, e.g., the French positive list of pigments or from the Council of Europe resolution on colorants. There is also discussion as to whether solvents should be included in the additive list. Substances have been split into different lists (0–9), with the aim being that those substances on lists 0–4 are included on the positive list. As an example, vinyl chloride is on list 4. Essentially, those substances on the other lists have negative or insufficient data, or have toxicity concerns. Lists W7–W9 are waiting list substances, considered as new (never having been approved at national level) and lacking requested data.

It is important to note that some of these additives can be used without restriction provided they do not exceed an overall migration limit, whereas others, such as organotin stabilisers and adipate plasticisers, have restrictions imposed on them with corresponding SML. Currently SML are based on the worst case scenario whereby it is assumed that a person may consume up to 1 kg daily of food in contact with the relevant food contact material. There are discussions concerning proposed refinements to consider a fat (consumption) reduction factor of 5 (as normal consumption is < 200 g daily in Europe) and a plastics use factor to take account of the fact that different plastics are used for packaging materials, each having a percentage share. This is similar to the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) situation, already mentioned, where the consumption factor has been derived for each plastic in relation to the types of food with which it comes into contact. The use of migration modelling is permitted, to reduce the need for complex and expensive analysis, for new product approval.

In the USA, the FDA, an agency within the Department of Health and Human Services of the federal government, has responsibility for the listing of suitable raw material ingredients, from which the material manufacturer can select for packaging materials and medical devices. The regulations also provide certain specifications regarding composition and properties. Assuming all the standards have been met, the resulting article or material is then deemed to be FDA compliant. In addition, it has also taken on board the evaluation of the impact that clearance of a packaging material may have on the environment (assessment of potential impacts from use and disposal). PVC is held up in this process at the time of writing, but PVC is still used due to earlier FDA listing under the CFR (Code of Federal Regulations) Title 21, Chapter 1, Subchapter B, particularly Part 178. The part is divided into sections identified by a chemical family and indicates physical, chemical, and compositional requirements, in addition to acceptable service conditions for food contact. There may be a maximum permitted addition level. There is usually also a limit of extractable substance when exposed to particular and relevant solvents.

Within the FDA, there is no formal process of inspection of materials produced for food contact use.

4.9.1.2 Drinking Water Approval

Drinking water safety is protected by the guidelines of the World Health Organisation (WHO).

In Europe, drinking water quality is controlled by Directive 98/83/EC. The main change, from a PVC point of view, was to reduce permitted lead content from 50 to 10 μg/l over a 15-year transition period (by 2013, with an interim standard of 25 μg/l by 2003). This was aimed at allowing time for replacing lead distribution pipes but influenced the use of lead stabilisers in PVC pressure pipe.

Another directive, known as the Construction Products Directive (89/106/CE), also includes plumbing installations. One section covers hygiene, health, and the environment, and includes pollution or poisoning of water or soil, among other considerations.

However, there is no conformity in an approval scheme, as different national approval schemes exist. As a further complication, national approval in one country may not be accepted in another member state. In the UK, government approval is required via the Committee on Products and Processes for Use in Public Water Supply (CPP) which provides expert advice with the Drinking Water Inspectorate (DWI) providing technical and administrative support to the CPP. The DWI is the technical regulator for the water companies. In Germany, the Kunststoffe und Trinkwasser (KTW) and German Association of the Gas and Water Trade (DVGW) approval processes apply. In the Netherlands, the Dutch Water Authority (KIWA) standards are relevant.

A European Acceptance Scheme (EAS) is being developed by the EC to establish a common European regulatory approach for construction products in contact with drinking water, primarily to achieve a single market for these items.

In the USA, the NSF International (formerly the National Sanitation Foundation) approval process applies via the NSF/American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Standard 61 [42]. This is recognised by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) as the criteria for determining the suitability for health effects of materials that convey potable water.

4.9.2 Assessment under Medical Legislation [43]

4.9.2.1 Biocompatibility

Biocompatibility is an important concept for any polymeric material that contacts the body in the form of a medical device. It can be expressed as the ability of a material, device, or system to perform without a clinically significant host response in a specific application. The terms ‘blood compatibility’ and ‘tissue compatibility’ are often quoted and refer to blood–material or blood–device interactions, and the ability of the material to remain *in situ* without significant host response and without interfering with surrounding tissue differentiation, respectively.

PVC compounds designed for medical devices will comply with these definitions as demonstrated by an ability to pass generally recognised biocompatibility test procedures. However, in common with many polymer systems, PVC interacts with blood, biofluids, and tissue to set off a whole cascade of protein-mediated reactions, including complement activation. Some additional 25 biocompatibility parameters have been identified, some of which may assume significance in patients experiencing particular clinical complications. PVC–blood interaction studies (primarily di-2-ethylhexyl phthalate interaction) have been a major focus of ongoing research. In addition, surface modification techniques have been developed to improve the biocompatibility of PVC surfaces.

4.9.2.2 Regulatory Status

PVC compounds to be used in medical devices must meet high standards of raw material selection, process, and quality control to ensure a high degree of confidence in the finished product.

The maximum residual VCM content standard for PVC resin has already been mentioned in Section 4.9.1 and resin batches are selected specifically for use in medical and food contact applications.

In selecting polymer additives for use in medical compounds, the starting point is a food contact approval list (already covered in Section 4.9.1.1) or a chemical listing taken from a pharmacopoeia monograph.

The European Pharmacopoeia [44] is published by the European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines (EDQM). There are a number of European Pharmacopoeia monographs for polymeric materials. The specific monographs for PVC are listed in the European Pharmacopoeia 5.2:

- 3.1.10 Materials based on non-plasticised PVC for containers for non-injectable aqueous solutions.
- 3.1.11 Materials based on non-plasticised PVC for containers for dry dosage forms for oral administration.
- 3.1.1.1 Materials based on plasticised PVC for containers for human blood and blood components.
- 3.1.1.2 Materials based on plasticised PVC for tubing used in sets for the transfusion of blood and blood components.
- 3.1.14 Materials based on plasticised PVC for containers for aqueous solutions for intravenous infusion.
- 3.2.4 Empty sterile containers of plasticised PVC for human blood and blood components.

The Medical Devices Directive (93/42/EEC) and the corresponding national regulations make specific reference to the European Pharmacopoeia.

4.9.2.3 Competent Authority Approval

All EU member countries have their own competent authority to protect public health and these authorities are responsible for the implementation of the three European directives that regulate the marketing and putting into service of medical devices.

In the USA, the Centre for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH), as part of the FDA, has responsibility for safety assessments of materials used in medical devices.

If the formulation ingredient is not pharmacopoeia listed or food contact approved, another route is to check that the finished product containing the ingredient meets US Pharmacopoeia requirements for biological testing. Alternatively, satisfactory extraction resistance testing may also indicate it can be used as a component.

4.9.2.4 Formulation Disclosure

During formal registration or licence approval, one of the requirements placed upon the medical device manufacturer is to declare details of the components used in the final medical device to the competent authorities. In the USA, the FDA operates a Drug Master File and Device Master File System which includes formula disclosures and physical and biochemical test results. This confidential file is compiled for examination by any authorised body.

4.9.2.5 Product Conformance

Manufacturing controls for PVC compound to be used in medical applications are based on established systems, such as good manufacturing practice (GMP) and quality assurance (QA) standards. In particular, formal registration to the ISO 9001 [45] scheme is now almost mandatory.

In addition to standard finished product testing specifications, PVC compounds for medical use will also include tests for ignition residue, heavy metal content, and residual VCM content.

Specialised medical testing (biological testing) is usually carried out at the final development stages only. This testing is based on major recognised standards for biological testing, primarily ISO 10993 [46], a set of harmonised standards that address the biological evaluation of medical devices. Appropriate biological tests on extracts from the compound, prepared by various extraction conditions and using appropriate media, include systemic toxicity, intracutaneous reactivity, and cytotoxicity. Appropriate biological tests, performed on the PVC compound itself, include implantation, cytotoxicity, and blood compatibility tests, such as haemolysis.

4.9.3 Sterilisation

Single- and multi-use medical devices that come into contact with humans must be pre-sterilised before use, in order to minimise the risk of infection. In the case of single-use pre-sterilised medical devices incorporating PVC materials the choice is between steam, ethylene oxide, and a radiation sterilisation process.

4.9.3.1 Steam (Autoclave) Sterilisation

Autoclaves, which use steam under pressure at a temperature of 120–130 °C for approximately 30 minutes, can be suitable for PVC materials, but they are not commonly used for this material.

4.9.3.2 Ethylene Oxide Sterilisation

Ethylene oxide (EO) gas sterilisation is widely used for single-use, pre-packed medical devices. It is very effective and can be used at temperatures below 60 °C . The sterilisation process normally takes more than four hours. EO has very good penetration ability, so the objects to be sterilised can be pre-packed in a variety of container types. PVC, in common with other polymeric biomaterials, absorbs considerable quantities of EO during the process and must be aerated for several days to ensure complete absence of the gas prior to use. However, new technology is being developed to

eliminate the need for separate aeration. PVC is generally unaffected by this treatment. However, EO is a toxic and flammable gas and its use must be controlled under proper protocols.

4.9.3.3 Radiation Sterilisation

PVC is considered to have good radiation stability (particularly in the flexible form) when formulated specifically for this application. Other polymers that have good radiation stability are ABS, PE, PC, and polyurethane. In contrast, PS has excellent radiation stability, but PP grades have relatively poor stability.

Gamma Irradiation

Gamma rays, using the radioisotope cobalt-60 source of ~1.11 x 10^7 Gbq, with a nuclear energy power output of ~5 kW, are the most widely used form of ionising radiation applied to the sterilisation of single-use medical devices. They are extremely penetrating, bringing about a lethal effect on micro-organisms without any significant temperature rise. Heat-sensitive items can therefore be sterilised in their sealed packs within the final transport container without the permeability problems associated with either EO or steam sterilisation. The dose selection is based on knowledge of the radiation resistance of various microbial species together with scientific data revealing the influence of environmental conditions on such resistance. In Europe, the choice of a minimum dose of 2.5 Mrad, which is equivalent to 25 kGy, has been widely accepted. In the USA, the dose varies according to the nature and use of the device, taking account of the numbers and sterilisation resistance of the contaminants involved. Doses are usually in the range 1.5–2.5 Mrad (15–25 kGy). This is well below the gamma radiation dose rate limit of PVC (5×10^2 Mrad) where damage, such as crosslinking and chain scission, occurs.

When PVC is irradiated (particularly after 2.5 Mrad), a yellow straw colour can develop. This is especially noticeable in formulations containing little or no plasticiser. At this stage, physical properties and biological performance are not affected, but the result is the same as the start of the PVC degradation process under heat. An equally important requirement for PVC is the prevention of further colour development (and some crosslinking) during long-term storage after radiation sterilisation. The effect can be minimised by careful selection of stabilisers and antioxidants, taking into account the need to still satisfy the various biological tests on extracts from the compound. The additives perform either as reactants, which readily combine with the radiation-generated free radicals, or as primary energy absorbers to prevent the interaction of the radiation energy with the polymer. The use of the most appropriate toning pigments can also have a positive influence.

Electron Beam Irradiation

Electron beam irradiation delivers the same results as gamma irradiation, but the source is less penetrating. It is therefore normal to irradiate individual pre-packed products under an electron beam. The electron beam, a concentrated, highly charged stream of electrons, is generated by the acceleration and conversion of electricity. The product may be treated from both sides.

A higher dose requirement than gamma irradiation is required to satisfy regulatory authorities, but the method is preferred for high-volume, low-value products. It is considered to be environmentally safer.

4.10 Resistance to Micro-organisms

Rigid PVC is not a nutrient medium for micro-organisms and is therefore not attacked by them. However, flexible PVC is a nutrient source because of the plasticiser available at the surface as a microlayer. The detrimental effects can be seen through loss of properties and change in aesthetic quality (dirt pick-up and/or odour generation). These effects are much more pronounced in warm and humid conditions. More information on microbiocides, which are added to a material to prevent the growth of micro-organisms, can be found in Section 3.9.

4.11 Performance in Service

4.11.1 Maximum Continuous Use Temperature

Maximum continuous use temperatures (**Table 4.6**) are based upon the Underwriters' Laboratories (UL) rating for long-term continuous use. It is specifically the elevated temperature that causes the ambient temperature tensile strength to fall to 50% of its unexposed initial value following exposure to that elevated temperature for 100,000 hours. The continuous use temperature is based on a sample in the absence of stresses.

Table 4.6 Maximum use temperature [47]

Polymer	Temperature (°C)
PVC-U	50
High-impact PS	50
LDPE	50
High-density PE (HDPE)	55
ABS	70
PA 6 and PA 66	80
PP	100
PC	115

On the basis of this test, rigid PVC is at the lower end of the temperature use range, but similar to other commodity thermoplastics except PP. A maximum service temperature of 60 °C has also been quoted in various technical data sheets. PVC-C has a maximum service temperature in the region of 105 °C .

4.11.2 Stability to Light, UV Radiation, and Weathering

Degradation caused by weathering often limits the service lifetime of components made from polymeric materials. With PVC, the reasons for the deterioration in properties are usually chain scission, crosslinking, and dehydrochlorination that occur as the result of photochemical reactions involving solar UV photons and atmospheric oxygen. The chemical reactions may be accelerated by elevated temperatures caused by the warming effect of the sun. In addition, water and chemical

pollutants may accelerate these processes. Obviously, weathering is influenced by the UV intensity, i.e., geographical location.

Results of weathering can be observed in various ways: loss of gloss, chalking, and colour change. These effects are limited to the surface 'skin' and have a more cosmetic effect rather than any reduction in performance.

The role of antioxidants and light stabilisers to prevent polymer degradation in service has already been covered in Section 3.11. The role of the correct heat stabiliser package and pigment is also significant.

PVC, when suitably formulated for outdoor use, has excellent weathering properties, as the reader will be aware, with its use in many exterior applications.

4.11.2.1 Natural Weathering Testing

Different exposure sites are available across the world to test weathering performance. The choice will depend on where the product will be used. Results will also be generated quicker by exposure to harsher climates.

Florida, USA, has high levels of UV radiation, humidity, and temperature that combine to provide a subtropical environment. Arizona, USA, also has high levels of solar radiation and elevated temperatures, but with a low relative humidity, i.e., a desert climate. Different European exposure sites are also available to represent a northern European climate, an industrial environment, and a Mediterranean climate.

The most relevant point to note for any outdoor or laboratory testing is the use as reference of a formulation known to have satisfactory actual outdoor weathering.

4.11.2.2 Laboratory Weathering Testing

Because there is a need for more rapid evaluation of a material's weathering resistance than can be obtained by outdoor exposure testing, there are various accelerated light stability test methods available. Different light sources are used, with water application if required. Examples are xenon arc (gas discharge lamp, where the light source is filtered to simulate UV and visible solar radiation), fluorescent UV lamps (with specific spectral distribution and condensation devices), and carbon arc.

The prediction of photoageing stability based on accelerated laboratory testing is very difficult.

4.11.3 Chemical Resistance

PVC-U is relatively inert and is not attacked by most common and dilute acids and alkalis, petrol, oils, fats, greases, or salt solutions. It is not resistant to aromatic and chlorinated hydrocarbons, strong alkalis, and nitric acid.

Rigid PVC is widely used in chemical processing, electroplating, chemical drainage, and various water handling and distribution systems. It is generally reinforced with glass-reinforced plastic to lift operating temperatures from 60 to 90 °C and also to impart considerable physical and structural properties.

Typical resistance limits for PVC-U are:

- Sulfuric acid (80%) – up to 60 °C
- Sulfuric acid (95%) – up to 20 °C
- Nitric acid at ambient temperature
- Dry chlorine gas at ambient temperature
- Sodium hydroxide (70%) – up to 60 °C
- Sodium hypochlorite (15% average Cl) – up to 60 °C

Flexible PVC has slightly inferior chemical resistance due to the presence of the plasticiser and the effect that some materials have on the plasticiser retention within the PVC matrix. Its use as tank lining has diminished with the development of synthetic rubbers. Utilising seam welding and metal bonding techniques, PVC-P can still be used where rubber vulcanisation is impractical. Pickle tanks, containing chromic/hydrofluoric acid, are an example.

4.11.4 Permeability

All polymers are permeable to gases, vapours, and liquids to a greater or lesser extent. At the molecular level even the best-made, porosity-free plastics have intermolecular voids into which gas or vapour molecules can diffuse. As would be expected, anything that inhibits the free passage of gas or vapour will increase a material's resistance to permeation. Thus, increasing the crosslink density will decrease the permeability (see Section 7.1).

Plasticisers invariably increase the permeability because of the increased mobility of the polymer molecules and the greater free volume between the chains. Similarly, if there is a significant orientation of the polymer molecules, e.g., by blowing, stretching or calendering, the permeability is reduced.

In principle, the thickness of the material has a proportional effect on the rate of permeation, if chemical interactions between the permeant and the membrane are absent. Increasing the temperature increases the permeability. Permeation takes place in two stages: initially dissolution into the surface of the polymer, then diffusion through the material under the concentration gradient so formed.

4.11.4.1 Permeability of Water and Liquids

Water vapour permeability is an essential property when determining a material's resistance to moisture or the ability to protect contents from the transmission of water vapour.

Rigid PVC has low permeability to water and water-based products. However, plasticised PVC has a relatively high permeability and it is this factor that is used in food packaging, allowing foods such as meat and cheese to breathe. It also prevents condensation and the product can be clearly seen. Flexible PVC is also permeable to steam.

The water vapour permeability of PVC film is compared with other plastics in **Table 4.7**.

Table 4.7 Water vapour permeability of various plastics	
Polymer	**Water vapour (g/mm/m^2, 24 hours)**
PVC-U	1.0
PVC-P	5
Polyvinylidene chloride (PVDC)	0.1
Oriented PP film	0.1
HDPE	0.2
PP	0.3
Linear low-density PE	0.4
LDPE	0.5
PET	0.6
PC	3
PS	3
PA 6	3
Ethylene–vinyl acetate	3
ABS	3
Source: Plastics Design Guide [1]	

4.11.4.2 Permeability of Gases

PVC is valued for its vapour permeability, preventing condensation.

Rigid PVC gives very good oxygen impermeability due to its closely packed and semi-crystalline structure. Flexible PVC does not give very good barrier properties, due to the plasticiser increasing the molecular chain mobility and intermolecular distances. The relatively high CO_2 permeability of PVC-U in comparison to PET explains the use of PET for carbonated water bottles.

The permeation rate of PVC for different gases is compared with other polymers in **Table 4.8**.

Table 4.8 Permeability (mol/m/Pa/s) to gases of various plastics [48]			
Polymer	**O_2 (× 10^{18})**	**H_2O (× 10^{15})**	**CO_2 (× 10^{18})**
PVC-U	23	40	98
PVDC	1.3	0.7	7
PET	14	60	30
PA 6	30	135	200
PP	400	17	1000
HDPE	400	4	1000
LDPE	1100	30	5700
PC	500	470	2900
PS	580	330	4000

References

1. *Rapra Plastics Design Guide (CD Version)*, Rapra Technology, Shrewsbury, UK.

2. ASTM D570, *Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics*, 1998.

3. ISO 868, *Plastics and Ebonite - Determination of Indentation Hardness by Means of a Durometer (Shore Hardness)*, 2003.

4 DIN 53455, *Plastics - Determination of Izod Impact Strength*, 2000.

5. DIN EN ISO 178, *Plastics - Determination of Flexural Properties*, 2003.

6. DIN EN ISO 527-1, Plastics - Determination of Tensile Properties - Part 1: General Principles, 1996.

7. DIN EN ISO 527-2, *Plastics - Determination of Tensile Properties - Part 2: Test Conditions for Moulding and Extrusion Plastics*, 1996.

8. DIN EN ISO 604, *Plastics - Determination of Compressive Properties*, 2003.

9. DIN EN ISO 179-1, *Plastics - Determination of Charpy Impact Properties - Part 1: Non-Instrumented Impact Test*, 2001.

10. ISO 2039-2, *Plastics - Determination of Hardness - Part 2: Rockwell Hardness*, 1987.

11. ASTM D256, *Standard Test Methods for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics*, 2005.

12. ISO 180, *Plastics - Determination of Izod Impact Strength*, 2000.

13. BS EN ISO 179, *Methods of Testing Plastics - Mechanical Properties - Determination of Charpy Impact Strength*, 1997.

14. ISO 179-1, *Plastics - Determination of Charpy Impact Properties - Part 1: Non-Instrumented Impact Test*, 2000.

15. EN 12608, *Unplasticized Polyvinylchloride (PVC-U) Profiles for the Fabrication of Windows and Doors - Classification, Requirements and Test Methods*, 2003.

16. ISO 179-2, *Plastics - Determination of Charpy Impact Properties - Instrumented Impact Test*, 1998.

17. ISO75-1, *Plastics - Determination of Temperature of Deflection Under Load - Part 1: General Test Method*, 2004.

18. ISO 75-2, *Plastics - Determination of Temperature of Deflection Under Load - Part 2: Plastics and Ebonite*, 2004.

19. ISO 75-3, *Plastics - Determination of Temperature of Deflection Under Load - Part 3: High-Strength Thermosetting Laminates and Long-Fibre-Reinforced Plastics*, 2004.

20. ISO 306, *Plastics - Thermoplastic Materials - Determination of Vicat Softening Temperature (VST)*, 2004.

21. ASTM D257, *Standard Test Methods for DC Resistance or Conductance of Insulating Materials*, 1999.

22. ASTM D150-98, *Standard Test Methods for AC Loss Characteristics and Permittivity (Dielectric Constant) of Solid Electrical Insulation*, 2004.

23. ASTM D459, *Test Method for High-Voltage, Low-Current, Dry Arc Resistance of Solid Electrical Insulation*, 2004.

24. ASTM D2863, *Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index)*, 2000.

25. ASTM E1354-04A, *Standard Test Method for Heat and Visible Smoke Release Rates for Materials and Products Using an Oxygen Consumption Calorimeter*, 2004.

26. ASTM D4100-82(1989)e1, *Test Method for Gravimetric Determination of Smoke Particulates from Combustion of Plastic Materials*, (Withdrawn and not replaced, 1997).

27. *PVC in Fires*, 2nd Edition, British Plastics Federation Publications, London, UK, 1996.

28. EN 13823, *Reaction To Fire Tests for Building Products - Building Products Excluding Floorings Exposed to the Thermal Attack by a Single Burning Item*, 2002.

29. EN ISO 9239-1, *Reaction to Fire Tests for Floorings - Part 1: Determination of the Burning Behaviour using a Radiant Heat Source*, 2002.

30. EN ISO 11925-2, *Reaction to Fire Tests - Ignitability of Building Products Subjected to Direct Impingement of Flame - Part 2: Single-Flame Source Test*, 2002.

31. IEC 60332-3-10, *Tests on Electric Cables Under Fire Conditions - Part 3-10: Test for Vertical Flame Spread of Vertically-Mounted Bunched Wires or Cables – Apparatus*, 2000.

32. IEC 60332-3-21, *Tests on Electric Cables Under Fire Conditions - Part 3-21: Test for Vertical Flames Spread of Vertically-Mounted Bunched Wires or Cables - Category A F/R*, 2000.

33. IEC 60332-3-22, *Tests on Electric Cables Under Fire Conditions - Part 3-22: Test for Vertical Flame Spread of Vertically-Mounted Bunched Wires or Cables - Category A*, 2000.

34. IEC 60332-3-23, *Tests on Electric Cables Under Fire Condition - Part 3-23: Test for Vertical Flame Spread of Vertically-Mounted Bunched Wired or Cables - Category B*, 2000.

35. IEC 60332-3-24, *Tests on Electric Cables Under Fire Conditions - Part 3-24: Test for Vertical Flame Spread of Vertically-Mounted Bunched Wires or Cables - Category C*, 2000.

36. IEC 60332-3-25, *Test on Electric Cables Under Fire Conditions - Part 3-25: Test for Vertical Flame Spread of Vertically-Mounted Bunched Wires or Cables - Category D*, 2000.

37. EN 1363-1, *Fire Resistance Tests - Part 1: General Requirements*, 1999.

38. EN 1363-2, *Fire Resistance Tests - Part 2: Alternative And Additional Procedures*, 1999.

39. EN 1364-1, *Fire Resistance Tests for Non-Loadbearing Elements - Part 1: Walls*, 1999.

40. EN 1364-2, *Fire Resistance Tests for Non-Loadbearing Elements - Part 2: Ceilings*, 1999.

41. EN ISO 2813, *Paints and Varnishes - Determination of Specular Gloss of Non-Metallic Paint Films at 20 Degree, 60 Degree and 85 Degree*, 1999

42. NSF/ANSI 61, *Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects*, 2005.

43. C.R. Blass, *The Role of Poly(vinyl chloride) in Healthcare*, Rapra Technology, Shrewsbury, UK, 2001.

44. *European Pharmacopoeia*, 5th Edition, Council of Europe, 2005.

45. ISO 9001, *Quality Management Systems – Requirements*, 2001.

46. ISO 10993-1, *Biological Evaluation of Medical Devices - Part 1: Evaluation and Testing*, 2003.

47. M.C. Hough and R. Dolbey, *The Plastics Compendium, Volume 1: Key Properties and Sources*, Rapra Technology, Shrewsbury, UK, 1995.

48. N.J. Mills, *Plastics – Microstructure and Engineering Applications*, 2nd Edition, Elsevier, Oxford, UK, 1993.

5 Design

Due to the versatility of polyvinyl chloride (PVC), the potential exists for designers to create innovative designs. This can be based on the material's flexibility, clarity, aesthetic qualities, and so on. Designers have been challenged by the European Council of Vinyl Manufacturers (ECVM) to create PVC products that reflect the material's versatility and enhance people's lifestyles. To date, this has resulted in an outdoor lamp (which interacts with the surroundings), fashion wear items, and household goods (in particular seating).

An important information resource for design considerations is provided by the Vinyl Institute Inc. This is the US trade association representing the vinyl industry. The Vinyl by Design website can be found at *www.vinylbydesign.com*.

5.1 Design Considerations for PVC-U Materials

Design considerations should take account of overall long-term value (costs, reliability, and environmental impact) and end-of-life considerations (ease of disassembly and material selection for compatibility with recycling methods or disposal). In the applications discussed here, the relevance of many different local, national, and international codes and standards with which unplasticised (PVC-U) complies must be considered.

5.1.1 Pipe

A useful source of information is the *PVC Pipe Systems Manual* [1], a joint publication between WRc plc (an independent consultancy specialising in plastic pipes testing, approval, failure investigations, and development of specifications) and the British Plastics Federation's (BPF) Plastic Pipes Group (*www.plasticpipesgroup.com/pvcmanual*).

PVC-U is used in residential, commercial, and industrial pipe applications because of its resistance to corrosion, chemical constituents in water, scale build-up, and exterior pitting. PVC pipes resist bacterial build-up and maintain high flow efficiency. Having a degree of flexibility, the pipe can bend without breaking, and pipe and joint assemblies withstand pressure surges and shock. The material is resistant to impact and general wear and abrasion.

PVC pipe imparts no taste or odour to the water it transports and has no effect on water quality. Due to its low thermal conductivity, PVC pipe helps to maintain a uniform water temperature. Pipe is supplied in standard lengths, and to allow for expansion and contraction, an expansion rate of 8.5 cm for every 30 m with a 40 °C temperature change allowance must be made.

PVC-U is not used for natural gas distribution networks, with high-density polyethylene (HDPE) and medium-density polyethylene (MDPE) used almost exclusively in this area. Various reasons for

this include the high stress crack resistance, excellent fusion welding characteristics, and the fact that polyethylene (PE) can be supplied and installed in coil form.

5.1.1.1 Below Ground Drainage

Sewage pipes share many of the same design objectives as potable water pipes, but additional features are the use of generally larger diameter pipes, the presence of solids carried in the flow, the greater likelihood of exposure to contaminating materials, such as surface-active agents, usually greater burial depths and subsequently higher ground loadings, and external pressures. The majority of sewage pipes form part of a gravity flow system involving low pressures and large diameters. As a result, pipe wall stiffness is usually of greater importance than resistance to internal pressure.

The recommended maximum temperature for continuous drainage applications for PVC-U is 60 °C, but temperatures up to 90 °C can be accommodated on a short-term basis.

For foul and surface water drainage, sewage pipe is supplied in one standard colour, and in three diameters of 82–160 mm. These PVC-U pipes, being flexible, can accommodate some degree of ground movement and pressure without damage. Various standards and recommendations are available if the pipe requires protection under public highways and buildings, and so on. Push-fit joints are normally used.

High-pressure water jetting apparatus is used as a method for cleaning out accumulated solids from sewage pipe. Providing agreed pressure standards and controls are used, no damage to pipe systems occurs.

Osma UltraRib pipe is also available in three diameters, 150–300 mm, for gravity sewage systems. This has a smooth inner surface with concentric external ribs to provide good axial rigidity and enhanced radial strength without a significant increase in weight. Jointing is achieved by use of a sealing ring located over the pipe within the ribs and PVC-U moulded fittings (*www.wavin.co.uk*).

For the collection and removal of surface and sub-surface water, land drainage pipe is a single-walled, corrugated, perforated system, which is lightweight and has a high degree of flexibility for laying on a continuous basis. Various diameters are available between 60 and 200 mm. Pipe joints, bends, and so on, are based on moulded PE sections.

5.1.1.2 Potable Water Transportation

The use of PVC-U for drinking water transportation has decreased for various reasons, including early system failures in the 1970s and poor environmental image. MDPE and HDPE have become the alternative materials (based on the use for gas pipe). Although these materials are less strong and less tough, they are more ductile.

The pressure-carrying capability of a pipe is related to its wall thickness and diameter, and material strength by:

$$\sigma = P(\mathrm{SDR} - 1)/2$$

where σ (sigma) is the design strength; *P* is the design pressure; and SDR is the ratio between outside diameter and wall thickness. The design strength is calculated from the long-term creep strength

(LTS) at 50 years by dividing by a safety factor: for PVC this is usually 2, while for PE it is 1.25. The difference in safety factors arises from PE being more ductile. This means that strength considerations dominate the design of PE pipes. PVC pipes are seen to be more brittle and therefore have a greater risk of not performing to their strength potential [1].

PVC-U is specially formulated for thick wall, pressure pipe applications, in one standard colour (blue in the UK) with diameters of 90–315 mm. For 1.25 MPa pressure rating, nominal wall thickness is 4.7–15.8 mm. Later developments have focused on improvements to toughness and strength, allowing reduced wall thickness with better service life.

Molecular oriented PVC (PVC-O) is available with an operating pressure of up to 1.25 MPa with sizes of 90–315 mm. Wall thickness varies from 3.0 to 7.7 mm. Higher pressure ratings of 1.6 and 2.0 MPa are also possible. PVC-O has the advantage of increased toughness (extra ductility) and lighter in weight over PVC-U, due to the reduced wall thickness.

PVC alloy formulations, which incorporate chlorinated PE, are also available for this application with good fracture toughness and impact strength properties. Wall thickness at 1.25 MPa pressure rating is 3.1–10.9 mm for pipe diameters of 90–315 mm.

All PVC pipes used for potable water are supplied with push-fit elastomeric sealing ring joints integrally formed with the pipe.

5.1.1.3 Hot Water Distribution

Chlorinated PVC can be used for hot (and cold) water distribution systems with pipe and fittings joined by solvent cement. Temperatures of 90–100 °C can be accommodated. Pressure ratings of 0.3 MPa at 90 °C are also possible. At 23 °C, the pressure rating for continuous use is 2.7 MPa.

In Europe, crosslinked PE (XLPE) and polybutylene are the favoured materials for this application.

5.1.2 Exterior Construction Applications

5.1.2.1 Windows and Doors

Specific design considerations for windows and doors need to take account of glazing requirements, hardware, thermal efficiency, security, ventilation, safety, accessibility, style and aesthetics, operating environment, cleaning, and maintenance.

In addition to the cost benefits, PVC-framed windows and doors have the added benefits of low maintenance and durability, being impervious to rot, rust, corrosion, blistering, flaking, and insect infestation.

The construction (Figure 5.1) is based on a chambered extrusion which forms the frame around the glass. Windows are manufactured using a combination of different profile shapes by fusion welding mitred corners (see Section 8.2.1.4), with vertical (mullions) and horizontal (transoms) bars either mechanically fixed or fusion welded. Most PVC-U systems for window and door construction have internal reinforcement by either an aluminium or galvanised mild steel box section. This increases profile section rigidity and in addition will limit expansion due to heat gain in hot and sunny weather.

Figure 5.1 PVC-U window construction. (Source: BPF Windows Group.)

With non-reinforced PVC-U frames, movement can be up to three times more than aluminium and ten times more than wood, and this needs to be taken into account in the perimeter frame joint. (As a comparison to the value in Table 4.3, the coefficient of linear thermal expansion for aluminium is 23 and for wood it is 6.5.) Wall thickness, in Europe, is around 3.0 mm. In the USA, the wall thickness can be less. The frame extrusion depth can vary from 50 mm up to more than 70 mm with integrated drainage. Glazing can be retained by PVC-U bead of varying shapes. Gaskets and weather strips are based on ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM) or thermoplastic elastomer.

Sills, also based on a profile contour with end-caps, are supplied in various widths.

Handles, hinges, and so on, are located with stainless steel fixing screws with a sharp point and twin thread. Fittings can be mounted via screw channels or through the metal reinforcing section. The profile section also lends itself to multi-point locking systems.

Frame fixings for windows and doors should be between 150 and 250 mm from each corner and then at no more than 600 mm centres.

White is the most common colour but different suppliers will have their own specification shade. Other colours can be supplied in a solid form or, as a preferable and common option, by co-extrusion (see Section 6.4.2.3) or thin coat layering onto the exterior surface. Mahogany and cherry oak wood grain styles based on this technique are popular (see Section 8.1.2.2 subsection on foil coating for windows and doors).

Nearly all shapes and styles of windows and doors are possible, primarily using double glazed sealed window units. These include casement windows with tilt and turn variety, vertical sliding sash windows, sliding door and window systems, and bay windows. However, the material is not favoured widely for more traditional designs and is not acceptable for listed building use or popular in conservation areas.

The hollow chambers within the PVC profile frame provide thermal barriers that block heat transfer. In addition, PVC is not a conductor of heat or cold.

PVC window frames have been in use since the 1960s and sales have grown dramatically over the years. Life expectancy is more than 30 years. As with all windows and doors, minimum requirements for design pressure (wind load), structural test pressure (structural load), and water resistance test pressure must satisfy industry standards. The type of building, height, wind zone, exposure, terrain, and proximity to the coastline determine the window performance parameters. In addition, issues such as air permeability and forced entry need to be addressed.

5.1.2.2 Above Ground Drainage

For rainwater drainage, extruded systems are available in different colours, in half-round, semi-elliptical, and square section gutter and circular and square downpipe lengths. Sizes vary from 75 to 150 mm depending on use. Wall thickness varies from 1.5 to 3.5 mm depending on size. Joining is achieved via a clip and seal joint system, based on injection moulded PVC-U and utilising the flexible nature of this material.

Soil and waste pipe are supplied in different colours, with diameters of 82–160 mm, which can be joined by push-fit or solvent-welded joints. The solvent is usually a mixture but will contain tetrahydrofuran. The push-fit sockets, bends, branches, and so on, are also moulded from PVC-U and incorporate sealing rings. Additionally, bends, tees, and adapters can be made from acrylonitrile–butadiene–styrene for use with solvent welding, or polypropylene, including sealing rings, for push-fit sockets. Ring seals and gaskets can be made from EPDM, styrene butadiene rubber, or natural rubber.

Utilising the low-maintenance aspects of PVC-U, cladding (sidings), fascias, soffits, and bargeboards are replacing wood in these applications, in particular expanded PVC-U, which can be drilled, screwed, or nailed. Good heat insulation properties are a feature of this material with lower thermal conductivity (~0.05 W/m/K) than timber, concrete, or brick.

5.1.2.3 Exterior Cladding/Siding

Vinyl siding (solid, not expanded) is particularly popular in the USA, due to the method of building construction, and is the largest residential siding material. It cannot be used, however, on buildings higher than 15 metres. A standard panel consists of the face, a nail hem at the top where nailing slots are located, and a buttlock located on the bottom edge which locks onto the previously installed panel. The panels interlock to protect the structure of the building in addition to creating an attractive exterior finish. The extruded material is available in many colours and different embossed surface textures. It must withstand severe weather conditions. During installation, it is necessary to allow room for the siding to move in changing temperature conditions.

Products have lifetime warranties based on more than 30 years of outdoor exposure. An important consideration is to keep fire sources and easily combustible materials away from vinyl siding. However, having a relatively high flame ignition temperature (390 °C) and a much lower flame spread rate in comparison to other siding materials are to its benefit. Tests have shown that vinyl siding does not degrade the fire performance of a typical wall; in some situations, it could improve a wall's fire performance.

In Europe, the choice can also include a PVC-U hollow, chambered system with open V-jointing and expanded PVC-U systems, also with tongue and groove jointing systems. The use of a secondary waterproofing membrane, positioned against the wall and behind the supporting battens, is necessary to ensure that there is no moisture ingress into the structure. Various trim sections are also available for jointing and finishing. Cladding can be applied horizontally, vertically, or diagonally and is supplied in different colours. Fixing is at a maximum of 600 mm intervals (400 mm for coloured cladding or any cladding above two storeys high) with cladding nails. The reduced fixing location interval for coloured cladding takes into account that thermal expansion is greater, due to higher temperature build-up in darker colours. An air space of 20–25 mm should be maintained behind all cladding systems. A thermal movement of ~5 mm per 5 m length should also be taken into account.

5.1.2.4 Fascia, Soffit, and Bargeboard

The roof perimeter and eaves are among the most exposed parts of a building and are also difficult to access. Due to its lightweight nature and low maintenance needs, expanded PVC-U profile is also used in fascias, soffits, and bargeboards necessary to finish roofing systems. They are available in different colours, widths, thicknesses, and profile shapes. Soffits can be supplied incorporating venting slats. Appropriate trim sections are used for jointing or intersecting the profile. Fixing principles are similar to cladding. As with all expanded PVC-U materials, the only climate limitation is that they should not be installed where temperatures are above 50 °C.

5.1.2.5 Decking and Fencing

Vinyl decking, fencing, and railing are popular in the USA, and are available in traditional and innovative designs. The popularity of these applications is based on weatherability, durability, and minimum maintenance. The weatherability aspect takes account of the fact that fading will occur over time, but that fading will be uniform. Due to the designed method of fabrication, no surface screws, nails, or sharp edges show. The material is impervious to rock salt or other chemicals used for snow removal.

Vinyl decking has all the components of a wood deck, although its appearance is quite different from wood. Its overall smooth surface is etched to provide slip resistance and normal colour choice is between white, tan, or grey. Wood tones are also available. The possibility exists to more closely colour match the building's exterior finish. Decking is subjected to loading tests covering standard puncture, and blunt impact at low and high temperature. The plank system is also subjected to uniform uplift and download structural loading tests.

Vinyl deck planking can be cut using a power saw with a fine-toothed, tungsten carbide blade. The same tools that are used for wood materials are also used for vinyl fencing, decking, and railing. Typically installed on a wood substructure, planks are directly fastened by screws or clips.

Fencing systems can be designed to bend back into place or be quickly refastened. Standard testing includes tests that measure the vinyl fencing's ability to withstand cracking, impact under temperature extremes, warping, and discolouration. As with wood, vinyl posts are set in the ground with concrete. Fence rails can be attached to the posts by galvanised screws, hidden in the posts, or using a snap-in type system.

Vinyl railing is similar in appearance to metal or wood railing and is made in many different styles. Handrails must be designed and constructed to withstand a concentrated load (90 kg) applied at any point and any direction. Intermediate rails and panel fillers are designed to withstand a horizontally applied load of 22 kg on a 930 cm^2 area. There are also codes regarding height and spacing. Installation is carried out using galvanised steel post mounts bolted to joists at the rim and on the floor. Vinyl posts are then installed by sliding them over the post mounts. Reinforcement may need to be inserted into railing above certain heights.

5.1.2.6 Roller Shutters

Roller shutters, covering windows and doors, are used primarily to secure residential and commercial properties. In addition, they provide protection from the weather and give some degree of insulation against noise and energy loss. The shutter is based on extruded single- or multi-wall profile, which clips together and is rolled around a concealed roller when not in use.

5.1.3 Interior Construction Applications

5.1.3.1 Conduit and Ducting

Cable management systems utilise PVC-U pipe and profile for the safe and discrete trunking of electrical and data management cable. Various profile sections are available to retain the cable and to suit different requirements and most function on the basis of a lid that clips firmly into the profile section and conceal the cable. Conduit pipe can be cold bent, utilising bending spring which can be removed afterwards. Hot bending is required for pipe above 25 mm, using bending spring and a hot air torch. Corrugated conduit pipe is also available.

5.2 Design Considerations for PVC-P Materials

Due to the ability of plasticisers to influence the softness/hardness of articles and other possible formulation variables linked to many different forming and post-assembly techniques, the design possibilities for plasticised-PVC (PVC-P) are extensive and have already been utilised in many different applications.

5.2.1 Electrical Cable

The superior insulating properties of PVC-P linked to easier processability and greater durability has led to significant use of this material for insulation and sheathing/jacketing in many different electrical applications from building wire to fibre optic cabling. PVC-P is extruded over the conductor wire or insulated cable core.

Particular product characteristics to be considered include resistance to dampness and ozone, flexibility (including at low temperature), colour coding, weatherability, and fire performance. Electrical properties are, of course, critical. PVC-P has good dielectric properties, meaning that it can withstand relatively high voltages without breaking down. Its high electrical resistivity makes it an excellent insulator (see Section 4.5). PVC-P formulations, in this area, also take into account

possible abrasion during installation and for easy stripping from the conductor (typically copper but may be aluminium).

Typically, PVC-P is used in standard and low-voltage (<6 kV) and low-frequency applications with a continuous working temperature of 70–105 °C (depending on the formulation). Other polymers, particularly XLPE and polyvinylidene fluoride for insulation and PE for sheathing, have superior dielectric properties allowing use in high-voltage and high-frequency applications. They are also halogen free', which is perceived to be an advantage.

PVC-P electrical tape (thickness: 178 µm) is also supplied in a range of colours with a pressure-sensitive adhesive backing for wrap around insulation or sheathing, including the harnessing of wires and cables and general repair work.

PVC insulation and sheathing has widespread use in both domestic and industrial settings. It can be found in cables for power transmission, telecommunications, automotive cables, and harnesses, and in many different kinds of appliance wiring. Many different standards apply, including those from the International Electrotechnical Commission and Underwriters' Laboratories.

In the EU, all electrical goods must be supplied with an integrally moulded plug, to ensure that it has been wired up correctly and has the appropriate fuse fitted. PVC-P can be used in this application.

5.2.1.1 Fire Performance of Electrical Cable

Because fires can begin in electrical systems, the fire safety of wire and cable insulation and sheathing materials must be given a high priority in design and specification.

As explained in other sections, the high chlorine content of PVC makes it inherently more flame resistant than most alternatives used in electrical products. Although this effect is reduced due to the presence of plasticisers, this property can be enhanced by plasticiser selection and the incorporation of flame retardants and smoke suppressants. PVC-P cable will burn when exposed to a significant flame source (above 315 °C), but is slow to ignite and will typically self-extinguish when the flame source is removed.

The possible introduction of an acid fume test as part of fire safety testing under the EU Construction Products Directive could influence the future use of PVC in electrical cable (see Section 4.6.7).

5.2.2 Resilient Flooring

Resilient PVC-P flooring has become a valued design tool for many interior designers and architects. This can cover areas with heavy traffic use (contract flooring), sport and gym facilities, or in areas that must be kept clean (hospitals). There is also extensive use in residential areas. The material is available in different forms: cushioned (foam) flooring, solid sheet, and solid tile (may be self-adhesive).

A major aspect for vinyl flooring is its design flexibility. Virtually any look and style can be obtained to suit any decor due to the type of prints, finishes, and colours that can be achieved on the PVC substrate. The floor can be made to enhance the aesthetic features of the interior environment. Pattern and colour can be used to make a large room seem smaller or a small room more expansive. Hard surfaces can be mimicked, but with a warmer feel. Noise is reduced with a comfortable underfoot feeling.

Safety features, such as enhanced slip-retardant surfaces or control of build-up of static electricity, can be incorporated.

The role of vinyl flooring in healthcare facilities is also significant. Being almost impervious to water and having seams that can be sealed or welded, spills can be easily cleaned with disinfectant cleaners, leaving bacteria fewer places to hide and grow.

Some limitations as to its use apply. This can be in areas where heavy or sharp objects are dropped causing tearing, permanent indentation can occur from loads, or in outdoor installations where excessive heat and/or sunlight can cause distortion or discolouration. Damage can also occur from burning cigarettes, matches, or very hot items.

Different formulations and flooring construction are used for different applications. Test criteria cover the ability of the flooring:

- To withstand loads of different types – impact caused by momentary indentations, static loads, which are those that remain in a stationary position for long periods of time, and rolling traffic.
- To be resistant to stains and chemicals, appropriate to the situation.
- To reflect light to suit the illumination of the facility.
- To deaden noise in heavy traffic areas.
- To be safe from normal fire hazards.

The flooring is laid over a dry wood or concrete sub-floor, using a suitable adhesive. Seams can be welded or sealed for appropriate locations and flooring laid flush to the wall or shaped for a self-coving effect.

An alternative to vinyl flooring is linoleum, which is making a comeback, based on its perceived superior environmental credentials of renewable resources and biodegradability at end of life (see Section 9.4).

5.2.3 Wall Covering

Vinyl wall covering is also a valued design tool for many interior designers and architects. The reasons are both aesthetic and practical. A wide range of patterns, finishes, and colours are available for decorating almost every surface type. This, linked to enhanced durability of stain resistance, washability, and strength, has led to their popularity. In addition, they can be supplied pre-pasted in dry form, with the adhesive being activated in water.

An important factor has been new developments concerning photogravure and high-speed processing techniques.

Most wall coverings consist of three layers:

- The substrate or backing, which goes against the wall and is the carrier for the other layers. The backing can be a wide variety of materials ranging from woven and non-woven fabrics to lightweight paper.

The intermediate layer is vinyl and provides the surface upon which the decorative layer is printed. It also provides the background colour.

The decorative top layer, comprising inks and a protective coating, is applied to the intermediate layer. This is the thinnest layer and is usually the major reason why the wall covering was chosen.

There are several different categories of vinyl wall covering, each with specific performance characteristics.

Vinyl-coated Paper – a paper substrate coated with compact PVC. Classified as washable and strippable, it is resistant to moisture and suitable for residential bathrooms and kitchens.

Paper-backed Vinyl – with a thicker vinyl sheet, applied via a plastisol coat onto paper, this wallpaper is classified as scrubbable (in its compact form) and peelable. It resists moisture, stains, and grease and can be used in most areas in the house or business. The vinyl coating can be compact (with or without embossing), expanded (either during the hot embossing stage or chemically), or textured foam (either self-coloured or paintable). The blown vinyl' gives a three-dimensional effect and is good for covering imperfect walls, but it is not suitable for areas requiring regular cleaning.

Fabric-backed Vinyl – a compact vinyl intermediate layer laminated to a woven or non-woven fabric substrate. The vinyl layer thickness can vary to suit the intended end use. The woven fabric can be scrim. The non-woven fabric is produced from cellulose pulps and textile fibres, combined with binders and reinforced with acrylates. An alternative construction is a solid or expanded vinyl layer, coated onto a non-woven tissue substrate, which gives dimensional stability. This allows direct application to the wall in a paste-the-wall concept. This type of construction is considered more breathable, i.e., allows water and air to pass through and so helps to reduce mould and mildew problems in warm, humid conditions. The incorporation of a microbiocide in the PVC formulation will also assist.

5.2.4 Roofing Membranes

PVC roofing membranes are based on single-ply technology, utilising PVC-P, for commercial and industrial buildings with low-slope roofs. Obviously, they must be designed to withstand wear and tear in the toughest of weather conditions and remain watertight over many years. Flame resistance is also an important factor. Cost effectiveness and low weight are other factors.

Vinyl roofing membranes are typically light coloured and hence tend to reflect heat away from the rooftop and so reduce the amount of heat that enters the building. This can assist in reducing the operating cost of air conditioning. Patterns, logos, and colour variety can be incorporated to match particular design requirements. Membranes are designed to repel dirt, maintaining aesthetic appeal and maximising reflectivity. The internal reinforcement fabric is usually based on woven polyester or fibreglass.

Vinyl roofing membranes can be designed to resist wind uplift, structural movement, and harsh outdoor elements. They are formulated for good low-temperature flexibility and high-temperature tolerance. Membranes are usually sealed by overlapping, using hot air to weld the joints giving a permanent and watertight seal. Many different roofing types can be accommodated, such as barrels, domes, steep slopes, and large expansive flat roofs.

There are three main fastening techniques to suit roof pitch and design. These include mechanical fastening, adhesion bonding (using water-based or low solvent-based adhesive on both the substrate

and the membrane), and use of ballast such as stone, concrete, and so on. The adhered system is installed directly over a rigid insulation board that has been fastened to a suitable substrate.

Vinyl membranes can also be used to re-roof and re-cover existing roofs.

Another application is in temporary or permanent inflatable buildings for sports halls, warehouses, and so on. The membrane construction can be specifically designed for this application.

5.2.5 Coated Metal

Aluminium or steel coils can be spread coated with a PVC-P protective and decorative surface. This application has a proven history with the PVC-P coating giving excellent flexibility and high impact and chemical resistance, linked to good weatherability. Different colours and embossed finishes are used to give distinctive features. The coated sheet material is supplied in coil form for subsequent use by cutting and forming into facades or roofing sheets. PVC-P is very cost effective in this role and eliminates the need for painting and maintenance.

Fencing and street furniture signs can also be coated to give high-gloss and weather-resistant finishes.

5.2.6 Toys and Baby Care Items

PVC-P formulations can be adjusted to give the exact performance and quality requirements for many different type of toys, such as dolls, bath toys, inflatable paddling pools, balls, and so on. Still retaining their cost competitiveness, various production techniques are available for conventional toys and toys designed to meet new trends, film merchandising, and so on.

Important aspects are the bright colours that can be achieved, the different shapes available from different moulds, flexibility, and easy assembling techniques. Vinyl-coated fabrics can also be printed with suitable designs. All vinyl materials, toys, teethers, and so on, can also be kept clean and hygienic.

However, it should be noted that there is still considerable political discussion about the safety of the phthalate plasticiser diisononyl phthalate used in toys and baby care items (see Section 9.2.3.1). The European PVC industry, in particular the European Council for Plasticisers and Intermediates, is contesting the proposed ban which has ignored the EU risk assessment results.

5.2.7 Safety and Personal Protection

5.2.7.1 Buoys and Fenders

Rotationally moulded PVC-P has uses for flotation devices, such as buoys and fenders, due to the shapes and bright colours that can be generated.

5.2.7.2 Rainwear, Aprons, and Gloves

Spread-coated PVC-P has another well-proven application in heavy-duty or domestic use, in rainwear, aprons, and gloves.

Rainwear can be made as functional or fashion dress items, in bright solid or subdued semi-transparent colours with suitable flashing.

Aprons and tabards are designed for both domestic and commercial use, with attractive designs, which are fun to wear and easily wiped clean. They can also be machine washable. Safety aprons are also manufactured to protect the wearer when using knives, hazardous materials, and so on.

Safety gloves, which can incorporate improved grip properties due to an external coarser surface finish, also utilise PVC-P on a cotton liner. The process allows a variety of colours, sizes, and lengths in different formulations to suit exposure to different materials (oils, fish, and so on).

5.2.8 Automotive and Transport

5.2.8.1 Interior Trim

PVC-P is used extensively for the interior trim of cars and light vehicles. This is due to its aesthetic leather-like appearance and feel, with good scratch resistance. The PVC-P must be formulated to meet the specifications of the different automotive suppliers.

Dashboards and armrests are moulded items, with door panels being made from expanded or compact PVC-P coated onto synthetic fabric or cotton. The coated fabric permits the use of lower cost manufacturing methods for assembly. Colour, texture, and feel can be made to suit the required design.

PVC-P plastisols are also used for the manufacture of automotive component covers, gear lever bellows, hand grips, cable shrouds, gaiters, sleeves, and end caps in brightly coloured and high-gloss dip mouldings.

High-density PVC-P sheets are very effective for sound insulation and are used to keep the inside of the vehicle quiet (from engine or exterior noises). They are formed to the shape that they are required to fit.

5.2.8.2 Exterior Automotive Protection and Trim

PVC-P is used for underbody protection due to its waterproof qualities, good adhesion to steel, and resistance to impact from stones, and so on, on roads. Its application and subsequent gelation also fits with the paint spraying and low-temperature drying ovens.

Both PVC-U and PVC-P, with or without glass fibre reinforcement, can be used for decorative and protective profile. The design is created to suit the overall flow lines and colour of the car.

5.2.8.3 Tarpaulins

PVC-P-coated polyester fabric is ideal for tarpaulins for covering trucks, and so on, due to good weathering properties and dirt resistance. Colour can match the designers' scheme with logos and company information easily applied.

5.2.9 Advertising Banners

Many advertising banners are based on PVC-P-coated fabric, due to various attributes linked to printability in any eye-catching colour or design, lightweight construction, and durability.

A more recent development is based on using vinyl mesh for building wraps. Utilising digital imaging technology, huge images can cover buildings with photographs, advertisements, or murals. Again, this use is based on ease of printability and ability to withstand different weather conditions.

Reference

1. *PVC Pipe Systems Manual*, joint publication between WRc plc, Swindon, UK and the BPF, London, UK. Available free online (*www.wrcplc.co.uk/pvc*).

2. L.R. Holloway in *Proceedings of the PVC 99 Conference*, Brighton, UK, 1999, p.92.

6 Processing of PVC

The intimate mixing of polyvinyl chloride (PVC) resin with appropriate additives is necessary prior to converting it into a thermoplastic melt.

6.1 Dry Blend Mixing

Dry blend mixes are powder compounds resulting from the blending together of primarily suspension-PVC (S-PVC) resin together with the other formulation ingredients.

6.1.1 High Intensity

Batch high-speed mixing, followed by a cooling stage, is the most favoured process to produce unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U) and relevant plasticised PVC (PVC-P) dry blends at high outputs. The process is as follows:

- Raw material storage and supply of all formulation ingredients to the mixer.
- Dosing and spraying of all the ingredients (appropriate for the product form and weight loading), in the correct order if necessary, into the mixer. This can be semi- or fully-automated.
- Mixing (a two-speed operation may be used) to the correct temperature by which time mixing has been completed. This is normally automatically controlled.
- Discharge from the hot mixer, through a filter mesh if required, into the cooler mixer.
- When the dry blend is sufficiently cool, it is discharged via a filter to remove oversize particles. Suction stream or screw conveying is used to transport the dry blend to the feed stations for processing.

Other important criteria also have to be considered for the dry blend mixing stage and subsequent transportation to the processing equipment:

- Dry blend homogeneity and consistency.
- Free-flow ability.
- Bulk density.
- Ease of handling and storage stability.

High-intensity mixers are vertically mounted cylindrical bowls, of volume varying from 40 to 2000 litres, with the mixing tool (propellers or knives) base mounted on a mixing shaft and a top deflector to redistribute the material. Tool blade designs vary depending on the manufacturer. Tool speeds

of 300 up to 1500 rpm are used, depending on the motor drive and bowl volume. A deep vortex is created to allow the material to be constantly rotating within the bowl and thus there is an optimum mixer loading to achieve this effect. Under the effect of primarily frictional heat, the temperature rises, allowing the absorption of the liquid and low-melting solid components. Further mixing ensures that the non-melting components are efficiently dispersed (in some cases fillers and certain pigments are added just prior to reaching the final mixing temperature). The hot mix (now around 110–130 °C) is transferred to a much larger (twice to three times the volume of the intensive mixer) water-cooled, low-intensity mixer until a temperature of ~50 °C is reached. The aim is to expose the dry blend to as much effective cooling surface as possible. This results in reduced agglomeration and improved free-flowing properties (by reducing electrostatic charges).

PVC-P formulations take longer to mix due to the time necessary for plasticiser absorption to occur.

The removal of dust and fumes from the workplace is also necessary for such installations.

Batch monitoring and verification of composition procedures should also be in place. Motor load amperage and mixing temperature increase are also good records of the mixing process, particularly for the plasticiser absorption phase.

6.1.2 Low Intensity

Virtually shear-free, low-speed horizontal mixers offer gentler product handling with a uniform distribution of all ingredients, with no change in particle identity. The mixer walls, jacketed for heating and cooling, carry the bulk material back into the centre. This produces continuous dividing and reuniting of the material. Centrifugal forces are sufficient to throw material particles into free space where they collide with other particles. This breaks up agglomerates. Normally, this technique is used for cold mixing and by heating to aid plasticiser absorption.

Types of mixers are U-shaped troughs with either helical ribbon or paddle agitators. The helical blades are designed with the outer ribbon moving material towards the centre and the inner ribbon moving the material towards the wall. The ribbon also rotates at between 25 and 75 rpm to move the material both radially and laterally. Paddle agitators are an alternative, with the paddles positioned to move materials in opposing lateral, as well as radial, directions.

6.2 Liquid PVC Blending

Plastisols are essentially liquid dispersions of non-absorbent (at ambient temperature) spherical particles of emulsion or emulsion/microsuspension PVC resins in plasticisers. Other additives such as heat stabilisers, viscosity control agents, and so on, are also necessary. The resulting product is a flowing liquid or paste-like material.

The mixing process is critical in order that the PVC agglomerates (between 10 and 50 μm) are broken down. The finished plastisol contains a mixture of particles and agglomerates varying between 1 and 20 μm. The plasticiser penetrates the agglomerates during mixing and gives a lubricating coating, so allowing them to move against each other. This in turn allows the agglomerates to break up and release air.

Mixing temperatures, generated by friction, are normally in the region of 35–45 °C. As the temperature increases, the plasticiser viscosity decreases which also assists the wetting of the particles.

Mixers consist of mixing blades that are raised and lowered into the mixing bowl. The types of mixers used are:

- High-speed dispersion vertical mixers, which are fitted with a variable speed drive and a toothed disc at the end of the vertical shaft. This type suits the lower viscosity plastisols used in wall and floor coverings.

- Lower-speed planetary mixers are fitted with vertical trellis-type paddles, which rotate around the drive access in a circular motion, while orbiting around the mixing bowl. The paddles continually advance around the wall of the bowl, removing material and transporting it to the interior.

There may be a two-stage mixing procedure used where all the solids are dispersed in part of the plasticiser. The remaining plasticiser is added at the second stage, thereby improving plastisol mixing. This type of mixer requires longer mixing times but is suitable for high-viscosity pastes with very little friction being developed in the process.

All mixers are usually enclosed and fitted with a vacuum de-aeration facility, particularly necessary for transparent topcoat and foam formulations.

6.3 Gelation

In the case of PVC plastisols, gelation occurs on the basis of heat imparted to the material during the processing stage (above 150 °C). As the temperature rises, absorption of the plasticiser causes the resin particles to swell and coalesce, solidifying the plastisol. A further rise in temperature leads to full fusion, so that on cooling the composition gains optimum mechanical properties. Gelation has been shown to occur in several steps (as explained in Section 3.2.2), depending on the speed of dissolution of the PVC particles. A higher concentration of plasticiser requires a higher gelation temperature. Other influences are the solvating power of the plasticiser and K value of the PVC.

For dry blends, melt compounding is required to give the thermomechanical energy necessary to achieve interdispersion down to microscopic and possibly intermolecular level. A high level of mechanical heat is generated due to heat input and shear generation and it is now generally accepted that the gelation mechanism involves compaction, densification, fusion, and elongation followed by melting. Much work in this area has been carried out at Loughborough University by Professor Gilbert and her team where relevant papers can be sourced (*www.lboro.ac.uk/departments/iptme*).

The gelation or fusion level is associated with the degree of destruction of the inherent particulate boundaries of the PVC grains and the subsequent merging of the primary particles and aggregates. In addition, there is an extensive network of interconnecting crystalline regions that develop with increased processing temperature. This degree of fusion and the extent of crystallinity that exists within the polymer network are essential to achieve the finished product quality and properties, the crystallites acting as crosslinks in a three-dimensional network. It seems that there is an optimum level of gelation for a particular product and/or process method.

Several different gelation measurement methods have been described in the literature, particularly differential scanning calorimetry. In addition, capillary rheometry, transmission electron microscopy,

and atomic force microscopy have also been studied. Gelation level is characterised either by crystallinity-related aspects or factors that relate to the development of the three-dimensional network and the corresponding disappearance of the particulate structure [1, 2, 3].

Another technique is based on solvent absorption usually involving methylene chloride and visualising swelling and solution effects.

6.4 Melt Processing

PVC, being an amorphous polymer, has a lower specific heat capacity than semi-crystalline polymers. This means that the energy required for softening the resin will be lower, i.e., less costly melt processing. Similarly, the amount of heat to be removed during cooling after melt processing is less. Another positive point is reasonable melt elasticity and good melt strength, which allows the use of PVC in many different melt processing techniques. Die swell is also relatively low (die swell results as the polymer melt emerges from the die and is a function of the elasticity).

However, these benefits must be set against the high melt viscosity and process heat stability limitations of this material.

6.4.1 Melt Compounding

For certain operations or scale of operations, the dry blend is fed directly into the processing equipment, e.g., pipe and profile extrusion, which obviously includes the melt compounding stage.

For some processes or smaller scale operations, the dry blend (PVC-U or PVC-P) must be gelled/melt compounded, usually into a pellet or dice product form. This may be necessary for the type of processing equipment used for shaping the material, e.g., calendering, or where a high degree of homogenisation is required to achieve the performance requirements of the final product. Continuous melt compounding extruders are now the favoured option based on:

- Counter-rotating (i.e., in opposite direction) twin screw as explained in Section 6.4.2.1.
- Co-rotating (in the same clockwise or anticlockwise direction) twin screws with kneading elements. The barrel is in segments and the length is determined by the process needs, with the screws designed to include mixing, conveying, plasticising, and homogenising.
- Oscillating kneader extruder, based on a single helical screw blade which, in addition to its rotary motion, also makes a reciprocating axial movement. In one complete turn of the screw there is one forward and backward motion. Kneading teeth or pins are mounted on the barrel, which is hinged for easy access, and the material is sheared in the shear gap between these teeth and the screw flights. This technique is reputed to give maximum mixing performance with relatively low energy consumption. In addition, the design of the kneader barrel and screw gives a self-cleaning or wiping capability.

A twin-screw feeder unit is used to dose dry blend into the compounder. A discharge screw feeds the melt into a pelletiser unit, which is a multi-hole die plate through which the melt is forced into strands, cut by rotating knives, and cooled.

6.4.2 Extrusion

6.4.2.1 Twin-Screw

Almost exclusively used for extrusion of PVC-U into pipe, profile, sheet, and compounds (including flexible), extrusion equipment consists of a cylindrical barrel containing two close-fitting, intermeshed, counter-rotating Archimedean screws. Low shear processing and venting capabilities are key features of twin-screw extruders. Venting is carried out under vacuum (degassing) to remove volatile components at the appropriate fusion stage.

PVC dry blend is fed in via a hopper at the start of the screws and is conveyed forward, softened, sheared, and finally gelled by rotation of the screws and the heat of the barrel. The resulting homogeneous viscous melt is forced through a heated die fitted to the exit end of the barrel. Thereafter the downstream equipment sizes or calibrates, cools, and pulls off the product which is also cut to desired lengths.

The heated screws rotate in opposite directions (one screw clockwise, the other screw anticlockwise) to each other and perform three basic functions, feeding, gelation, and metering, with the screw flights designed accordingly. Venting is incorporated to remove entrapped air and volatiles. The barrel is temperature controlled, usually in different zones along the length.

The concept of twin-screw extrusion is short residence time in order to minimise thermal degradation, linked to high output. Screws are typically nitrided, molybdenum plated, and/or chromed to protect against acid corrosion, abrasion (primarily from the filler), and contact with the barrel wall. Barrels are internally lined with various high-alloy nitrided steels.

Screw design is complex, but enables the melt temperature (which can be in the region of 190–200 °C) to be controlled more accurately. Screws are categorised by the ratio of their length to depth (L/D ratio) and have been 22:1 (22D) and 26:1 (26D). New 36D extruders have also been introduced which are claimed to have higher output in combination with less wear.

Dry blend can be fed into the extruder either by flood or doser feeding, determined by the dry blend flow characteristics, packing density, and output requirements. Flood feeding is obviously the preferred option.

Two main types of screw design are used, i.e., conical and parallel. Conical twin-screw extruders have two intermeshing screws which together form a cone shape (see **Figure 6.1**). These screws are shorter, with larger diameter shafts than parallel screws. Screw deflection inside the barrel is reduced and as a result this extends the life of screws and barrel. The feeding zone offers more surface area allowing faster and

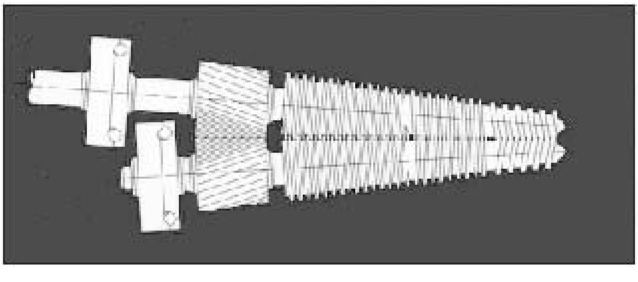


Figure 6.1 Conical twin screws. (Source: *http://plastics.milacron.com*)

more uniform heat transmission. Thrust bearings are much larger than with parallel screws. A smaller exit diameter lowers rotational shear and reduces back thrust, while increasing pumping efficiency.

Conical twin-screw extruders are usually used for low to medium output ranges. Later developments have focused on increasing output by increasing screw flight depth, particularly at the metering zone.

Parallel twin-screw extruders have two intermeshing parallel screws with higher output capability, due to higher torque power input. A wider processing window is also believed to be a feature.

A useful review of the twin-screw extrusion process has been presented [4].

6.4.2.2 Single-Screw

Single-screw extruders are fed by pre-gelled compound in solid pellet form or powdered PVC dry blend (primarily flexible). These are conveyed along a flighted screw enclosed in a heated barrel.

Screw design is based on three functions, starting at the feed zone: (1) compacting and conveying towards the (2) melting section under the action of shear against the barrel wall and (3) metering or pumping into the die.

Single-screw extruders develop more frictional heat and rely more on back pressure from the die to improve homogeneity. Screw design involves higher compression ratios, e.g., 2:1, which means the volume occupied between two flights at the start of the screw is twice that occupied between two consecutive flights at the end of the screw. The L/D ratio is typically 24:1.

PVC-P applications, such as wire and cable, glazing strip, profile, tubing, hose, and so on, run on single-screw extruders which are fed by gelled compound.

6.4.2.3 Co-extrusion

Co-extrusion permits the simultaneous capping of a specially formulated layer or layers of PVC (or alternative material) on to the bulk material, normally pipe or profile. The specially formulated layer is normally virgin PVC to cap lower cost virgin or regrind or foam to give good gloss, a particular colour and surface finish with good weathering performance, if necessary. The process can also be used to co-extrude gasket directly on to window and door profile [5].

6.4.2.4 Foam Extrusion

PVC-U foam extrusion has been known since the 1960s, but more rapid development has taken place due to improved specialist machinery and techniques. Additional benefits to those associated with solid PVC are weight and cost savings. Two processes are possible: (1) free foaming where the blowing gas freely expands in the melt extrudate as it leaves the die going into the calibrator; and (2) inward expansion (Celuka process) where the extrudate is fed on to the calibrator walls via a die mandrel, the torpedo creating a space into which the extrudate expands. The die and calibrator are the same size and this process creates its own skin on the extrudate surface.

Free foam extrusion may also have a skin co-extruded on to the surface as the inherent surface skin is very thin by this process.

6.4.2.5 Extrusion Tooling

There can be many different components in the extrusion tooling section between the end flange of the extruder barrel and the die. A breaker plate gives the seal between the barrel flange and the adapter. The adapter adapts the thermoplastic flow into the die system, which will have lead-in channels to streamline the flow into the final shaping process at the die lips. The breaker plate can hold screens or screen packs of differing mesh size to filter out contamination. They also create back pressure to assist with homogenisation.

Die design is critical to the extrusion process and material rheology and flow through the die, once ascertained on a trial and error basis, can now be investigated using techniques to determine shear viscosity and slip viscosity. Computer-aided design systems, linked to flow and cooling simulation and a database of rheology and physical properties, are being applied to die design, particularly profile. The complex behaviour of PVC during the extrusion and die forming process can be computer modelled, with many potential changes being quickly evaluated.

6.4.2.6 Downstream Equipment

Profile forming is achieved by passing the extrudate through a series (up to three) of 'dry' calibration tools, which cool the material through contact with metallic walls of the calibrators. Vacuum holes or slots are used to improve contact with the water-cooled walls and maintain final product dimensions. Alternatively, improved and more even cooling by direct water contact is achieved with vacuum tank calibrators, with flooded profiles and support discs. The supporting discs scrape the water off the profile surface and this gives a good heat transfer. There is only need for one dry calibrator (so less expensive) in this process.

Vacuum tanks, with spray cooling, are common for pipe extrudate. The material is vacuum sized and subsequently cooled with water by total immersion or spray.

The extrudate is transported away from the calibration unit by a belt haul-off, the speed of which is linked to the extrusion speed. The final operation is the in-process cutting to length.

The complete extrusion process is now automated, via computers, for the control of speed, temperature, melt throughput, weight or thickness tolerance, and documentation.

Some pipe systems are supplied with push-fit elastomeric sealing ring joints, integrally formed with the pipe. This is carried out by heating plain-ended pipe, reshaping, and expanding locally to form a socket. The expanded shape is then cooled with the sealing ring fitted automatically during the forming operation, or as a post-forming operation.

Corrugated pipe, primarily used in land drainage, is produced using thin-wall extrudate which feeds into a corrugator system based on mould blocks transported along tracks. Vacuum is also used to take up the corrugated shape. Sheet and film extrusion lines include cooling and polishing rolls.

6.4.2.7 Plate-out

Plate-out is a particular problem for PVC extrusion and is the formation of undesired deposits within the extrusion process, components of which are screws, die, calibrator, and so on. Plate-out

is usually caused by incompatibility within, or reactions resulting from, the formulation ingredients in combination with processing conditions. The mechanism for plate-out formation has been studied [6] and attributed to:

- Separation of PVC-incompatible, volatile materials in the de-gassing zone, which condense in cooler regions.
- Excess external lubricant forming a phase with calcium stearate, which coats inorganic ingredients (stabiliser, filler, and titanium dioxide). These particles migrate to the region between the metal and polymer melt and become trapped in regions of compression and decompression. The liquid phase continues, leaving behind the inorganic particles which stay and initiate a further build-up. Moisture in the die, which is not removed, also encourages this mechanism (the Lippoldt mechanism).
- Moisture also plays a substantial role in the formation of plate-out in the calibrator. Water-insoluble substances, with boiling points well above 100 °C, are ejected by steam into the gas phase. Remaining water originating from lead stabiliser system is not removed and is heated under pressure in the extruder to the mass melt temperature. With the pressure outside the extruder being much lower, the steam escapes and carries with it formulation ingredients so that a layer of coating settles in the calibrator.
- The limited solubility of various organic substances in the polymer melt also plays a part. When the melt passes into the calibrator, the mass temperature is reduced rapidly and with it the solubility of the ingredients. There is a build-up of heterogeneous phases as in the Lippoldt mechanism, one of which can precipitate between the cold calibrator and the extruder.

6.5 Injection Moulding

Injection moulding of PVC-U articles is confined to relatively simple shapes, due to its viscoelastic nature and process heat stability issues. Melt temperatures of between 170 and 210 °C are necessary.

Injection moulding is a discontinuous process that produces articles in their final shape. A mobile reciprocating screw, within the heated barrel of the machine, gels, transports, and forces the hot material via channels or runners, sprues, and gates through a nozzle and into the mould cavity. The mould, which is in two halves, is maintained at a specific temperature (fixed between 20 and 60 °C) and is clamped under a specific pressure load. After cooling, the clamping unit is opened, the two mould halves separate, and the part is ejected. The waste material, such as runners and sprues, is granulated for reprocessing.

The relatively high melt viscosity and potential thermal degradation of PVC requires close attention in relation to temperature, shear conditions, and flow geometry. The most important stages of the process are melt preparation and mould filling to minimise shear heating caused by excessive back pressure, screw speed, or injection rate. Screw and mould designs have made big advances. Screw-tip cooling is recommended, as this is where the material is at its hottest. Screws with a compression ratio of 2:1 and an L/D ratio of 18:1–24:1 are common (particularly if moulding directly from dry blend). Chrome plating is essential to protect the components from HCl. Mould shrinkage can be 0.3–0.5% depending on the article.

PVC-U applications, usually based on lower molecular weight polymer, cover the construction and telecommunication areas.

PVC-P material is easier to mould but mould shrinkage can be higher (above 1%). PVC-P applications are footwear, automotive, medical, and electrical, including complex shapes and thin-walled items.

Strains imposed on the material during injection can result in residual stresses causing undesirable shrinkage, sinks, and surface defect formation.

6.6 Extrusion Blow Moulding

For thin-walled containers, PVC-U gives a combination of high clarity, inherent rigidity, and good barrier properties. However, the use of PVC in this area has greatly decreased due to the changeover to polyethylene terephthalate for cost-effectiveness reasons.

Extrusion is mainly by a single-screw horizontal machine which changes to vertical flow via a 'swan neck' arrangement. Air is fed to the centre of the parison.

In the stretch blow moulding process, which is the most common, the extruded parison is initially blown undersized, and then stretched and blown to its final shape in a second mould. This produces biaxial molecular orientation of the container walls, which improves impact resistance, rigidity, and clarity. However, permeability is reduced.

6.7 Calendering

A calender is essentially a set of four very large steel rollers mounted in a cast iron frame, usually in an inverted L-shape, in such a way that they can be rotated, and the distance between each pair of rollers adjusted. Consecutive rolls squeeze the material resulting finally in a continuous sheet of the desired thickness. PVC, ranging from rigid to semi-rigid to flexible, is produced continuously in film or sheet up to approximately 1.5 mm in thickness and up to and over 2.0 m in width.

Calendering is much more capital intensive than the extrusion process, but higher production rates and more accurate product thickness are obtained. Mini calenders or Calandrette® lines are available for the production of rigid and semi-rigid PVC films with lower investment costs.

The calender rolls have to transmit heat evenly across the face and need to be independently variable in speed so that friction between two adjacent rolls can be applied. The surfaces of the rolls need to be contoured to an accuracy of a few micrometres to ensure even film thickness in both lengthwise and crosswise directions. The surfaces of the final two rolls can also be textured, ranging from highly polished to heavy matt, depending on the sheet finish required. Hot melt is generated through a continuous extruder compounder feeding into the intake nip of the calender. Alternatively, an intensive internal mixer can be used consisting of two heavy-duty tear-drop-shaped counter-rotating rotors in a heated chamber, based on a batch process, feeding on to a two-roll holding mill.

The passage of hot melt between the rolls creates a pressure forcing them apart. There is a rolling bank of feed material created in the gap or 'nip' set between the first pair and also the second pair of rolls. Passage of the material is controlled by roll temperature, surface finish, and the ratio of the roll speeds at the nip. The final calender nip controls film thickness.

The hot sheet is drawn from the final roll by stripper rollers that can be temperature controlled to permit gradual cooling, and regulated rotationally to allow stretching to the required dimensions.

In-line embossing can be carried out by feeding the hot sheet between a heated embosser and rubber back-up roll. Final cooling is achieved using water-cooled drums.

Plate-out can also be a problem in this area due to the formation of coatings that adversely influence sheet quality.

Typical applications for PVC-P materials include floor and wall coverings, film packaging, decorative surface coatings, and stationery. Calendered PVC-U sheet is used for thermoforming of packs and containers.

6.8 Plastisol Moulding Processes

PVC plastisol compounds can be manipulated into shapes, or applied to fabrics in the ungelled state by either simple flow techniques or by very low-pressure processes. The main techniques are spreading, dipping, spraying, and rotational and slush moulding.

6.8.1 Rheology

An understanding of the rheological behaviour is necessary, as most PVC pastes are classified as non-Newtonian liquids and can be dilatent (shear thickening), pseudoplastic (shear thinning), or thixotropic (viscosity reduces with time under constant shear). Each process technique requires specific rheological characteristics to suit the process. This is achieved by appropriate formulation based on the PVC grades developed for the process and knowledge of the influence of shear rate and time under constant shear.

Newtonian flow behaviour is also possible with some specific paste PVC grades.

6.8.2 Spreading or Coating

For the coating of continuous substrates, such as flooring, wall covering, and tarpaulins, direct or transfer coating is used. The paste can be applied directly using knife on roller or belt, or indirectly via reverse roll coating. The substrate can be a carrier material that is removed later. This process permits multi-layer coatings, including foam, and embossed finishes to be carried out in line. The final process involves pregelling and gelation in a continuous oven.

Screen coating, typically used for wall coverings, relies on plastisol being pumped into a cylindrical metal screen with fine perforations. The paste is forced through the perforations via a rubber blade on to the substrate - the amount deposited is controlled by the screen mesh size and rubber blade pressure and angle.

A coating installation can consist of up to three coating heads whereby up to three layers can be applied in a single-step process. One of these can be a foam layer, where a blowing agent is activated to decompose with gas generation. Chemical embossing, to give a sculpted effect, can be achieved by incorporation of an inhibitor into the print design layer. This prevents the activation of the blowing agent in those areas.

Coil coating, usually on metal, is carried out using a roller with concentric grooves, with the depth of the grooves determining the coating weight.

6.8.3 Rotational, Slush, and Dip Moulding

Rotational moulding is carried out using closed moulds that undergo rotation through 360° in three dimensions after feeding in a fixed quantity of paste. The rotation ensures that the paste is evenly coated over the mould interior. The moulds are fed through an oven where the paste is gelled and fused. On cooling, the article is peeled from the mould, which is designed to split open. This process is very flexible and allows the manufacture of very small parts (e.g., parts for small toys) through to large parts (e.g., tanks and containers). Automotive armrests and dashboards are also made by this technique.

Slush moulding utilises heated open moulds which are inverted to remove excess plastisol. Layer thickness is controlled by the rheology of the paste, timing, and temperature. Consecutive layers can also be built up in this process. Typical products made by this technique are PVC-coated flexible foam for automotive trim or boots.

Dip moulding utilises a pre-heated former which is dipped into the paste and withdrawn at a constant rate. After heating in an oven and cooled, the article is peeled off the former. Disposable gloves are manufactured by this process.

6.9 Powder Moulding Processes

Powdered materials can also be processed by rotational moulding and slush moulding techniques to give PVC-P articles.

Powder moulding processes can be used for metal treatment to give protection against corrosion and for aesthetic reasons.

6.9.1 Fluidised Bed

The fluidised bed consists of circulating a gas upwards through a layer of solid PVC particles lying on a porous grid inside a column. The treated object to be covered is pre-heated to about 350 °C and immersed in the fluid bed for a very short period to allow the PVC to coat it. After cooling, an oven annealing process may be carried out to smooth the surface.

References

1. M. Gilbert, D.A. Hemsley and A. Miadonye, *Plastics and Rubber Processing and Applications*, 1983, **3**, 4, 343.
2. K. Bortel and P. Szewczyk, *International Polymer Science and Technology*, 1997, **24**, 2, T/88.
3. A. Gonze, *Chimie et Industrie, Génie Chimique*, 1971, **104**, 422.
4. H. Eigruber in *Proceedings of PVC 99 Conference*, Brighton, UK, 1999, p.108.
5. S. Seifert in *Proceedings of PVC 2002: Towards a Sustainable Future Conference*, Brighton, UK, 2002, p.95.
6. M. Gilbert, N. Varshney, K. van Soon and M. Schiller in *Proceedings of PVC 2002: Towards a Sustainable Future Conference*, Brighton, UK, 2002, p.157.

7 Property Enhancement of PVC

The history of polyvinyl chloride (PVC) formulating is based on enhancing the properties derived from the starting raw material. The influence of impact modifiers and plasticisers has already been covered. This chapter focuses on work carried out to expand PVC, a so-called commodity plastic, into the property performance areas given by some engineering plastics, such as acrylonitrile–butadiene–styrene (ABS), and so on.

7.1 Crosslinked PVC

Crosslinking of PVC results in the improvement of a number of properties, particularly at elevated temperatures. Investigative work has been carried out on both unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U) and plasticised-PVC (PVC-P) formulations.

7.1.1 Chemical Crosslinking

Chemical crosslinkable formulations need to generate a sufficient crosslinked portion or gel content (up to 50%) with satisfactory processing stability (usually a conflict) and should not, of course, crosslink during processing. Crosslinking is achieved hydrolytically.

For some PVC-P formulations, mercaptosilanes and aminosilanes grafted by nucleophilic substitution during processing appear to be more suitable than organic peroxides in achieving improved solvent and abrasion resistance [1, 2].

Organic peroxide crosslinking of PVC foam formulations (based on emulsion-grade resin) has shown the positive benefit of a trimethylolpropane trimethacrylate (TMPTMA) compound as co-agent, with good thermal stability and a very dense crosslink network. In the presence of the peroxide, radical reactions occur and the TMPTMA is grafted onto the PVC chains with a resultant network formation [3].

The use of a reactive plasticiser, triallyl cyanurate, has also been shown to improve the high-temperature creep resistance of organic peroxide-crosslinked plastisols [4].

The chemical crosslinking of PVC-U formulations is considerably more difficult due to the fine balance of achieving a sufficient level of crosslinked polymer, adequate thermal stability, and the avoidance of premature crosslinking during processing. This has been investigated with successful results from aminosilane and peroxide/TMPTMA crosslinking systems, with slower crosslinking attributed to the reduced diffusion of water required to hydrolyse the silane. Thermal stability still has to be improved [5]. The peroxide crosslinking system has shown gel contents of 30–40% with improved mechanical properties using appropriate curing agent levels.

7.1.2 Irradiation Crosslinking

Irradiation crosslinking of PVC-U carried out over a dosing range of 20–200 kGy using an electron beam has shown a marked increase in glass transition temperature (T_g) in the presence of trimethylolpropane triacrylate (TMPTA), with minimal thermal degradation [6]. Electron beam irradiation has also been investigated on a PVC-P wire coating formulation, in the presence of different reactive monomers including TMPTA and TMPTMA, with the influence on different properties observed [7]. Flame retardancy of PVC-P formulations for wire and cable has also been improved using TMPTA and irradiation doses of 90 and 120 kGy with the incorporation of appropriate flame retardants [8].

7.2 Orientation

The mechanical properties of PVC-U can be improved substantially by stretching the polymer, usually in both directions (biaxially) but may be in one direction (uniaxially), at temperatures above T_g. In addition, material costs are reduced. Uses to which this process can be applied are pipe and sheet.

7.2.1 Pipe

As already indicated in Section 5.1.1.2, pressure pipe design, based on conventional PVC-U, has to take account of a higher safety factor. This is due to the more brittle nature of PVC pipes in comparison to polyethylene (PE) and therefore having a greater risk of not performing to their strength potential. If the ductile balance between strength and toughness could be changed to increase ductility, then a lower safety factor could be used [9].

Biaxial PVC has both higher strength and toughness, probably justifying a lower safety factor. However, the strength gains with oriented PVC are such that pipe stiffness limitations could be breached. This is a limiting criterion for strong materials where the pipe wall would be so thin as to allow deformation of the pipe. Thus, the safety factor of two has been maintained. Similarly, there is a limit to the strength that can be usefully exploited.

Table 7.1 shows the relationship between standard dimensional ratio (SDR; ratio between outside diameter and wall thickness) and stiffness for standard PVC-U and a biaxial PVC with a long term-strength of 40 MPa and a safety factor of two. These values apply for a 1 MPa pipe.

A stiffness value of 4 kPa is the minimum allowable value in CEN pressure standards. In **Table 7.2** it can be seen how strength and safety factor may be combined while still meeting the stiffness criterion.

Table 7.1 Relationship between SDR and stiffness for PVC-U and biaxial PVC

Material	Long-term strength (MPa)	SDR	Stiffness (kPa)
PVC-U	25	26	20
Biaxial PVC	40	41	6

Table 7.2 Operating pressure and stiffness values for a combination of long-term creep strength (LTS) and safety factor

Minimum required strength (MRS) (MPa)	Safety factor	SDR	Pressure (MPa)	Stiffness (kPa)
40	2	41	1	6
50	1.6	41	1.6	6

The process can be continuous and is essentially the extrusion of a thick-walled preform, which is stretched to produce a biaxial pipe. The key to the process is the mandrel over which the pipe is expanded, being hot and lubricated at the front end to facilitate the stretching process in the hoop direction. The orientation is frozen in at the back end of the mandrel which is cooled. A second calibration stage controls the outside diameter.

Molecular orientation introduces anisotropy into a material. This means having physical properties that are different in different directions. Thus, for effective enhancement of performance, properties must be enhanced in the appropriate direction and this is achieved in the process. There is a change in the stress yield curve with the removal of a clearly defined yield point.

Normally, an increase in strength is not conducive to an increase in both toughness and ductility. Brittle failures originate from defects that act as stress raisers. Although crack development and propagation is hindered by an increase in toughness, crack blunting by localised yielding is an effective part of the overall mechanism. It is the balance between strength and toughness that determines if brittle or ductile properties predominate. The enhanced toughness of biaxial pipe is shown by higher impact resistance and greater resistance to failure by slow crack creep mechanisms. This mechanism is based on the laminated structure of biaxial PVC, where crack propagation is hindered by the reduction in stress concentration at the crack tip as the crack passes through each layer.

7.2.2 Sheet

Biaxially orientated corrugated PVC sheets are produced for outdoor protection against the elements. Impact strength, including low-temperature impact, derived from the orientation process is significantly higher than that of standard extruded PVC corrugated sheet.

7.3 Blends and Alloys

7.3.1 Flexibilisers/Internal Plasticisers

In an attempt to move into application areas requiring the rubbery or elastomeric properties given by thermoplastic elastomers (TPE) and thermoplastic olefins (TPO), the mechanical blending of PVC resins with other elastomers has been developed. This internal plasticisation is the effect produced by structural groups incorporated into a polymer, which also has the effect of lowering T_g. However, cost efficiency and ease of processing have to be considered.

Chlorinated PE (CPE) modifiers have good compatibility with PVC, due to a similar structure, and are suitable for flexible PVC applications where a high degree of flexibility combined with durability and weatherability is required. The chlorine content of the CPE resin for this use is 42% and addition level would be >20 phr. Acting as a permanent plasticiser, the liquid plasticiser component can be eliminated or substantially reduced. End uses are in sheets, pond and reservoir liners, and roofing membranes.

Nitrile rubbers (NBR) are blended into PVC-P formulations giving vinyl-based TPE for use in glazing gaskets, footwear, tubing, and so on. NBR are copolymers of acrylonitrile and butadiene which are compatible with PVC and available in powder form, partitioned with PVC or $CaCO_3$ for ease of mixing and dispersion. Relatively easy to process, although high melt viscosity may be an issue, formulations including NBR have good oil and chemical resistance, better low-temperature flexibility, and improved abrasion resistance. Formulations with low compression set can also be utilised. Plasticiser loss is also reduced because of the affinity of NBR for plasticisers. Weatherability is poor.

ABS is added to semi-rigid PVC-P formulations to improve vacuum formability (hot melt strength and elongation) with increased tear strength and low-temperature flexibility necessary for automotive applications.

Ethylene–vinyl acetate copolymers (EVA) are used as polymeric modifiers. A vinyl acetate content from 45 to 70% confers good compatibility with PVC. The resulting formulations have good low-temperature flexibility and good weathering and ageing properties. High filler acceptance, including additives for flame resistance and low smoke emission, may also give improved performance characteristics.

Ethylene-based terpolymers, including EVA–carbon monoxide and ethylene–butyl acrylate–carbon monoxide, are available in a range of melt indices and molecular weight distributions to replace plasticisers at the higher performance specification end of flexible PVC. They have extremely good compatibility with PVC, with good clarity.

Graft copolymers of EVA copolymer with PVC combine the rubber elasticity and low-temperature characteristics of EVA with the mechanical properties and chemical resistance of PVC. The EVA content is varied, with the high EVA content grade suitable for plasticiser replacement to give flexible materials with very low volatility and migration.

7.3.2 Ultrahigh Molecular Weight (UHMW) PVC

A manufacturer in the USA, Teknor Apex, has introduced PVC elastomer compounds, based on UHMW resins, with a K value ranging from 80 to 100 [10]. Although more costly to produce, due to the lower temperature for polymerisation and to the higher molecular weights the resins are more crystalline with a higher porosity (thus capable of absorbing high plasticiser levels). As a result, the resin provides enhanced physical and elastomeric properties and retains formulation versatility. The physical properties of the compounds, including low-temperature brittleness and abrasion resistance, are superior to standard PVC-P. Compression set characteristics (deformation in a material remaining after it has been subjected to and released from a compressive force, usually expressed as a percentage of the original compression) at room temperature are similar to TPE. Flex fatigue resistance is also good. Super-soft materials with good physical properties and dry surface feel can be produced.

Applications include non-kinking medical tubing, medical resuscitators, gaskets and seals of low compression set and chemical resistance, weather strip, specialised electrical cable sheathing, and so on.

7.4 Nanocomposites

Composites based on layered inorganic compounds, such as clays, have been of interest for a number of years. The sheet-like structure of naturally occurring clay minerals, such as aluminosilicates, has layers with a thickness of around 1 nm; the lateral dimensions of these layers are up to several micrometres. This gives a very high aspect ratio (ratio of length to thickness) of above 1000. This feature has been utilised for incorporation of various materials. Synthetic (and purer) clays are also available. The clays are usually chemically modified to improve compatibility by cation substitution to increase layer spacing and reduce surface energy. This converts the clay surface functionality from hydrophilic to hydrophobic/organophilic. However, the most widely used ions are alkylammonium, which have a negative effect on PVC heat stability.

Common terms used are:

- *Intercalation* meaning incorporation of the required material between the layers.
- *Exfoliation* meaning cleaving off of the surface, exposing fresh surface for separation. This results in delamination and complete and uniform dispersion, therefore maximising the interactions of the components. The entire surface of the layers becomes available for the polymer.

Nanocomposites are nanoclay-based materials that contain the nanometer-sized clay at a low level in the resin system. Operating at a molecular level, these material types can give a large improvement in properties of the composite material, such as operating temperature, flame retardancy, barrier properties, stiffness, and toughness.

The influence of nano-precipitated calcium carbonate has already been covered in Section 3.6.1. To achieve good dispersion, a masterbatch concentrate must first be utilised. It is claimed that partial replacement of impact modifiers can be made using this material.

In comparison to other polymers, there have been relatively few details of investigations into PVC nanocomposites, but interest is increasing.

7.4.1 Melt Intercalation

Melt intercalation is based on blending the molten material with an organoclay to optimise the interaction between the two.

PVC/montmorillonite (MMT) nanocomposites have been prepared by blending organoclays of differing hydrophilicity with PVC and plasticiser. The thermal stability problems attributed to the quaternary amine used in the organoclay were overcome by pre-treating the organoclay with the plasticiser. The degree of clay intercalation was determined and the co-intercalation of the plasticiser facilitated exfoliation. Improved dimensional stability and barrier properties were obtained [11, 12].

The influence of alkyl quaternary ammonium on the heat stability of intercalated PVC/alkyl quaternary ammonium-modified MMT composites, compared to PVC/MMT composites, has also been evaluated [13].

Intercalated and partially exfoliated PVC/clay nanocomposites have been produced by melt blending. The best mechanical properties were achieved at 2% clay loading with 5–10% plasticiser content [14].

The melt blending and preparation of PVC/sodium MMT have been extensively tested as regards structure, thermal properties, dynamic mechanical properties, flammability, and smoke emission [15].

Epoxy resin has been suggested as a compatibiliser for PVC-U/MMT nanocomposites, with improved transparency and processing stability [16]. Transparency improved with increasing MMT content, the clay being pre-treated with the epoxy resin.

The presence of clay has been noted to retard the chain stripping thermal degradation of PVC-P, with enhanced char formation [17].

A study on the effect of different clay treatment on PVC/sodium MMT nanocomposites has shown that the content of organically modified MMT should be kept below 5% by weight to improve mechanical properties and processing stability with optical clarity retention [18].

7.4.2 Solvent Method

Solution blending of PVC with sodium MMT and an organically modified clay, using tetrahydrofuran as solvent, was found to produce a mixed immiscible intercalated nanocomposite with the clay causing a change in the degradation path of the polymer.

The solvent method is obviously more restrictive as it requires solvent removal and reuse for manufacturing on an industrial scale.

7.4.3 In Situ Polymerisation

With this technique, a layered silicate is first swollen by a liquid monomer, with the monomer migrating into the layers so that polymerisation can occur within the intercalated sheets with the clay layers becoming completely exfoliated.

In situ suspension polymerisation of initiator and comonomer-modified MMT in the presence of free radical initiators to give polymer layered silicate nanocomposites has been investigated [19]. Exfoliated nanocomposites were obtained in both cases, although monomer conversion was low using the initiator-modified MMT.

7.5 Wood Composites

The use of wood flour in plastic composites has expanded considerably, particularly in the USA. In comparison with traditional products, wood-filled PVC has superior weathering resistance but can be used as wood. Filler levels of up to 40–60% are typical and the main application is in decking and window components. However, high-density polyethylene-based wood composites have a much larger market share, particularly including recycled HDPE. Polypropylene can also be used as the plastic component. The advantages for the PVC composite are that coupling agents are not required (both wood and PVC are polar materials), weathering resistance is better, and burning behaviour is improved. Service temperature is also higher but the PVC is more brittle.

Processing is carried out on conventional twin-screw extruders with feeding support using crammer feeders. Drying of the wood fibre is necessary at some stage of the process before the polymer melts. The use of pelletised compound for processing on single-screw extruders is also common.

The attraction of this process is the use, or potential use, of waste wood products and recyclable polymer. The wood flour is sourced from sawdust and shavings which can be derived from hard or soft wood and is hammer milled to a very fine powder. Other cellulose sources are also possible, namely flax, rice hulls, jute, and so on.

Significantly decreased thermal linear expansion (in comparison to PVC-U) is a feature of the composites along with improved moisture resistance (in comparison to wood).

References

1. J. Pelka and B. Szablowska, *International Polymer Science and Technology*, 1997, **24**, 2, T/92.
2. M. Fiaz and M. Gilbert, *Advances in Polymer Technology*, 1998, **17**, 1, 37.
3. R. Ibarra-Gomez, I.G. Yanez-Flores, O.S. Rodriguez-Fernandez and M. Gilbert in *Proceedings of ANTEC 2000 Conference*, Orlando, FL, USA, 2000, Paper No. 651.
4. H-J. Tai, *Polymer Engineering and Science*, 2001, **41**, 6, 998.
5. M. Gilbert and J.C. Garcia-Quesada in *Proceedings of PVC 99 Conference*, Brighton, UK, 1999, p.441.
6. C.T. Ratnam, M. Nasir and A. Baharin, *Polymer Testing*, 2001, **20**, 5, 485.
7. H.A. Youssef, Z.I. Ali and A.H. Zahran, *Polymer Degradation and Stability*, 2001, **74**, 2, 213.
8. A.A. Basfar, *Polymer Degradation and Stability*, 2002, **77**, 2, 221.
9. L.R. Holloway in *Proceedings of PVC 99 Conference*, Brighton, UK, 1999, p.92.
10. R.S. Brookman in *Proceedings of PVC 2002 Conference: Towards a Sustainable Future*, Brighton, UK, 2002, p.228.
11. J. Trlica, A. Kalendova, Z. Malac, J. Simonik, L. Pospisil and J.C. Aliachem in *Proceedings of ANTEC 2001 Conference*, Dallas, TX, USA, 2001, Paper No.415.
12. A. Kalendova, L. Kovarova, Z. Malac, J. Malac, J. Vaculik, J. Hrncirik and J. Simonik in *Proceedings of ANTEC 2002 Conference*, San Francisco, CA, USA, 2002, Paper No.596.
13. C. Wan, Y. Zhang and Y. Zhang, *Polymer Testing*, 2004, **23**, 3, 299.
14. D. Wang, D. Parlow, Q. Yao and C.A. Wilkie, *Journal of Vinyl and Additive Technology*, 2001, **7**, 4, 214.
15. D. Wang, D. Parlow, Q. Yao and C.A. Wilkie, *Journal of Vinyl and Additive Technology*, 2002, **8**, 2, 139.
16. W. Chaoying, Q. Xiuying, Z. Yong and Z. Yinxi, *China Synthetic Rubber Industry*, 2002, **25**, 6, 381.

17. J. Du, D. Wang, C.A. Wilkie and J. Wang, *Polymer Degradation and Stability*, 2003, **79**, 2, 319.

18. C. Ean, X. Qiao, Y. Zhang and Y. Zhang, *Polymer Testing*, 2003, **22**, 4, 453.

19. Y. Xu, D. Malaba, X. Huang, C. Aguilar-Solis and W.J. Brittain, *Polymer Preprints*, 2002, **43**, 2, 1312.

8 Post-processing and Assembly

8.1 Post-processing

8.1.1 Thermoforming

Calendered or extruded sheet can be thermoformed to shape by applying heat, using vacuum or pressure forming over a preform or mould, and cooling.

The vacuum forming process is particularly suitable for polyvinyl chloride (PVC)-based formulations, due to good melt extension and strength properties over the softening temperature range.

This process involves heating a flat sheet using radiant electric heat (heating can be from one side or both sides) to a softened state (above the glass transition temperature, T_g) followed by the deformation of the sheet over the mould and into the shape required. The deformation occurs due to all the air between the sheet and the mould being removed, creating negative air pressure. The mould may need to be maintained in a particular temperature range to allow slip but also to induce forming. Cooling may be by forced air and/or water mist. The resulting product has variable thickness due to the induced non-uniform biaxial stretch. PVC-based materials are relatively easy to thermoform, due to their highly elastic behaviour over a fairly wide temperature range above T_g.

Tooling can be basically of concave shape (female, negative) into which the sheet is drawn or of convex shape (male, positive) over which the sheet is formed. Tools are not subject to high stress and can be made from aluminium or fibre-reinforced epoxy or polyester resin with fine holes or slots through which vacuum is applied.

Small products, e.g., packaging, can be formed using this technique, in high-output machines using multi-cavity tools and roll-fed sheet material. Larger, more complicated products can be fed with pre-cut sheets at a slower rate.

Pressure forming utilising positive pressure (up to 0.3 MPa) in addition to the atmospheric pressure used in vacuum forming can create an appearance similar to injection moulding with close tolerances, sharp detail, and selective undercuts. Cold flow and excessive thinning are reduced. Mechanical plugs may also be applied to assist material into complicated sections.

In comparison to injection moulding, thermoforming offers economical advantages due to low equipment costs and ease of changing mould designs. However, the process is limited in the shapes it can produce, and by the fact that the forming must be capable of being demoulded from the tool.

8.1.2 Printing and Coating

Surface treatments are often necessary for aesthetic and performance reasons.

8.1.2.1 Printing

The ability of plasticised PVC (PVC-P) to be printed in many different designs and styles, from a simple tile effect to a digital photograph image, is at the heart of the popularity of this material for many different end uses.

Printing can involve the use of both solvent- and non-solvent-based inks, which are applied to the surface using rollers, pads, silk screen, and inkjet or laser printers. Waterborne coatings are environmentally more desirable.

Printing on vinyl surfaces can be problematic due to the influence of the formulation ingredients, particularly the plasticiser (if present), heat stabiliser, and lubricants, on print acceptance and adhesion.

For a surface to be easily printed, a high surface energy is necessary to allow wetting. The problem is exacerbated by the increasing use of water- or solids-based inks requiring higher surface energy substrates. PVC itself has a reasonably high surface energy, 41.9 mN/m, but with the inclusion of different additives this can decrease to as low as 26–29 mN/m [1].

Printing with solvent-based inks requires surface energies of ~38 mN/m and with water-based inks requires higher values. PVC-P for printing applications must be formulated to take this into account. For particular cases, a pre-treatment may be necessary to remove surface layers and to modify the substance chemically. This may involve a solvent/primer bath or corona treatment. Corona treatment involves exposing the surface to an electrical discharge which causes oxygen molecules within the discharge area to break into their atomic form and bond to the ends of the molecules in the substrate. This results in a chemically activated surface with a higher surface energy.

For inkjet and laser printing, a special surface coating is applied to optimise ink adhesion and colour reproduction.

Test inks are available, with different surface energies, to test the wettability of films to standards DIN 53364 [2] and ASTM D2578-04a [3].

Chemical embossing of flooring and wall coverings is based on the incorporation of a blowing agent inhibitor (which prevents the decomposition of the blowing agent) into the appropriate print area. This gives the raised tile or stone effect.

8.1.2.2 Surface Coatings

Coatings can be applied both for functional and decorative effects. Unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U) may be painted. Light sanding and a detergent wash will certainly help prior to painting. A primer may also prove beneficial for adhesion. Painting would only be appropriate if a colour change was required, but bearing in mind the good outdoor weatherability of PVC-U, it may detract from the long-term weathering performance of outdoor products.

Painting of new PVC-U items is more difficult due to the low surface energy, and should only be carried out by those experienced in this area. It is easier to paint and achieve good adhesion on weathered material. Water-based coatings, such as acrylic-based latex paints, have been found to preserve the physical properties of the substrate. Solvent-based coatings containing aromatic hydrocarbon solvents

(toluene, naphtha, and so on) should be avoided, due to the negative influence on impact properties. Paints based on vinyl chloride and vinyl acetate, possibly modified with other monomers, are also suitable. In addition, two-part polyurethane (PU) -based paints are also recommended. In most cases, all paint application techniques, such as brush, roller, and spray, can be used.

Over-painting of PVC-P is also possible, e.g., wall covering, using acrylic-based latex paints.

Foil Coating for Windows and Doors

Foil coatings can be laminated in-line onto PVC-U profile used for windows, usually with a wood grain effect or solid colour. Hot melt adhesives can be used. The foil can be an ultraviolet (UV)-resistant acrylic film or a specially formulated semi-rigid PVC-P film.

Different colours and a matt satin effect, with a slight texture, can also be achieved with a coating based on PU and polyamide (Decoroc®).

Acrylic Topcoat for Flooring

UV-cured acrylic clearcoats on top of a PVC-P wearlayer are also used, giving improved weathering performance and scratching and abrasion resistance to flooring applications.

Metallising and Electroplating

Plastic surfaces can be given a metallic appearance using metallising and electroplating techniques. However, PVC is not used in applications where metallising or electroplating is necessary. The use of a metallised polyester film laminated to PVC would be the preferred option.

8.2 Assembly Techniques

Different joining techniques are used to fabricate PVC into finished articles. All welding techniques involve the application or generation of heat to soften the material while pressure is applied simultaneously. Solvent cement jointing relies on softening/swelling of the material. Mechanical fastening is also possible.

8.2.1 Welding

Like all other plastics, PVC can be welded by application of heat and pressure. Plastic welding techniques can be divided into three process groups:

- Those involving mechanical movement known as friction welding, and including spin and vibration welding, which are recommended for joining PVC-U parts together.
- Those involving heating via high-frequency sound energy (ultrasonic welding suitable for PVC-U) or high-frequency alternating current, particularly suitable for PVC-P.

- Involving external heating, such as hot plate and hot gas welding, also suitable for PVC-U. Hot gas welding can also be used for PVC-P.

The choice of the welding technique depends on the area of the joint, and the number and the shape of the parts to be joined. The strength of the welding depends on the geometry of the component welding method and welding parameters. The selection of the welding method and the design of the component should be considered carefully at the design stage.

8.2.1.1 Friction Welding

Friction welding techniques include:

- Spin welding used for assembling round or cylindrically shaped parts, with one component spun against a mating component that is held stationary under applied pressure.

- Vibration welding used to join large or irregularly shaped parts through frictional heat and pressure generated in a linear or orbital vibrating motion. As with spin welding, the surface of one part is vibrated against the other, which is held in a stationary position.

If the correct procedures are used, both techniques give a weld strength that is equal to the tensile strength of the parent material. The heat generated by the friction melts the material at the interface between two and three seconds. Further time is required to align the parts and to hold them together under pressure until a solid bond is formed. The main welding parameters are rotational, linear, or orbital speed, friction pressure, forge pressure, displacement, and duration.

8.2.1.2 Ultrasonic Welding

Ultrasonic welding involves the use of high-frequency sound energy to soften or melt the material at the joint. Pressure is used to hold the parts together with ultrasonic vibrations applied at right angles with a frequency of 20–40 kHz. The vibratory energy is converted to heat through friction. It is a very fast but somewhat expensive technique, due to tooling, and is suited to mass production. It is also used for staking (melting and reforming a thermoplastic stud to give a mechanical lock), spot welding, and film sealing.

8.2.1.3 Radio-frequency Welding

The welding of PVC-P to itself and to PVC-U materials is best achieved using radio-frequency (RF) welding. This is also known as HF (high-frequency) welding. RF welding requires high dielectric properties of the material to achieve the heating by HF alternating current. The technique involves subjecting the parts to a HF electromagnetic field applied between two metal bars. These bars also apply pressure over the heating and cooling time interval, which can vary. The dynamic electric field causes the polar PVC molecules to oscillate, with some of this motion being translated into thermal energy. The resulting bonds can be as strong as the original material.

This technique is typically used for heat sealing of packaging, and so on. RF welding is also used to apply vinyl, compact or foam, appliqué patterns for fashion designs, logos, and advertising to T-shirts.

8.2.1.4 Hot Plate Welding

The manufacture of PVC-U windows utilises a hot plate, pressure welding technique on a mitre-cut profile, using a temperature near 240–250 °C. The process involves a heated plate being clamped between the surfaces being joined, until they soften. The plate is withdrawn and the surfaces brought together under controlled pressure for a specific period of time. After being allowed to cool, removal of the weld flux or spew is carried out by routers. Corner weld strength test data must satisfy the appropriate national standards.

The other variations of hot plate welding are hot tool, socket, butt fusion, and saddle. Techniques used by the gas and water industries to join and repair pipelines include butt fusion, electrofusion socket welding, and socket jointing. Heated element butt fusion starts with planing the cut surface of the pipe, heating in contact with a heated element, and then joining and cooling under pressure. Socket welding is used where a heated pipe is inserted into a heated fitting. Electrofusion fittings are used where socket welding is not possible.

8.2.1.5 Hot Gas Welding

Hot gas welding utilises a stream of hot gas (usually compressed air) generated in a heating coil as it passes through a welding gun. The hot air is directed towards the joint and a PVC filler/welding rod may also be used to form the weld. This is a manual process and the quality of the bond depends on the skills of the operator.

8.2.1.6 Laser Welding

Laser welding techniques are still being developed. Laser welding involves a part absorbing electromagnetic energy and converting it to heat. Conduction welding utilises a carbon dioxide (CO_2) gas laser, with a wavelength of 10.6 μm, which melts both materials in the joint and can also be used for high-speed cutting. Transmission welding only melts material at the joint interfaces and utilises other laser sources such as diodes, based on indium and gallium semiconductors (wavelengths of 808 and 940 nm), and Nd:YAG (neodymium, a rare earth lanthanide element, doped in yttrium aluminium garnet) with a beam wavelength of 1064 nm. Thermoplastics transmit near-infrared (IR) radiation between 600 and 1000 nm.

8.2.2 Adhesion

Bonding techniques involving adhesives are also common and many proprietary systems are available for PVC-U and PVC-P applications for self-adhesion or adhesion to other surfaces. Surfaces must be solvent cleaned prior to adhesive application.

Typical adhesives can be based on vinyl chloride/vinyl acetate polymers, PVC itself, polychloroprene, PU, and acrylonitrile butadiene. Typical solvents used in adhesives for bonding PVC substrates to themselves or other materials are tetrahydrofuran, methyl ethyl ketone, acetone, toluene, and cyclohexanone. Two-component epoxy or polyester systems can be used.

The flexibility of PVC-P film makes it ideal for many industrial tape and label applications. Pressure-sensitive adhesives based on acrylic polymers and containing acrylates, acrylic acid, and vinyl caprolactam have been recommended.

8.3 Mechanical Assembly

8.3.1 Machining, Cutting, and Fastening

PVC-U can be machined easily. High speeds are possible if there is sufficient cooling. Normal safety precautions as regards handling of swarf and dust apply. Sharp carbide-tipped tools and standard drills are suitable.

Fasteners with thread-cutting screws and clips can be used for joining PVC-U to itself. Thread-cutting screws are preferred to thread-forming screws, due to the latter inducing high stress levels caused by displaced material.

Riveting is also possible where a high clamping force is required. A washer should be applied to the plastic side of the assembly to distribute these high forces over a larger surface.

Permanent mechanical assemblies can also be made by the use of heat or welding techniques to deform plastic ribs, pegs, or studs over the second component (staking).

In snap-fit fastening, two parts are joined through an interlocking configuration that may be moulded into the parts. A protrusion on one part is briefly deflected during joining to locate in a depression or undercut moulded into the other part. The force required for joining can vary depending on the part design. Depending on the locking angle, these connections can be either permanent or easily released. The elasticity of PVC-U makes the material suitable for snap-fit joints. These joints are commonly used in the assembly of fencing, siding, guttering, and so on.

References

1. B. Streeter in *Proceedings of Antec 2001 Conference*, Dallas, TX, USA, 2001, p.2983.

2. DIN 53364, *Testing of Plastics Films; Wettability of Polyethylene and Polypropylene Films*, 1975.

3. ASTM D2578-04a, *Standard Test Method for Wetting Tension of Polyethylene and Polypropylene Films*, 2004.

9 Sustainable Development

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) has been at the centre of a continued environmental campaign against its use and it is unfortunate but timely that all the issues around modern society have been placed first at its door. No other industry has had to face (yet) the searching questions about the need for sustainable development. The PVC industry has had to gear itself up to respond to these campaigns and this is covered in this chapter.

Sustainable development is not only about being able to advance and improve the standard of living today, but ensuring that future generations can also have the same possibilities. Accordingly, the earth's resources and life support systems should not be overloaded or impaired in meeting these objectives. These should be balanced between satisfying environmental, economic, and social needs.

9.1 Environmental Attack and Response

The Greenpeace organisation's attack on PVC is based on its anti-chlorine stance. This is the 'devil's element', in their terms, due to the use of high energy to generate chlorine and the creation of an extremely reactive form that is not widely found in nature and that results in products and wastes that are toxic to human health and the environment. PVC, being an organochlorine derived from vinyl chloride monomer (VCM), has become lumped together with products such as the pesticide dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT) and the refrigerant and aerosol gases chlorofluorocarbons (CFC). Both of these products are now considered to be persistent organic pollutants (POP) due to their stability and resistance to natural breakdown processes and are now banned.

Other POP are dioxins, which are by-products of many processes involving chlorine. Dioxins are a group of chemical compounds made up of two chlorinated benzene rings connected by one or two oxygen atoms. There are several hundred in number, but are based on two family types: the chlorinated dibenzo-*p*-dioxins (PCDD) and chlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDF). PCDD and PCDF can be produced as by-products of some manufacturing processes and also naturally. They are also formed as a result of combustion processes such as waste incineration and burning fuels such as wood, coal, and oil. Studies have shown that exposure to certain dioxins at high enough doses may cause a number of adverse health effects. Dioxins are an environmental contaminant as a result of many different manufacturing and combustion processes over many years. The dioxins occurring in the environment are complex mixtures of 210 congeners, most of which are believed to pose no risk to human health. From these 210, 17 are reported to have potential health effects. For this reason, an international system has been developed that assigns toxicities to each congener relative to the most toxic form. A toxic equivalent factor (TEF) has been assigned to each of these 17 dioxin congeners. This weighting factor is multiplied by the known concentration of the congener to give the toxic equivalent (TEQ). The toxicity of any mixture is given by the sum of the TEQ. The TEQ figure takes account of the relative strengths of the dioxins to enable comparison with other results. Dioxin emissions resulting from the PVC cycle have been noted as insignificant in comparison with other sources [1].

In the 1970s the link between exposure of PVC polymerisation industry workers to high concentrations of VCM and their subsequent development of cancer of the liver was established. Various standards were introduced to protect workers by limiting VCM exposure. Current issues now focus on emissions from the polymerisation plant into the surrounding area and during subsequent processing of the polymer. VCM transportation between manufacture and use has also been an issue.

Greenpeace and other environmental organisations also have a campaign against the 'harmful' additives [plasticisers, heat stabilisers, and volatile organic chemicals (VOC)] in relation to 'leaking' (leaching or emission) in use and disposal (incineration or landfill). This is based on concerns regarding the worldwide build-up of synthetic chemicals in the environment and the potential damage for the future. The main issues are chemicals that are persistent, bioaccumulative, and toxic (PBT). Another group of chemicals causing concern are endocrine-disrupting chemicals (EDCL). These EDCL can interfere with the normal functioning of human and wildlife hormone systems, to produce reproductive, developmental, and behavioural problems. In some cases, EDCL can also be persistent and bioaccumulative. Greenpeace also has concerns about the 'PVC waste crisis' in light of the large volume of long-life PVC products due to become waste in the coming decades (based on products first being used in the 1960s). Greenpeace estimates that worldwide approximately 300 million tonnes will start to enter the waste stream by 2005 and have a sceptical view of the realistic capability for the recycling of PVC. This is based on costs for separation and collection, which makes the recyclate price uneconomic in comparison to virgin PVC. They also consider that there is limited potential for recyclate in the current PVC market.

Incineration with energy recovery is, in Greenpeace's opinion, not a sustainable option due to the generation of less energy than was used to make the incinerated material. There are also issues with emissions of CO_2 (greenhouse gas), dioxins, vinyl chloride, lead, and cadmium. Disposal of the resulting solid wastes including the salts generated from hydrochloric acid neutralisation and containing heavy metals would require disposal in landfill as a hazardous waste.

The export of PVC scrap and waste from Europe and the USA to South East Asia, including China and Indonesia, for recycling into so-called lower quality products is also an issue. Recycling in that part of the world is a growing industry due to much lower labour costs and this reflects the supply and demand nature of the global market.

At some points, the actions of the environmental non-governmental organisations (NGO) became very demonstrative and emotional resulting in action at EU level and deselection of PVC in certain areas.

An interesting response was from the Chlorophiles, which is an independent, non-profit organisation of workers from the chlorine and PVC industry in Europe, who wanted to react to the allegations against their work. Formed in 1994, they have led various campaigns and protests against the actions and statements from Greenpeace, both in person and via their website. They have always attempted to present the actual scientific data in response to the emotional arguments from Greenpeace. They also aimed to have an open scientific debate about the various issues, but Greenpeace have never accepted their invitation.

The Chlorophiles have pointed out the relative abundance of bound chlorine in nature, the amount of organochlorines made in nature, the higher dioxin levels found in wooded areas in comparison to industrial environments, and the significant benefits of chlorine use covering medicine manufacture, disinfectants, bleaching, silicon chips, and so on. They have also reminded everyone about the definition of risk covering the product of hazard and exposure. Thus, the risk is the probability or

chance that the hazard will lead to illness or death. Data have been presented showing the low fatal accident rate and risk of death from working in their industry.

For the PVC industry, the environmental attack has resulted in Vinyl 2010, the voluntary commitment of the PVC industry in Europe. This followed the EC 'horizontal study' - five studies covering a comprehensive investigation of all PVC issues relating to waste management, the combined results leading to the adoption of a Green Paper on PVC (*http://europa.eu.int/comm/environment/waste/pvc/en.pdf*) in July 2000 followed by public consultation. Vinyl 2010 was introduced to pre-empt any further legislative action (at the time of writing, an EC communication stating EU policy on PVC is still awaited). This is in addition to directives covering packaging, motor vehicle end-of-life (ELV), waste electrical and electronic equipment (WEEE), restriction of hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment (RoHS), and so on.

One approach to sustainability, very much focused on the environmental aspect, has been the use of The Natural Step (TNS) framework which applies a systems model based on scientific principles governing the earth's ecosystem. PVC has been evaluated by this process and five long-term challenges set covering carbon neutrality, closed loop waste management, no build-up of persistent organic compounds, sustainability of all additives with phase out of persistent compounds and those having toxic effects, and the raising of awareness about sustainable development within the industry and participation in its achievement.

9.2 Vinyl 2010/Chlorine Industry Sustainability Commitments

Vinyl 2010 is involved in projects in all of the PVC life cycle and has grouped together PVC resin manufacturers, plastic converters, and producers of stabilisers and plasticisers (**Figure 9.1**). These cover pilot projects, R&D investigations, studies and surveys, and various initiatives. In addition, the European chlor-alkali industry has issued sustainability goals, also for 2010.

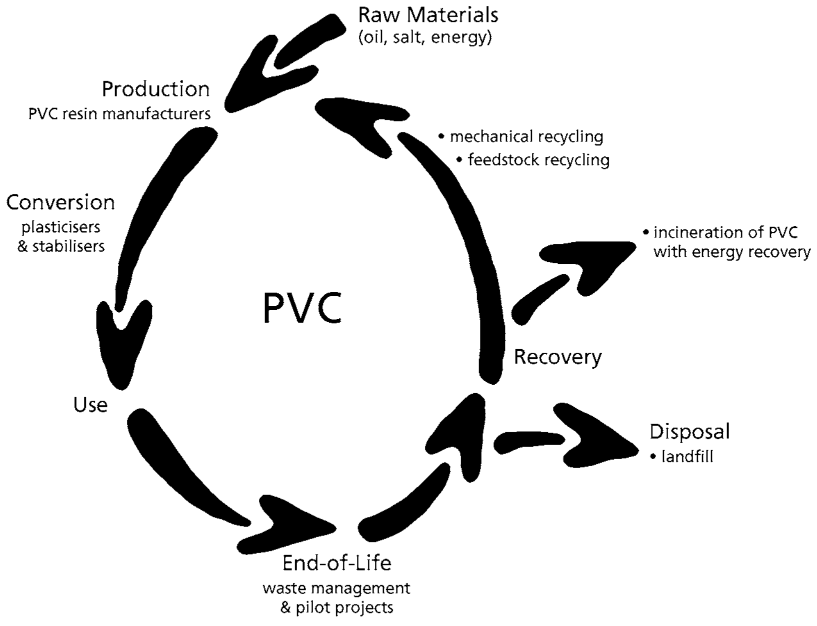


Figure 9.1 PVC life cycle

9.2.1 Chlorine Generation

Euro Chlor (*www.eurochlor.org*), which represents the European chlor-alkali industry, has established a long-term sustainability programme, with goals for 2010. While noting the economic contribution of chlorine and caustic products to economic development, it has agreed the following targets:

- Chlorinated organic chemical emissions – 22 chlorinated substances released to water fell by 98% between 1985 and 2001. A further 75% reduction, based on 2001 baseline (in the region of 0.20 kt), has been set. The release to air, over the same period, was reduced by 90% and a further reduction of 50% has been set for 2010. The target figure is in the region of 2.5 kt per year.

- Mercury emissions – a voluntary target of 1.0 g of mercury emission to water and air, per tonne of mercury cell capacity was set in 1998 to be reached on a national basis by 2007. This has been extended to all the EU 2004 accession country companies. Between 1985 and 2002 there had been a reduction in mercury emission from 8.1 to 1.05 g per tonne of mercury cell capacity.

- Include environmental, social, and economic aspects in all strategic business decisions. This includes mercury cell replacement by membrane technology and non-asbestos separators for diaphragm technology by 2020. There are also targets for reduction in loss time injuries for employees and contractors (85 and 90%, respectively) by 2010. In the same time period, there is a target for a 75% reduction in process incidents and losses and to keep transport incidents at zero.

- Optimise energy efficiency in production by reducing energy consumption by 5%.

- Reduce water usage through recycling.

- Use more hydrogen generated by the industry as a raw material or fuel with 95% being utilised.

- Give high priority to the safe transportation of chlorine. Currently, <10% of all chlorine that is produced in Europe is transported primarily by rail and none by sea.

9.2.2 PVC Production Industry Charters

Resin producers have been working towards minimising environmental impact through full compliance by all of their plants in Europe (*www.pvc.org*).

9.2.2.1 First Charter on S-PVC and VCM Production

European Council of Vinyl Manufacturers (ECVM) member companies agreed an industry charter in 1995 to adopt best available technology (BAT) to minimise emissions to the environment. This covers 12 different environmental standards relating to the suspension polymerised-PVC (S-PVC) resin manufacturing cycle, for compliance by the end of 1998. The conversion of PVC resin to the finished article is not included.

Thirty-eight production sites in Western Europe are involved and the standards are:

- Ethylene dichloride (EDCL) and VCM production
  - Releases to air (per Nm^3)
  - VCM: <5 mg

- EDCL: <5 mg
- HCl: <30 mg
- Ethylene: <150 mg
- Dioxins: <0.1 ng TEQ
- Releases to water
- EDCL: <5 g/ton of EDCL purification capacity
- Copper: <1 g/ton of oxychlorination capacity
- Dioxins: <1 μg TEQ/ton of oxychlorination capacity

• S-PVC production
  - Release to air
  - VCM: <100 g/ton of PVC
  - Release to water
  - VCM: <1 g/m^3 of effluent
  - Concentration in final product
  - VCM: <5 g/ton of PVC for general purpose use; <1 g/ton of PVC for food and medical use.

The first external audit was in 1999 and the second in 2002. As at 2002, the external auditors indicated an improvement from 1999 to 93% full compliance, 4% partial or unconfirmed compliance, and 3% non-compliance. The auditors also recommended reviews to ensure fair comparison across sites, more transparency on reporting incidents and events, and the reduction of the HCl criterion to 10 mg/m^3 to bring it in line with the EU hazardous waste incineration directive (94/67/EC).

Since the last audit, additional information indicates that the goal of full compliance is even closer. Work also continues on improved measurement of emissions.

9.2.2.2 Second Charter on E-PVC Production

The second ECVM industry charter, covering environmental standards for PVC production by the emulsion process, was established in 1998 for compliance by the end of 2003. Auditing took place in 2004.

The standards for emulsion-PVC (E-PVC) production are:

• Release to air. VCM: <1000 g/ton of PVC

• Release to water (for stand alone E-PVC plant). VCM: <1 g/m^3 of effluent and <10 g/ton of E-PVC

• Release to water (where common treatment with S-PVC plant). VCM: <1 g/m^3 of effluent or <5 g/ton of E-PVC + S-PVC

• Concentration in final product. VCM: <1 g/ton of PVC

The audit report, issued in April 2005 [2], showed 71% compliance against the combined three criteria for VCM emissions to air, to water and in the final product. In detail, the VCM emissions to air showed 86% compliance with VCM in aqueous effluents at 71%.

However, 57% of plants achieved full compliance for residual VCM in the final product. Taking account of the amount of final E-PVC produced, 95% complied with the <1g / tonne. All plants complied with the ECVM BAT of <5g / tonne as applied in the S-PVC Charter for non-food or non-medical applications. The auditors recommended that either the BAT guidance or the E-PVC Charter be changed to ensure consistency. Improvement plans for some non-compliant companies have already been agreed.

9.2.2.3 Reaction Inhibitors.

Bisphenol A (BPA) has been used as an inhibitor in the polymerisation stage of PVC production for some time. However, EU studies have indicated that emissions to waste water from PVC plants could, under certain conditions, result in concentrations that would exceed predicted no-effect concentrations (PNEC) derived from ecotoxicological studies. Consequently, ECVM member companies agreed to stop using it from the beginning of 2002 and this has been accepted at EU level as a valid risk reduction strategy. A future revision of the ECVM Charter will include a commitment about BPA phase-out to ensure proper compliance monitoring. The other uses of BPA in PVC additives do not present a risk of exceeding current PNEC values (see Section 1.9.3).

9.2.3 Conversion with Additives

Several aspects must be taken into account while considering the impact of PVC additives on human health, safety, and the environment. In addition to pertinent regulations and directives covering worker safety, plant emissions, and specific end uses (water, food, toys, and medical applications), the EU Dangerous Substances Directive (67/548/EEC, consolidated version 92/32/EEC) prescribes how substances classified as dangerous have to be classified and labelled. Provision of safety data sheets is also mandatory.

More recently, the Precautionary Principle has been applied when assessing the risks from potentially hazardous chemicals. This is linked to risk management and is based on the concept of erring on the side of caution when scientific evidence of harm is contradictory or does not exist.

The EU Existing Substances Directive (93/793/EEC) was established for the evaluation and control of the risks of ‘existing’ substances. Existing substances are chemicals listed in the European Inventory of Existing Commercial Chemical Substances, in use within the EC before September 1981, if produced or imported in volumes above 10 tonnes per year. A systematic framework, for the evaluation of the risks to human health and the environment has been established, based on data collection, priority setting, risk assessment, and risk reduction. This means that substances that are found to be an unacceptable risk within a certain margin of safety are liable to be phased out or their use limited or restricted to certain applications.

In Europe, the EC has adopted a White Paper setting out a new chemical strategy to ensure a high level of protection for human health and the environment and to stimulate innovation and competitiveness in the chemical industry. The Registration, Evaluation and Authorisation of Chemicals system (REACH) will cover existing legislation, including dangerous substances classification and existing substances evaluation and control. Under these proposals, industry will be responsible for testing and risk assessment of its products on a volume priority basis (starting with 1000 tonnes per year but will apply eventually to greater than 1 tonne per year). Authorisation of substances that are carcinogenic, mutagenic, or toxic to reproduction (CMR), and POP will be required. Substances

that are PBT and very persistent and very bioaccumulative (VPVB) will also be identified through further research with a decision about their future use being taken at a later stage. There is also an intention to increase transparency and information about chemicals. Increased responsibility will also pass to formulators and downstream users, who will have to supply data on the particular uses they make of a substance.

Polymers will not require registration provided that their monomers, from which they are derived, are registered. Thus, VCM will require registration, but not PVC.

The impetus for the legislation is the general lack of knowledge about properties and uses of existing substances and a slow and resource-intensive risk assessment process. The chemical industry is in intensive discussions with the EC regarding cost benefits and priorities. A joint exercise has started to test the administrative workability of the system.

Several international regulatory bodies also manage programmes about specific classes of chemical substances. These are the United Nations Environmental Program (UNEP), the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), and the Oslo Paris Commission (OSPAR).

9.2.3.1 Phthalate Plasticisers

The European Council for Plasticisers and Intermediates (ECPI) producers have committed to carry out research, undertake risk assessments, support the concept of lifecycle inventories and make available the relevant information. In 2004 €630k was contributed to build up a scientific database covering different health and environmental issues.

9.2.3.1.1 Phthalate Risk Assessments

The final summary and full EU risk assessment reports have been published by the EC's European Chemical Bureau (ECB). These final reports require endorsement by the EU Member States Article 15 Committee, before publication in the EU's official journal. The risk assessments were carried out in accordance with the Existing Substances Directive.

These reports have shown no risk to humans or to the environment for diisononyl phthalate (DINP) and diisodecyl phthalate (DIDP). Prior to these results, some PVC processors had already begun to change from di-2-ethylhexyl phthalate (DEHP) to DINP or DIDP in PVC formulation (DEHP decreased in 2003 to 24% of the total of phthalates used from 42% in 1999).

The risk assessment for DEHP is scheduled for completion in June 2005. So far the data shows that exposure of the general population is well below levels (at least 280 times) at which health might be put at risk. Therefore no risk reduction measures are needed for the general population. The areas where risk reduction may be necessary are:

- Use in children's toys (but DEHP is not used in toys intended to be put in the mouth).
- Possible exposure to workers in factories (only where adequate precautions are not already being taken).
- Some localised environmental exposure near to factories (and should be managed closely by strict emission controls).

- Use in specific medical areas covering adults undergoing long term haemodialysis, neonates undergoing transfusions and children undergoing long term blood transfusions. This is in conflict with the relevant EU Scientific Committee which has already stated that it can make no recommendations to limit its EU hazard classification labelling (which factors into the risk assessment) has categorised DEHP as toxic to reproduction.

The risk assessment for dibutyl phthalate (DBP) shows some potential risks to plants in the vicinity of processing sites and possibly to workers through inhalation. This will require the implementation of straightforward measures wherever they do not already exist. Hazard classification labelling has given DBP a dangerous for the environment and toxic to reproduction categorisation. DIBP is an alternative for DBP and does not have the toxic to reproduction hazard classification.

The risk assessment for butylbenzyl phthalate (BBP) is still awaited, as scientific data is being considered. The current status is that no risks to human health or the environment have been identified.

Under EU hazard classification and labelling directives, BBP has been classified as dangerous for the environment and toxic to reproduction.

9.2.3.2 Adipate Plasticisers

PVC food packaging film (cling film) has been used for a number of years for wrapping fresh meat, for food storage, and for protecting food in the home.

The most common plasticiser used in this application is di-2-ethylhexyl adipate (DEHA), in combination with polymeric adipate plasticisers and epoxidised soya bean oil (ESBO). DEHA is used in preference to phthalates due to improved flexibility at lower temperatures and also gives the necessary permeability to oxygen and water vapour to preserve the freshness of the food.

PVC cling film formulations comply with permitted migration limits, set at levels that are considered totally safe by various health and government organisations (see Section 4.9.1.1). However, some consumer organisations have raised concerns and polyethylene (PE) has been introduced as an alternative stretch film material. A recent Italian university research laboratory study, comparing PVC and PE cling film, has shown that total and specific migration coefficients to fatty foods, for the PVC, were well below the legal limit. The cling aspects were better with resulting superior protection against bacteria [3].

9.2.3.3 Medium Chain Chlorinated Paraffins (MCCP) Risk Assessment/Hazard Classification

Discussions are under way to classify and label 2-(2-Methyl-4-chlorophenoxy)propionic acid (an example of an MCCP) as dangerous to the environment, primarily as regards aquatic effects. For human health, there are also discussions concerning classification for fertility effect issues.

Under the EU existing substances legislation, the risk assessment (environment only) for MCCP is ongoing. In addition to their use as secondary plasticisers for PVC, MCCP are also used as flame retardants for other plastic and rubber products, in sealants, paints, metal cutting and metalworking fluids, leather fat liquors, and so on. Issues are persistence and possible bioaccumulation and some risk reduction measures, for some uses, are anticipated.

9.2.3.4 Heat Stabilisers

The European Stabiliser Producers Association (ESPA) has committed to various initiatives as part of Vinyl 2010:

- Produce yearly statistics on stabiliser consumption by converters and their areas of application covering formulated lead stabilisers, solid and liquid stabilisers containing cadmium, formulated mixed metal solid stabilisers (e.g., calcium zinc primarily based as lead replacement), organotin stabilisers, and liquid mixed metal systems based on barium zinc or calcium zinc.

- Cease sale and use of all cadmium-containing stabilisers since March 2001 in EU member countries. The European Plastics Converters (EuPC) has also agreed not to use these materials. However, it has been recognised that there is a need to ensure that the recycling of cadmium-containing PVC waste will be permitted.

- To compile the necessary data for a full EU risk assessment on lead stabilisers, on a voluntary basis, together with the rest of the lead industry for submission in 2004. The work is compiled by independent consultants and is reviewed step by step by the Dutch authorities, who are acting on behalf of the EU for this assessment.

- The development of alternative stabiliser systems to lead, in a joint commitment with European processors, to replace formulated lead stabilisers by 15% by 2005, 50% by 2010, and 100% by 2015. This is to be measured on the basis of production levels in 2000 (129 kt). However, the first reduction target was achieved in 2004, showing a decrease of 16.7% to 106 kt. The replacement solid mixed metal stabilisers based on calcium zinc or calcium organic increased by 100% in the same period from 17 to 35 kt.

9.2.3.4.1 Cadmium Risk Assessment

Although there are no longer any sales of cadmium based stabilisers in the EU, a risk assessment continues within the EU Existing Chemicals Programme for an update and potential risk reduction measures. A revision is pending on the Restrictions on the Marketing and Use Directive 76/769, which banned all uses of cadmium stabilisers, to include an authorisation to recycle material containing cadmium in building applications.

9.2.3.4.2 Voluntary Lead Risk Assessment

Publication has been delayed, but preliminary conclusions [2] indicate that:

- For workers in the PVC processing industry, there is a need for more information and/or testing.

- For use in PVC and for stabiliser production regarding environmental impact, no further information or testing is necessary and no need for risk reduction measures beyond those which are being applied already.

- For worker exposure in stabiliser production, there is a need for limiting the risks and risk reduction measures, which are already being applied, shall be taken into account.

9.2.3.4.3 Zinc Risk Assessment

Zinc stearate is included, with other zinc compounds, for human health risk assessment under existing substances legislation. Conclusions are that there are no reasons for concern for adverse health effects on workers or consumers due to exposure. Risk reduction measures already being applied are adequate.

9.2.3.4.4 Organotin Risk Assessment

The toxicity of tin compounds to human health and the environment is strongly dependent on the chemical composition. The mono- and di-organotin stabiliser compounds, covered in Section 3.1.2.1, have been tested extensively for human health aspects and environmental issues (*www.ortepa.org/stabilizers*) with no causes for concern.

Unfortunately, the toxicity of mono- and di-alkyl tin compounds is sometimes confused with the toxicity of trialkyl tin compounds to aquatic life. The primary use of tributyl tin compounds is as biocidal additives in marine anti-fouling coatings and not as stabilisers. These have now been banned in Europe.

A targeted risk assessment on the non-food aspects of the risk to health and the environment posed by the use of organostannic compounds (excluding tributyl tin biocide) is under way. Exposure assessments with regard to food contact applications are also being carried out by the European Food Safety Authority (EFSA). Classification and hazard labelling of organotin stabilisers is not an issue.

9.2.3.4.5 Epoxidised Soya Bean Oil (ESBO)

The use of ESBO in food contact materials is under review in relation to its use in sealing gaskets for baby foods packed in glass jars and bottles. Within the EFSA, the Panel on Food Additives, Flavourings, Processing Aids, and Materials in contact with Food (AFC) has been asked to give an opinion on the risk for infants. In addition, an opinion on the risk for the consumer in general as regards the ESBO derivatives (chlorohydrins formed by reaction with PVC) is requested. Although ESBO is neither carcinogenic nor genotoxic, the estimated exposure to ESBO migrating into baby foods can sometimes exceed the tolerable daily intake (TDI) and the AFC has recommended that a specific migration limit be developed. Further analytical and toxicological data on ESBO derivatives are also required.

9.2.3.5 Antimony Trioxide Risk Assessment

Under the EU existing substances legislation, the flame retardant antimony trioxide is undergoing human health and environment risk assessments. Discussions are ongoing at the time of writing (March 2005).

Classification and labelling indicates limited evidence of a carcinogenic effect with no ecotoxic categories.

9.3 End of Life and Waste Management

The integrated approach to promote resource efficiency within the European plastics industry (Plastics Europe, *www.plasticseurope.org* and *www.apme.org*) focuses on the concepts of prevention (via

reduction at source), reuse, recycling, energy recovery, and landfill (for non-recoverable products and residual waste from recovery operations).

Vinyl 2010 members (ECVM, ECPI, ESPA, and EuPC) contributed in the region of €4.4 million in both 2002 and 2003 to waste management projects. A further €4.1 million was contributed in 2004.

The Vinyl 2010 target is to have an additional 200,000 tonnes of post-consumer PVC recycling by 2010 in Europe (based on pre-enlargement EU: 15 countries and Switzerland). For 2004, the audited tonnage was in the region of 18000 tonnes, a ~30% increase over 2003 [2].

9.3.1 PVC-rich Waste: Mechanical Recycling

Mechanical recycling has to make economic sense and relies on sufficient quantities of homogeneous, separated, and sorted waste. The quality of recovered material should allow production of similar products.

One PVC resin and compound supplier (*www.evc-int.com*) has announced a project to find and evaluate new applications using post-consumer PVC waste. Another supplier (*www.hydropolymers.com*) expects to produce around 5,000 tonnes of recycled PVC during 2004, primarily for building type products.

9.3.1.1 General

In the UK, a government-funded research project (Waste Resources Action Programme; WRAP) was set up (completed March 2004) to establish the viability of recycling facilities to produce higher value products from post-consumer and post-industrial use PVC-rich waste streams. The project involved many industrial collaborators and the research work included market research, practical trials, laboratory testing of recyclates, economic evaluations, and environmental impact comparisons.

The project concluded that around 45,000 tonnes per year of post-industrial PVC-rich waste (mainly off-cuts) is already being recycled to high-grade applications. Some 10,000 tonnes, of post-use waste, is also recycled. Up to 170,000 tonnes per year of post-consumer use PVC-rich waste could be collectable from the UK construction area by 2010. This waste would comprise mainly windows, pipes, and flooring. Other sources of post-use PVC-rich waste (coated textiles, wallpaper, packaging, cable insulation, ELV, and so on) are either too difficult to collect economically or are already exported together with other materials (e.g., copper wire in cables). Several compression moulders have been identified that are able to take substantial volumes of lower grade recyclate to make long-life products which can be substituted for concrete and other materials.

It was demonstrated that high-grade recyclates can be produced from these post-use construction wastes derived from the Vinyloop process or by mechanical separation. Melt filtration could also be a possibility for handling post-use flooring. However, issues of colour (darker), surface defects (particularly relevant for windows), and cadmium content (restricting use to windows, drainage pipes, and so on, as certain PVC applications where there may be regular human contact, e.g., flooring, are not permitted to have more than 100 ppm of cadmium in the EU) have to be considered.

Due to commercial considerations, such as low collection volumes (so high risk of setting up new plants) and low recyclate prices (users reluctant to substitute virgin material), there have been no high-grade

recycling projects in the UK. However, a PVC industry group (British Plastics Federation, BPF) has established a new waste collection pilot scheme with the aim of establishing a clearing house, which contracts the large-scale collection and reprocessing of post-use waste with existing waste collection and recycling companies. In addition, the major PVC compound users commit to buying recyclate at prices close to virgin compound and to use it to substitute virgin material in their products.

An environmental impact comparison has concluded that landfill disposal has the greatest environmental impact. Mechanical recycling (either mechanical separation or the Vinyloop process) has the lowest. This is due to the capability of high-grade recyclate substituting virgin material in new products. Feedstock recycling comes between landfill and mechanical in terms of environmental impact.

In another eco-efficiency study, various treatment options for mixed cable waste have been investigated. This showed that feedstock recycling and a modern municipal solid waste incineration, with energy and HCl recovery, were preferable to landfill. It showed, however, that the selection of a recovery technology must take into account specific national or local conditions. This is due to differences applied in environmental policies.

9.3.1.2 Collection and Separation/Washing/Grinding/Pulverisation

An important feature of processing plastic waste is the collection, dispatch, cleaning, and grinding down to an appropriate particle size to suit the next processing stage. European Plastics Recyclers (EuPR) conducted a study on PVC mechanical recyclers in the EU. The study showed that this is a core business for no more than 30 companies that have the expertise and willingness required to deal with post-consumer PVC waste. To assist a steady supply of secondary raw materials to these recyclers (and so justify investment in additional capacity), a consortium called Recovinyl SA has been set up based on the recyclers and other interested parties. This will facilitate the collection, dispatching, and recycling of post-consumer PVC waste across Europe.

9.3.1.3 Profile

The target in Europe of the European Profile Producers Association (EPPA, the EuPC sector group for windows and related profiles) for post-consumer PVC window waste is also to recycle mechanically at least 50% of the collectable available quantity by 2005. The 2003 target of 25% was exceeded in this area (~4800 tonnes against the target of ~3400 tonnes). Joint collection of post-consumer PVC construction products started in 2003 in the key countries of Germany and the UK, augmenting the collection networks in France and Denmark. Collection and recycling schemes are being developed for Austria, the Netherlands, Italy, Belgium, and Ireland. Another unforeseen factor, which has to be taken into account, is the re-use of PVC window frames and the export of material for recycling elsewhere.

In Germany, despite a market decrease in window units by around 50% in comparison with 1995, there was an increase in collected and recycled waste volumes by over 15%. Joint collection initiatives with the other PVC recycling groups in the construction area were set up and expanded. A major German producer set up a facility for recycling all components from window frames and this has been operational for some time under Veka Umwelttechnik ownership. The FREI (window recycling iniative) recycling scheme has been combined with the Veka system into Rewindo GmbH which is now a consortium of German profile producers utilising this facility. A study has shown that over 11% of dismantled post-consumer windows are being reused and approximately 4,000 tonnes was recycled in 2004 (*www.rewindo.de*).

In France, the network of collection points has been enlarged with a drastic increase in collected volume. However, there is a lack of local capacity for recycling which negatively influences collection costs and this is being addressed.

In the UK, the WRAP PVC project has shown that on the basis of practical trials, 40% post-use window recyclate can be added to produce new extrusions for use in window applications without significant colour or surface defect problems. The BPF is leading a synergistic project (funded by Vinyl 2010 through the EPPA) aimed at finding the most appropriate 'best practice' solutions to collect and manage PVC construction and demolition waste. This will be based on expertise already gained in local authority refurbishment projects and will expand to many more sites. WRAP has investigated the need to increase glass recycling from windows. In its second phase, BPF members will look at unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U) frames.

In Denmark, joint collection efforts with PVC pipe producers now cover more than 75% of the country's municipal waste centres (*www.wuppi.dk*).

Fence posts based on a core of recycled PVC, enclosed in a virgin cap skin, have been developed. At present, this depends on post-industrial waste such as off-cuts and off-specification profile materials as the source.

9.3.1.4 Pipes and Fittings

The target for pipes and fittings (represented by TEPPFA, the EuPC pipes and fittings sector association) is to recycle at least 50% of the available, collectable quantity at end of life by 2005. Despite sluggish economic activity, an interim target of 25% (~6,100 tonnes) for 2003 has been achieved by concentrating efforts on the higher volume waste countries and developing closer cooperation with other PVC-U recycling groups in the construction area.

Denmark has the most successful programme, based on municipal waste centres.

The main focus is the improvement of the financial viability of the collection and recycling schemes in the different European countries. Recovinyl SA will facilitate this process. However, there is now an element of uncertainty on the waste available, due to the higher than expected life expectancy (40 years was used in the original calculations).

9.3.1.5 Wire and Cable

In this application the desire to recycle the copper from wire and cable has always been a driver. Solvent-based technology (see next) is considered to be the best option for reclaiming the PVC component in this area.

9.3.1.6 Vinyloop® Process

This patented process involves the selective dissolution of the PVC compound, separation of non-soluble materials, and precipitation of the pure PVC compound (**Figure 9.2**). This can then be processed into the same application as the original material (see *www.vinyloop.com*).

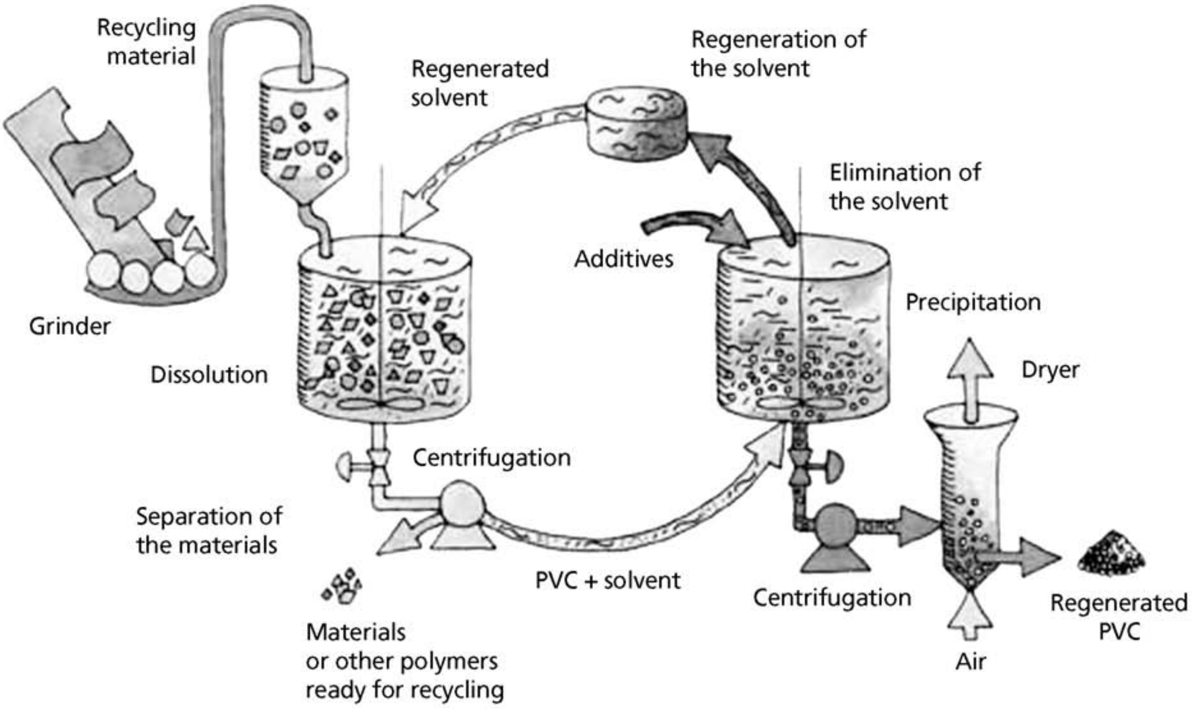


Figure 9.2 Vinyloop process. (Source: www.vinyl2010.org)

The Ferrara, Italy, plant has been operating since 2002 with a 2004 plant target of 7,500-10,000 tonnes. A second plant in Dreux, France, is planned to start up in 2006 with the aim of recycling ~40,000 tonnes of post-industrial and post-consumer waste, consisting of cable, roofing membrane, flooring, windows, etc, has been delayed. However, construction of a new unit, twice as large as the Ferrara plant, will commence in Japan in April 2005.

Based on the Vinyloop technology, Texyloop® has been developed for coated fabrics and involves specific treatment for recycling fibres and compounds (see Section 9.3.1.9).

9.3.1.7 Flooring

The first target in Europe is to recycle at least 25% of the collectable available quantity of PVC flooring waste by 2006, with 50% by 2008. The preferred recycling option is via the Vinyloop process which allows the recyclate to be processed into new flooring products, both calendered and coated.

About 970 tonnes of PVC flooring were recycled or sent for recycling in 2004 (a 68% increase over 2003). In addition to the PVC flooring recycling plant in Germany, there are plans for recycling flooring in the feedstock recycling Stigsnaes RGS-90 project (see Section 9.3.2.2).

Applications for recycled material and cooperation in the collection and future processing of post-consumer waste are ongoing. An extensive R&D programme has shown the feasibility of using the PVC recyclate generated from the Vinyloop process in interlayer applications. Collection schemes are in place in Germany, Austria, and Switzerland with pilot operations being studied or planned in the Netherlands, France, and Belgium.

9.3.1.8 Roofing Membranes

A target of 25% recycling for 2003, aiming for 50% by 2005, has been set for end-of-life, single-ply PVC roofing. This is based on a mechanical cryogenic shredding unit owned and operated by the members of the EuPC sector roofing group and located in Germany. The German market is the largest market by far for this type of roofing and a new collection scheme in partnership with a waste management firm has been set up. The 2003 target was achieved (~540 tonnes followed by ~570 tonnes in 2004), but this process has capacity limitations and was closed at the end of 2004. The solvent-based Vinyloop process has been chosen as a long-term solution with large-scale tests being carried out at the Vinyloop cable recycling facility in Italy. Alternative recycling routes are also currently being considered to augment existing capacity until a new dedicated Vinyloop plant comes on stream in France, planned for 2006 (*www.roofcollect.com*). This could be the production of flooring for areas used by animals.

9.3.1.9 Coated Fabrics

An investigation by EPCOAT (the EuPC sector group for coated fabrics) on collectable waste has indicated that truck tarpaulins and advertising posters could be the highest contributor. Test collection projects have been initiated. Solvent-based recycling is seen as the most promising solution. Alternatively feedstock recycling could be possible.

A study on artificial leather carried out by SFEC (French calendering and coating association) has focused on identifying where and how to collect homogeneous waste. Prefabricators and end-of-life furniture have been identified as the most promising collection targets.

In Germany, an existing waste treatment plant (Friedola) will be renovated and expanded. The technology involves mechanical shredding and compaction of post-consumer waste fabrics for recycling into tarpaulins and artificial leather. A trial collection project, focusing on post-industrial use, has started in a cooperation between IVK (German Plastic Foils Association) and a waste management company. Shredded material is sent to the Friedola plant for recycling or for energy and HCl recovery via incineration (MVR, Hamburg).

In France, the Texyloop process, based on the Vinyloop technology, has been developed to a laboratory pilot unit stage. A larger scale pilot plant is planned for 2004–2005. Longer term, an industrial-scale plant with a capacity of 10,000 tonnes per year is also planned to prepare and treat PVC-coated fabric waste, with an overall investment of €20 million (*www.texyloop.com*). A collection scheme based on ‘big bags’ has been in existence since late 2002 and the material is stored awaiting start up of this plant. This collection scheme will be extended to other countries (*www.ferrari-textiles.com*).

9.3.1.10 Wall Coverings

A project is underway in the UK at Brunel University looking at recycling possibilities for post-industrial use vinyl wall covering material. The recovery of plasticiser and solvent from waste PVC plastisols generated in the manufacturing process during screen changeovers or end-of-runs, and so on, has been shown to be possible using ceramic membrane separation technology [4].

9.3.1.11 Packaging

Collation trays, as used in supermarkets to transport and display products, remain one possibility for mechanical recycling but this depends on a system to identify the polymer, linked to a suitable

collection system. The polymer type identification, for PVC, has been suggested as '3' with PVC or '3' with V, but there is no mandatory system. Outlets for this material have been identified as a foam layer in co-extruded cladding. PVC water bottle scrap has also been incorporated into the foam core of co-extruded pipe. Another outlet is moulding of rainwater fittings.

However, the separation of PVC from mixed plastic waste, particularly polyethylene terephthalate, is problematical and mechanical recycling is not considered viable.

9.3.1.12 Light Concrete

The recovery and recycling of PVC, and of plastics in general, is often very difficult in building and construction because the polymers are in contact with mortar, cement, plaster, sealing compound, etc. An investigation has been carried out to determine if such PVC waste from buildings can be used for the production of light concrete. Light concrete is used for its low weight and high thermal and sound insulation characteristics in floors and walls. The results were positive with further research necessary.

9.3.1.13 North America Vinyl Recycling

The Vinyl Institute website (*www.vinylinfo.org*) has a specific section covering recycling activities and details of vinyl recycling companies and manufacturers of recycled vinyl products. A study carried out in 1997 showed more than 450,000 tonnes, primarily post-industrial waste, recovered and recycled.

9.3.2 PVC Feedstock Recycling

Feedstock or chemical recycling is seen as complementary to mechanical recycling and seems appropriate for cost-effective treatment of mixed and contaminated plastic waste streams. The concept is that PVC can be broken down into its chemical components which can then be recovered for reuse within a range of industrial processes. With a PVC-rich feedstock, hydrochloric acid is one of the main components recovered. This can then be fed back as a raw material in the PVC production process. Various technologies are being investigated.

9.3.2.1 Combustion in a Rotary Kiln

This process, the Dow/BSL project, depends on combustion in a rotary kiln which delivers recovered chlorine with energy recovery for new VCM/PVC production and is based in a commercial feedstock recycling plant in Germany. The plant is capable of treating high-chlorine-containing waste. A 1,000 tonne trial of mixed PVC waste has been successfully processed and the recovered chlorine used on-site. The mixed waste was primarily flooring and coated fabric, with small amounts of plastisols, cable, and window profile collected via a waste management company as a clearing house. The financial aspects of this process have been evaluated and used to compare cost competitiveness when deciding on larger quantities of PVC waste to be processed using this technology.

9.3.2.2 Hydrolysis and Pyrolysis

This process, the Stigsnaes RGS-90 project, is based on hydrolysis in a commercial hydrolysis plant to dechlorinate PVC waste products to <0.1% by weight of chlorine and subsequent low temperature pyrolysis to post-heat and separate the dechlorinated solid fraction into hydrocarbon, salt and minerals.

The Danish-based plant will have a 50,000 tonne capability and investments are supported by the EU as well as Vinyl 2010. The gate fee for PVC waste processing, including pre-treatment, is quoted at €200 per tonne.

9.3.2.3 Coal Replacement in Blast Furnaces (Redop Process)

The Redop (reduction of ore by plastics) process is based on the dechlorination of mixed plastics from household waste, after separation from municipal solid waste, and co-injection of the waste product together with coal into a blast furnace for steel production. The aim is to replace the pulverised coal (coke) in this process.

Mixed plastics waste streams normally contain 0.5–5% of chlorine by weight, which is much less than PVC-rich waste streams used in other feedstock recycling processes. Mechanical recycling would only yield low-value products, so this promising technology has been followed and supported by various organisations, including Vinyl 2010, in the Netherlands. Bench-scale trials have been very encouraging with the Redop product meeting the steel manufacturers' very demanding specifications. The pellets have a higher calorific value than coal. Further trials on an industrial scale are being planned.

9.3.2.4 New Gasification Processes

Gasification involves conversion of materials having carbon and hydrogen in their chemical structure into clean synthesis gas, syngas, which is a mixture of hydrogen and carbon monoxide. Syngas can be used as an energy source for combustion processes used to generate electricity. The process involves very high temperatures in an oxygen-deficient atmosphere. This destroys the dioxins and prevents the formation of acid gases. The inorganic material is converted to a glassy solid material (slag).

ECVM is continuing to investigate low-cost, robust gasification processes capable of treating contaminated and mixed PVC-rich waste streams. As with all recycling technologies, environmental impact, cost competitiveness, and practical experience have to be assessed. Previous experience in this process was developed on the slag bath gasification technology, developed by Linde.

One PVC and compound supplier (*www.hydropolymers.com*) has established a patented process utilising mixed plastics waste which contains almost 70% of packaging (with 4–10% being PVC). This involves gasification leading to syngas which can be converted to methanol production, with further conversion to olefins. The olefins could be used for VCM manufacture or polyolefins.

9.3.3 Incineration/Energy Recovery

Incineration with energy recovery ensures that the calorific value of oil used in PVC production is recovered at end of life. Incorporating PVC waste in controlled municipal incinerators reduces the need

for additional fuel. A number of independent studies have shown that adding PVC to an incinerator waste stream in which chlorine is naturally present does not increase the generation of potentially harmful emissions. The main focus is the development of appropriate techniques for handling the solid waste residues including the solid fraction derived from the neutralisation of gaseous effluents.

Different processes involving salt reduction and detoxification of the neutralisation salts are being investigated at the pilot-plant scale.

9.3.4 Controlled Landfill

Whatever the nature of the PVC recovery process, there will always be a small residual fraction of waste that is not recyclable. For this reducing fraction, controlled landfill would seem to be the most practical disposal option.

An EC report from Argus (*http://europa.eu.int/comm/environment/waste/studies/pvc/landfill.htm*) in 2000 evaluated the behaviour of PVC in landfill based on a literature survey and on landfill simulation studies at accelerated speed and temperatures up to 80 °C. This concluded that there were some contributions to the contamination of leachate and gas occurring in landfills containing PVC. However, direct correlation with the quantity of PVC, relative to other materials, was not possible.

Other independent studies have confirmed that the presence of consumer products containing PVC in landfill does not constitute a risk to the environment [5]. Lead stabilisers have also been found to release slowly from the PVC matrix and the overall lead is minimal in relation to other sources of environmental lead [1].

9.4 Life Cycle Assessments

The life cycle assessment (LCA) methodology deals with the complex interaction between a product and the environment. The process systematically describes and assesses all the flows to and from nature in a cradle to grave perspective. There are four aspects to be considered in an LCA:

- The first step is the goal and scope definition where the product(s) or service(s) to be assessed are defined, a functional basis for comparison is chosen, and the required level of detail defined.

- An inventory step describes and quantifies the raw materials used, the associated energy requirements, and emissions/disposals to air, water, and land occurring during the life of the product (life cycle inventory, LCI).

- An impact assessment, which assesses the impacts of emissions, energy use, and raw material depletions. These are grouped and quantified into a limited number of impact categories which may then be weighted for importance (life cycle impact assessment, LCIA).

- The final step is interpretation. The results are reported and the need and opportunities to reduce the environmental impact of the product(s) or service(s) are systematically evaluated.

A series of international standards are now available that define the general framework, principles, and requirements for conducting and reporting LCA studies. These are categorised under the Environmental Management – Life Cycle Assessment heading and are ISO 14040 – Principles and

Framework [6], ISO 14041 – Goal and Scope Definition and Inventory Analysis [7], ISO 14042 – Life Cycle Impact Assessment [8], and ISO 14043 – Life Cycle Interpretation [9].

LCA comparisons should be undertaken at the application level rather than at the material level. A study commissioned by the EC on the LCA of PVC and principal competing materials was completed in July 2004 (*http://europa.eu.int/comm/enterprise/chemicals/sustdev/pvc-final_report_lca.pdf*). This was an overview of publicly available information for a variety of applications in order to assess existing information and to identify information gaps. From the 100 LCA identified for PVC, only 30 made comparisons at the application level and many did not fulfil all the requirements outlined by ISO 14040 [6]. The general conclusions drawn for PVC were (1) related to the need for extraction of oil and rock salt and (2) although various technologies for PVC recycling are available, there is an issue with consumers not accepting recycled products with lower optical or aesthetic quality even if technical quality is similar to that of virgin material. Some specific findings were:

- Windows – no overall winner as none of the materials had an overall advantage for the standard impact categories. Design optimisation is seen as the most promising way of lowering environmental impacts.

- Pipe – the production phase was seen to have the greatest influence but with differing viewpoints on material choice. Some studies showed clear advantages for concrete and fibre cement, others for polymer (PVC and PE). Some reports concluded that the material plays no role, as long as cast iron is not included.

- Flooring – linoleum has comparable or slightly fewer environmental impacts in the production phase, but due to significant information gaps in the competitive materials in the use phase, which was found to be the life cycle stage that could influence overall environmental impact to the greatest extent, the analysis was inconclusive.

- Roofing – polymeric materials have lower environmental impacts but the largest influences are the thermal conductivity and good installation and maintenance of the roofing system.

- Packaging – for non-reusable packaging, PVC and PET have similar impacts in comparison to less favourable heavier alternatives. The conclusions are not clear when reuse is taken into account.

The conclusions are being used to counter discriminations by local authorities, etc., against PVC in green procurement and eco-labelling discussions.

In the USA, a draft report combining LCA with Risk Assessments has been issued by the Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) Technical and Scientific Advisory Committee of the US Green Building Council covering PVC related materials (*www.usgbc.org/Docs/LEED_tsac/USGBC_TSAC_PVC_Draft_Report_12-17-04..pdf*). This concluded that PVC was neither a clear winner nor a loser in their investigations.

9.4.1 Eco-profiles

APME have assembled detailed environmental data on the processes operated by its member companies. This information is available on a website (*www.apme.org*) for registered users and contains generic data that could be used to optimise plastics waste management, compile average

industry data for process improvements, and contains inventory data for downstream users to be able to produce their own LCA of individual products. Eco-profiles are available for VCM, PVC resins, and different conversion products.

ECPI also has an eco-profile of the high-volume commodity phthalate esters DEHP, DINP, and DIDP available on its website (*www.ecpi.org*).

9.5 Social Factors

The industry associations ECVM, ECPI, and ESPA have joined together with the European Mine, Chemical, and Energy Workers Federation (EMCEF) to set up as social dialogue on important issues with regular meetings and consultations. This dialogue covers development of Health and Safety Executive standards, training, and transfer of standards to the EU accession countries and dialogue on European works councils.

The aim of Vinyl 2010 is to obtain a gradual enlargement of the voluntary commitment to the new EU member states, even if there are major issues due to the historical structure of the PVC industry in some countries. As a first step, the PVC producers in these countries have committed to achieving the ECVM production charters by 2007. The process for the phasing out of cadmium and lead stabilisers has been started along with the identification of PVC waste streams and volumes.

An important worldwide initiative, which has been running for several years, is Responsible Care, which is the chemical industry's voluntary programme to raise its safety, health, and environmental (SHE) standards and win greater trust. Safety of employees and contractors is a key feature with transparency and verification of indicators covering fatality rates, lost time injury frequency rate, and occupational illness frequency rate. There is also a commitment to provide sufficient information about their operations and products to stakeholders and neighbours. Product stewardship, which takes ownership for products down the supply chain to their final use and disposal, is also an important commitment. There are also targets and goals to reduce emissions.

Responsible Care, which is being developed into a management system in Europe (*www.cefic.org*), is aimed at helping the chemical industry to gain the trust of the public and to operate safely, profitably, and with due care for future generations. Further information is also available at *www.responsiblecare.org*.

References

1. P. Coghlan, *A Discussion of Some of the Scientific Issues Concerning the Use of PVC, An Update of the CSIRO Report 'The Environmental Aspects of the Use of PVC in Building Products, 2nd Edition, 1998'*, CSIRO, Australia, 2001.

2. *Vinyl 2010 Progress Report* (*www.vinyl2010.org*).

3. G. Vidotto and M. Piana, *Italia Imballaggio*, 2003, **10**, 120.

4. T. Bushell and C. Howick in *Proceedings of PVC 2002: Towards a Sustainable Future Conference*, Brighton, UK, 2002, p.221.

5. I. Mersiowsky, *Journal of Vinyl and Additive Technology*, 2002, **8**, **1**, 36.

6. ISO 14040, *Environmental Management - Life Cycle Assessment - Principles and Framework*, 1997.

7. ISO 14041, *Environmental Management - Life Cycle Assessment - Goal and Scope Definition and Inventory Analysis*, 1998.

8. ISO 14042, *Environmental Management - Life Cycle Assessment - Life Cycle Impact Assessment*, 2000.

9. ISO 14043, *Environmental Management - Life Cycle Assessment - Life Cycle Interpretation*, 2000.

10 Causes of Failure

Like other plastics, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) is not free from product failure during service. A recent study [1] has shown that the main reasons for failure in plastics, in general are environmental stress cracking, dynamic fatigue, static notch failure, creep-related failure, chemical attack, ultraviolet (UV) attack, heat degradation, and wear/abrasion. These are stated in decreasing order of failure.

Amorphous thermoplastics, such as PVC, are particularly sensitive to environmental stress cracking. The reason for this is probably associated with the open structure that allows high rates of fluid permeation. The influence of hydrogen bonding parameters for 65 fluids on craze and crack initiation has been investigated [2].

Dynamic fatigue, as already explained in Section 4.3.4, is not a strong feature of amorphous plastics and unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U) is particularly sensitive in this area. However, this is well known and allowance is made for this aspect in formulation and design - pressure pipes are an example.

Impact-related failure, in the absence or presence of notches, is probably one of the most common reasons for failure of PVC-U products. This may be due to the use of the incorrect grade/formulation for the service temperature and/or poor product design causing stress concentration effects.

Creep is not so much of an issue with PVC-U, but plasticised PVC (PVC-P) may be subject to creep failure at the areas of jointing.

PVC offers good chemical resistance, as noted in Section 4.11.3, but there should be an awareness of chemicals likely to come into contact with the article and the service temperature.

Discolouration caused by UV light and/or heat degradation is another significant reason for short product life. Again, the reason may be due to incorrect formulation and/or awareness of the operating environment, e.g., weather conditions.

Reversible discoloration effects linked to the photochemical degradation of titanium dioxide-pigmented PVC-U have been shown after a period of storage of the aged material in the dark. This has been attributed to the formation of particular polyenic sequences, with the screening effect of the pigment protecting these polyenes against photo-oxidation, so permitting these polyenes to accumulate in the degraded polymer. Pinking of PVC-U profiles in mild climatic conditions has been observed in service. This has been explained by the formation of polyene sequences not completely photo-oxidatively bleached under conditions of oxygen starvation. Predictive tests have also been suggested to recognise this behaviour.

Dirt retention on both PVC-U and PVC-P products can be an annoying failing for consumers. The problem can be due to loss of surface gloss on outdoor exposure, which can attract and retain dirt. For PVC-P articles there may also be issues with plasticiser leaching to the surface and attracting dirt and/or microbiological attack that discolors the material.

Examples of PVC failing due to premature wear and abrasion are extremely limited and are due to incorrect formulation and/or processing.

Embrittlement of PVC-P materials is caused by plasticiser migrating or evaporating during service. The ultimate outcome is product shrinkage and cracking. The correct plasticiser choice to suit the application is necessary.

Product failure analysis is a complex subject. Although it is comparatively easy to establish the main reason for product failure, several possibilities must be considered when product changes are required to avoid the problem. Formulation, product design, processing parameters, die design, and service conditions are some of these possibilities. Usually a compromise has to be considered to arrive at a satisfactory conclusion.

References

1. D.C. Wright, *Failure of Plastics and Rubber Products: Causes, Effects and Case Studies Involving Degradation*, Rapra Technology, Shrewsbury, UK, 2001.

2. D.C. Wright, *Environmental Stress Cracking of Plastics*, Rapra Technology, Shrewsbury, UK, 1996.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

OBPA	10, 10´-Oxybisphenoxyarsine
OIT	2-n-Octylisothiazolin-3-one
DCOIT	4, 5-Dichloro-2-n-octylisothiazolin-3-one
ABS	Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
APME	Association of Plastic Manufacturers in Europe
ACDM	Azodicarbonamide
BAT	Best available technology
BPA	Bisphenol A
BPF	British Plastics Federation
BBP	Butyl benzyl phthalate
CMR	Carcinogenic, mutagenic, or toxic to reproduction
CDRH	Centre for Devices and Radiological Health
CMAI	Chemical Market Associates
PCDFC	Chlorinated dibenzofuran(s)
PCDD	Chlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxin(s)
CPE	Chlorinated polyethylene
C-PVC	Chlorinated PVC
CFC	Chlorofluorocarbon(s)
CI	Colour Index
CPP	Committee on Products and Processes for Use in Public Water Supply
CPD	Construction Products Directive
XLPE	Crosslinked PE
DIN	Deutsches Institut für Normung eV
DEHA	Di-2-ethylhexyl adipate
DEHP	Di-2-ethylhexyl phthalate
DOS	Di-2-ethylhexyl sebacate
DBP	Dibutyl phthalate
DDT	Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane
DIDA	Diisodecyl adipate
DIDP	Diisodecyl phthalate
DIDS	Diisodecyl sebacate
DINA	Diisononyl adipate

DINP	Diisononyl phthalate
DNP	Dinonyl phthalate
DOA	Dioctyl adipate
DOP	Dioctyl phthalate
DWI	Drinking Water Inspectorate
KIWA	Dutch Water Authority
E-PVC	Emulsion-polymerised PVC
EDC	Endocrine-disrupting chemical(s)
ELV	End-of-life vehicle
ESBO	Epoxidised soya bean oil
EBS	Ethylene bisstearamide
EDCL	Ethylene dichloride
EO	Ethylene oxide
EPDM	Ethylene propylene diene monomer
EVA	Ethylene–vinyl acetate copolymers
EAS	European Acceptance Scheme
ECB	European Chemical Bureau
CEN	European Committee for Standardisation
EC	European Community
ECVM	European Council of Vinyl Manufacturers
EDQM	European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines
EFSA	European Food Safety Authority
EMCEF	European Mine, Chemical, and Energy Workers Federation
EuPR	European Plastics Recyclers
EPPA	European Profile Producers Association
EPCOAT	European PVC Coated Fabrics Sector of EuPC
ESPA	European Stabiliser Producers Association
EU	European Union
FIGRA	Fire growth rate
FR	Flame retardant(s)
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
SFEC	French Calendering and Coated Fabric Trade Association
GC	Gas chromatography
DVGW	German Association of the Gas and Water Trade
T_g	Glass transition temperature
GMO	Glycerol monooleate
GMS	Glycerol monostearate
GMP	Good manufacturing practice
GPP	Green public procurement
HDT	Heat deflection temperature

HF	High frequency
HDPE	High-density PE
HALS	Hindered amine light stabilisers
HCl	Hydrogen chloride
IVK	Industrieverband Kunststoffbahnen (German Plastic Foils Association)
IR	Infra-red
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
ISO	International Standards Organisation
JIS	Japanese Standards Association
KTW	Künststoffe und Trinkwasser
LEED	Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design
L/D	Length:diameter ratio
LCA	Life cycle assessment(s)
LCIA	Life cycle impact assessment
LCI	Life cycle inventory
LOI	Limiting oxygen index
LTS	Long-term creep strength
LDPE	Low-density PE
MCCP	Medium chain chlorinated paraffin(s)
MDPE	Medium-density PE
TM	Melting temperature
MABS	Methacrylate-acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene
MBS	Methacrylate-butadiene-styrene
MRS	Minimum required strength
PVC-O	Molecular oriented PVC
MWD	Molecular weight distribution
MMT	Montmorillonite
NBS	National Bureau of Standards
NSF	National Sanitation Foundation
NBR	Nitrile rubbers
NGO	Non-governmental organisation(s)
MN	Number-average molecular weight
OECD	Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development
OSPAR	Oslo Paris Commission
AFC	Panel on Food Additives, Flavourings, Processing Aids, and Materials in contact with Food
phr	Parts per hundred resin
POP	Persistent organic pollutant(s)
PBT	Persistent, bioaccumulative and toxic
PVC-P	Plasticised PVC
PA	Polyamide

PC	Polycarbonate
PET	Polyethylene terephthalate
PE	Polyethylene(s)
PP	Polypropylene
PS	Polystyrene
PU	Polyurethane
PVC	Polyvinyl chloride
PVDC	Polyvinylidene chloride
PNEC	Predicted no-effect concentrations
QA	Quality assurance
RF	Radio frequency
R&D	Research and Development
RoHS	Restriction of hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment
rpm	Revolutions per minute
SHE	Safety, health, and environmental
SBI	Single burning item test
SMOGRA	Smoke growth rate
SS	Smoke suppressant(s)
SML	Specific migration limit(s)
SDR	Standard dimensional ratio (ratio between outside diameter and wall thickness)
S-PVC	Suspension-polymerised PVC
ECPI	The European Council for Plasticisers and Intermediates
TEPPFA	The European Plastic Pipes and Fittings Association
EuPC	The European Plastics Converters
TNS	The Natural Step
REACH	The Registration, Evaluation and Authorisation of Chemicals system
TPE	Thermoplastic elastomer(s)
TPO	Thermoplastic olefins
TDI	Tolerable daily intake
THR	Total Heat Release
TEQ	Toxic equivalent(s)
TEF	Toxic equivalent factor
TMA	Trimellitic anhydride
TMPTA	Trimethylolpropane triacrylate
TMPTMA	Trimethylolpropane trimethacrylate
TOTM	Trioctyl trimellitate
TEHTM	Tris-2-ethylhexyl trimellitate
UHMW	Ultrahigh molecular weight
UV	Ultraviolet
UL	Underwriters' Laboratories

UNEP	United Nations Environmental Program
PVC-U	Unplasticised PVC
EPA	US Environmental Protection Agency
VPVB	Very persistent and very bioaccumulative
VCM	Vinyl chloride monomer
VOC	Volatile organic chemical(s)
WEEE	Waste electrical and electronic equipment
WRAP	Waste Resources Action Programme
MW	Weight-average molecular weight
WHO	World Health Organisation
WWF	World Wildlife Fund

Index

Page numbers in italic, e.g. *64*, refer to figures. Page numbers in bold, e.g. **76**, signify entries in tables.

A

Abrasion resistance 68–69
Acrylate–polymethacrylate copolymer 40–41
Acrylonitrile–butadiene–styrene (ABS) terpolymer 40–41
  density 53
  hardness 54
  maximum continuous use temperature **76**
  smoke evolution *64*
  water vapour permeability **79**
Additives
  antioxidants and light stabilisers 49
  blowing agents 48
  fillers 43–44
  flame retardants (FR) and smoke suppressants (SS) 44–45
  heat stabilisers 21–22
    barium cadmium-based (Ba Cd) heat stabilisers 26
    barium zinc-based (Ba Zn) heat stabilisers 26
    calcium organic-based stabilisers 24
    calcium zinc-based (Ca Zn) stabilisers 23–24, 26
    lead-based stabilisers 7, 22–23
    mixed metal stabilisers 25–26
    organotin stabilisers 7, 24–25
    safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues 7
  impact modifiers 40–42
  lubricants 42–43
  microbiocides 47–48
  pigments 45–47
  plasticisers 27
    adipates 130
    compatibility 27–28
    influence on physical properties 29–30
    phthalates 129–130
    plasticisation process 28–29
    selection principles 30–31
    types 32–40, **33–34**
  process aids 42–43
  PVC-P additives
    antistatic agents 49
    bonding agents/adhesion promoters 50
    viscosity and rheology modifiers 49–50
  resins 18–19
    formulation factors **19**
Adhesives 121
Adipate plasticisers 130
Advertising banners 95
Aliphatic esters 37–38, *38*
  characteristics and applications **33–34**
Alkyl sulfonic phenyl esters 36
Alkylphenols
  safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues 7–8
Aluminium trihydrate 45
Amide wax 42
Ammonium octamolybdate 45
Antimony oxychloride 45
Antimony trioxide 45
  risk assessments 132
Antioxidants 49
Antistatic agents 49
Arc resistance 62
Assembly techniques 119
  adhesion 121
  machining, cutting and fastening 122
  welding 119–120
    friction welding 120
    hot gas welding 121
    hot plate welding 121
    laser welding 121
    radio-frequency welding 120
    ultrasonic welding 120
Autoclave (steam) sterilisation 74
Automotive and transport items 94
Azelates 37

B

Barium cadmium-based (Ba Cd) heat stabilisers 26
Barium zinc-based (Ba Zn) heat stabilisers 26
Benzoate esters 36
Best available technology (BAT) 126
Biaxial PVC 110–111

operating pressure and stiffness **111**
standard dimension ratio (SDR) and stiffness **110**
Biocompatibility assessment of PVC 72
Biological behaviour of polymers
food and water legislation assessment 69
drinking water 72
food contact 70–71
medical legislation assessment
biocompatibility 72
competent authority approval 73
formulation disclosure 74
product conformance 74
regulatory status 73
sterilisation techniques 74
ethylene oxide (EO) 74–75
radiation 75
steam (autoclave) 74
Bisphenol A (BPA) 128
safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues 7–8
Blowing agents 48
Bonding agents/adhesion promoters 50
Breakdown voltage 62
Bulk polymerisation processes 15
Bulk powder properties 18
Butylbenzyl phthalate (BBP) 6, **33**, 36, *36*
risk assessments 130

C

Cables, reaction to fire test 66
Cadmium 131
Calcium carbonate fillers 44
Calcium organic-based heat stabilisers 24
Calcium zinc-based (Ca Zn) heat stabilisers 23–24, 26
Calendering 105–106
Calorimetry 63–64
Carbon monoxide (CO) 64
Charpy impact test 57, 58
Chemical resistance testing 77–78
Chlorinated paraffins 39
Chlorinated polyethylene (CPE) 40–41
Chlorinated PVC (PVC-C) 17
allowable stress **58**
density 53
fire properties **63**
influence of temperature on flexural modulus *56*
mechanical properties **54**
thermal properties **59**
Chlorine
production for PVC manufacture 11–12
Chlorofluorocarbons (CFC) 123
Chlorophiles 124–125
Citrate-based esters 37
Coatings 118–119
Cold flex temperature 60
influence of plasticisers *61*
Colour of polymers 68
Combustion toxicity 64
Construction Products Directive (CPD) 65
Copolymers 15–16
Creep 145

D

Density of polymers 53
Design considerations 83
PVC-P 89
advertising banners 95
automotive and transport items 94
electrical cable 89–90
flooring 90–91
metal coatings 93
roofing membranes 92–93
safety and personal protection items 93–94
toys and baby care items 93
wall covering 91–92
PVC-U 83
exterior construction applications 85–89
pipework 83–85
Di-2-ethylhexyl adipate (DEHA) **33**, 38, 130
Di-2-ethylhexyl azelate **34**
Di-2-ethylhexyl phthalate (DEHP) 6, **33**
risk assessments 129
Di-2-ethylhexyl sebacate (DOS) **34**, 38
Di-2-propylheptyl phthalate **33**
Diaphragm cells for chlorine production 11
Dibutyl phthalate (DBP) 6, **33**
risk assessments 130
4,5-Dichloro-2-*n*-octylisothiazolin-3-one (DCOIT) 48
Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT) 123
1,2-Dichloroethane (ethylene dichloride; EDCL) 12
Dielectric constant 61–62
Dielectric strength 62
Dihexyl phthalate **33**
Diisobutyl phthalate **33**
Diisodecyl adipate (DIDA) **34**, 38
Diisodecyl phthalate (DIDP) 6
characteristics and applications **33**
risk assessments 129
stability 31
Diisodecyl sebacate (DIDS) **34**
Diisoheptyl phthalate **33**
Diisononyl adipate (DINA) **34**, 38
Diisononyl-cyclohexane-1,2-dicarboxylate 37
Diisononyl phthalate (DINP) 6, 7
characteristics and applications **33**
risk assessments 129
stability 31
Diisotridecyl phthalate **33**
Diisoundecyl phthalate **33**
Dioctyl adipate (DOA) **33**, 38
Dioctyl phthalate **33**

Dioxins 123
Dirt retention 145
Discoloration 145
Disposal operations 8, 132–133
Dissipation factor 62
Doors 85–87
Dry blend mixing 97
  high intensity 97–98
  low intensity 98
Dynamic fatigue 59, 145

E

Eco-labelling 8
Eco-profiles 141–142
Electrical cable 89–90
  fire performance 90
  waste management and recycling 135
Electrical properties of polymers **61**
  arc resistance 62
  breakdown voltage or dielectric strength 62
  dielectric constant or relative permittivity 61–62
  loss modulus or dissipation factor 62
  volume resistivity 61
Electron beam irradiation 75
Embrittlement 146
Emulsion-polymerised PVC (E-PVC) 14–15
Endocrine-disrupting chemicals (EDCL) 124
End-of-life issues 8, 132–133
  coal replacement in blast furnaces 139
  controlled landfill 140
  feedstock recycling 138
  hydrolysis and pyrolysis 139
  incineration/energy recovery 139–140
  mechanical recycling 133
    coated fabrics 137
    collection and separation/washing/grinding/ pulverisation 134
    flooring 136
    general points 133–134
    light concrete 138
    packaging 137–138
    pipes and fittings 135
    profile 134–135
    roofing membranes 137
    Vinyloop® process 135–136, *136*
    wall coverings 137
    wire and cable 135
  new gasification processes 139
  rotary kiln combustion 138
Environmental and safety issues *see* safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues
Epoxidised soya bean oil (ESBO) 39
  characteristics and applications **34**
  HCl scavenging 26
  safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues 8, 130, 132
Ethylene
  production for PVC manufacture 11
Ethylene bisstearamide (EBS) 42
Ethylene dichloride (1,2-dichloroethane; EDCL) 12
Ethylene oxide (EO) sterilisation 74–75
Ethylene–vinyl acetate (EVA) 40–41
  water vapour permeability **79**
2-Ethylhexyldiphenyl phosphate 39
European Council of Vinyl Manufacturers (ECVM)
  design principles 83
  environmental standards 13
  First Charter on S-PVC and VCM production 126–127
  green product procurement (GPP) policy response 8
  new gasification processes 139
  Second Charter on E-PVC production 127–128
Exfoliation 113
Exterior construction applications
  above ground drainage 87
  cladding/siding 87–88
  decking and fencing 88–89
  fascia, soffit and bargeboard 88
  roller shutters 89
  windows and doors 85–87, *86*
Extrusion blow moulding 105
Extrusion processing
  co-extrusion 102
  downstream equipment 103
  extrusion tooling 103
  plate-out 103–104
  single-screw 102
  twin-screw 101–102, *101*

F

Fabric-backed vinyl 92
  waste management and recycling 137
Failure causes 145–146
Fatigue 58–59, **58**
Fillers 43–44
Fire growth rate (RA) 65
Fire performance 8–9
  electrical cable 90
Fire properties of polymers 62, **63**
  flame ignition temperature 63
  heat of combustion (calorimetry) 63–64
  limiting oxygen index (LOI) 63
  performance of PVC 64–65
  self-ignition temperature 62
  smoke evolution 64, *64*
Fire testing, EU procedures 65
  reaction to fire
    cables 66

radiant panel test for floorings 66
single burning item (SBI) test 65–66
small flame test 66
resistance to fire 67
Flame ignition temperature 63
Flame retardants (FR) 44–45
Flexural properties of polymers 56
influence of temperature *56*, *57*
Flooring 90–91
waste management and recycling 136
Flory–Huggins interaction parameter 28
Fluidised bed powder moulding 107
Food and water legislation assessment of PVC 69
drinking water 72
food contact 70–71
Formulation factors **19**
Free volume theory 29
Friction welding 120

G

Gamma irradiation 75
Gel theory 29
Gelation 99–100
Glass transition temperature 1
chlorinated PVC 17
effect of plasticisers 27
homopolymers 13
Gloss level 68
Glycerol monooleate (GMO) 43
Glycerol monostearate (GMS) 43
Green product procurement (GPP) policies 8
Greenpeace, anti-PVC campaigns 124

H

Hardness 54
influence of plasticisers *55*
relationship with tensile properties *56*
Health and safety issues *see* safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues
Heat deflection temperature (HDT) 59–60
Heat of combustion (calorimetry) 63–64
Heat stabilisers 21–22
liquid form
mixed metal stabilisers 25–26
organotin stabilisers 7, 24–25
safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues 7, 131
solid form
calcium organic-based stabilisers 24
calcium zinc-based (Ca Zn) stabilisers 23–24
lead-based stabilisers 7, 22–23
Hindered amine light stabilisers (HALS) 49
Homopolymers 13
emulsion-polymerised PVC (E-PVC) 14–15
mass or bulk polymerisation processes 15
microsuspension polymerisation process 14
structure and stability 15
suspension-polymerised PVC (S-PVC) 13–14
Hot gas welding 121
Hot plate welding 121
Hydrogen chloride (HCl), combustion toxicity 64
Hydroxybenzophenone 49

I

Identification of PVC resins 19–20
Impact modifiers 40–42
Impact properties of polymers 57–58
Impact-related failure 145
Incineration 124
Injection moulding 104–105
Intercalation 113
in situ polymerisation 114
melt intercalation 113–114
solvent method 114
Interior construction applications
conduit and ducting 89
Izod impact test 57

L

Laser welding 121
Lead chromate 46
Lead-based heat stabilisers 7, 22–23, 131
Life cycle assessments (LCA) 140–141
Life cycle impact assessment (LCIA) 140
eco-profiles 141–142
Life cycle inventory (LCI) 140
Light stabilisers 49
Limiting oxygen index (LOI) 63
Linear expansion coefficient 60
Liquid PVC blending 98–99
Loss modulus 62
Lubricants 42–43
Lubricity theory 28

M

Magnesium hydroxide 45
Mass polymerisation processes 15
Maximum continuous use temperature **76**
Mechanical assembly 122
Mechanical properties of polymers 53, **54**
fatigue 58–59, **58**
flexural properties 56
hardness 54
impact properties 57–58
tensile properties 55
Medical legislation assessment of PVC
biocompatibility 72
competent authority approval 73

formulation disclosure 74
product conformance 74
regulatory status 73
Medium chain chlorinated paraffins (MCCP) 39
safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues 130
Melt processing 100
extrusion 101–104
melt compounding 100
Membrane cells for chlorine production 11
Mercury cells for chlorine production 11
Metal coatings 93
Methacrylate–acrylonitrile–butadiene–styrene (MABS) copolymer 3
Methacrylate–butadiene–styrene (MBS) terpolymer 40–41
Microbiocides 47–48
Micro-organism resistance of PVC 76
Microsuspension polymerisation process 14
Molecular orientated PVC (PVC-O) 85
Molecular weight distribution (MWD) 13, 17
Montmorillonite (MMT) 113–114

N

Nanocomposites 113
in situ polymerisation 114
melt intercalation 113–114
solvent method 114
Number-average molecular weight 17

O

2-*n*-Octylisothiazolin-3-one (OIT) 48
Optical properties of polymers 67
colour 68
gloss level 68
transparency 67
Organotin heat stabilisers 7, 24, 132
carboxylates 25
mercaptides 24–25
10,10′-Oxybisphenoxyarsine (OBPA) 48

P

Paper-backed vinyl 92
waste management and recycling 137
Particle size 17–18
Permeability testing 78
gases 79, **79**
water and liquids 78, **79**
Persistent organic pollutants (POP) 123
Persistent, bioaccumulative and toxic (PBT) chemicals 124
Phosphate esters 38–39, *38*
characteristics and applications **34**
Phthalate plasticisers, *32*
alternatives to 36–37
branched and linear 32–36
characteristics and applications **33**
safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues 6–7, 129
risk assessments 129–130
Pigments 45
organic pigments 47
titanium dioxide 45–46
Pipe systems 83–84
below ground drainage 84
biaxial PVC 110–111
operating pressure and stiffness **111**
standard dimension ratio (SDR) and stiffness **110**
hot water distribution 85
potable water transportation 84–85
waste management and recycling 135
Plasticised-PVC (PVC-P)
additives
antistatic agents 49
bonding agents/adhesion promoters 50
viscosity and rheology modifiers 49–50
density 53
design considerations 89
advertising banners 95
automotive and transport items 94
electrical cable 89–90
flooring 90–91
metal coatings 93
roofing membranes 92–93
safety and personal protection items 93–94
toys and baby care items 93
wall covering 91–92
electrical properties **61**
fire properties **63**
gas permeability **79**
identification 19
influence of temperature on flexural modulus *57*
mechanical properties **54**
tensile modulus 55
thermal properties **59**
water absorption 53
water vapour permeability **79**
Plasticisers 27
compatibility 27–28
flexibilisers/internal plasticisers 111–112
influence on physical properties 29–30
plasticisation process 28
free volume theory 29
lubricity and gel theories 28–29
selection principles 30
migration resistance/extractability 30
migration/volatility 30–31
stability in service 31
types 32, **33–34**

adipates 130
aliphatic esters 37–38
phosphate esters 38–39
phthalate esters 32–36, 129–130
polyesters 39–40
secondary plasticisers 39
trimellitate esters 37
Plastisol moulding processes 106
rheology 106
rotational, slush and dip moulding 107
speading or coating 106
Polarity parameter 27
Polyamides (PA 6; PA 66)
gas permeability **79**
maximum continuous use temperature **76**
water vapour permeability **79**
Polycarbonate (PC)
gas permeability **79**
hardness 54
maximum continuous use temperature **76**
smoke evolution *64*
water vapour permeability **79**
Polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDF) 123
Polychlorinated dibenzo-*p*-dioxins (PCDD) 123
Polyesters 39–40
Polyethylene (PE)
allowable stress **58**
density 53
flame ignition temperature 63
gas permeability **79**
heat of combustion (calorimetry) 63
limiting oxygen index (LOI) 63
maximum continuous use temperature **76**
natural gas distribution piping 83–84
peak heat release rate 64
pricing **6**
self-ignition temperature 62
smoke evolution *64*
water vapour permeability **79**
Polyethylene terephthalate (PET) 3
density 53
gas permeability **79**
hardness 54
pricing **6**
water absorption 53
water vapour permeability **79**
Polyolefins 3
Polypropylene (PP) 3
flame ignition temperature 63
gas permeability **79**
hardness 54
heat of combustion (calorimetry) 63
limiting oxygen index (LOI) 63
maximum continuous use temperature **76**
peak heat release rate 64
pricing **6**
self-ignition temperature 62
thermal conductivity *59*
water vapour permeability **79**
Polystyrene (PS) 3
density 53
gas permeability **79**
hardness 54
maximum continuous use temperature **76**
pricing **6**
water vapour permeability **79**
Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE)
thermal conductivity *59*
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)
See also biaxial PVC; chlorinated PVC (PVC-C); emulsion-polymerised PVC (E-PVC); plasticised-PVC (PVC-P); suspension-polymerised PVC (S-PVC); unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U); unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U), foam; unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U), impact modified
advantages 2
applications 3, **4**
chlorinated PVC 17
commercial production 2
competitive materials 3
copolymers and terpolymers 15–16
crystallinity 1
degradation *16*, *22*
fire performance 64–65
history 2
homopolymers
emulsion-polymerised PVC (E-PVC) 14–15
mass or bulk polymerisation processes 15
microsuspension polymerisation process 14
structure and stability 15
suspension-polymerised PVC (S-PVC) 13–14
industry overview and major suppliers 4–5, **5**
limitations 3
market share and consumption trends 3
pricing 5–6, *5*
compared with other polymers **6**
production industry charters 126
First Charter on S-PVC and VCM production 126–127
reaction inhibitors 128
Second Charter on E-PVC production 127–128
safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues 6
bisphenol A/alkylphenols 7–8
end-of-life issues 8, 132–140
epoxidised soya bean oil (ESBO) 8
fire performance 8–9, 90
green product procurement (GPP)/eco-labelling 8
heat stabilisers 7
life cycle *125*
life cycle assessments (LCA) 140–142

phthalate plasticisers 6–7
social factors 142
vinyl chloride monomer (VCM) 12, 124
smoke evolution *64*
source materials 1, 11–12
structure 1, *16*
defects *22*
thermoplasticity 1
Polyvinylidene chloride (PVDC)
water vapour permeability **79**
Porosity 18
Post-processing
printing and coating 117–119
thermoforming 117
Powder moulding processes 107
fluidised bed 107
Precipitated calcium carbonates (PCC) 44
Printing 118
Process aids 42–43
Processing procedures 97
calendering 105–106
dry blend mixing 97
high intensity 97–98
low intensity 98
extrusion blow moulding 105
gelation 99–100
injection moulding 104–105
liquid PVC blending 98–99
melt processing 100
extrusion 101–104
melt compounding 100
plastisol moulding processes 106
rheology 106
rotational, slush and dip moulding 107
speading or coating 106
powder moulding processes 107
fluidised bed 107
Property enhancement 109
blends and alloys
flexibilisers/internal plasticisers 111–112
ultrahigh molecular weight (UHMW) PVC 112
crosslinking 109
chemical crosslinking 109
irradiation crosslinking 110
nanocomposites 113
in situ polymerisation 114
melt intercalation 113–114
solvent method 114
orientation 110
pipework 110–111, **110**
sheeting 111
wood composites 114–115
Pyrolysis gas chromatography (GC) 20

R

Radiant panel test for floorings 66
Radiation sterilisation 75
Radio-frequency welding 120
Reaction inhibitors 128
Recycling operations 8, 132–133
coal replacement in blast furnaces 139
controlled landfill 140
feedstock recycling 138
hydrolysis and pyrolysis 139
incineration/energy recovery 139–140
mechanical recycling 133
coated fabrics 137
collection and separation/washing/grinding/pulverisation 134
flooring 136
general points 133–134
light concrete 138
packaging 137–138
pipes and fittings 135
profile 134–135
roofing membranes 137
Vinyloop® process 135–136, *136*
wall coverings 137
wire and cable 135
new gasification processes 139
rotary kiln combustion 138
Redop process 139
Relative permitivity 61–62
Resins
additives 18–19
formulation factors **19**
characterisation
bulk powder properties 18
molecular weight 17
particle size 17–18
porosity 18
identification 19–20
monomer (VCM) manufacture 12
polymerisation 12–13
chlorinated PVC 17
copolymers and terpolymers 15–16
homopolymers 13–15
raw starting materials 11–12
storage and transportation 18
Rockwell hardness test 54

S

Safety and personal protection items 93–94
Safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues 6
bisphenol A/alkylphenols 7–8
end-of-life issues 8, 132–140
epoxidised soya bean oil (ESBO) 8

fire performance 8–9
electrical cable 90
green product procurement (GPP)/eco-labelling 8
heat stabilisers 7, 131
life cycle assessments (LCA) 140–141
phthalate plasticisers 6–7
social factors 142
vinyl chloride monomer (VCM) 12, 124
Sebacates 37
Self-ignition temperature 62
Service performance tests for polymers
gases 79, **79**
maximum continuous use temperature 76, **76**
permeability 78
stability to light, UV radiation and weathering 76–77
chemical resistance 77–78
laboratory weathering testing 77
natural weathering testing 77
water and liquids 78, **79**
Sheeting 111
Shore A hardness scale 29, 54
influence of plasticisers *55*
relationship with tensile properties *56*
Single burning item (SBI) test 65–66
Small flame test 66
Smoke corrosion 65
Smoke evolution 64, *64*
Smoke growth rate (SMOGRA) 65
Smoke suppressants (SS) 44–45
Solubility parameter 27
Specific heat capacity 60
Specific migration limits (SML) 71
Stability to light, UV radiation and weathering 76–77
Standard dimension ratio (SDR) and stiffness **110**
Steam (autoclave) sterilisation 74
Sterilisation techniques for polymers 74
ethylene oxide (EO) 74–75
radiation 75
steam (autoclave) 74
Storage of PVC resins 18
Surface properties of polymers
abrasion resistance 68–69
resistivity 69
Suspension-polymerised PVC (S-PVC) 13–14
Sustainable development 123
environmental attack and response 123–125
Vinyl 2010/chlorine industry 125
chlorine generation 126
conversion with additives 128–132
PVC production industry charters 126–128

T

Tensile properties of polymers *55*
influence of plasticisers *55*
relationship with hardness *56*
Terpolymers 15–16
2,2,6,6-Tetramethylpiperidine 49
The Natural Step (TNS) network 125
Thermal properties of polymers 59, **59**
cold flex temperature 60
conductivity 59
heat deflection temperature (HDT) *59–60*
linear expansion coefficient 60
specific heat capacity 60
vicat softening point 60
Thermoforming 117
Thermoplasticity 1
3,3-Thiopropionic acid 49
Tin
organotin heat stabilisers 7, 24
carboxylates 25
mercaptides 24–25
Titanium dioxide 45–46
Total heat release (THR) 65
Toxic equivalent (TEQ) 123
Toxic equivalent factor (TEF) 123
Toys and baby care items 93
Transparency 67
Transportation of PVC resins 18
Trimellitate esters 37, *37*
characteristics and applications **33**
Trimellitic anhydride (TMA) 37
Trimethylolpropane trimethacrylate (TMPTMA) 109
Trioctyl trimellitate (TOTM) **33**, 37
Tris-(2-ethylhexyl) phosphate 39
Tris-(2-ethylhexyl) trimellitate (TEHTM) **33**, 37

U

Ultrahigh molecular weight (UHMW) PVC 112
Ultrasonic welding 120
Unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U)
allowable stress **58**
density *53*
design considerations 83
exterior construction applications 85–89, *86*
pipework 83–85
electrical properties **61**
fire properties **63**
gas permeability **79**
identification 19
influence of temperature on flexural modulus *56*
limitations 3
maximum continuous use temperature **76**
mechanical properties **54**
tensile modulus *55*
thermal properties **59**
water absorption 53
water vapour permeability **79**

Unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U), foam
density 53
influence of temperature on flexural modulus *56*
mechanical properties **54**
Unplasticised-PVC (PVC-U), impact modified
allowable stress **58**
density 53
electrical properties **61**
fire properties **63**
influence of temperature on flexural modulus *56*
mechanical properties **54**
thermal properties **59**
water absorption 53

V

Vicat softening point 60
Vinyl chloride monomer (VCM) 1
EU limit in foods 70
FDA (USA) limit in foods 70
manufacture 12
maximum residual concentration for food and medical applications 69
polymerisation
commercial processes 12–17
discovery of 2
safety, health and environmental (SHE) issues 12, 124
Vinyl flooring 90–91
waste management and recycling 136
Vinyl-coated paper 92
waste management and recycling 137
Vinyloop® process 135–136, *136*
Viscosity and rheology modifiers 49–50
Volatile organic compounds (VOC) 124
Volume resistivity 61

W

Wall covering 91–92
waste management and recycling 137
Waste disposal operations 8, 132–133
coal replacement in blast furnaces 139
controlled landfill 140
feedstock recycling 138
hydrolysis and pyrolysis 139
incineration/energy recovery 139–140
mechanical recycling 133
coated fabrics 137
collection and separation/washing/grinding/pulverisation 134
flooring 136
general points 133–134
light concrete 138
packaging 137–138
pipes and fittings 135
profile 134–135
roofing membranes 137
Vinyloop® process 135–136, *136*
wall coverings 137
wire and cable 135
new gasification processes 139
rotary kiln combustion 138
Waste Resources Action Programme (WRAP) 133, 135
Water absorption of polymers 53
Weathering testing
laboratory weathering 77
natural weathering 77
Weight-average molecular weight 17
Welding of plastics 119–120
friction welding 120
hot gas welding 121
hot plate welding 121
laser welding 121
radio-frequency welding 120
ultrasonic welding 120
Windows 85–87, *86*
Wood composites 114–115

X

X-ray fluorescence spectrometry (XRF) 20

Y

Young's modulus 55

Z

Zinc borate 45
Zinc stannate 45
Zinc stearate 23, 132

ISBN: 1-85957-511-0

Rapra Technology Limited

Rapra Technology is the leading independent international organisation with over 80 years of experience providing technology, information and consultancy on all aspects of rubbers and plastics.

The company has extensive processing, analytical and testing laboratory facilities and expertise, and produces a range of engineering and data management software products, and computerised knowledge-based systems.

Rapra also publishes books, technical journals, reports, technological and business surveys, conference proceedings and trade directories. These publishing activities are supported by an Information Centre which maintains and develops the world's most comprehensive database of commercial and technical information on rubbers and plastics.

rapra TECHNOLOGY

Shawbury, Shrewsbury,
Shropshire SY4 4NR,
United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0)1939 250383
Fax: +44 (0)1939 251118
http://www.rapra.net

5ª edición

Química Orgánica

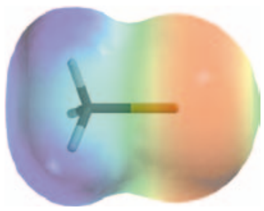
L. C. Wade, Jr.

ÍNDICE DE CONTENIDOS

Prefacio xxii
Sobre el autor xxxvii

Capítulo 1
Introducción y revisión 1

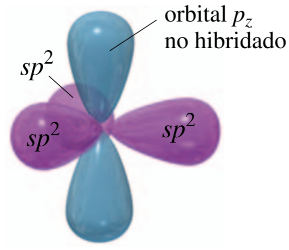
1.1 Los orígenes de la química orgánica 1
1.2 Principios de la estructura atómica 3
1.3 La formación del enlace: la regla del octeto 6
1.4 Estructuras de Lewis 7
1.5 Enlace múltiple 8
Resumen: Modelos de enlace más frecuentes (sin carga) 9
1.6 La electronegatividad y la polaridad de enlace 9
1.7 Cargas formales 11
1.8 Estructuras iónicas 12
Resumen: Modelos de enlace más frecuentes en los compuestos e iones orgánicos 13
1.9 Resonancia 13
1.10 Fórmulas estructurales 17
1.11 Fórmulas moleculares y fórmulas empíricas 20
1.12 Ácidos y bases de Arrhenius 21
1.13 Ácidos y bases de Brönsted-Lowry 22
1.14 Ácidos y bases de Lewis 29
Glosario del Capítulo 1 32
Problemas 34



mapa del potencial electrostático del clorometano

Capítulo 2
Estructura y propiedades de las moléculas orgánicas 38

2.1 Propiedades ondulatorias de los electrones en los orbitales 38
2.2 Orbitales moleculares 40
2.3 Enlaces pi 43
2.4 Hibridación y geometría molecular 44
2.5 Representación de moléculas tridimensionales 47
2.6 Reglas generales de la hibridación y de la geometría 48
2.7 Rotación de enlaces 53
2.8 Isomería 54
2.9 Polaridad de enlaces y moléculas 57
2.10 Atracciones y repulsiones intermoleculares 60
2.11 Efecto de la polaridad en la solubilidad 64
2.12 Hidrocarburos 67
2.13 Compuestos orgánicos oxigenados 70
2.14 Compuestos orgánicos nitrogenados 72
Glosario del Capítulo 2 74
Problemas 76



átomo de carbono con hibridación sp^2 (vista lateral)

Capítulo 3
Estructura y estereoquímica de los alcanos 80

3.1 Clasificación de los hidrocarburos (revisión) 80
3.2 Fórmulas moleculares de los alcanos 81
3.3 Nomenclatura de los alcanos 82
Resumen: Reglas para la nomenclatura de los alcanos 87
3.4 Propiedades físicas de los alcanos 88
3.5 Aplicaciones y fuentes de los alcanos 90
3.6 Reacciones de los alcanos 92
3.7 Estructura y conformaciones de los alcanos 93
3.8 Conformaciones del butano 97
3.9 Conformaciones de los alcanos de cadena larga 99
3.10 Cicloalcanos 100
3.11 Isomería *cis-trans* en cicloalcanos 102
3.12 Estabilidad de los cicloalcanos: tensión de anillo 102
3.13 Conformaciones del ciclohexano 106
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Representación de las conformaciones de silla 109
3.14 Conformaciones de ciclohexanos monosustituidos 110
3.15 Conformaciones de ciclohexanos disustituidos 113
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Reconocimiento de isómeros *cis* y *trans* 115
3.16 Moléculas bicíclicas 117
Glosario del Capítulo 3 118
Problemas 122

Capítulo 4
El estudio de las reacciones químicas 124

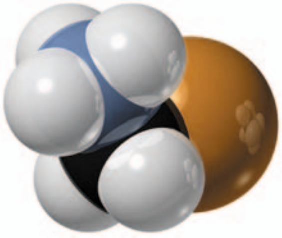
4.1 Introducción 124
4.2 Cloración del metano 124
4.3 Reacción radicalaria en cadena 125
MECANISMO CLAVE: Halogenación radicalaria 127
4.4 Constantes de equilibrio y energía libre 129
4.5 Entalpía y entropía 131
4.6 Energías de disociación de enlace 133
4.7 Variación de entalpía en la reacción de cloración 135
4.8 Cinética y ecuación de velocidad 136
4.9 Energía de activación e influencia de la temperatura en la velocidad de reacción 138
4.10 Estados de transición 140
4.11 Velocidades en reacciones de varias etapas 141
4.12 Influencia de la temperatura en la reacción de halogenación 142
4.13 Halogenación de alcanos superiores 143
4.14 El postulado de Hammond 149
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Propuesta de un mecanismo de reacción 151
4.15 Inhibidores radicalarios 153
4.16 Intermedios reactivos 154
Resumen: Intermedios reactivos 160
Glosario del Capítulo 4 160
Problemas 163

Capítulo 5
Estereoquímica 167

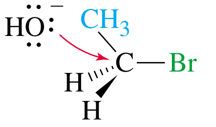
5.1 Introducción 167
5.2 Quiralidad 168
5.3 Nomenclatura (*R*) y (*S*) de átomos de carbono asimétricos 174
5.4 Actividad óptica 178
5.5 Discriminación biológica de los enantiómeros 183
5.6 Mezclas racémicas 184
5.7 Exceso enantiomérico y pureza óptica 186
5.8 Quiralidad de sistemas conformacionalmente móviles 187
5.9 Compuestos quirales sin átomos asimétricos 189
5.10 Proyecciones de Fischer 191
Resumen: Las proyecciones de Fischer y su uso 195
5.11 Diastereómeros o diastereoisómeros 195
Resumen: Tipos de isómeros 197
5.12 Estereoquímica de las moléculas con dos o más carbonos asimétricos 198
5.13 Compuestos *meso* 199
5.14 Configuración absoluta y relativa 201
5.15 Propiedades físicas de los diastereómeros 202
5.16 Resolución de enantiómeros 204
Glosario del Capítulo 5 207
Problemas 209

Capítulo 6
Haluros de alquilo: sustitución nucleofílica y eliminación 212

6.1 Introducción 212
6.2 Nomenclatura de haluros de alquilo 213
6.3 Aplicaciones y usos de los haluros de alquilo 215
6.4 Estructura de los haluros de alquilo 217
6.5 Propiedades físicas de los haluros de alquilo 218
6.6 Preparación de los haluros de alquilo 220
Resumen: Métodos de preparación de los haluros de alquilo 222
6.7 Reacciones de los haluros de alquilo: sustitución y eliminación 224
6.8 Sustitución nucleofílica bimolecular: la reacción S_N2 225
MECANISMO CLAVE: La reacción S_N2 225
6.9 Generalidades sobre la reacción S_N2 227
Resumen: Reacciones S_N2 de haluros de alquilo 227
6.10 Factores que condicionan las reacciones S_N2: fuerza de los nucleófilos 228
Resumen: Tendencias en la nucleofilia 230
6.11 Reactividad del sustrato en las reacciones S_N2 233
6.12 Estereoquímica de la reacción S_N2 236
6.13 Sustitución nucleofílica unimolecular: la reacción SN1 238
MECANISMO CLAVE: La reacción S_N1 239
6.14 Estereoquímica de la reacción S_N1 242
6.15 Reordenamientos en las reacciones S_N1 243
6.16 Comparación de las reacciones S_N1 y S_N2 246
Resumen: Sustituciones nucleofílicas 247



bromuro de etilo (1°)
el ataque es fácil



6.17 Eliminación unimolecular: la reacción E1 248
MECANISMO CLAVE: La reacción E1 248
Resumen: Reacciones mediadas por carbocationes 251
6.18 Eliminación bimolecular: la reacción E2 252
MECANISMO CLAVE: La reacción E2 252
6.19 Orientación en las reacciones de eliminación: la regla de Saytzeff 253
6.20 Estereoquímica de la reacción E2 255
6.21 Comparación de los mecanismos de eliminación E1 y E2 257
Resumen: Reacciones de eliminación 258
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Predicción de los productos resultantes de las sustituciones y eliminaciones 259
Resumen: Reacciones de los haluros de alquilo 261
Glosario del Capítulo 6 264
Problemas 267

Capítulo 7
Estructura y síntesis de alquenos 272

7.1 Introducción 272
7.2 Descripción de los orbitales del doble enlace en los alquenos 272
7.3 Elementos de insaturación 274
7.4 Nomenclatura de los alquenos 276
7.5 Nomenclatura de los isómeros *cis-trans* 278
Resumen: Reglas para nombrar los alquenos 280
7.6 Importancia comercial de los alquenos 281
7.7 Estabilidad de los alquenos 283
7.8 Propiedades físicas de los alquenos 289
7.9 Síntesis de alquenos mediante eliminación de haluros de alquilo 291
7.10 Síntesis de alquenos mediante deshidratación de alcoholes 300
MECANISMO CLAVE: Deshidratación de un alcohol catalizada por ácidos 300
7.11 Métodos industriales de síntesis de alquenos a alta temperatura 301
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Propuesta de mecanismos de reacción 303
Resumen: Métodos de síntesis de alquenos 306
Glosario del Capítulo 7 308
Problemas 310

Capítulo 8
Reacción de alquenos 314

8.1 Reactividad del doble enlace carbono-carbono 314
8.2 Adición electrofílica a alquenos 315
MECANISMO CLAVE: Adición electrofílica a alquenos 315
8.3 Adición de haluros de hidrógeno a alquenos 317
8.4 Adición de agua: hidratación de alquenos 322
8.5 Hidratación mediante oximercuriación-desmercuriación 324
8.6 Alcoximercuriación-desmercuriación 326
8.7 Hidroboración de alquenos 328
8.8 Hidrogenación catalítica de alquenos 333
8.9 Adición de carbenos a alquenos 336
8.10 Adición de halógenos a alquenos 338
8.11 Formación de halohidrinas 341
8.12 Epoxidación de alquenos 344
8.13 Apertura de epóxidos catalizada por ácidos 345
8.14 Hidroxilación de alquenos en *sin* 347
8.15 Ruptura oxidativa de alquenos 349

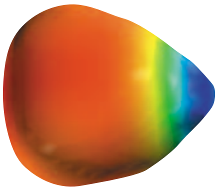
8.16 Polimerización de alquenos 352
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Síntesis orgánica 357
Resumen: Reacciones de alquenos 359
Glosario del Capítulo 8 363
Problemas 365

Capítulo 9
Alquinos 370

9.1 Introducción 370
9.2 Nomenclatura de alquinos 371
9.3 Propiedades físicas de los alquinos 372
9.4 Importancia comercial de los alquinos 372
9.5 Estructura electrónica de los alquinos 374
9.6 Acidez de los alquinos 375
9.7 Síntesis de alquinos a partir de acetiluros 378
9.8 Síntesis de alquinos mediante reacciones de eliminación 382
Resumen: Síntesis de alquinos 384
9.9 Reacciones de adición a alquinos 385
9.10 Reacciones de oxidación de alquinos 394
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Síntesis en varias etapas 396
Resumen: Reacciones de alquinos 397
Glosario del Capítulo 9 400
Problemas 401

Capítulo 10
Estructura y síntesis de alcoholes 405

10.1 Introducción 405
10.2 Estructura y clasificación de los alcoholes 405
10.3 Nomenclatura de los alcoholes y fenoles 407
10.4 Propiedades físicas de los alcoholes 411
10.5 Importancia comercial de los alcoholes 413
10.6 Acidez de los alcoholes y fenoles 415
10.7 Síntesis de alcoholes: introducción y revisión 418
Resumen: Síntesis previas de alcoholes 418
10.8 Reactivos organometálicos utilizados para la síntesis de alcoholes 420
10.9 Adición de reactivos organometálicos a compuestos carbonílicos 422
MECANISMO CLAVE: Reacciones de Grignard 423
Resumen: Reacciones de Grignard 429
10.10 Reacciones secundarias de compuestos organometálicos: reducción de haluros de alquilo 430
10.11 Reducción del grupo carbonilo: síntesis de alcoholes primarios y secundarios 432
Resumen: Reacciones de $LiAlH_4$ y $NaBH_4$ 434
Resumen: Síntesis de alcoholes 435
10.12 Tioles (mercaptanos) 437
Glosario del Capítulo 10 440
Problemas 441



mapa de potencial electrostático del metillitio

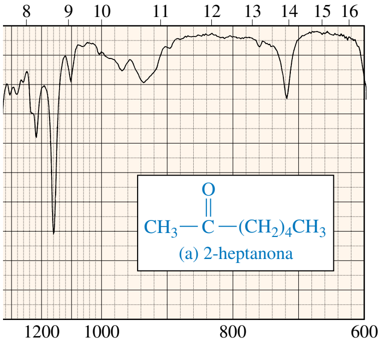
Capítulo 11
Reacciones de alcoholes 445

11.1 Estados de oxidación de los alcoholes y de los grupos funcionales relacionados 445
11.2 Oxidación de alcoholes 447
11.3 Métodos adicionales de oxidación de alcoholes 450

11.4 Oxidación biológica de alcoholes 452
11.5 Los alcoholes como nucleófilos y electrófilos: formación de tosilatos 454
Resumen: Reacciones S_N2 de tosilatos 456
11.6 Reducción de alcoholes 457
11.7 Reacciones de alcoholes con haluros de hidrógeno 457
11.8 Reacciones de alcoholes con haluros de fósforo 461
11.9 Reacciones de alcoholes con cloruro de tionilo 463
11.10 Reacciones de deshidratación de alcoholes 464
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Propuesta de mecanismos de reacción 468
11.11 Reacciones características de los dioles 472
11.12 Esterificación de alcoholes 474
11.13 Ésteres de ácidos inorgánicos 475
11.14 Reacciones de los alcóxidos 477
MECANISMO CLAVE: Síntesis de Williamson de éteres 478
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Síntesis en varias etapas 479
Resumen: Reacciones de alcoholes 482
Glosario del Capítulo 11 485
Problemas 486

Capítulo 12
Espectroscopía de infrarrojo y espectrometría de masas 490

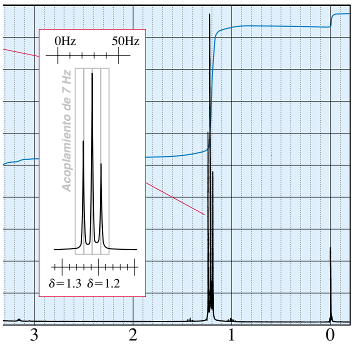
12.1 Introducción 490
12.2 El espectro electromagnético 491
12.3 La región del infrarrojo 492
12.4 Vibraciones moleculares 493
12.5 Vibraciones activas e inactivas en el IR 495
12.6 Registro del espectro infrarrojo 496
12.7 Espectroscopía infrarroja de los hidrocarburos 499
12.8 Absorciones características de los alcoholes y las aminas 504
12.9 Absorciones características de los compuestos carbonílicos 505
12.10 Absorciones características de los enlaces C—N 511
12.11 Breve resumen de las frecuencias de tensión en el IR 513
12.12 Análisis e interpretación de los espectros de IR (problemas resueltos) 514
12.13 Introducción a la espectrometría de masas 519
12.14 Determinación de la fórmula molecular mediante espectrometría de masas 522
12.15 Modelos de fragmentación en la espectrometría de masas 526
Resumen: Modelos comunes de fragmentación de masas 530
Glosario del Capítulo 12 531
Problemas 533



Capítulo 13
Espectroscopía de resonancia magnética nuclear 539

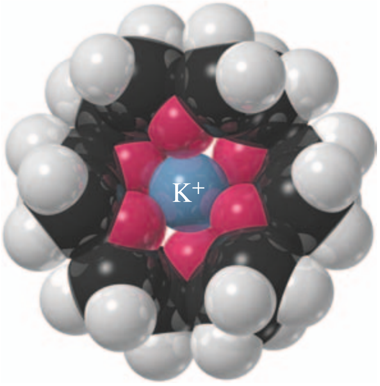
13.1 Introducción 539
13.2 Teoría de la resonancia magnética nuclear 539
13.3 Apantallamiento magnético por parte de los electrones 542
13.4 El espectrómetro de RMN 544
13.5 El desplazamiento químico 545
13.6 El número de señales 552
13.7 El área de los picos 553
13.8 Desdoblamiento espín-espín 556
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Representación de un espectro de RMN 561

13.9 Acoplamientos complejos 565
13.10 Protones no equivalentes según la estereoquímica 568
13.11 Dependencia de la variable tiempo en la espectroscopía de RMN 571
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Interpretación de un espectro de RMN de protón 574
13.12 Espectroscopía de RMN de carbono-13 579
13.13 Interpretación de un espectro de RMN de carbono 584
13.14 Imágenes mediante resonancia magnética nuclear 587
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Problemas de espectroscopía 588
Glosario del Capítulo 13 592
Problemas 593



Capítulo 14
Éteres, epóxidos y sulfuros 600

14.1 Introducción 600
14.2 Propiedades físicas de los éteres 600
14.3 Nomenclatura de los éteres 605
14.4 Espectroscopía de los éteres 608
14.5 La síntesis de Williamson de éteres 610
14.6 Síntesis de éteres mediante alcoximercuriación-desmercuriación 612
14.7 Síntesis industrial: deshidratación bimolecular de alcoholes 612
Resumen: Síntesis de éteres 613
14.8 Ruptura de éteres con HBr y HI 613
14.9 Autooxidación de éteres 615
Resumen: Reacciones de éteres 616
14.10 Sulfuros (tioéteres) 616
14.11 Síntesis de epóxidos 619
Resumen: Síntesis de epóxidos 622
14.12 Apertura de epóxidos catalizada por ácidos 622
14.13 Apertura de epóxidos catalizada por bases 625
14.14 Orientación en la apertura de epóxidos 627
14.15 Reacciones de epóxidos con reactivos de Grignard y compuestos organolíticos 629
14.16 Resinas epoxi: el advenimiento de los pegamentos modernos 629
Resumen: Reacciones de epóxidos 631
Glosario del Capítulo 14 632
Problemas 634



éter 18-corona-6 solvatando el K^+

Capítulo 15
Sistemas conjugados, simetría orbital y espectroscopía ultravioleta 638

15.1 Introducción 638
15.2 Estabilidad de los dienos 638
15.3 Los sistemas conjugados según la teoría de orbitales moleculares 640
15.4 Los cationes alílicos 644
15.5 Adición 1,2 y 1,4 a dienos conjugados 645
15.6 Control cinético frente a control termodinámico en la adición de HBr a 1,3-butadieno 647
15.7 Radicales alílicos 649
15.8 Los orbitales moleculares del sistema alílico 651
15.9 Configuraciones electrónicas del radical, del catión y del anión alilo 652
15.10 Reacciones de sustitución S_N2 de haluros de alilo y de tosilatos 654
15.11 La reacción de Diels-Alder 655

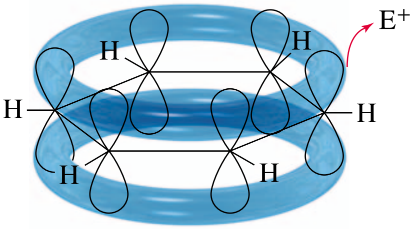
MECANISMO CLAVE: La reacción de Diels-Alder 656
15.12 La reacción de Diels-Alder como ejemplo de una reacción pericíclica 663
15.13 Espectroscopía de absorción ultravioleta 666
Glosario del Capítulo 15 672
Problemas 675

Capítulo 16
Compuestos aromáticos 679

16.1 Introducción: el descubrimiento del benceno 679
16.2 Estructura y propiedades del benceno 679
16.3 Los orbitales moleculares del benceno 684
16.4 El ciclobutadieno según la teoría de orbitales moleculares 686
16.5 Compuestos aromáticos, antiaromáticos y no aromáticos 688
16.6 La regla de Hückel 689
16.7 Derivación de la regla de Hückel de la teoría de orbitales moleculares 691
16.8 Iones aromáticos 692
16.9 Compuestos aromáticos heterocíclicos 697
16.10 Hidrocarburos aromáticos polinucleares 702
16.11 Alótropos aromáticos del carbono 704
16.12 Compuestos heterocíclicos fusionados 706
16.13 Nomenclatura de los derivados del benceno 707
16.14 Propiedades físicas del benceno y de sus derivados 709
16.15 Espectroscopía de los compuestos aromáticos 710
Glosario del Capítulo 16 713
Problemas 715

Capítulo 17
Reacciones de compuestos aromáticos 722

17.1 Sustitución electrofílica aromática 722
MECANISMO CLAVE: Sustitución electrofílica aromática 723
17.2 Halogenación del benceno 723
17.3 Nitración del benceno 726
17.4 Sulfonación del benceno 726
17.5 Nitración del tolueno: efecto de la sustitución con grupos alquilo 728
17.6 Sustituyentes activadores *orto* y *para*-orientadores 730
Resumen: Activadores *orto* y *para*-orientadores 733
17.7 Sustituyentes desactivadores *meta*-orientadores 734
Resumen: Desactivadores *meta*-orientadores 737
17.8 Sustituyentes halogenados: desactivadores, pero *orto*, *para*-orientadores 737
Resumen: Efectos orientadores de los sustituyentes 739
17.9 Efecto de múltiples sustituyentes sobre la sustitución electrofílica aromática 739
17.10 Alquilación de Friedel-Crafts 742
17.11 Acilación de Friedel-Crafts 746
Resumen: Comparación de la alquilación y acilación de Friedel-Crafts 748
17.12 Sustitución nucleofílica aromática 750
17.13 Reacciones de adición de los derivados del benceno 754
17.14 Reacciones de las cadenas laterales de los derivados del benceno 757
17.15 Reacciones de los fenoles 761
Resumen: Reacciones de los compuestos aromáticos 764
Glosario del Capítulo 17 767
Problemas 769

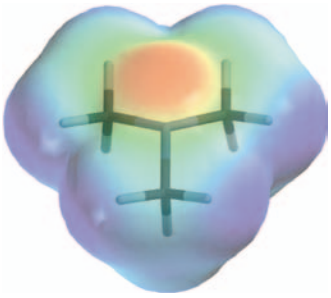


Capítulo 18
Cetonas y aldehídos 774

18.1 Compuestos carbonílicos 774
18.2 Estructura del grupo carbonilo 775
18.3 Nomenclatura de cetonas y aldehídos 775
18.4 Propiedades físicas de cetonas y aldehídos 778
18.5 Espectroscopía de cetonas y aldehídos 780
18.6 Importancia industrial de cetonas y aldehídos 787
18.7 Revisión de la síntesis de cetonas y aldehídos 787
18.8 Síntesis de cetonas y aldehídos a partir de 1,3-ditianos 791
18.9 Síntesis de cetonas a partir de ácidos carboxílicos 792
18.10 Síntesis de cetonas a partir de nitrilos 793
18.11 Síntesis de aldehídos y cetonas a partir de cloruros de ácido 793
Resumen: Síntesis de cetonas y aldehídos 795
18.12 Reacciones de cetonas y aldehídos: adición nucleofílica 797
MECANISMO CLAVE: Adiciones nucleofílicas a grupos carbonilo 800
18.13 La reacción de Wittig 800
18.14 Hidratación de cetonas y aldehídos 804
18.15 Formación de cianohidrinas 806
18.16 Formación de iminas 807
MECANISMO CLAVE: Formación de iminas 808
18.17 Condensaciones con hidroxilamina e hidrazinas 810
Resumen: Condensación de aminas con cetonas y aldehídos 811
18.18 Formación de acetales 811
MECANISMO CLAVE: Formación de acetales 812
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Propuesta de mecanismos de reacción 815
18.19 El uso de acetales como grupos protectores 817
18.20 Oxidación de aldehídos 818
18.21 Otras reducciones de cetonas y aldehídos 819
Resumen: Reacciones de cetonas y aldehídos 821
Glosario del Capítulo 18 824
Problemas 827

Capítulo 19
Aminas 836

19.1 Introducción 836
19.2 Nomenclatura de las aminas 837
19.3 Estructura de las aminas 839
19.4 Propiedades físicas de las aminas 841
19.5 Basicidad de las aminas 842
19.6 Efectos sobre la basicidad de las aminas 844
19.7 Sales de amonio 846
19.8 Sales de amonio y catalizadores de transferencia de fase 848
19.9 Espectroscopía de las aminas 849
19.10 Reacciones de las aminas con cetonas y aldehídos (revisión) 854
19.11 Sustitución aromática en arilaminas y piridina (revisión) 854
19.12 Alquilación de aminas con haluros de alquilo 858
19.13 Acilación de aminas con cloruros de ácido 859
19.14 Formación de sulfonamidas 861
19.15 Aminas como grupos salientes: la eliminación de Hofmann 862
19.16 Oxidación de aminas. La eliminación de Cope 865



mapa de potencial electrostático de la trimetilamina

19.17 Reacciones de aminas con ácido nitroso 868
19.18 Reacciones de las sales de diazonio aromáticas 870
Resumen: Reacciones de las aminas 874
19.19 Síntesis de aminas 877
Resumen: Síntesis de aminas 887
Glosario del Capítulo 19 890
Problemas 892

Capítulo 20
Ácidos carboxílicos 900

20.1 Introducción 900
20.2 Nomenclatura de los ácidos carboxílicos 900
20.3 Estructura y propiedades físicas de los ácidos carboxílicos 904
20.4 Acidez de los ácidos carboxílicos 906
20.5 Sales de ácidos carboxílicos 909
20.6 Fuentes comerciales de los ácidos carboxílicos 912
20.7 Espectroscopía de los ácidos carboxílicos 913
20.8 Síntesis de los ácidos carboxílicos 918
Resumen: Síntesis de los ácidos carboxílicos 920
20.9 Reacciones de los ácidos carboxílicos y sus derivados. Sustitución nucleofílica en el grupo acilo 921
20.10 Condensación de los ácidos con los alcoholes: la esterificación de Fischer 922
MECANISMO CLAVE: Esterificación de Fischer 923
20.11 Síntesis y aplicaciones de los cloruros de ácido 925
20.12 Esterificación con diazometano 928
20.13 Condensación de ácidos con aminas: síntesis directa de amidas 928
20.14 Reducción de los ácidos carboxílicos 929
20.15 Alquilación de los ácidos carboxílicos para obtener cetonas 931
Resumen: Reacciones de los ácidos carboxílicos 931
Glosario del Capítulo 20 933
Problemas 934

Capítulo 21
Derivados de los ácidos carboxílicos 940

21.1 Introducción 940
21.2 Estructura y nomenclatura de los derivados de ácido 941
21.3 Propiedades físicas de los derivados de ácidos carboxílicos 947
21.4 Espectroscopía de los derivados de ácidos carboxílicos 950
21.5 Interconversión entre los derivados de ácidos mediante sustitución nucleofílica en el grupo acilo 957
MECANISMO CLAVE: Mecanismo de adición-eliminación en la sustitución nucleofílica en el grupo acilo 957
21.6 Sustitución nucleofílica en el grupo acilo catalizada por ácidos 964
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Propuestas de mecanismos de reacción 965
21.7 Hidrólisis de los derivados de ácidos carboxílicos 968
21.8 Reducción de los derivados de ácidos 972
21.9 Reacciones de los derivados de ácidos con reactivos organometálicos 975
21.10 Resumen de la química de los cloruros de ácido 976
21.11 Resumen de la química de los anhídridos de ácido 978
21.12 Resumen de la química de los ésteres 981
21.13 Resumen de la química de las amidas 984
21.14 Resumen de la química de los nitrilos 987
21.15 Tioésteres 988

21.16 Ésteres y amidas del ácido carbónico 990
Glosario del Capítulo 21 992
Problemas 994

Capítulo 22
Sustituciones en alfa, y condensaciones de enoles y de iones enolato 1003

22.1 Introducción 1003
22.2 Enoles e iones enolato 1004
22.3 Halogenación en alfa de cetonas 1007
22.4 Bromación en alfa de ácidos: la reacción de HVZ (Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky) 1012
22.5 Alquilación de iones enolato 1013
22.6 Formación y alquilación de enaminas 1015
22.7 Condensación aldólica de cetonas y aldehídos 1017
MECANISMO CLAVE: Condensación aldólica catalizada por una base 1018
22.8 Deshidratación de aldoles 1020
MECANISMO CLAVE: Deshidratación de un aldol 1021
22.9 Condensaciones aldólicas cruzadas 1021
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Propuesta de mecanismos de reacción 1022
22.10 Ciclaciones aldólicas 1025
22.11 Diseño de síntesis utilizando condensaciones aldólicas 1026
22.12 La condensación de Claisen de ésteres 1027
MECANISMO CLAVE: Condensación de Claisen 1028
22.13 La condensación de Dieckmann: un tipo de ciclación de Claisen 1031
22.14 Condensaciones de Claisen cruzadas 1031
22.15 Síntesis empleando compuestos β-dicarbonílicos 1034
22.16 La síntesis malónica 1036
22.17 La síntesis acetilacética 1039
22.18 Adiciones conjugadas: la reacción de Michael 1042
MECANISMO CLAVE: Adiciones 1,2 y 1,4 1043
22.19 La anillación de Robinson 1046
Estrategias para resolver problemas: Propuesta de mecanismos de reacción 1047
Resumen: Adiciones y condensaciones de enolatos 1049
Glosario del Capítulo 22 1051
Problemas 1052

Capítulo 23
Carbohidratos y ácidos nucleicos 1057

23.1 Introducción 1057
23.2 Clasificación de los hidratos de carbono 1058
23.3 Monosacáridos 1059
23.4 Diastereómeros *eritro* y *treo* 1062
23.5 Epímeros 1063
23.6 Estructura cíclica de los monosacáridos 1064
23.7 Anómeros de los monosacáridos. Mutarrotación 1068
23.8 Reacciones de los monosacáridos: reacciones secundarias en medio básico 1070
23.9 Reducción de los monosacáridos 1072
23.10 Oxidación de los monosacáridos. Los azúcares reductores 1073
23.11 Los azúcares no reductores: formación de glicósidos 1075
23.12 Formación de éteres y ésteres 1078
23.13 Reacciones con fenilhidrazina: formación de osazonas 1080
23.14 Acortamiento de la cadena: degradación de Ruff 1081

23.15 Alargamiento de la cadena: síntesis de Kiliani-Fischer 1081
Resumen: Reacciones de los azúcares 1083
23.16 La prueba de Fischer de la configuración de la glucosa 1085
23.17 Determinación del tamaño del anillo. Escisión de azúcares con ácido peryódico 1088
23.18 Disacáridos 1090
23.19 Polisacáridos 1095
23.20 Ácidos nucleicos: introducción 1098
23.21 Ribonucleósidos y ribonucleótidos 1100
23.22 La estructura del ácido ribonucleico 1102
23.23 La desoxirribosa y la estructura del ácido desoxirribonucleico 1102
23.24 Funciones adicionales de los nucleótidos 1106
Glosario del Capítulo 23 1108
Problemas 1111

Capítulo 24
Aminoácidos, péptidos y proteínas 1114

24.1 Introducción 1114
24.2 Estructura y estereoquímica de los α-aminoácidos 1115
24.3 Propiedades ácido-base de los aminoácidos 1119
24.4 Puntos isoeléctricos y electroforesis 1121
24.5 Síntesis de aminoácidos 1123
Resumen: Síntesis de aminoácidos 1127
24.6 Resolución de los aminoácidos 1128
24.7 Reacciones de los aminoácidos 1129
Resumen: Reacciones de aminoácidos 1131
24.8 Estructura y nomenclatura de péptidos y proteínas 1132
24.9 Determinación de la estructura de los péptidos 1136
24.10 Síntesis de péptidos en solución 1142
24.11 Síntesis de péptidos en fase sólida 1145
24.12 Clasificación de las proteínas 1151
24.13 Niveles de la estructura de las proteínas 1151
24.14 Desnaturalización de las proteínas 1154
Glosario del Capítulo 24 1156
Problemas 1158

Capítulo 25
Lípidos 1162

25.1 Introducción 1162
25.2 Ceras 1162
25.3 Triglicéridos 1163
25.4 Saponificación de grasas y aceites. Jabones y detergentes 1166
25.5 Fosfolípidos 1170
25.6 Esteroides 1171
25.7 Prostaglandinas 1174
25.8 Terpenos 1175
Glosario del Capítulo 25 1179
Problemas 1180

Capítulo 26
Polímeros sintéticos 1182

26.1 Introducción 1182
26.2 Polímeros de adición 1183
26.3 Estereoquímica de los polímeros 1189
26.4 Control estereoquímico de la polimerización. Catalizadores de Ziegler-Natta 1190
26.5 Gomas naturales y sintéticas 1190
26.6 Copolímeros de dos o más monómeros 1192
26.7 Condensación de polímeros 1192
26.8 Estructura y propiedades de los polímeros 1196
Glosario del Capítulo 26 1198
Problemas 1200

Apéndices

1A Posiciones de absorción de protones en RMN, en varios entornos estructurales 1204
1B Constantes de acoplamiento espín-espín 1205
1C Desplazamientos químicos de ^{13}C en los compuestos orgánicos 1205
2A Grupos de frecuencias características en el infrarrojo 1206
2B Absorciones en el infrarrojo características de los grupos funcionales 1209
3 Las reglas de Woodward-Fieser para predecir los espectros del ultravioleta-visible 1211
4A Métodos y sugerencias para proponer mecanismos 1215
4B Sugerencias para desarrollar síntesis de varios pasos 1218
5 Valores de pK_a de compuestos representativos 1219

Esquemas de Mecanismos y Mecanismos clave

CAPÍTULO 4 Halogenación vía radicales libres 127
CAPÍTULO 6 Bromación alílica 221
La reacción S_N2 225
Inversión de la configuración en las reacciones S_N2 237
La reacción S_N1 239
Racemización en las reacciones S_N1 242
Transposición de hidruro en las reacciones S_N1 244
Transposición de metilo en la reacción S_N1 245
La reacción E1 248
Reordenamientos en la reacción E1 250
La reacción E2 252
CAPÍTULO 7 Deshidrohalogenación a través del mecanismo E2 291
Estereoquímica de la reacción E2 293
Dibromación E2 en la formación de un dibromuro vecinal 297
Deshidratación de un alcohol catalizada por un ácido 300
CAPÍTULO 8 Adición electrofílica a alquenos 315
Adición iónica de HBr a un alqueno 316
Adición radicalaria de HBr a un alqueno 319
Hidratación de un alqueno catalizada por ácidos 323

Oximercuriación de un alqueno 325
Hidroboración de un alqueno 329
Oxidación de un trialquilborano 332
Adición de halógenos a alquenos 339
Formación de halohidrinas 341
Epoxidación de alquenos 344
Apertura de epóxidos catalizada por ácidos 345

CAPÍTULO 9 Reducción de un alquino con un metal en amoniaco líquido 388
Tautomería ceto-enólica catalizada por ácidos 392

CAPÍTULO 10 Reacciones de Grignard 423
Reducción de un grupo carbonilo con hidruros 432

CAPÍTULO 11 Reacción de un alcohol terciario con HBr (S_N1) 458
Reacción de un alcohol primario con HBr (S_N2) 458
Reacción de alcoholes con PBr_3 462
Revisión: Deshidratación de un alcohol catalizada por un ácido 464
La transposición pinacolínica 472
La síntesis de Williamson de éteres 478

CAPÍTULO 14 Ruptura de un éter con HBr 614
Apertura de un epóxido catalizada por ácidos 622
Apertura de un epóxido catalizada por ácidos en una solución alcohólica 623
Apertura de un epóxido catalizada por bases 626

CAPÍTULO 15 Adición 1,2 y 1,4 a dienos conjugados 646
Bromación alílica radicalaria 649
La reacción de Diels-Alder 656

CAPÍTULO 17 Sustitución electrofílica aromática 723
Bromación de benceno 723
Nitración de benceno 726
Sulfonación de benceno 727
Alquilación de Friedel-Crafts 743
Acilación de Friedel-Crafts 747
Sustitución nucleofílica aromática (adición-eliminación) 751
Sustitución nucleofílica aromática 753
La reducción de Birch 756

CAPÍTULO 18 Adiciones nucleofílicas al grupo carbonilo 800
La reacción de Wittig 802
Hidratación de cetonas y aldehídos 804
Formación de cianohidrinas 806
Formación de iminas 808
Formación de acetales 812
Reducción de Wolff-Kishner 821

CAPÍTULO 19 Sustitución electrofílica aromática de la piridina 856
Sustitución nucleofílica aromática de la piridina 857
Acilación de una amina con un cloruro de ácido 859
Eliminación de Hofmann 863
Eliminación de Cope de un óxido de amina 867
Diazoación de una amina 868
Transposición de Hofmann 886

CAPÍTULO 20 Sustitución nucleofílica sobre el grupo acilo de un éster 922
Esterificación de Fischer 923
Esterificación con diazometano 928

CAPÍTULO 21 Mecanismo de adición-eliminación en la sustitución nucleofílica en el grupo acilo 957
Transformación de un cloruro de ácido en un anhídrido 959
Transformación de un cloruro de ácido en un éster 960
Transformación de un cloruro de ácido en una amida 960
Transformación de un anhídrido de ácido en un éster 961
Transformación de un anhídrido de ácido en una amida 961
Transformación de un éster en una amida (amonólisis de un éster) 962
Transesterificación 967
Saponificación de un éster 968
Hidrólisis de una amida en medio básico 970
Hidrólisis de una amida en medio ácido 971
Hidrólisis catalizada por una base de un nitrilo 972
Reducción de un éster por un hidruro 973
Reacción de un éster con dos moles de un reactivo de Grignard 975

CAPÍTULO 22 Sustitución en alfa 1003
Adición de un enolato a cetonas y aldehídos (condensación) 1003
Sustitución de un enolato en un éster (condensación) 1004
Tautomería ceto-enólica catalizada por una base 1004
Tautomería ceto-enólica catalizada por un ácido 1005
Halogenación promovida por una base 1008
Pasos finales de la reacción del haloformo 1009
Halogenación catalizada por un ácido 1011
Condensación aldólica catalizada por una base 1018
Condensación aldólica catalizada por un ácido 1020
Deshidratación de un aldol 1021
Condensación de Claisen 1028
Adiciones 1,2 y 1,4 1043

CAPÍTULO 23 Formación de un hemiacetal cíclico 1064
Epimerización de la glucosa catalizada por una base 1071
Reordenamientos enodiol catalizados por una base 1072

CAPÍTULO 26 Polimerización radicalaria 1185
Polimerización catiónica 1186
Polimerización aniónica 1188

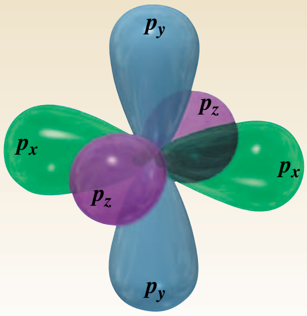
Soluciones de los problemas seleccionados A1

Créditos de las fotografías CF1

Índice I1

CAPÍTULO 1

Introducción y revisión

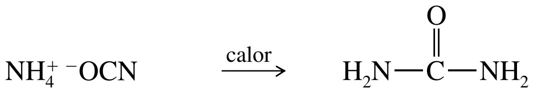


1.1 Los orígenes de la química orgánica

La definición moderna de **química orgánica** es *la química de los compuestos de carbono*. ¿Qué tiene de especial el carbono que hay una rama de la química que se dedica a él? Al contrario que otros elementos, el carbono forma enlaces fuertes con otros átomos de carbono y con una gran variedad de otros elementos. Las cadenas y anillos de átomos de carbono son tan variadas que se puede formar una variedad interminable de moléculas. Esta diversidad de los compuestos de carbono es la base para la vida en la Tierra. Los seres vivos están formados de compuestos orgánicos complejos con funciones estructurales, químicas o genéticas.

El término **orgánico** literalmente significa «derivado de los organismos vivos». Originalmente, la ciencia de la química orgánica era el estudio de los compuestos que se extraían de los organismos vivos o productos naturales. Compuestos tales como azúcar, urea, levadura, ceras y aceites vegetales eran considerados «orgánicos» y se aceptó el **Vitalismo** como teoría que explicaba su origen: la creencia en que los productos naturales necesitaban una «fuerza vital» para ser creados. Por tanto, la química orgánica era el estudio de los compuestos que tenían esa fuerza vital. La química inorgánica era el estudio de los gases, rocas, minerales y de los compuestos que se podían obtener a partir de ellos.

En el siglo XIX, la experimentación demostró que los compuestos orgánicos se podían sintetizar a partir de compuestos inorgánicos. En 1828, el químico alemán Friedrich Wöhler convirtió el cianato de amonio, obtenido a partir de amoniaco y ácido ciánico, en urea simplemente calentando el cianato en ausencia de oxígeno.



cianato de amonio (inorgánico) → urea (orgánico)

La urea también proviene de los seres vivos y se creía que contenía la fuerza vital, a pesar de que el cianato de amonio es inorgánico y por tanto, según aquella creencia, no poseía la fuerza vital. Algunos químicos sostenían que esa fuerza vital provenía de las manos de Wöhler, pero la mayoría reconocieron la posibilidad de sintetizar compuestos orgánicos a partir de compuestos inorgánicos. También se llevaron a cabo otras síntesis, por lo que la teoría de la fuerza vital se descartó.

Desde que el Vitalismo se descartó a comienzos del siglo XIX, se podría pensar que esta idea habría ya desaparecido, pero estaríamos equivocados, ya que el Vitalismo hoy forma parte de la mentalidad de las personas que creen que los productos «naturales» (derivados de las plantas) son diferentes y más saludables que aquellos compuestos exactamente iguales, «artificiales», que han sido sintetizados.

Como químicos, sabemos que los compuestos derivados de las plantas y los compuestos sintetizados son idénticos. La única diferencia es el contenido en ^{14}C: los compuestos sintetizados a partir de derivados del petróleo tienen menor contenido del isótopo radioactivo ^{14}C,

El corazón artificial Jarvik 7 está compuesto en gran parte de materiales orgánicos sintéticos.

ya que este isótopo ha ido desapareciendo con el tiempo. Los compuestos derivados de las plantas, al haber sido sintetizados recientemente a partir del CO_2 del aire, tienen un contenido más elevado en ^{14}C. Algunos suministradores importantes de productos químicos dan los análisis de los isótopos para confirmar que los «productos naturales» que distribuyen tienen mayor contenido en ^{14}C y son derivados de las plantas. Estos sofisticados análisis dan un aspecto de alta tecnología al Vitalismo del siglo XXI.

A pesar de que los compuestos orgánicos no necesitan una fuerza vital, todavía se diferencian de los compuestos inorgánicos. La característica que distingue a los compuestos orgánicos es que *todos* contienen uno o más átomos de carbono. Pero no todos los compuestos que contienen carbono son orgánicos, sustancias tales como: diamante, grafito, dióxido de carbono, cianato de amonio y carbonato de sodio son compuestos derivados de minerales, y tienen propiedades características de los compuestos inorgánicos. No obstante, la mayoría de los millones de compuestos que contienen carbono se clasifican como orgánicos.

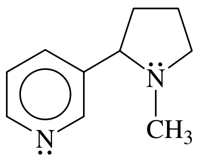
Uno de los efectos de la nicotina es incrementar la concentración de una sustancia química en el sistema de estímulos cerebrales. La liberación de esta sustancia química hace que los fumadores se sientan bien y refuerza la necesidad de fumar.

Una de las razones por las que los químicos sintetizan derivados de compuestos orgánicos complejos como la morfina es descubrir nuevas sustancias que mantengan sus propiedades útiles (analgesia) pero no las propiedades indeseables (adicción).

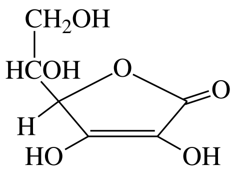
Nosotros mismos estamos compuestos en gran parte por moléculas orgánicas y nos alimentamos de compuestos orgánicos. Las proteínas de nuestra piel, los lípidos de las membranas de nuestras células, el glucógeno de nuestro hígado y el DNA del núcleo de nuestras células son compuestos orgánicos. Nuestros cuerpos también están regulados y son defendidos por compuesto orgánicos complejos.

Los químicos han aprendido a diseñar y sintetizar muchas de estas moléculas complejas. Los productos sintéticos se utilizan como productos farmacéuticos, plásticos, pesticidas, pinturas y fibras. La mayoría de los avances más importantes en medicina se debe actualmente a los avances en química orgánica. Así, se sintetizan nuevos productos farmacéuticos para combatir enfermedades y se obtienen nuevos polímeros para elaborar dispositivos ortopédicos con los que sustituir órganos dañados. La química orgánica ha cerrado el ciclo, comenzó con el estudio de los compuestos derivados de «órganos» y ahora nos proporciona los productos farmacéuticos y materiales que necesitamos para salvar o reemplazar esos órganos.

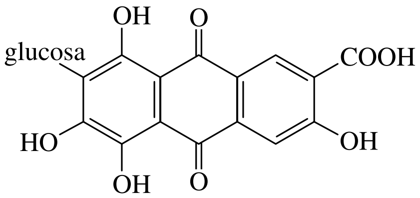
nicotina



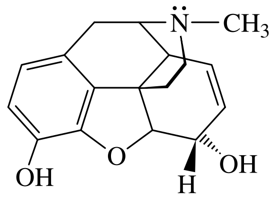
vitamina C



carmín



morfina



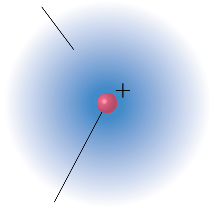
A continuación daré cuatro ejemplos de compuestos orgánicos aislados de organismos vivos: el tabaco contiene nicotina, un alcaloide que crea adicción; los escaramujos contienen vitamina C, esencial para prevenir el escorbuto; el carmín proviene de las cochinillas, insectos que suelen estar en las chumberas, y las adormideras contienen morfina, sustancia que mitiga el dolor pero provoca adicción.

1.2 Principios de la estructura atómica

Antes de comenzar el estudio de la química orgánica, se han de revisar algunos principios básicos. Muchos de los conceptos de estructura atómica y molecular son cruciales para entender la estructura y el enlace de los compuestos orgánicos.

1.2A Estructura del átomo

Los átomos están formados por protones, neutrones y electrones. Los protones están cargados positivamente y se encuentran, junto con los neutrones (sin carga), en el núcleo. Los electrones contienen una carga negativa de la misma magnitud que la carga positiva de los protones y se encuentran en el espacio que rodea al núcleo (Figura 1.1). Los protones y los neutrones tienen una masa parecida, aproximadamente unas 1800 veces la masa de un electrón. A pesar de que prácticamente toda la masa del átomo está concentrada en el núcleo, son los electrones los que participan en los enlaces químicos y en las reacciones.



▲ **Figura 1.1**
El átomo tiene un denso núcleo, cargado positivamente, rodeado de una nube de electrones.

Cada elemento se caracteriza por el número de protones que tiene en el núcleo (número atómico). El número de neutrones normalmente es parecido al número de protones, pero este número de neutrones puede variar. Los átomos que tienen el mismo número de protones pero diferente número de neutrones se llaman **isótopos**. Por ejemplo, el átomo de carbono más común es el que tiene seis protones y seis neutrones en el núcleo; su número másico (suma de protones y de neutrones) es 12, por lo que lo escribimos con el símbolo ^{12}C. Aproximadamente el 1% de los átomos de carbono tienen 7 neutrones y su número másico es 13, simbolizado por ^{13}C. Una fracción muy pequeña de átomos de carbono tiene ocho neutrones, por lo que su número másico es 14. El ^{14}C es un isótopo radioactivo, con un periodo de semidesintegración (tiempo que tarda una determinada masa de ese isótopo en desintegrarse y perder la mitad de su masa) de 5 730 años. Este tiempo de desintegración del ^{14}C se utiliza para determinar la edad de los materiales orgánicos de hasta unos 50 000 años de antigüedad.

1.2B Estructura electrónica del átomo

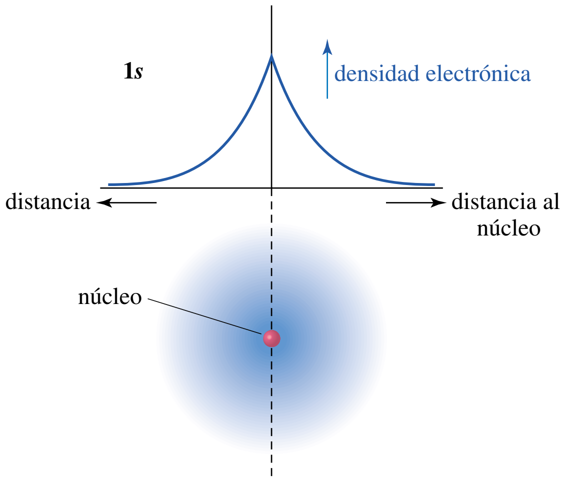
Las propiedades químicas de un elemento se determinan por el número de protones de su núcleo y el correspondiente número de electrones que hay alrededor del núcleo. Los electrones forman enlaces y determinan la estructura de las moléculas resultantes. Debido a que los electrones son muy pequeños y están en movimiento, se comportan simultáneamente como partículas y como ondas.

Los electrones que se encuentran moviéndose alrededor del núcleo se encuentran en **orbitales**. El principio de incertidumbre de Heisenberg dice que nunca se puede determinar con exactitud dónde se encuentra el electrón; sin embargo, se puede determinar la **densidad electrónica**, la probabilidad de encontrar al electrón en una determinada zona del orbital. Por tanto, un orbital es un estado de energía permitido para un electrón, con una función de probabilidad asociada que define la distribución de la densidad electrónica en el espacio.

Los orbitales atómicos se agrupan en «capas» o niveles diferentes a distintas distancias del núcleo. Cada capa se identifica por un número cuántico principal n, siendo $n = 1$ para la capa de menor energía (la que está más próxima al núcleo). Al aumentar n, las capas están más alejadas del núcleo, tienen una energía más alta y pueden contener más electrones. La mayoría de los elementos más comunes de los compuestos orgánicos se encuentran en las dos primeras filas (periodos) de la tabla periódica, lo que indica que sus electrones se encuentran en las dos primeras capas de electrones. La primera capa ($n = 1$) puede alojar dos electrones y la segunda capa ($n = 2$) puede alojar ocho.

La primera capa de electrones contiene solamente el orbital 1*s*. Todos los orbitales *s* tienen simetría esférica, lo cual quiere decir que son no direccionales. La densidad electrónica del orbital 1*s* se representa en la Figura 1.2. Se puede observar que la densidad electrónica es más alta en las proximidades del núcleo y va disminuyendo exponencialmente según va aumentando la distancia al núcleo. Se podría comparar el orbital 1*s* con una cápsula de algodón, donde la semilla representaría el núcleo. La densidad del algodón es mayor en los lugares próximos a la semilla y su densidad va disminuyendo según se va alejando del núcleo.

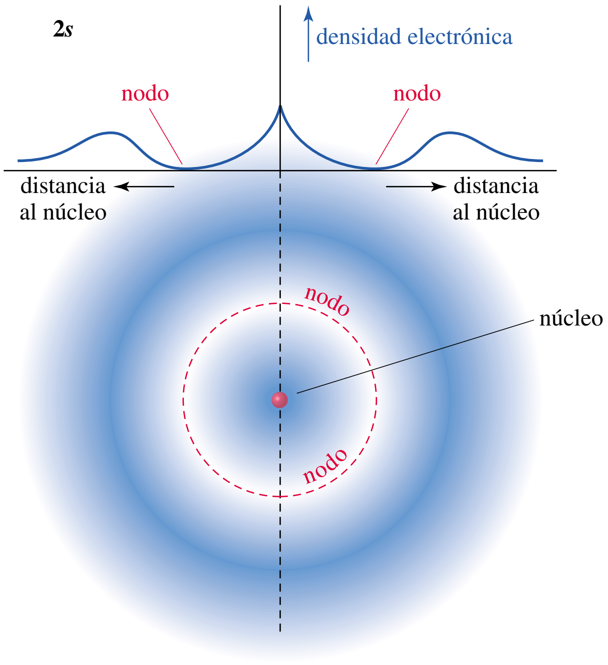
La segunda capa de electrones consta de orbitales 2*s* y 2*p*. El orbital 2*s* posee simetría esférica igual que el 1*s*, pero su densidad electrónica no es una simple función exponencial. El orbital 2*s* tiene una densidad electrónica más pequeña en las proximidades del



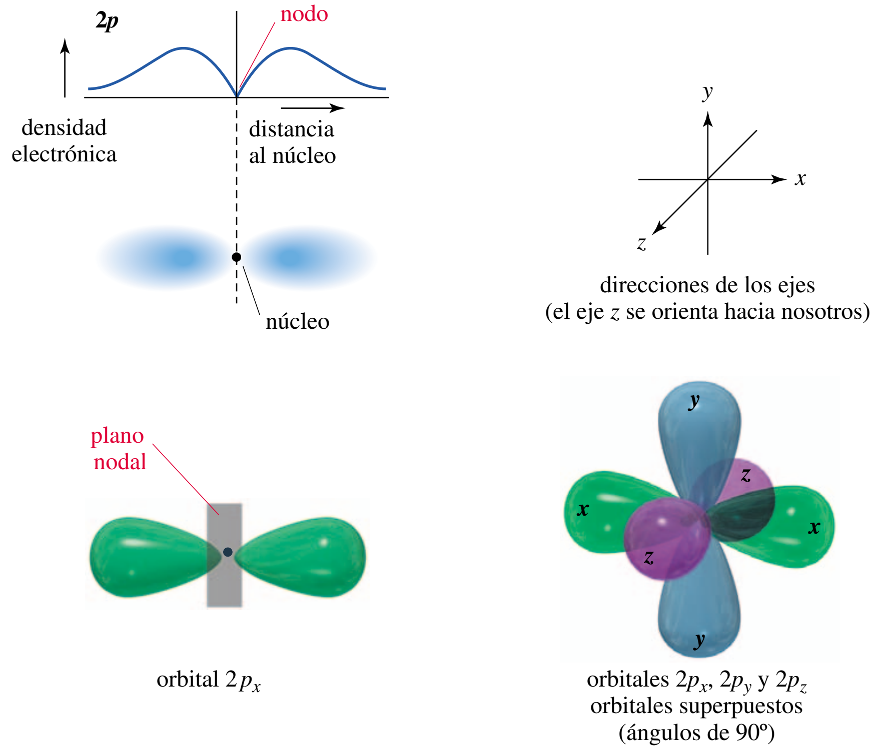
▶ Figura 1.2
Gráfico y diagrama del orbital atómico 1*s*. La densidad electrónica es más alta cerca del núcleo y disminuye exponencialmente al aumentar la distancia al núcleo en cualquier dirección.

núcleo, ya que la mayor parte de la densidad electrónica está más alejada, más allá de una zona de densidad electrónica nula llamada **nodo**. Como la densidad electrónica del orbital 2*s* cerca del núcleo es menor que en el caso del orbital 1*s*, el orbital 2*s* tiene energía más alta. La Figura 1.3 muestra una representación gráfica del orbital 2*s*.

Además del orbital 2*s*, la segunda capa también contiene tres orbitales atómicos 2*p*, orientados cada uno de ellos en las tres direcciones del espacio. Estos tres orbitales reciben el nombre $2p_x$, $2p_y$ y $2p_z$, según su orientación a lo largo de los ejes *x*, *y* o *z*. Los orbitales 2*p* tienen una energía ligeramente superior a la de los orbitales 2*s*, debido a que la localización media de los electrones en los orbitales 2*p* se sitúa a una distancia más alejada del núcleo. Cada orbital *p* consta de dos lóbulos, uno a cada lado del núcleo, con un **plano nodal** en el núcleo. El plano nodal es una región (plana) del espacio que incluye el núcleo y tiene una densidad electrónica nula. Los tres orbitales 2*p* únicamente difieren en sus orientaciones espaciales, por lo que tienen la misma energía. Los orbitales que tienen la misma cantidad de energía reciben el nombre de **orbitales degenerados**. La Figura 1.4 muestra las formas de los tres orbitales atómicos 2*p* degenerados.



▶ Figura 1.3
Los orbitales 2*s* tienen una pequeña región de densidad electrónica elevada próxima al núcleo, pero la mayor parte de la densidad electrónica está alejada del núcleo, más allá del nodo o región de densidad electrónica cero.



◀ **Figura 1.4**
Orbitales 2*p*. Hay tres orbitales 2*p*, orientados unos con respecto a los otros perpendicularmente. Se nombran según su orientación a lo largo del eje *x*, *y* o *z*.

El *principio de exclusión de Pauli* dice que un orbital como máximo puede alojar dos electrones, de forma que sus espines estén apareados. La primera capa (un orbital 1*s*) puede alojar dos electrones. La segunda capa (un orbital 2*s* y tres orbitales 2*p*) puede alojar ocho electrones y la tercera capa (un orbital 3*s*, tres orbitales 3*p* y cinco orbitales 3*d*) puede alojar 18 electrones.

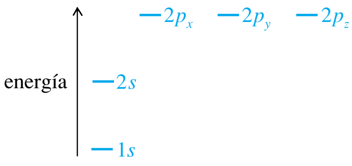
1.2C Configuraciones electrónicas de los átomos

Aufbau significa «construir» en alemán, y el *principio de aufbau* explica cómo establecer la configuración electrónica de un átomo en su estado fundamental (el de mayor estabilidad). Se comienza con el orbital de energía más baja y se van llenando ordenadamente de menor a mayor energía hasta que se han colocado todos los electrones. La Tabla 1.1 muestra las configuraciones electrónicas en estado fundamental de todos los elementos que forman parte de los dos primeros periodos de la tabla periódica.

TABLA 1.1 Configuraciones electrónicas de los elementos del primer y segundo periodo

Elemento	Configuración	Electrones de valencia
H	$1s^1$	1
He	$1s^2$	2
Li	$1s^2 2s^1$	1
Be	$1s^2 2s^2$	2
B	$1s^2 2s^2 2p_x^1$	3
C	$1s^2 2s^2\, 2p_x^1\, 2p_y^1$	4
N	$1s^2 2s^2 2p_x^1\, 2p_y^1\, 2p_z^1$	5
O	$1s^2 2s^2 2p_x^2\, 2p_y^1\, 2p_z^1$	6
F	$1s^2 2s^2 2p_x^2\, 2p_y^2\, 2p_z^1$	7
Ne	$1s^2 2s^2 2p_x^2\, 2p_y^2\, 2p_z^2$	8

Posiciones relativas de las energías de los orbitales



▶ Figura 1.5
Primeras tres filas de la tabla periódica. La organización de la tabla periódica se debe al alojamiento de los electrones en los orbitales por orden creciente de energía. Para estos elementos representativos, el número de la columna corresponde al número de electrones de valencia.

Detalle de la tabla periódica

IA	IIA	IIIA	IVA	VA	VIA	VIIA	gases nobles (VIII)
H							He
Li	Be	B	C	N	O	F	Ne
Na	Mg	Al	Si	P	S	Cl	Ar

El carbonato de litio, una sal de litio, es un antidepresivo que se utiliza para tratar el problema psiquiátrico conocido como manía. La manía está caracterizada por comportamientos tales como alteraciones del humor, sentimientos de grandeza, obsesiones y dificultad para dormir. No se sabe cómo actúa el carbonato de litio cuando estabiliza el humor de este tipo de pacientes.

En la Tabla 1.1 se ilustran dos conceptos adicionales. Los **electrones de valencia** son los electrones que se encuentran en la capa más externa. El carbono tiene cuatro electrones de valencia, el nitrógeno cinco y el oxígeno seis. El helio tiene dos electrones de valencia y el neón tiene ocho, lo que corresponde, respectivamente, a la primera capa de valencia y a la segunda capa de valencia llenas. En general (para los elementos representativos), la columna o número de grupo de la tabla periódica corresponde al número de electrones de valencia (Figura 1.5). El hidrógeno y el litio tienen un electrón de valencia y los dos se encuentran en la primera columna (grupo IA) de la tabla periódica. El carbono tiene cuatro electrones de valencia y está en el grupo IVA de la tabla periódica.

Observad en la Tabla 1.1 que los electrones de valencia tercero y cuarto del carbono no están apareados, ocupan orbitales separados. A pesar de que el principio de exclusión de Pauli dice que dos electrones pueden ocupar el mismo orbital, los electrones se repelen uno a otro, y el apareamiento requiere energía adicional. La **regla de Hund** afirma que cuando hay dos o más orbitales de la misma energía, los electrones preferentemente se alojan en orbitales *diferentes* antes que aparearse en un mismo orbital. El primer electrón $2p$ (caso del boro) se coloca en un orbital $2p$, el segundo (caso del carbono) en un orbital diferente y el tercero (caso del nitrógeno) se coloca en el último orbital $2p$. El cuarto, quinto y sexto electrón $2p$ se aparearán, respectivamente, con los tres primeros electrones.

PROBLEMA 1.1

Escriba las configuraciones electrónicas de los elementos de la tercera fila que se muestra en la tabla periódica parcial de la Figura 1.5

1.3 La formación del enlace: la regla del octeto

En 1915, G. N. Lewis propuso varias teorías nuevas para describir cómo se enlazaban los átomos unos a otros para formar moléculas. Una de esas teorías afirma que una capa llena de electrones es especialmente estable y que *los átomos transfieren o comparten electrones para que de esa forma las capas se llenen de electrones*. Una capa llena de electrones tiene la configuración de un gas noble como el He, Ne o Ar. A este principio se le dio el nombre de la **regla del octeto** porque una capa llena implica ocho electrones de valencia para los elementos de la segunda fila de la tabla periódica.

1.3A Enlace iónico

Hay dos formas en las que los átomos pueden interaccionar para adquirir configuraciones de gas noble. Algunas veces los átomos adquieren configuraciones de gas noble transfiriendo electrones de un átomo a otro. Por ejemplo, el litio tiene un electrón más en su configuración que el helio, y el fluor tiene un electrón menos que la configuración del neón; el litio pierde fácilmente sus electrones de valencia y el fluor los gana fácilmente:

transferencia de un electrón — configuración del He — configuración del Ne — enlace iónico

La transferencia de un electrón da a cada uno de los elementos la configuración de gas noble. Los iones resultantes tienen cargas opuestas y se atraen uno a otro formando un **enlace iónico**. El enlace iónico normalmente da lugar a la formación de grandes estructuras cristalinas en vez de moléculas individuales. El enlace iónico es muy frecuente en los compuestos inorgánicos, pero bastante inusual en los orgánicos.

1.3B Enlace covalente

El **enlace covalente**, en el que se comparten electrones en lugar de transferirse, es la forma más habitual de enlace en los compuestos orgánicos. El hidrógeno, por ejemplo, necesita un segundo electrón para conseguir la configuración del gas noble helio. Si dos átomos de hidrógeno se unen y forman un enlace, «comparten» sus dos electrones y cada átomo tiene dos electrones en su capa de valencia.

$$H\cdot \quad + \quad H\cdot \quad \longrightarrow \quad H:H$$

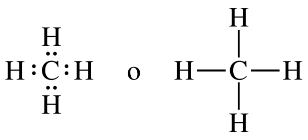
cada H comparte dos electrones (configuración del He)

El enlace covalente se estudiará con más detalle en el Capítulo 2.

1.4 Estructuras de Lewis

Una forma de simbolizar el enlace en una molécula covalente consiste en usar **estructuras de Lewis**. En una estructura de Lewis cada electrón de valencia se simboliza por un punto. Un par de electrones de enlace se simboliza por un par de puntos o por una línea (—). Se ha de intentar que todos los átomos tengan sus propias configuraciones de gas noble: dos electrones en el caso del hidrógeno y octetos para los elementos de la segunda fila de la tabla periódica.

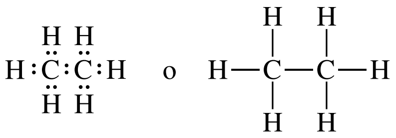
Considere, por ejemplo, la estructura de Lewis del metano (CH_4):



metano

El carbono contribuye con cuatro electrones de valencia y cada hidrógeno aporta uno, dando un total de ocho electrones. Todos estos ocho electrones rodean al carbono dando lugar a un octeto y cada átomo de hidrógeno comparte dos de los electrones.

La estructura de Lewis para el etano (C_2H_6) es más compleja:



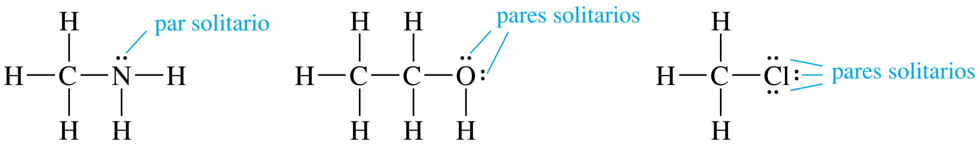
etano

Una vez más, se han colocado los electrones de valencia (14) y se han distribuido de forma que cada átomo de carbono quede rodeado por ocho electrones y cada hidrógeno por dos. La única estructura posible para el etano es la que se ha mostrado anteriormente, con los dos átomos de carbono compartiendo un par de electrones y cada átomo de hidrógeno compartiendo dos con uno de los carbonos. La estructura del etano muestra las características más importantes del carbono (su habilidad para formar enlaces fuertes carbono-carbono).

Los electrones de la capa de valencia que *no* son compartidos entre dos átomos reciben el nombre de **electrones no enlazantes**. Un par de electrones no enlazantes a menudo también es conocido como un **par solitario**. Los átomos de oxígeno, de nitrógeno y los halógenos (F, Cl, Br, I) normalmente tienen electrones no enlazantes en sus compuestos

SUGERENCIA
PARA RESOLVER PROBLEMAS
Las estructuras de Lewis son la forma de representar los enlaces en química orgánica. Aprender a representarlas de forma rápida y correctamente será muy útil a lo largo de este curso.

estables. Estos pares solitarios de electrones no enlazantes ayudan a determinar la reactividad de sus compuestos. Las estructuras de Lewis siguientes muestran un par solitario de electrones en el átomo de nitrógeno de la metilamina y dos pares solitarios en el átomo de oxígeno del etanol. Los átomos de los halógenos normalmente tienen tres pares solitarios, como se muestra en la estructura del clorometano.



metilamina etanol clorometano

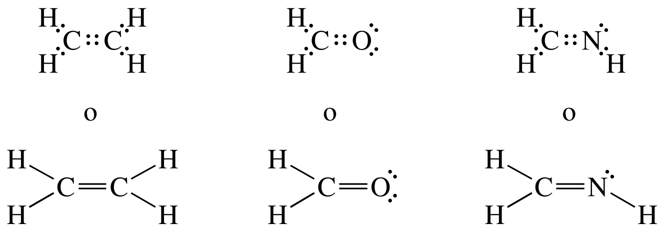
Una estructura de Lewis correcta debería mostrar los pares solitarios de electrones. Los químicos orgánicos a menudo dibujan estructuras de Lewis omitiendo la mayoría o todos los pares solitarios de electrones. Éstas no son estructuras correctas de Lewis porque uno se ha de imaginar el número de electrones no enlazantes.

PROBLEMA 1.2

Dibuje las estructuras de Lewis de los siguientes compuestos:
(a) amoniaco, NH_3
(b) agua, H_2O
(c) ión hidronio, H_3O^+
(d) propano, C_3H_8
(e) etilamina, $CH_3CH_2NH_2$
(f) dimetil éter, CH_3OCH_3
(g) fluoroetano, CH_3CH_2F
(h) 2-propanol, $CH_3CH(OH)CH_3$
(i) borano, BH_3
(j) trifluoruro de boro, BF_3
Explique qué es inusual en el enlace de los compuestos (i) y (j).

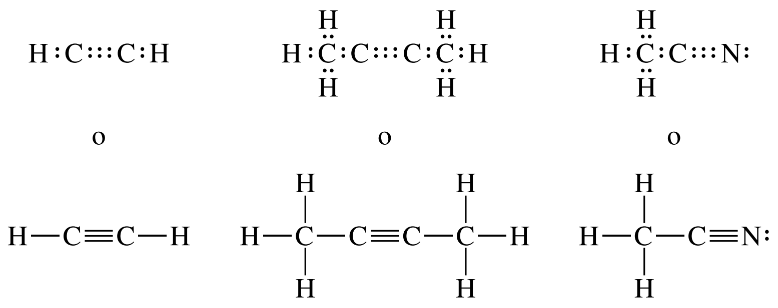
1.5 Enlace múltiple

Al representar las estructuras de Lewis en la Sección 1.4, se pusieron un par de electrones entre cada dos átomos. La compartición de un par de electrones entre dos átomos se conoce como **enlace sencillo**. Muchas moléculas comparten con sus átomos adyacentes dos o incluso tres pares de electrones; cuando se comparten dos pares se da el nombre de **enlace doble** y cuando se comparten tres pares se da el nombre de **enlace triple**. El etileno (C_2H_4) es un compuesto orgánico con un doble enlace. Cuando se representan las estructuras de Lewis para el etileno, la única forma de conseguir que los dos átomos de carbono tengan octetos es mediante la compartición de dos pares de electrones. El ejemplo siguiente muestra compuestos orgánicos con dobles enlaces. En cada caso, se comparten cuatro electrones (dos pares) entre dos átomos para formar octetos. Una doble línea (═) simboliza el doble enlace.


etileno formaldehído metanimina

El acetileno, cuando se combina con el oxígeno, arde con una llama intensa que tiene diversas aplicaciones. Se puede utilizar para soldar las piezas de un puente bajo el agua o para reparar las tuberías de un oleoducto en Siberia.

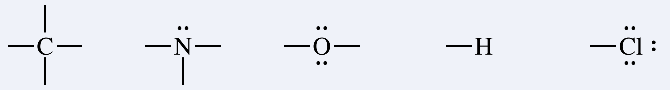
El acetileno (C_2H_2) tiene un triple enlace. Su estructura de Lewis muestra los tres pares de electrones entre los dos átomos de carbono para que formen un octeto. Una línea triple (≡) simboliza el triple enlace.



acetileno | dimetilacetileno | acetonitrilo

Todas estas estructuras de Lewis muestran que el carbono normalmente forma cuatro enlaces en compuestos orgánicos neutros. El nitrógeno generalmente forma tres enlaces y el oxígeno dos. El hidrógeno y los halógenos normalmente forman un enlace. El número de enlaces que normalmente puede formar un átomo se conoce como **valencia**. El carbono es tetravalente, el nitrógeno trivalente, el oxígeno divalente, y el hidrógeno y los halógenos monovalentes. Si se recuerda el número usual de enlaces de estos elementos, se podrán escribir estructuras orgánicas con mucha facilidad. Si una estructura se representa de forma que cada átomo tenga el número de enlaces que le corresponden, la estructura de Lewis será correcta.

RESUMEN Modelos de enlace más frecuentes (sin carga)



	carbono	nitrógeno	oxígeno	hidrógeno	halógenos
valencia:	4	3	2	1	1
pares solitarios:	0	1	2	0	3

SUGERENCIA
PARA RESOLVER PROBLEMAS

Estos «números de enlaces usuales» pueden ser sencillos o estar combinados en dobles y triples enlaces. Por ejemplo, los tres enlaces del nitrógeno podrían corresponder a tres enlaces sencillos, a un enlace sencillo y uno doble, o a un triple enlace (:N≡N:). En los problemas hay que considerar todas las posibilidades.

PROBLEMA 1.3

Escriba la estructura de Lewis para cada una de las siguientes fórmulas moleculares:

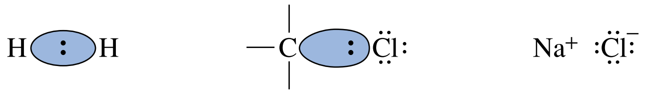
(a) N_2 **(b)** HCN **(c)** HONO
(d) CO_2 **(e)** H_2CNH **(f)** HCO_2H
(g) C_2H_3Cl **(h)** HNNH **(i)** C_3H_6
(j) C_3H_4 (dos dobles enlaces) **(k)** C_3H_4 (un triple enlace)

PROBLEMA 1.4

Rodee con un círculo los pares solitarios (pares de electrones no enlazantes) en las estructuras representadas en el Problema 1.3.

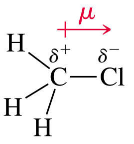
1.6 La electronegatividad y la polaridad de enlace

Un enlace cuyos electrones están igualmente compartidos por los dos átomos recibe el nombre de **enlace covalente no polar**. El enlace en la molécula de H_2 y el enlace C—C en el etano son enlaces covalentes no polares. En la mayoría de enlaces entre dos elementos diferentes los electrones del enlace están atraídos de forma diferente por cada uno de los dos núcleos. Cuando la compartición del par de electrones del enlace no es igual para los dos átomos, a este enlace se le conoce como **enlace covalente polar.**

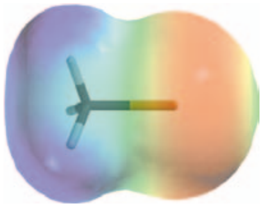


enlace covalente no polar | enlace covalente polar | enlace iónico

▶ Figura 1.6
El clorometano contiene un enlace polar carbono-cloro con una carga negativa parcial en el cloro y una carga positiva parcial en el carbono. El mapa de potencial electrostático muestra una región roja (rica en electrones) alrededor de la carga negativa parcial y una región azul (pobre en electrones) alrededor de la carga positiva parcial. El resto de colores indican valores intermedios de potencial electrostático.



clorometano



clorometano

Cuando el carbono se enlaza al cloro, por ejemplo, los electrones de enlace son atraídos más fuertemente hacia el átomo de cloro, por lo que el átomo de carbono adquirirá una pequeña carga positiva parcial y el átomo de cloro esa misma cantidad de carga pero de signo negativo. La Figura 1.6 muestra el enlace polar carbono-cloro del clorometano. Nosotros simbolizaremos la polaridad de enlace por una flecha que tenga como origen la carga positiva del enlace polar, y sobre este origen un signo positivo. La polaridad de un enlace se mide por su **momento dipolar** (μ), definido por el producto de la carga (separación de las cargas δ^+ y δ^-) y la longitud del enlace. El símbolo δ^+ significa «una pequeña cantidad de carga positiva» y el símbolo δ^- «una pequeña cantidad de carga negativa».

La Figura 1.6 también muestra un **mapa de potencial electrostático (MPE)** para el clorometano, que usa colores para representar la distribución de la carga calculada en una molécula. El rojo indica regiones ricas en electrones y el azul regiones pobres en electrones. El naranja, amarillo y verde indican niveles intermedios de potencial electrostático. En el clorometano, la región roja muestra la carga negativa parcial del cloro y la región azul indica la carga positiva parcial de los átomos de carbono y de hidrógeno.

A menudo se usan las **electronegatividades** como guía para predecir si un determinado enlace será polar y la dirección del momento dipolar. La escala de electronegatividad de Pauling, la que comúnmente utilizan los químicos orgánicos, se basa en las propiedades del enlace y es muy útil para predecir la polaridad de los enlaces covalentes. Los elementos con electronegatividades más altas atraen con más fuerza a los electrones de enlace. No obstante, en un enlace entre dos átomos diferentes, el átomo con la electronegatividad más alta es el extremo negativo del dipolo. La Figura 1.7 muestra las electronegatividades de Pauling para algunos de los elementos importantes de los compuestos orgánicos.

Obsérvese que la electronegatividad aumenta de izquierda a derecha a lo largo de la tabla periódica. El nitrógeno, el oxígeno y los halógenos son más electronegativos que el carbono; el sodio, el litio y el magnesio son menos electronegativos. La electronegatividad del hidrógeno es parecida a la del carbono, por lo que el enlace C—H normalmente se considera no polar. La polaridad de los enlaces y de las moléculas se tratará con más detalle en la Sección 2.9.

PROBLEMA 1.5

Haga uso de las electronegatividades para predecir los momentos dipolares de los siguientes enlaces:

(a) C—Cl **(b)** C—O **(c)** C—N **(d)** C—S **(e)** C—B
(f) N—Cl **(g)** N—O **(h)** N—S **(i)** N—B **(j)** B—Cl

H 2.2						
Li 1.0	Be 1.6	B 1.8	C 2.5	N 3.0	O 3.4	F 4.0
Na 0.9	Mg 1.3	Al 1.6	Si 1.9	P 2.2	S 2.6	Cl 3.2
K 0.8						Br 3.0
						I 2.7

▶ Figura 1.7
Electronegatividades de algunos de los elementos que se encuentran en los compuestos orgánicos.

1.7 Cargas formales

En los enlaces polares, las cargas parciales (δ^+ y δ^-) de los átomos del enlace son *reales*. Las **cargas formales** proporcionan un método de seguimiento de los electrones, pero pueden corresponder o no a cargas reales. En la mayoría de los casos, si la estructura de Lewis muestra que un átomo tiene una carga formal, quiere decir que tiene parte de esa carga. El concepto de carga formal ayuda a determinar qué átomos tienen mayor cantidad de carga en una molécula y ver que hay átomos cargados en moléculas que son neutras globalmente.

Para calcular las cargas formales, hay que contar cuántos electrones contribuyen a la carga de cada átomo y comparar ese número con el número de electrones de valencia que hay en el átomo neutro y aislado (dado por el número de grupo en la tabla periódica). Los electrones que contribuyen a la carga de un átomo son:

1. *Todos* sus electrones no compartidos (no enlazantes).
2. *La mitad* de los electrones (enlazantes) que comparte con otros átomos, o un electrón de cada par de enlace.

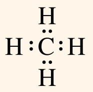
La carga formal de un átomo determinado puede ser calculada mediante la fórmula:

$$\text{carga formal (CF)} = [\text{número de grupo}] - [\text{electrones no enlazantes}] - \tfrac{1}{2}[\text{electrones compartidos}]$$

PROBLEMA RESUELTO 1.1

Calcule la carga formal (CF) de cada átomo de las estructuras siguientes:

(a) Metano (CH_4)

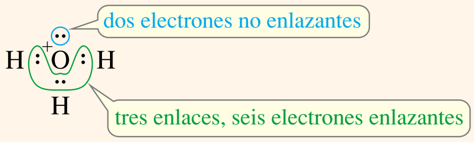


SOLUCIÓN

Cada átomo de hidrógeno del metano tiene un par enlazante de electrones (dos electrones compartidos). La mitad de los dos electrones compartidos es un electrón de valencia y es lo que el hidrógeno necesita para ser neutro. Los átomos de hidrógeno con un enlace son neutros formalmente: CF $= 1 - 0 - 1 = 0$.

El átomo de carbono tiene cuatro pares de electrones enlazantes (ocho electrones). La mitad de los ocho electrones compartidos, esto es, cuatro electrones son los que el carbono (grupo IVA) necesita para ser neutro. El carbono es formalmente neutro cuando tiene cuatro enlaces: CF $= 4 - 0 - \frac{1}{2}(8) = 0$.

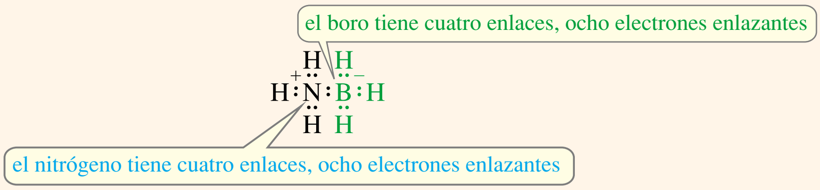
(b) Ión hidronio, H_3O^+



SOLUCIÓN

Cuando se representa la estructura de Lewis para este ión, se utilizan ocho electrones: seis del oxígeno y tres de los hidrógenos, menos uno porque el ión tiene una carga positiva. Cada hidrógeno tiene un enlace y es formalmente neutro. El oxígeno está rodeado por un octeto, con seis electrones enlazantes y dos electrones no enlazantes. La mitad de los electrones enlazantes más todos los electrones no enlazantes contribuyen a la carga: $6/2 + 2 = 5$; pero el oxígeno (grupo VIA) necesita seis electrones de valencia para ser neutro, por este motivo, el átomo de oxígeno tiene una carga formal de $+1$: CF $= 6 - 2 - \frac{1}{2}(6) = +1$.

(c) $H_3N—BH_3$



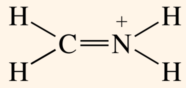
SOLUCIÓN

Éste es un compuesto neutro donde los átomos individuales están cargados formalmente. La estructura de Lewis muestra que tanto el nitrógeno como el boro tienen cuatro pares de electrones enlazantes. Los dos átomos, boro y nitrógeno, tienen $8/2 = 4$ electrones que contribuyen a sus cargas. El nitrógeno (grupo V) necesita cinco electrones de valencia para ser neutro, por lo que su carga formal es $+1$. El boro (grupo III) sólo necesita tres electrones de valencia para ser neutro, por lo que su carga formal es -1.

$$\text{Nitrógeno:} \quad CF = 5 - 0 - \tfrac{1}{2}(8) = +1$$

$$\text{Boro:} \quad CF = 3 - 0 - \tfrac{1}{2}(8) = -1$$

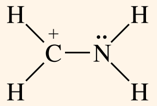
(d) $[H_2CNH_2]^+$



SOLUCIÓN

En esta estructura, tanto el carbono como el nitrógeno tienen cuatro pares de electrones enlazantes. Con cuatro enlaces, el carbono es formalmente neutro; no obstante, el nitrógeno es del grupo V, por lo que su carga positiva formal es: $CF = 5 - 0 - 4 = +1$.

Este compuesto también podría ser representado con la siguiente estructura de Lewis:



En esta estructura, el átomo de carbono tiene tres enlaces con seis electrones enlazantes que, si se dividen entre dos, $6/2 = 3$, se observa que el carbono tiene un electrón menos de los cuatro que necesita para ser neutro formalmente: $CF = 4 - 0 - \tfrac{1}{2}(6) = +1$.

El nitrógeno tiene seis electrones enlazantes y dos electrones no enlazantes. Si se hace el cálculo $6/2 + 2 = 5$, se observa que el nitrógeno es neutro en esta segunda estructura:

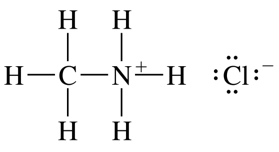
$$CF = 5 - 2 - \tfrac{1}{2}(6) = 0$$

El significado de estas dos estructuras de Lewis se discute en la Sección 1.9.

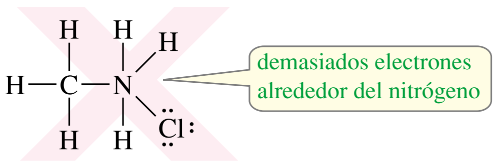
La mayoría de los compuestos orgánicos sólo contienen un número pequeño de elementos bastante comunes, normalmente con el octeto de electrones completo. La tabla resumen de la página siguiente indica la naturaleza de los enlaces más habituales, utilizando líneas para representar los pares de electrones enlazantes. Utilice estas reglas de cálculo de las cargas formales para comprobar las cargas que se dan en las estructuras. Si las estructuras se entienden bien, será fácil representar los compuestos orgánicos y sus iones de forma rápida y correcta.

1.8 Estructuras iónicas

Algunos compuestos orgánicos contienen enlaces iónicos. Por ejemplo, la estructura del cloruro de metilamonio (CH_3NH_3Cl) no se puede representar si solamente se utilizan enlaces covalentes; esto requeriría que el nitrógeno tuviese cinco enlaces, lo que implicaría diez electrones en la capa de valencia. La estructura correcta contiene un ión cloruro enlazado iónicamente al resto de la estructura.



cloruro de metilamonio



no se puede representar mediante enlaces covalentes

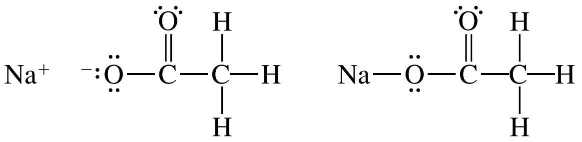
RESUMEN **Modelos de enlace más frecuentes en los compuestos e iones orgánicos**

Átomo	*Electrones de valencia*	*Cargado positivamente*	*Neutro*	*Cargado negativamente*
B	3		—B— (no octeto)	—B⁻—
C	4	—C⁺— (no octeto)	—C—	—C̈⁻—
N	5	—N⁺—	—N̈—	—N̈⁻—
O	6	—Ö⁺—	—Ö—	—Ö:⁻
halógeno	7	—C̈l⁺—	—C̈l:	:C̈l:⁻

SUGERENCIA PARA RESOLVER PROBLEMAS

Esta tabla es muy importante. Haz un número de problemas suficientes como para familiarizarte con estos modelos de enlace, tal que puedas saber cuándo otros modelos son incorrectos o bien inusuales.

Algunas moléculas se pueden representar tanto en forma covalente como iónica. Por ejemplo, el acetato de sodio ($NaOCOCH_3$) se puede representar tanto con un enlace covalente como con un enlace iónico entre el sodio y el oxígeno. Como el sodio normalmente forma enlaces iónicos con el oxígeno (NaOH), la estructura con enlace iónico es la que se prefiere. En general, los enlaces entre átomos con gran diferencia de electronegatividad (2 o más) normalmente se representan como compuestos iónicos.



más común menos común

PROBLEMA 1.6

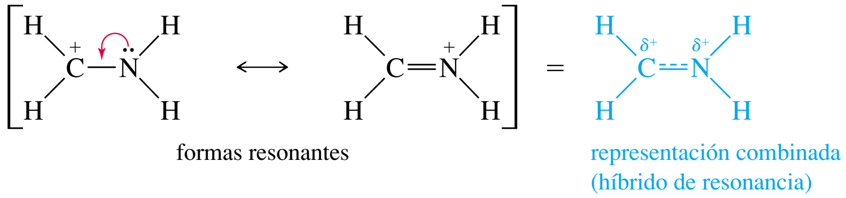
Dibuje las estructuras de Lewis de los siguientes compuestos e iones, diciendo cuál es su carga formal apropiada:

(a) $[CH_3OH_2]^+$
(b) NH_4Cl
(c) $(CH_3)_2NH_2Cl$
(d) $NaOCH_3$
(e) $^+CH_3$
(f) $^-CH_3$
(g) $NaBH_4$
(h) $NaBH_3CN$
(i) $(CH_3)_2O—BF_3$
(j) $[HONH_3]^+$
(k) $KOC(CH_3)_3$
(l) $[H_2C{=}OH]^+$

1.9 Resonancia

1.9A Híbridos de resonancia

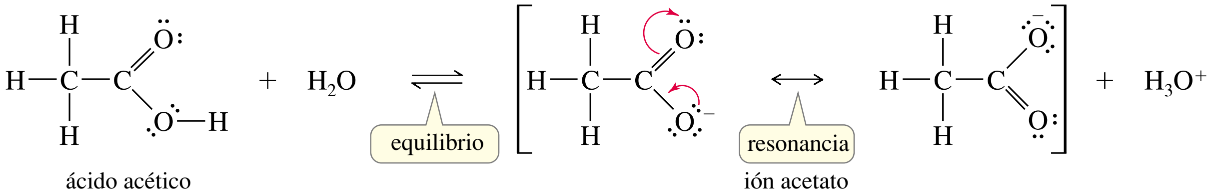
Algunas de las estructuras de los compuestos no es adecuado representarlas mediante una sola estructura de Lewis. Cuando son posibles dos o más estructuras de enlace de valencia, que difieren sólo en la colocación de los electrones, la molécula suele mostrar características de las dos estructuras. A estas estructuras diferentes se las conoce como **estructuras de resonancia** o **formas resonantes,** ya que no son compuestos diferentes, sino formas diferentes de representar el mismo compuesto. La molécula real se dice que corresponde a un **híbrido de resonancia** de sus formas resonantes. En el Problema resuelto 1.1(d) se mostró cómo el ión $[H_2CNH_2]^+$ se podía representar por cualquiera de las siguientes formas de resonancia:



La estructura real de este ión es un híbrido de resonancia de las dos estructuras. En la molécula real, la carga positiva esta **deslocalizada** (extendida) entre el átomo de carbono y el de nitrógeno. En la forma resonante de la izquierda, la carga positiva está en el carbono, pero el carbono no tiene un octeto. Los electrones no enlazantes del nitrógeno se pueden mover por el enlace (tal como indica la flecha roja) dando una segunda estructura con un doble enlace entre el nitrógeno que tiene carga positiva y el carbono que posee un octeto. La representación combinada de las dos formas de resonancia en una sola representación da lugar a una carga compartida entre el nitrógeno y el carbono.

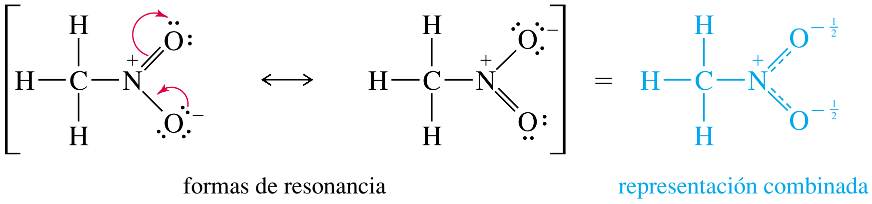
El extender la carga positiva sobre dos átomos hace que el ión sea más estable que en el caso de que la carga positiva estuviera localizada solamente sobre el carbono o sobre el nitrógeno. Se dice que este catión está **estabilizado por resonancia**. La resonancia es más importante cuando permite que una carga esté deslocalizada entre dos o más átomos, como en el ejemplo mencionado.

La estabilización por resonancia desempeña un papel crucial en la química orgánica, especialmente en la química de compuestos que tienen dobles enlaces. Se usará frecuentemente el concepto de resonancia a lo largo de este curso. Por ejemplo, la acidez del ácido acético (*véase* abajo) se incrementa por efecto de la resonancia. Cuando el ácido acético pierde un protón, el ión acetato resultante tiene una carga negativa deslocalizada sobre los dos átomos de oxígeno. Cada átomo de oxígeno posee la mitad de la carga negativa y su deslocalización estabiliza el ión. Cada uno de los enlaces carbono-oxígeno es intermedio entre un enlace doble y un enlace sencillo, por lo que se dice que su *orden de enlace* es de $1\frac{1}{2}$.



Se usará una sola flecha con doble punta entre las formas de resonancia (a menudo puestas entre corchetes) para indicar que la estructura real es un híbrido de las estructuras de Lewis representadas. Por otra parte, un equilibrio se representará por dos flechas con sentidos opuestos.

Algunas moléculas sin carga también tienen estructuras de resonancia estabilizadas con la misma carga formal positiva y negativa. Se pueden representar dos estructuras de Lewis para el nitrometano (CH_3NO_2), pero las dos estructuras tienen una caga positiva formal en el nitrógeno y una carga negativa en uno de los oxígenos. Por tanto, el nitrometano tiene una carga positiva en el átomo de nitrógeno y una carga negativa extendida por igual sobre los dos átomos de oxígeno. Los enlaces N—O están entre un enlace sencillo y uno doble, tal como se indica en la representación combinada siguiente:

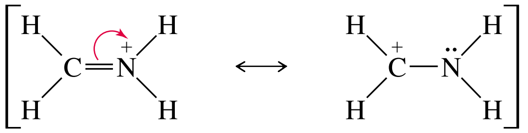


Recuerde que las formas de resonancia individuales no existen como especies químicas independientes. La molécula no «resuena» entre esas estructuras, es un híbrido con

características de ambas estructuras. Una analogía sería una mula, que es un híbrido de un caballo y un burro. La mula no «resuena» entre parecerse a un caballo o a un burro; simplemente es una mula, con el amplio dorso de un caballo y las grandes orejas de un burro.

1.9B Contribución mayor o menor de las formas resonantes al híbrido de resonancia

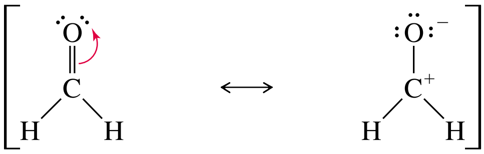
Dos o más estructuras de Lewis correctas para un mismo compuesto pueden o no representar distribuciones de electrones de igual energía. A pesar de que formas de resonancia separadas no existen, se pueden estimar sus energías relativas como si existieran. La mayoría de las formas de resonancia estables son representaciones más cercanas de la molécula real que las menos estables. Las dos formas de resonancia del apartado anterior, para el ión acetato, tienen enlaces similares e idéntica energía. Lo mismo se puede decir para las dos formas de resonancia del nitrometano. Las formas de resonancia siguientes, por el contrario, tienen enlaces diferentes.



contribuyente mayor — contribuyente menor

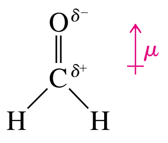
Las estructuras anteriores no tienen la misma energía estimada. La primera estructura tiene la carga positiva en el nitrógeno. La segunda tiene la carga positiva en el carbono, y el átomo de carbono no posee un octeto completo. La primera estructura es más estable ya que tiene un enlace adicional y todos los átomos tienen octetos completos. Muchos iones estables tienen una carga positiva en el átomo de nitrógeno con cuatro enlaces (*véase* la tabla resumen de la página 13). A la forma de resonancia más estable se la conoce como la **contribuyente mayor** y a la forma menos estable como la **contribuyente menor**. La estructura del compuesto real se parece más al contribuyente mayor que al contribuyente menor.

Muchas moléculas orgánicas tienen contribuyentes de resonancia mayor y menor. El formaldehído ($H_2C{=}O$) se puede representar con una carga negativa en el oxígeno, equilibrada por una carga positiva en el carbono. Esta forma de resonancia polar tiene mayor energía estimada que la estructura con doble enlace, porque tiene separación de cargas, menos enlaces y un átomo de carbono cargado positivamente con un octeto incompleto. La estructura con cargas separadas es solamente un contribuyente menor, pero ayuda a explicar por qué el enlace C═O del formaldehído es muy polar, con una carga positiva parcial en el carbono y una carga negativa parcial en el oxígeno. El mapa de potencial electrostático (MPE) también muestra una región rica en electrones (rojo) alrededor del oxígeno y una región pobre en electrones (azul) alrededor del carbono en el formaldehído.

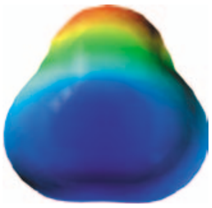


todos los átomos con octetos completos, no hay separación de cargas (contribuyente mayor)

carbono sin octeto completo, separación de cargas (contribuyente menor)



momento dipolar



MPE del formaldehído

Cuando se representan las formas de resonancia, se intenta dibujar estructuras que sean lo más bajas posible en energía. Las mejores candidatas son las que tienen un número máximo de octetos y el máximo número de enlaces. Además, las estructuras tienen que tener la mínima cantidad de separación de cargas.

Sólo los electrones pueden estar deslocalizados. Al contrario que los electrones, los núcleos no pueden estar deslocalizados, deben permanecer en el mismo lugar, con las mismas distancias de enlace y los mismos ángulos en todos los contribuyentes a la resonancia. Las reglas generales siguientes serán útiles para representar estructuras de resonancias.

SUGERENCIA
PARA RESOLVER PROBLEMAS

Para comparar las formas de resonancia se pueden utilizar los siguientes criterios, comenzando por el más importante:

1. Tantos octetos como sea posible.
2. Tantos enlaces como sea posible.
3. Si hay carga negativa se coloca en los átomos electronegativos.
4. La menor separación de cargas posible.

1. Todas las estructuras de resonancia deben ser estructuras de Lewis válidas para el compuesto.
2. Sólo se puede cambiar la posición de los electrones de una estructura a otra (los electrones de los dobles enlaces y pares solitarios son los que se cambian con más frecuencia). El núcleo no se puede cambiar de posición y los ángulos de enlace han de ser los mismos.
3. El número de electrones desapareados (si hay alguno) debe permanecer igual. La mayoría de los compuestos estables no tienen electrones desapareados y todos los electrones deben permanecer apareados en todas las estructuras de resonancia.
4. El contribuyente mayor a la resonancia es el que tiene menor energía.

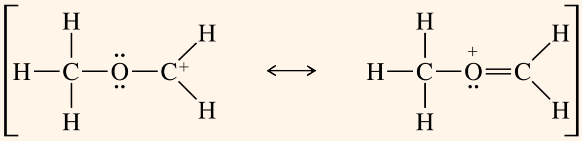
   Los buenos contribuyentes generalmente tienen todos los octetos satisfechos, con el máximo número de enlaces covalentes que sea posible y con una separación de cargas lo menor posible. Las cargas negativas son más estables en los átomos más electronegativos.
5. La estabilización por resonancia es más importante cuando sirve para deslocalizar una carga entre dos o más átomos.

PROBLEMA RESUELTO 1.2

Para cada uno de los siguientes compuestos, represente las formas de resonancia importantes. Indique qué estructuras tienen contribuyentes mayores y menores, o si tienen la misma energía.

(a) $[CH_3OCH_2]^+$

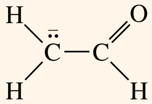
SOLUCIÓN



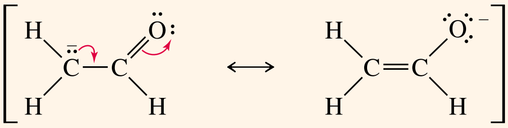
contribuyente menor — contribuyente mayor

La primera estructura (menor) tiene un átomo de carbono con sólo seis electrones a su alrededor. La segunda estructura (mayor) tiene octetos en todos los átomos y un enlace adicional.

(b)



SOLUCIÓN

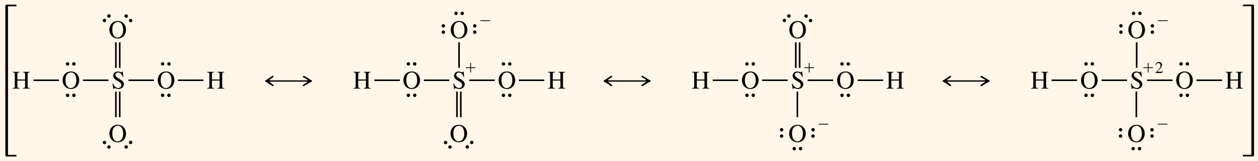


contribuyente menor — contribuyente mayor

Las dos estructuras tienen octetos en el átomo de oxígeno y en el de carbono, y tienen el mismo número de enlaces. La primera estructura tiene la carga negativa en el carbono y la segunda la tiene en el oxígeno. El oxígeno es más electronegativo que el carbono, por lo tanto, la segunda estructura es el contribuyente mayor.

(c) H_2SO_4

SOLUCIÓN



La primera estructura, con más enlaces y menor separación de carga, es posible porque el azufre es un elemento de la tercera fila de la tabla periódica con orbitales *d* accesibles, lo que le da la posibilidad de expandir aparentemente su octeto. Por ejemplo, el SF_6 es un compuesto estable con 12 electrones alrededor del azufre. Sin embargo, algunos cálculos teóricos sugieren que la última estructura representada, con octetos en todos los átomos, podría ser la contribuyente mayor a la resonancia. No se puede predecir siempre el contribuyente mayor de un híbrido de resonancia.

PROBLEMA 1.7

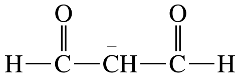
Represente las formas de resonancia importantes de las siguientes moléculas e iones:

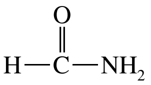
(a) CO_3^{2-} **(b)** NO_3^- **(c)** NO_2^- **(d)** $H_2C{=}CH{-}CH_2^+$
(e) $H_2C{=}CH{-}CH_2^-$ **(f)** SO_4^{2-} **(g)** $[CH_3C(OCH_3)_2]^+$

PROBLEMA 1.8

Para cada uno de los siguientes compuestos, represente las formas de resonancia importantes. Indique qué estructuras son las contribuyentes mayores y menores a la resonancia, o si tienen la misma energía.

(a) $[H_2CNO_2]^-$ **(b)** $H_2C{=}CH{-}NO_2$ **(c)** $[H_2COH]^+$
(d) H_2CNN **(e)** $[H_2CCN]^-$ **(f)** $H_2N{-}\overset{+}{C}H{-}CH{=}CH{-}NH_2$

(g) 

(h) 

SUGERENCIA PARA RESOLVER PROBLEMAS

Cuando se representan formas de resonancia para iones, observe cómo se puede deslocalizar la carga entre varios átomos. Intente colocar una carga negativa sobre elementos electronegativos como el oxígeno y el nitrógeno. Intente, así mismo, colocar una carga positiva sobre todos los carbonos que sea posible, pero especialmente sobre los átomos que puedan alojar la carga positiva y tener un octeto completo; por ejemplo, el oxígeno (con tres enlaces) o el nitrógeno (con cuatro enlaces).

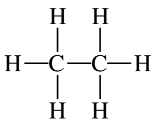
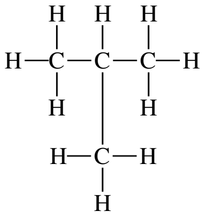
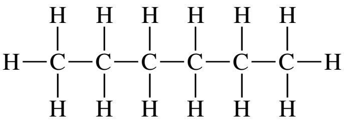
1.10 Fórmulas estructurales

Los químicos orgánicos utilizan varias clases de fórmulas para representar los compuestos orgánicos. Algunas de estas fórmulas incluyen una notación específica que requiere una explicación. Las **fórmulas estructurales** indican qué átomos están enlazados a otros. Hay dos tipos de fórmulas estructurales: las estructuras de Lewis completas y las fórmulas estructurales condensadas. Además, hay varias formas de representar fórmulas estructurales condensadas. Según se ha visto, una estructura de Lewis simboliza un par de electrones enlazantes como un par de puntos o como una línea (—). Los pares solitarios de electrones se muestran como pares de puntos.

1.10A Fórmulas estructurales condensadas

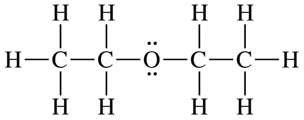
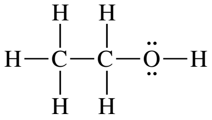
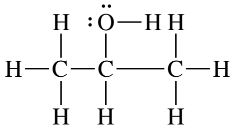
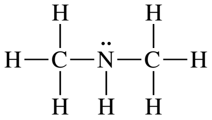
Las **fórmulas estructurales condensadas** (Tabla 1.2) se representan sin mostrar todos los enlaces individuales. En una estructura condensada, cada átomo central se representa junto a los átomos a los que está enlazado. Los átomos enlazados a un átomo central a menudo se escriben a continuación del átomo central (CH_3CH_3 en lugar de $H_3C{-}CH_3$) incluso aunque no sea el orden del verdadero enlace. En muchos casos, si hay dos o más grupos idénticos, se puede utilizar un paréntesis y un subíndice para representar a todos estos grupos. Los electrones no enlazantes raramente se representan en las fórmulas estructurales condensadas.

TABLA 1.2 Ejemplos de fórmulas estructurales condensadas

Compuesto	Estructura de Lewis	Fórmula estructural condensada
etano		CH_3CH_3
isobutano		$(CH_3)_3CH$
n-hexano		$CH_3(CH_2)_4CH_3$

(continúa en la página siguiente)

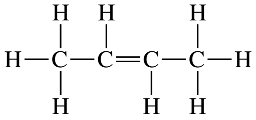
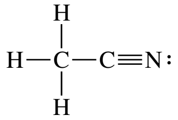
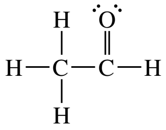
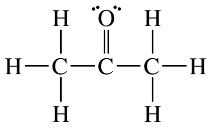
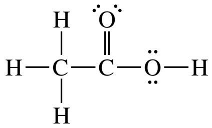
TABLA 1.2 *(continuación)*

Compuesto	Estructura de Lewis	Fórmula estructural condensada
dietil éter		$CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$ o $CH_3CH_2—O—CH_2CH_3$ o $(CH_3CH_2)_2O$
etanol		CH_3CH_2OH
alcohol isopropílico		$(CH_3)_2CHOH$
dimetilamina		$(CH_3)_2NH$

Cuando se escribe una fórmula estructural condensada para un compuesto que contiene enlaces dobles o triples, los enlaces múltiples con frecuencia se representan igual que en las estructuras de Lewis. La Tabla 1.3 muestra ejemplos de fórmulas estructurales condensadas que contienen enlaces múltiples. Observe que el grupo —CHO de un aldehído y el grupo —COOH de un ácido carboxílico se enlazan de forma diferente a como sugiere la notación condensada.

Como se puede observar en las Tablas 1.2 y 1.3, la diferencia entre una fórmula estructural de Lewis completa y una fórmula estructural condensada puede ser confusa. Los químicos con frecuencia representan las fórmulas con algunas partes condensadas y otras

TABLA 1.3 Fórmulas estructurales condensadas para dobles y triples enlaces

Compuesto	Estructura de Lewis	Fórmula estructural condensada
2-buteno		$CH_3CHCHCH_3$ o $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$
acetonitrilo		CH_3CN o $CH_3C{\equiv}N$
acetaldehído		CH_3CHO o $CH_3\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}H$
acetona		CH_3COCH_3 o $CH_3\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}CH_3$
ácido acético		CH_3COOH o $CH_3\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}—OH$ o CH_3CO_2H

completamente desarrolladas. El estudiante debería trabajar con las diferentes formas de representar las fórmulas para entender su significado.

PROBLEMA 1.9

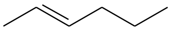
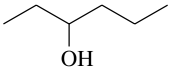
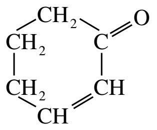
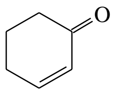
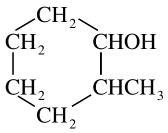
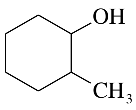
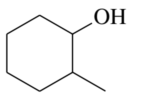
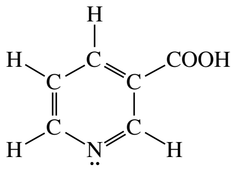
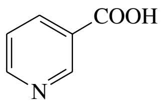
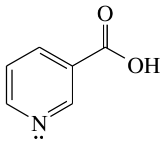
Represente las estructuras de Lewis completas para las siguientes fórmulas estructurales condensadas:

(a) $CH_3(CH_2)_3CH(CH_3)_2$ **(b)** $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2Cl$ **(c)** $CH_3CH_2COCHCH_2$
(d) CH_3CH_2CHO **(e)** CH_3COCN **(f)** $(CH_3)_3CCOOH$ **(g)** $(CH_3CH_2)_2CO$

1.10B Fórmulas lineoangulares

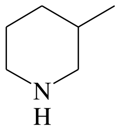
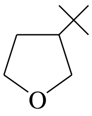
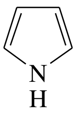
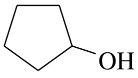
Otra forma de representar las estructuras orgánicas es la **fórmula lineoangular**, algunas veces llamada **estructura esquelética** o de barras. Las fórmulas lineoangulares con frecuencia se usan en los compuestos cíclicos y muy ocasionalmente en los lineales. En una fórmula lineoangular, los enlaces están representados por líneas y los átomos de carbono vienen dados por los vértices o puntos de encuentro de dos líneas, o el punto del principio o final de la línea en el caso de los extremos. Los átomos de nitrógeno, de oxígeno y los halógenos se escriben con su símbolo, pero los átomos de hidrógeno frecuentemente no se simbolizan a no ser que vayan unidos a elementos que se han simbolizado. Se supone que cada átomo de carbono tiene los suficientes átomos de hidrógeno para que el total de sus enlaces sea cuatro. Los electrones no enlazantes raramente se representan. La Tabla 1.4 muestra algunos ejemplos de estas representaciones lineoangulares.

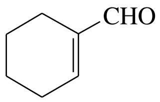
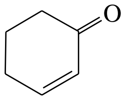
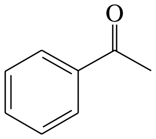
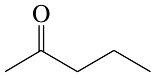
TABLA 1.4 Ejemplos de representaciones lineoangulares

Compuesto	Estructura condensada	Fórmula lineoangular
hexano	$CH_3(CH_2)_4CH_3$	
2-hexeno	$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_2CH_2CH_3$	
3-hexanol	$CH_3CH_2CH(OH)CH_2CH_2CH_3$	
2-ciclohexenona		
2-metilciclohexanol		 o 
ácido nicotínico (vitamina, también llamada niacina)		 o 

PROBLEMA 1.10

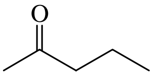
Escriba la estructura de Lewis correspondiente a las siguientes estructuras lineoangulares:

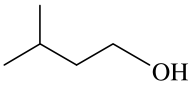
(a)  **(b)**  **(c)**  **(d)** 

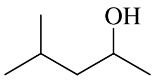
(e)  **(f)**  **(g)**  **(h)** 

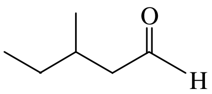
PROBLEMA 1.11

Representе las fórmulas estructurales condensadas correspondientes a las siguientes estructuras lineoangulares:

(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

(d) 

1.11 Fórmulas moleculares y fórmulas empíricas

Antes de poder escribir las posibles fórmulas estructurales de un compuesto, se necesita saber su fórmula molecular. La **fórmula molecular** simplemente informa del número de átomos de cada elemento que hay en una molécula de un compuesto. Por ejemplo, la fórmula molecular del 1-butanol es $C_4H_{10}O$.

$$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$$

1-butanol, fórmula molecular $C_4H_{10}O$

Cálculo de la fórmula empírica Las fórmulas moleculares se pueden determinar mediante un proceso que consta de dos pasos. El primer paso es la determinación de la **fórmula empírica**, o relación relativa entre los elementos presentes en la molécula. Suponga, por ejemplo, que en un compuesto desconocido, por análisis elemental cuantitativo, se encontró que contenía un 40.00% de carbono y un 6.67% de hidrógeno. La masa restante, 53.33%, se supone que era oxígeno. Para pasar esos números a una fórmula empírica, se puede seguir un procedimiento simple:

1. Suponga que la muestra contiene 100 g, por lo que los valores porcentuales dan el número de gramos de cada elemento. Dividiendo el número de gramos de cada elemento por la masa atómica se obtiene el número de moles de ese átomo en los 100 g de muestra.
2. Divida cada uno de los números de moles obtenidos en el paso anterior por el número más pequeño y redondee a la cifra entera más próxima. Este paso ha de conducir a la relación existente, expresada en números enteros, entre los elementos de la molécula.

Para el compuesto desconocido, con los datos anteriores y siguiendo los pasos indicados, se obtendrían los siguientes resultados:

$$\frac{40.0 \text{ g C}}{12.0 \text{ g/mol}} = 3.33 \text{ mol C}; \quad \frac{3.33 \text{ mol}}{3.33 \text{ mol}} = 1$$

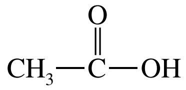
$$\frac{6.67 \text{ g H}}{1.01 \text{ g/mol}} = 6.60 \text{ mol H}; \quad \frac{6.60 \text{ mol}}{3.33 \text{ mol}} = 1.98 \cong 2$$

$$\frac{53.3 \text{ g O}}{16.0 \text{ g/mol}} = 3.33 \text{ mol O}; \quad \frac{3.33 \text{ mol}}{3.33 \text{ mol}} = 1$$

En el primer cálculo se divide el número de gramos de carbono por 12, el número de gramos de hidrógeno por 1 y el número de gramos de oxígeno por 16. Se comparan los resultados dividiendo todos los valores obtenidos por el número más pequeño, 3.33. El resultado final da una relación de un átomo de carbono por dos de hidrógeno y uno de oxígeno. Este resultado nos dice que la fórmula empírica es $C_1H_2O_1$ o CH_2O, que muestra solamente la relación de los elementos. La fórmula molecular puede ser un múltiplo cualquiera de la fórmula empírica, porque cualquier múltiplo también tiene la misma relación numérica entre los átomos de sus elementos. Fórmulas moleculares posibles son CH_2O, $C_2H_4O_2$, $C_3H_6O_3$, $C_4H_8O_4$, etc.

Cálculo de la fórmula molecular ¿Cómo se sabe cuál es la fórmula molecular correcta? Se puede elegir el verdadero múltiplo de la fórmula empírica cuando se conoce la masa molecular. Las masas moleculares de una sustancia se pueden determinar por métodos como el *descenso crioscópico* o el *aumento ebulloscópico* de un disolvente cuando contiene la sustancia desconocida a una concentración molal. Si el compuesto es volátil, se puede convertir en gas y utilizar su volumen para determinar el número de moles por la *ley de los gases ideales*. En la actualidad existen métodos entre los que se incluye la *espectrometría de masas*, que será tratada en el Capítulo 11.

Para el ejemplo anterior (fórmula empírica: CH_2O) supondremos que la masa molecular es aproximadamente 60. La masa de una unidad de CH_2O es 30, por lo que el compuesto contendrá el doble número de átomos. La fórmula molecular será $C_2H_4O_2$. Este compuesto podría ser el ácido acético.



ácido acético, $C_2H_4O_2$

En los Capítulos 12, 13 y 15 se usarán técnicas espectroscópicas para determinar la estructura completa de un compuesto una vez que se conozca su fórmula molecular.

PROBLEMA 1.12

Escriba la fórmula empírica y la fórmula molecular a partir de los análisis elementales siguientes. En cada caso, proponga al menos una estructura que corresponda a la fórmula molecular.

	C	*H*	*N*	*Cl*	*PM*(*)
(a)	40.0%	6.67%	0	0	90
(b)	32.0%	6.67%	18.7%	0	75
(c)	37.2%	7.75%	0	55.0%	64
(d)	38.4%	4.80%	0	56.8%	125

(*) Peso molecular.

SUGERENCIA
PARA RESOLVER PROBLEMAS

Si un análisis elemental no suma el 100%, el porcentaje que falta se supone que es de oxígeno.

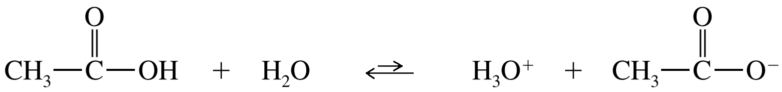
1.12 Ácidos y bases de Arrhenius

Las propiedades y la reactividad de los ácidos y de las bases son fundamentales para el estudio de la química orgánica. Hay que saber exactamente qué quieren decir los términos **ácido** y **base**. La mayoría de la gente estaría de acuerdo en que el H_2SO_4 es un ácido y el NaOH una base. ¿El BF_3 es un ácido o es una base? ¿El etileno ($H_2C{=}CH_2$) es un ácido o una base? Para responder a estas preguntas se necesitan entender las tres definiciones diferentes de los ácidos y de las bases: la definición de Arrhenius, la de Brönsted-Lowry y la de Lewis.

La primera clasificación de los compuestos ácidos se hizo basándose en su sabor agrio. Los términos latinos *acidus* (agrio) y *acetum* (vinagre) dieron lugar a los términos actuales de *ácido* y *ácido acético*. Los compuestos alcalinos (bases) eran sustancias que neutralizaban a los ácidos, tales como la caliza y las cenizas de las plantas (en árabe, *al kalai*).

La *teoría de Arrhenius* se desarrolló al final del siglo diecinueve y definía los ácidos como sustancias que se disocian en el agua para formar iones H_3O^+. Se asumió que los ácidos más fuertes, tales como el ácido sulfúrico (H_2SO_4), se disociaban mucho más que los ácidos débiles, tales como el ácido acético (CH_3COOH).

$$\underset{\text{ácido sulfúrico}}{H_2SO_4} + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + HSO_4^-$$



ácido acético

Según la definición de Arrhenius, las bases son sustancias que se disocian en solución acuosa para formar iones hidroxilo. Por otra parte se consideró que las bases fuertes, tales como el NaOH, se disociaban más que las débiles o que aquellas que se disuelven moderadamente, como el $Mg(OH)_2$.

$$NaOH \rightleftharpoons Na^+ + OH^-$$

$$Mg(OH)_2 \rightleftharpoons Mg^{2+} + 2\,OH^-$$

La acidez o basicidad de una solución acuosa (agua) de una sustancia se mide por la concentración de H_3O^+ en dicha disolución. Este valor también permite conocer implícitamente la concentración de OH^-, ya que estas dos concentraciones están relacionadas entre sí por la constante de ionización del agua:

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.00 \times 10^{-14} \quad \text{(a 24°C)}$$

En las soluciones neutras la concentración de $[H_3O^+]$ y de $[OH^-]$ son iguales,

$$[H_3O^+] \quad = \quad [OH^-] \quad = \quad 1.0 \times 10^{-7}\,M \qquad \text{en una solución neutra}$$

Las soluciones ácidas y básicas poseen un exceso de $[H_3O^+]$ o de $[OH^-]$, respectivamente.

$$\text{ácidas:} \quad [H_3O^+] \; > \; 10^{-7}\,M \quad \text{y} \quad [OH^-] \; < \; 10^{-7}\,M$$

$$\text{básicas:} \quad [H_3O^+] \; < \; 10^{-7}\,M \quad \text{y} \quad [OH^-] \; > \; 10^{-7}\,M$$

Como estas concentraciones pueden abarcar un amplio rango de valores, la acidez o basicidad de una solución normalmente se mide en escala logarítmica. El **pH** se define como el logaritmo (en base 10), cambiado de signo, de la concentración de H_3O^+.

$$\text{pH} = -\log_{10}[H_3O^+]$$

Una solución neutra tiene un pH de 7, una solución ácida tiene un pH menor que 7 y una solución básica tiene un pH mayor que 7.

PROBLEMA 1.13

Calcule el pH de las siguientes soluciones:
(a) 5.00 g de HBr en 100 mL de solución acuosa.
(b) 1.50 g de NaOH en 50 mL de solución acuosa.

La definición de Arrhenius fue una contribución importante para poder entender muchos ácidos y muchas bases, pero no explica por qué un compuesto como el amoniaco (NH_3) neutraliza los ácidos, a pesar de no tener un ión hidróxido en su fórmula molecular. En la Sección 1.13 se explica una teoría más versátil de ácidos y bases que incluye al amoniaco y a una variedad más amplia de ácidos y bases orgánicos.

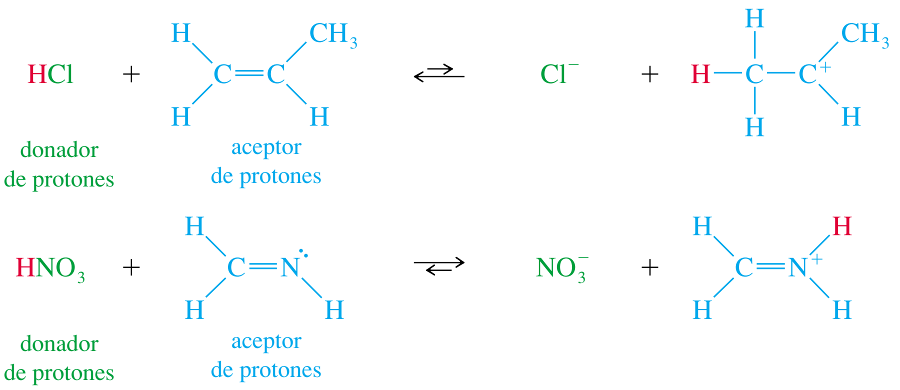
1.13 Ácidos y bases de Brönsted-Lowry

En 1923, Brönsted y Lowry definieron los ácidos y las bases teniendo en cuenta su capacidad de liberar o captar protones, respectivamente. Un **ácido de Brönsted-Lowry** es *cualquier especie que puede donar un protón*, y **una base de Brönsted-Lowry** es *cualquier especie que puede aceptar un protón*. Estas definiciones también incluyen todos los ácidos y bases de Arrhenius, ya que los compuestos que se disocian para dar H_3O^+ son donadores de protones y los compuestos que se disocian para dar OH^- son aceptores de protones (el ión hidróxido acepta un protón para formar H_2O).

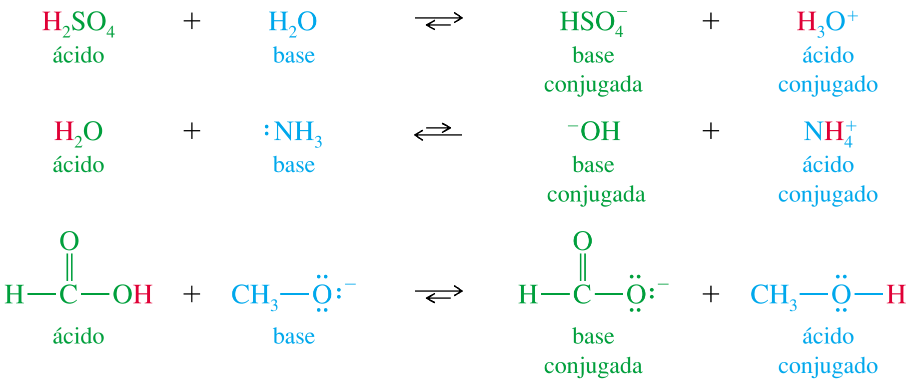
Además de los ácidos y bases de Arrhenius, la definición de Brönsted-Lowry incluye también las bases que no tienen iones hidróxido, y que pueden aceptar protones. Observa los ejemplos siguientes de ácidos capaces de ceder protones a las bases. El NaOH es una base tanto si se considera la definición de Arrhenius o la de Brönsted-Lowry. Los tres ejemplos siguientes son bases de Brönsted-Lowry pero no bases de Arrhenius, ya que no tienen iones hidróxido.

$$\underset{\text{donador de protones}}{HCl} \quad + \quad \underset{\text{aceptor de protones}}{NaOH} \quad \rightleftarrows \quad NaCl \quad + \quad HOH$$

$$\underset{\text{donador de protones}}{H_2SO_4} \quad + \quad \underset{\text{aceptor de protones}}{:NH_3} \quad \rightleftarrows \quad HSO_4^- \quad + \quad H{-}\overset{+}{N}H_3$$



Cuando una base acepta un protón, se convierte en un ácido capaz de devolver ese protón. Cuando un ácido cede un protón, se convierte en una base capaz de aceptar de nuevo ese protón. Uno de los principios más importantes de la definición de Brönsted-Lowry es el concepto de **ácidos** y **bases conjugados**. Por ejemplo, el NH_3 y el NH_4^+ forman un par de ácido y base conjugados; el NH_3 es la base, cuando acepta un protón, se transforma en el ácido conjugado, NH_4^+. Muchos compuestos (por ejemplo, el agua) pueden reaccionar como un ácido o como una base. A continuación se dan algunos ejemplos de pares ácido-base conjugados:



1.13A Fuerza de los ácidos

La fuerza de un ácido de Brönsted-Lowry se expresa de forma similar a la definición de Arrhenius, teniendo en cuenta su grado de ionización en agua. La reacción general de un ácido (HA) con agua es la siguiente:

$$\underset{\text{ácido}}{HA} + H_2O \overset{K_a}{\rightleftharpoons} H_3O^+ + \underset{\text{base}}{A^-} \qquad K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[HA]}$$

par ácido-base conjugado

A la K_a se la conoce con el nombre de *constante de disociación del ácido* y su valor indica la fuerza relativa del ácido. Cuanto más fuerte es el ácido, más se disocia, dando un valor de K_a mayor. Las constantes de disociación de un ácido varían en un intervalo amplio. Los ácidos fuertes se ionizan casi completamente en agua y sus constantes de disociación son superiores a 1. La mayoría de los ácidos orgánicos son ácidos débiles, con valores de K_a menores que 10^{-4}. Muchos compuestos orgánicos son ácidos extremadamente débiles; por ejemplo, el metano y el etano tienen un carácter ácido muy débil, su K_a es inferior a 10^{-40}.

Debido a este amplio margen de valores, las constantes de disociación ácida frecuentemente se expresan en escala logarítmica. El pK_a de un ácido se define de forma parecida al pH: logaritmo (en base 10), con signo negativo, de la K_a.

$$pK_a = -\log_{10} K_a$$

PROBLEMA RESUELTO 1.3

Calcule la K_a y el pK_a del agua.

SOLUCIÓN

El equilibrio que define la K_a del agua es:

$$\underset{\text{ácido (HA)}}{H_2O} + \underset{\text{disolvente}}{H_2O} \overset{K_a}{\rightleftharpoons} H_3O^+ + \underset{\text{base conjugada }(A^-)}{OH^-}$$

El agua se comporta en esta disolución como ácido y como disolvente. La expresión del equilibrio es:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[HA]} = \frac{[H_3O^+][OH^-]}{[H_2O]}$$

Donde $[H_3O^+]$ [OH] $= 1.00 \times 10^{-14}$, constante del producto de ionización del agua.

La concentración de moléculas de H_2O en el agua simplemente es el número de moles de agua en 1 L (aproximadamente 1 kg).

$$\frac{1000 \text{ g/L}}{18 \text{ g/mol}} = 55.6 \text{ mol/L}$$

Haciendo la sustitución:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][OH^-]}{[H_2O]} = \frac{1.00 \times 10^{-14}}{55.6} = 1.8 \times 10^{-16} \text{ M}$$

El logaritmo de 1.8×10^{-16} es -15.7, por lo que el pK_a del agua es 15.7.

SUGERENCIA
PARA RESOLVER PROBLEMAS

En la mayor parte de los casos, el pK_a de un ácido coincide con el valor del pH de un ácido disociado en un 50%. A un pH menor (más ácido), el ácido estará menos disociado; a un pH mayor (más básico), el ácido estará más disociado.

Los ácidos fuertes generalmente tienen valores de pK_a próximos a 0 y los ácidos débiles, como la mayoría de los ácidos orgánicos, tienen valores superiores a 4. *Los ácidos más débiles tienen valores de pK_a más elevados*. La Tabla 1.5 recoge los valores de K_a y pK_a de algunos de los compuestos inorgánicos y orgánicos más habituales. Observa que los valores de pK_a aumentan cuando los valores de K_a disminuyen.

PROBLEMA 1.14

El amoniaco se encuentra en la Tabla 1.5 de dos formas, la forma básica y su ácido conjugado.

(a) Explique cómo el amoniaco puede actuar como base y como ácido. ¿Cuál de estas dos formas es más habitual en las soluciones acuosas?

(b) Explique por qué el agua puede actuar como ácido y como base.

(c) Explique por qué el metanol (CH_3OH) puede comportarse como ácido y como base. Escriba una ecuación para la reacción del metanol con el ácido sulfúrico.

1.13B Fuerza de las bases

La fuerza de un ácido es inversa a la fuerza de su base conjugada. Si un ácido (HA) es fuerte, su base conjugada (A^-) será débil, al ser estable en su forma aniónica; de lo contrario, el ácido HA no perdería fácilmente sus protones. Por lo tanto, la base conjugada de un ácido fuerte será una base débil. Por otra parte, si un ácido es débil, su conjugado es una base fuerte.

$$\underset{\text{ácido fuerte}}{HCl} + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + \underset{\text{base débil}}{Cl^-}$$

$$\underset{\text{ácido débil}}{CH_3{-}\ddot{\underset{..}{O}}H} + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + \underset{\text{base fuerte}}{CH_3\ddot{\underset{..}{O}}{:}^-}$$

En la reacción de un ácido con una base, el equilibrio generalmente está desplazado hacia la formación de los ácidos y bases *débiles*. Por ejemplo, en las reacciones anteriores, el H_3O^+ es un ácido más débil que el HCl, pero un ácido más fuerte que el CH_3OH; esto conlleva que el H_2O sea una base más fuerte que el Cl^-, pero más débil que el CH_3O^-.

TABLA 1.5 Fuerza relativa de algunos ácidos inorgánicos y orgánicos frecuentes, y sus bases conjugadas

	Ácido						Base conjugada		K_a	pK_a
más fuerte ácidos fuertes	HCl ácido clorhídrico	+	H_2O	$\rightleftharpoons$	H_3O^+	+	Cl^- ion cloruro	bases más débiles	1.6×10^2	-2.2
	HF ácido fluorhídrico	+	H_2O	$\rightleftharpoons$	H_3O^+	+	F^- ion fluoruro		6.8×10^{-4}	3.17
	$H{-}C({=}O){-}OH$ ácido fórmico	+	H_2O	$\rightleftharpoons$	H_3O^+	+	$H{-}C({=}O){-}O^-$ ion formiato		1.7×10^{-4}	3.76
	$CH_3{-}C({=}O){-}OH$ ácido acético	+	H_2O	$\rightleftharpoons$	H_3O^+	+	$CH_3{-}C({=}O){-}O^-$ acetano ion		1.8×10^{-5}	4.74
ácidos débiles	$H{-}C{\equiv}N{:}$ ácido cianhídrico	+	H_2O	$\rightleftharpoons$	H_3O^+	+	$^-{:}C{\equiv}N{:}$ ion cianuro		6.0×10^{-10}	9.22
	$^+NH_4$ ion amonio	+	H_2O	$\rightleftharpoons$	H_3O^+	+	$:NH_3$ amoniaco		5.8×10^{-10}	9.24
	$CH_3{-}OH$ alcohol metílico	+	H_2O	$\rightleftharpoons$	H_3O^+	+	CH_3O^- metóxido ion		3.2×10^{-16}	15.5
	H_2O agua	+	H_2O	$\rightleftharpoons$	H_3O^+	+	HO^- ion hidróxido		1.8×10^{-16}	15.7
muy débil	NH_3 amoniaco	+	H_2O	$\rightleftharpoons$	H_3O^+	+	$^-{:}\ddot{N}H_2$ ion amiduro		10^{-33}	33
no ácido más débil	CH_4 metano	+	H_2O	$\rightleftharpoons$	H_3O^+	+	$^-{:}CH_3$ anión metilo	bases más fuertes	$<10^{-40}$	>40

La fuerza de una base se mide de forma similar a la de los ácidos, usando la constante de equilibrio de la reacción de hidrólisis:

$$\underset{\text{base conjugada}}{A^-} + H_2O \overset{K_b}{\rightleftharpoons} \underset{\text{ácido conjugado}}{HA} + OH^-$$

La constante de equilibrio (K_b) para esta reacción se conoce con el nombre de *constante de disociación de la base* para la base A^-. Debido a que esta constante tiene un amplio rango de valores, frecuentemente se expresa en forma logarítmica. El pK_b se define como el logaritmo (en base 10), cambiado de signo, de la K_b.

$$K_b = \frac{[HA][OH^-]}{[A^-]} \qquad pK_b = -\log_{10} K_b$$

Cuando se multiplica K_a por K_b, se puede apreciar cómo la acidez de un ácido está relacionada con la basicidad de su base conjugada:

Las propiedades ácido-base de muchos productos naturales son importantes de cara a su aislamiento, a su distribución en el cuerpo y a justificar sus efectos terapéuticos. Por ejemplo, la morfina (p. 2), que se aísla de las adormideras (opio), llega al cerebro como base libre, en la que el nitrógeno no está cargado. Sin embargo, son sus especies cargadas las que actúan como analgésicas.

$$(K_a)(K_b) = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[HA]} \frac{[HA][OH^-]}{[A^-]} = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

constante del producto de ionización del agua

$$(K_a)(K_b) = 10^{-14}$$

Aplicando logaritmos:

$$pK_a + pK_b = -\log 10^{-14} = 14$$

El producto de K_a por K_b siempre es igual a la constante del producto iónico del agua, 10^{-14}. Si el valor de K_a es grande, el valor de K_b será pequeño; es decir, cuanto más fuerte es un ácido, más débil es su base conjugada. De forma similar, un valor pequeño de K_a (ácido débil) implica un valor grande de K_b (base fuerte).

Cuanto más fuerte es un ácido, más débil es su base conjugada.

Cuanto más débil es un ácido, más fuerte es su base conjugada.

Las reacciones ácido-base favorecen la formación de ácidos más débiles y/o bases más débiles.

SUGERENCIA
PARA RESOLVER PROBLEMAS

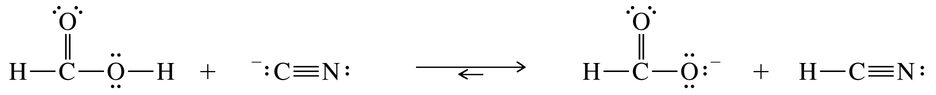
Un ácido donará un protón a la base conjugada de cualquier ácido que sea más débil (menor K_a o mayor pK_a).

PROBLEMA 1.15 (parcialmente resuelto)

Escriba las ecuaciones para las siguientes reacciones ácido-base. Utilice la información de la Tabla 1.5 para predecir si el equilibrio favorecerá a los reactivos o a los productos.

(a) $HCOOH + {}^-CN$ **(b)** $CH_3COO^- + CH_3OH$
(c) $CH_3OH + NaNH_2$ **(d)** $NaOCH_3 + HCN$
(e) $HCl + H_2O$ **(f)** $H_3O^+ + CH_3O^-$

Solución para (a): el ión cianuro es la base conjugada del HCN; puede aceptar un protón del ácido fórmico:



ácido fórmico (ácido fuerte) — ión cianuro (base fuerte) — ión formiato (base débil) — ácido cianhídrico (ácido débil)

Observando la Tabla 1.5, se aprecia que el ácido fórmico ($pK_a = 3.76$) es un ácido más fuerte que el HCN ($pK_a = 9.22$) y que el cianuro es una base más fuerte que el formiato. Resultan favorecidos, pues, los productos ácido y base más débiles.

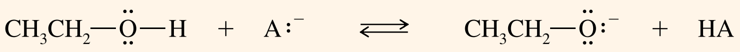
PROBLEMA RESUELTO 1.4

Cada uno de los compuestos siguientes puede actuar como un ácido. Escriba la reacción de cada compuesto con una base general (A^-) y la estructura de Lewis de la base conjugada que se obtiene.

(a) CH_3CH_2OH (b) CH_3NH_2 (c) CH_3COOH

SOLUCIÓN

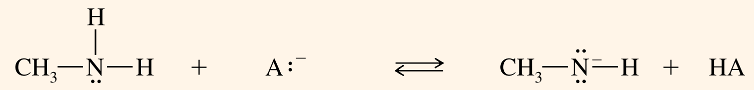
(a) El etanol (CH_3CH_2OH) puede perder el protón del grupo O—H para formar una base conjugada que es un ión orgánico análogo al ión hidroxilo.



etanol (ácido débil) — base — etóxido (base fuerte)

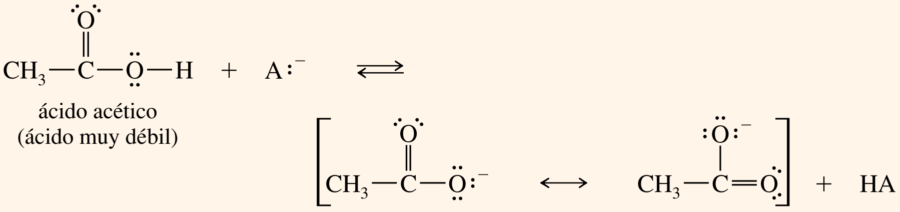
(Los protones del grupo C—H son mucho menos ácidos que los protones del grupo O—H, porque el carbono es menos electronegativo que el oxígeno y, por lo tanto, la carga negativa es menos estable en el carbono.)

(b) La metilamina (CH_3NH_2) es un ácido muy débil. Una base muy fuerte le puede sustraer un protón y dar lugar a una base conjugada fuerte.



metilamina (ácido muy débil) — base muy fuerte — (base fuerte)

(c) El ácido acético (CH_3COOH) es un ácido moderadamente fuerte. Su base conjugada es el ión acetato que está estabilizado por resonancia.



ácido acético (ácido muy débil)

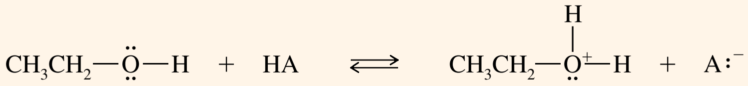
ión acetato (base moderada)

PROBLEMA RESUELTO 1.5

Cada uno de los compuestos del Problema resuelto 1.4 también pueden reaccionar como una base. Escriba la reacción de cada compuesto con un ácido general (HA) y las estructuras de Lewis del ácido conjugado que se obtiene.

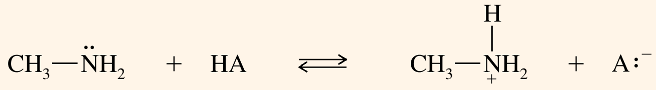
SOLUCIÓN

(a) El etanol puede protonarse en su átomo de oxígeno. Observe que uno de los pares solitarios del oxígeno forma el nuevo enlace O—H.



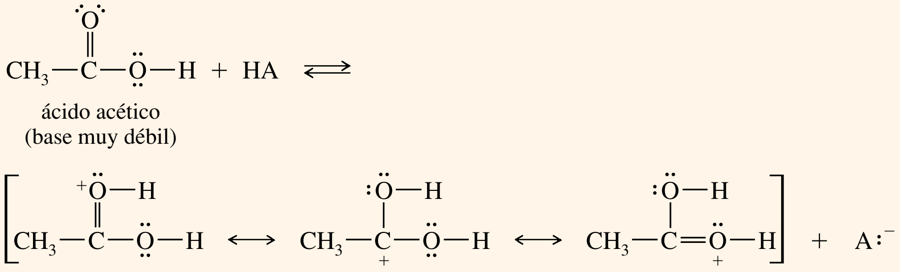
etanol (base débil) — ácido — (ácido fuerte)

(b) El átomo de nitrógeno de la metilamina tiene un par de electrones que pueden enlazarse con un protón.



metilamina (base moderada) — ácido — (ácido moderado)

(c) El ácido acético tiene electrones no enlazantes en los dos átomos de oxígeno. Cada uno de estos átomos de oxígeno podría protonarse, pero la protonación de oxígeno que forma parte del doble enlace está favorecida porque la protonación de este oxígeno da lugar a un ácido conjugado simétrico y estabilizado por resonancia.



ácido acético (base muy débil)

ácido conjugado del ácido acético (ácido muy fuerte)

PROBLEMA 1.16

El Problema resuelto 1.5(c) muestra la protonación del oxígeno con doble enlace del ácido acético. Escriba el producto obtenido de la protonación en el otro oxígeno (—OH). Explique por qué la protonación del oxígeno con doble enlace está favorecida.

PROBLEMA 1.17

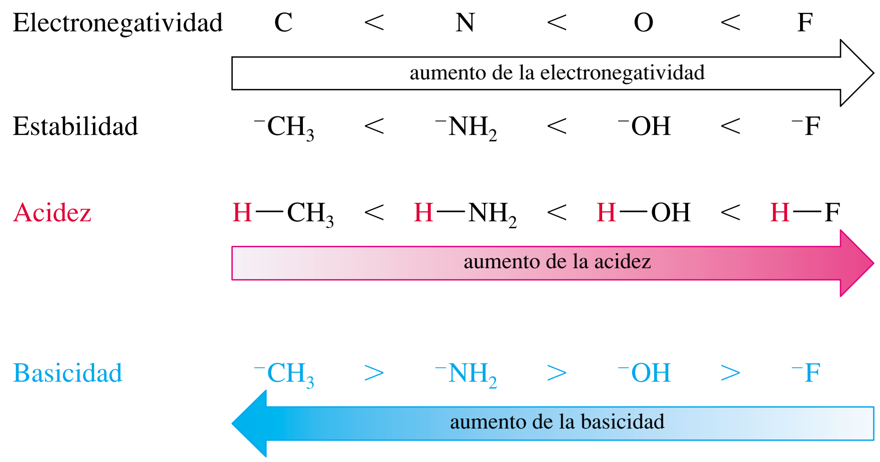
(a) Ordene por orden decreciente de acidez el etanol, la metilamina y el ácido acético.
(b) Ordene por orden decreciente de basicidad el etanol, la metilamina (pK_b = 3.36) y el ión etóxido ($CH_3CH_2O^-$). En cada caso, explique las razones de este orden.

1.13C Efectos estructurales en la acidez

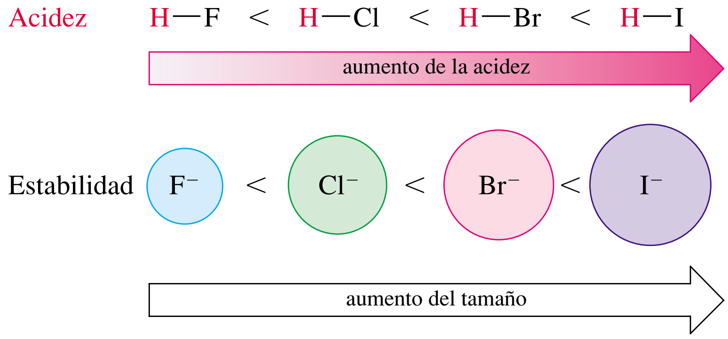
Cuando se observa una estructura, ¿cómo se puede predecir si el compuesto será un ácido fuerte o débil, o bien si no tendrá nada de carácter ácido? Según la teoría de Brönsted-Lowry, un ácido (HA) es un compuesto que ha de contener un átomo de hidrógeno que puede ser cedido como un protón. Un ácido fuerte debe formar una base conjugada estable ($A:^-$) después de perder el protón.

La estabilidad de la base conjugada es una buena guía para conocer la fuerza del ácido. Los aniones más estables tienden a ser bases más débiles y sus ácidos conjugados tienden a ser ácidos más fuertes. Algunos de los factores que afectan a la estabilidad de las bases conjugadas son la electronegatividad, el tamaño y la resonancia.

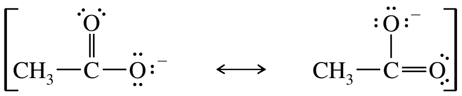
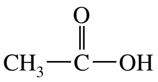
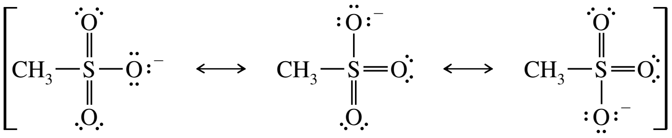
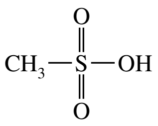
Electronegatividad Cuanto más electronegativo sea un elemento, será capaz de adquirir una carga negativa con más facilidad, lo que dará lugar a una base conjugada más estable y a un ácido fuerte. La electronegatividad aumenta de izquierda a derecha en la tabla periódica.



Tamaño La carga negativa de un anión es más estable cuando se distribuye sobre una región del espacio más amplia. Si se considera una columna de la tabla periódica, la acidez aumenta hacia abajo, a medida que el tamaño de los elementos aumenta.



Estabilización por resonancia La carga negativa de una base conjugada puede estar deslocalizada entre dos o más átomos, y estabilizada por resonancia. Dependiendo de la electronegatividad que tengan esos átomos y de cómo se comparta esa carga, la deslocalización por resonancia con frecuencia es el efecto dominante que ayuda a la estabilización del anión. Observe las bases conjugadas siguientes:

Base conjugada	Ácido	pK_a
$CH_3CH_2—\ddot{\underset{..}{O}}:^-$ ión etóxido	$CH_3CH_2—OH$ etanol	15.9 (ácido débil)
 ión acetato	 ácido acético	4.74 (ácido moderado)
 ión metanosulfonato	 ácido metanosulfónico	−1.2 (ácido fuerte)

El ión etóxido es el más fuerte de las tres bases anteriores. El etóxido tiene una carga negativa localizada en un átomo de oxígeno; el ión acetato tiene una carga negativa compartida por dos átomos de oxígeno y el ión metanosulfonato tiene una carga negativa extendida sobre tres átomos de oxígeno. Los valores de los pK_a de los ácidos conjugados de esos aniones muestran que los ácidos son más fuertes si su desprotonación da lugar a bases conjugadas estabilizadas por resonancia.

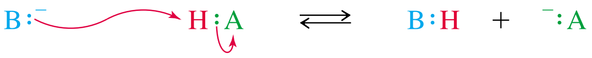
PROBLEMA 1.18

Escriba las ecuaciones correspondientes a las reacciones ácido-base siguientes. Señale los ácidos y bases conjugados y justifique, si es el caso, su estabilización por resonancia escribiendo las posibles formas resonantes. Prediga si el equilibrio está desplazado hacia los reactivos o hacia los productos.

(a) $CH_3CH_2OH + CH_3NH^-$ **(b)** $CH_3CH_2COOH + CH_3NHCH_3$
(c) $CH_3OH + H_2SO_4$ **(d)** $NaOH + H_2S$
(e) $CH_3NH_3^+ + CH_3O^-$ **(f)** $CH_3O^- + CH_3COOH$
(g) $CH_3SO_3^- + CH_3COOH$

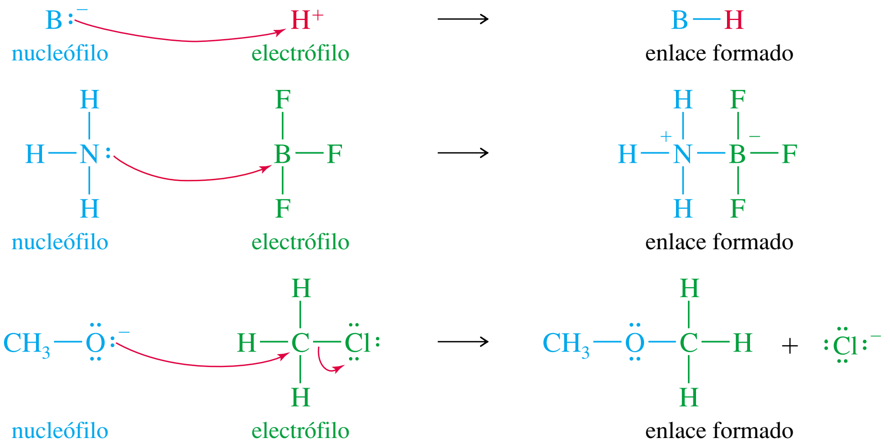
1.14 Ácidos y bases de Lewis

La definición de Brönsted-Lowry de ácidos y bases depende de la transferencia de un protón del ácido a la base. La base utiliza un par de electrones no enlazantes para formar un enlace con el protón. G. N. Lewis pensó que esta clase de reacciones no necesitaba obligatoriamente un protón para tener lugar. Una base podría usar su par solitario de electrones para enlazarse a algún otro átomo deficiente en electrones. En efecto, puede haber reacciones ácido-base desde el punto de vista de los *enlaces* que se forman y rompen, sin necesidad de que se transfiera un protón. La siguiente reacción muestra la transferencia del protón haciendo hincapié en los enlaces que se forman y que se rompen. Los químicos orgánicos utilizan de forma rutinaria flechas curvadas para mostrar el movimiento de los electrones que participan,



Las **bases de Lewis** son especies con electrones no enlazantes que pueden ser cedidos para formar nuevos enlaces. Los **ácidos de Lewis** son especies que pueden aceptar esos pares de electrones para formar nuevos enlaces. Debido a que un ácido de Lewis *acepta* un par de electrones, se le conoce como **electrófilo**, palabra derivada del griego, que significa «amante de electrones». A la base de Lewis se le llama **nucleófilo**, o «amante de los núcleos», ya que cede electrones a un núcleo que tenga un orbital vacío (o prácticamente vacío). En este libro, a veces se usan caracteres coloreados para enfatizar: azul para los nucleófilos, verde para los electrófilos y ocasionalmente rojo para los protones ácidos.

Las definiciones ácido-base de Lewis incluyen reacciones que no tienen ninguna relación con los protones. A continuación se muestran algunos ejemplos de reacciones ácido-base de Lewis. Observe que los ácidos y las bases de Brönsted-Lowry también están incluidos dentro de la definición de Lewis, siendo el protón un electrófilo. Las flechas curvadas (rojas) se usan para mostrar el movimiento de los electrones, generalmente desde el nucleófilo al electrófilo.

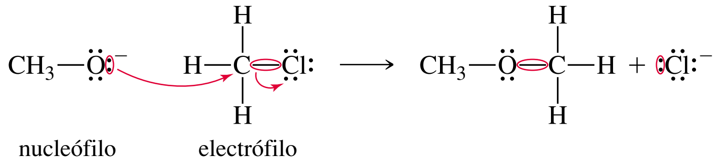


Algunos de los términos asociados con los ácidos y bases poseen significados específicos en química orgánica. Cuando un químico orgánico utiliza el término *base*, normalmente quiere decir «aceptor de protones» (una base de Brönsted-Lowry). De manera similar, el término *ácido* normalmente implica a un protón ácido (un ácido de Brönsted-Lowry). Cuando una reacción ácido-base implica la formación de un enlace con otro elemento (especialmente carbono), un químico orgánico denomina al donador de electrones *nucleófilo* (base de Lewis) y al aceptor de electrones, *electrófilo* (ácido de Lewis).

Las **flechas curvadas** se utilizan para mostrar el movimiento de un par de electrones *desde el donador de electrones al aceptor de electrones*. El movimiento de cada par de electrones implicado en formar o romper enlaces se indica por sus propias flechas separadas, como se muestra en las reacciones anteriores. En este libro, estas flechas curvadas se dibujan siempre en rojo. En la reacción anterior del CH_3O^- con CH_3Cl, una flecha curvada muestra el par solitario del oxígeno formando un enlace con el carbono; otra flecha curvada muestra que el par enlazante del C—Cl se separa del átomo de carbono y se transforma en un par solitario formando el ión Cl^-.

SUGERENCIA
PARA RESOLVER PROBLEMAS

Utilice una flecha curvada para cada par de electrones que participen en la reacción.



La flecha curvada se usa universalmente para seguir el camino del movimiento de los electrones en las reacciones; en este libro también se ha utilizado (en la Sección 1.9, por ejemplo) para seguir el movimiento de los electrones en las estructuras de resonancia, con objeto de representar el supuesto «flujo electrónico» cuando se pasaba de una estructura de resonancia a otra. Recuerde que los electrones no «fluyen» en las estructuras de resonancia, simplemente están deslocalizados. Este formalismo de las flechas nos ayuda, sin embargo, a comprender la interconversión entre las formas resonantes. Estas flechas curvadas se usan constantemente para seguir el camino de los electrones, tanto en el cambio de reactivos a productos como cuando imaginamos nuevas estructuras resonantes adicionales de un híbrido de resonancia.

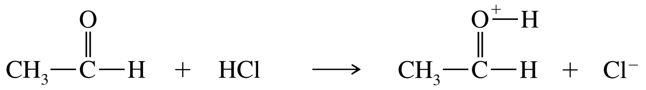
PROBLEMA 1.19 (parcialmente resuelto)

En las siguientes reacciones ácido-base:

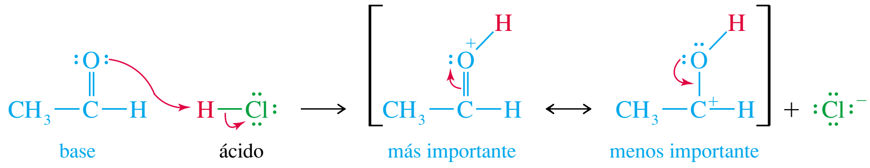
(1) Determine qué especies actúan como ácidos y cuáles como bases.

(2) Utilice las flechas curvadas para mostrar el movimiento de los pares de electrones de las reacciones, así como el movimiento imaginario de electrones en los híbridos de resonancia de los productos.

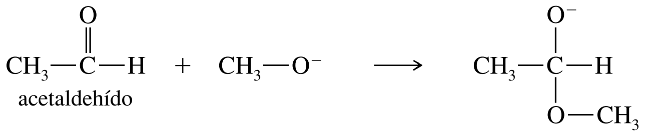
(3) Indique qué reacciones son las más apropiadas para poderlas incluir dentro de las reacciones ácido-base de Brönsted-Lowry.

(a) 

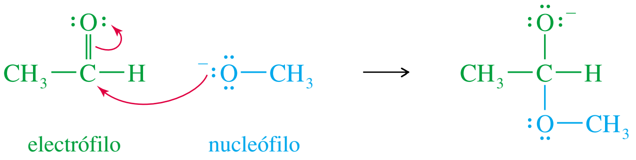
En esta reacción hay transferencia del protón del HCl al grupo C═O del acetaldehído, por tanto, es una reacción ácido-base de Brönsted-Lowry, donde el HCl actúa como ácido (donador de protones) y el acetaldehído actúa como base (aceptor de protones). Antes de dibujar una flecha curvada, recuerde que las flechas deben mostrar el movimiento de los electrones *desde* el donador del par de electrones (la base) *hasta* el aceptor del par de electrones (el ácido). Una flecha debe ir *desde* los electrones no enlazantes del acetaldehído *hasta* el átomo de hidrógeno del HCl y el enlace del ácido clorhídrico se ha de romper, con la formación del ión cloruro que ha captado los electrones del enlace H—Cl. Dibujar las flechas es fácil después de haber representado correctamente estructuras de Lewis de todos los reactivos y productos.



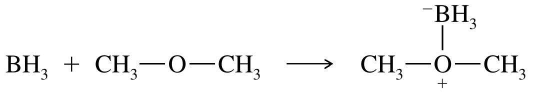
Las formas de resonancia del producto muestran que un par de electrones puede moverse entre el átomo de oxígeno y el enlace pi del C═O. La carga positiva está deslocalizada sobre los átomos de carbono y de oxígeno, con la mayor parte de la carga positiva sobre el oxígeno, ya que todos los octetos están completos en esa estructura de resonancia.

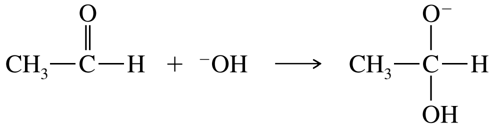
(b) 

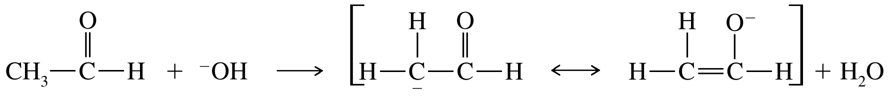
En este caso, ningún protón se ha transferido, por lo que no es una reacción ácido-base de Brönsted-Lowry. En su lugar, se ha formado un enlace entre el átomo de carbono del grupo C═O y el átomo de oxígeno del grupo CH_3—O^-. Dibujar las estructuras de Lewis ayuda a ver que el grupo CH_3—O^- (el nucleófilo en esta reacción) cede los electrones para formar el nuevo enlace con el acetaldehído (el electrófilo). Este resultado concuerda con la intuición de que un ión cargado negativamente es probablemente rico en electrones y por tanto un donador de electrones.



Observe que el acetaldehído actúa como nucleófilo (base) en (a) y como electrófilo en (b). Como la mayoría de los compuestos orgánicos, el acetaldehído puede ser tanto un ácido como una base. Actúa como una base si se le añade un ácido lo suficientemente fuerte para que ceda un par electrones o capte un protón.

(c) 

(d) 

(e) 

(f) $CH_3—NH_2 + CH_3—Cl \longrightarrow CH_3—\overset{+}{N}H_2—CH_3 + Cl^-$

SUGERENCIA
PARA RESOLVER PROBLEMAS

Las flechas curvadas se utilizan en los mecanismos para mostrar el *flujo de electrones* y no el movimiento de los átomos. Estas flechas curvadas se usarán constantemente a lo largo de este curso.

Glosario del Capítulo 1

Cada capítulo finaliza con un glosario que recoge los términos nuevos más importantes del capítulo. Estos glosarios son más que un diccionario en el que se buscan términos desconocidos conforme se los vaya encontrando (el índice sirve para este propósito). El glosario es una de las herramientas para revisar el capítulo, se puede leer cuidadosamente para saber si se entienden y se recuerdan todos los términos químicos mencionados. Cualquier concepto que no resulte familiar debería ser revisado volviendo a la página que aparece numerada en el mismo.

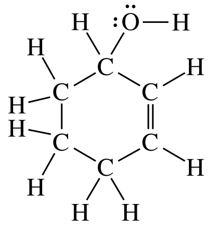
Ácido conjugado El ácido que resulta de la protonación de una base. (p. 23)
Ácido de Lewis, base de Lewis. *Véase* **ácidos** y **bases**.
Ácidos y **bases** (pp. 21-31)

(definiciones de **Arrhenius**)	**Ácido:** se disocia en agua par dar H_3O^+.
	Base: se disocia en agua para dar OH^-.
(definiciones de **Brönsted-Lowry**)	**Ácido:** donador de protones.
	Base: aceptor de protones.
(definiciones de **Lewis**)	**Ácido:** aceptor de un par de electrones (electrófilo).
	Base: donador de un par de electrones (nucleófilo).

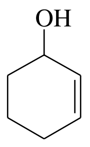
Base conjugada La base que resulta de la pérdida de un protón de un ácido. (p. 23)
Cargas formales Método para hacer un seguimiento de las cargas, el cual permite mostrar qué carga habría en una determinada estructura de Lewis. (p. 11)
Densidad electrónica Probabilidad relativa de encontrar un electrón en una cierta región del espacio. (p. 3)
Electrófilo Aceptor de un par de electrones. (p. 29)
Electronegatividad Medida de la capacidad de un elemento para atraer electrones. Los elementos con electronegatividades más altas atraen a los electrones con más fuerza. (p. 10)
Electrones de valencia Electrones que se encuentran en la capa externa más alejada del núcleo. (p. 6)
Electrones no enlazantes Electrones de valencia que no se utilizan en el enlace. A un par de electrones no enlazantes con frecuencia se le denomina **par solitario**. (p. 7)
Enlace covalente Enlace que se forma por la compartición de electrones en la región que hay entre dos núcleos. (p. 7)

Enlace sencillo: enlace covalente en el que se comparte un par de electrones. (p. 8)
Enlace doble: enlace covalente en el que se comparte dos pares de electrones. (p. 8)
Enlace triple: enlace covalente en el que se comparte tres pares de electrones. (p. 8)

Enlace covalente polar Enlace covalente en el que los electrones se comparten de forma desigual. Cuando los electrones están igualmente compartidos se llama **enlace covalente no polar**. (p. 9)
Enlace iónico Enlace que se produce por la atracción de iones que tienen carga opuesta. El enlace iónico normalmente da lugar a la formación de una gran estructura cristalina en tres dimensiones. (p. 7)
Estructura de Lewis Fórmula estructural que muestra todos los electrones de valencia, con los enlaces simbolizados por líneas (—) o por pares de puntos, y los electrones no enlazantes simbolizados por puntos. (p. 7)



estructura de Lewis del 2-ciclohexenol



2-ciclohexenol
fórmula lineoangular equivalente

Flechas curvadas El dibujar flechas curvadas es un método que se utiliza para seguir el camino de los electrones cuando se mueven desde el nucleófilo al electrófilo (o dentro de una molécula) durante el transcurso de una reacción. (p. 30)
Fórmula empírica Relación numérica de los átomos en un compuesto. (p. 20). *Véase* también **fórmula molecular.**
Fórmula lineoangular (estructura esquelética o de barras) Fórmula estructural con enlaces representados por líneas; los átomos de carbono son los puntos de encuentro entre dos líneas o el final de la línea cuando está en el extremo de la cadena. Los átomos de nitrógeno, de oxígeno y los halógenos se representan, pero los átomos de hidrógeno no. Se supone que cada átomo de carbono tiene los hidrógenos suficientes para que en total tenga cuatro enlaces. (p. 19)

Fórmula molecular Número de átomos de cada elemento que forman parte de una molécula de un compuesto. La **fórmula empírica** simplemente da la relación de los átomos de los diferentes elementos. Por ejemplo, la fórmula molecular de la glucosa es $C_6H_{12}O_6$; su fórmula empírica es CH_2O. Ni la fórmula empírica ni la fórmula molecular dan información estructural. (p. 4)

Fórmulas estructurales Una **fórmula estructural completa** (tal como una estructura de Lewis) muestra todos los átomos y enlaces en la molécula. Una **fórmula estructural condensada** muestra cada átomo central y los átomos con los que está enlazado. Una **fórmula lineoangular** supone que hay un átomo de carbono donde dos líneas se encuentren, o donde la línea comience o termine. Véanse los ejemplos de la Sección 1.10. (p. 17)

Híbrido de resonancia Molécula o ión para el cual se pueden representar dos o más estructuras de Lewis válidas, diferenciándose solamente en la posición de los electrones de valencia. Estas estructuras de Lewis se conocen como **formas de resonancia** o **estructuras de resonancia**. Las formas de resonancia individuales no existen, pero se puede estimar sus energías relativas. A las estructuras más importantes (de energía más baja) se las conoce como **contribuyentes mayores**, y a las estructuras menos importantes (energía más alta), como **contribuyentes menores**. Cuando una carga se reparte entre dos o más átomos por resonancia, se dice que está **deslocalizada** y que la molécula está **estabilizada por resonancia**. (pp. 13-16)

Isótopos Átomos con el mismo número de protones pero diferente número de neutrones. Átomos del mismo elemento pero con diferentes masas atómicas. (p. 3)

Mapa de potencial electrostático (MPE) Representación molecular calculada por computador que utiliza colores para mostrar la distribución de carga en una molécula. En la mayoría de los casos, el MPE utiliza el color rojo para indicar las regiones ricas en electrones (potencial electrostático más negativo) y azul para indicar las regiones pobres en electrones (potencial electrostático más positivo). Los colores intermedios naranja, amarillo y verde indican regiones con potenciales electrostáticos intermedios. (p. 10)

Momento dipolar (μ) Medida de la polaridad de un enlace (o una molécula), proporcional al producto de la separación de cargas por la longitud de enlace. (p. 10)

Nodo Región de un orbital con densidad electrónica cero. (p. 4)

Nucleófilo Donador de par de electrones (base de Lewis). (p. 29)

Orbital Estado de energía permitida para un electrón que rodea a un núcleo; función de probabilidad que define la distribución de la densidad electrónica en el espacio. El *principio de exclusión de Pauli* afirma que un orbital sólo puede ser ocupado por dos electrones, como máximo, si los espines de éstos están apareados. (p. 3)

Orbitales degenerados Orbitales con energías idénticas. (p. 4)

Par solitario Par de electrones no enlazantes. (p. 7)

pH Medida de la acidez de una solución, definido como el logaritmo (en base 10), cambiado de signo, de la concentración de H_3O^+. $pH = -\log_{10}[H_3O^+]$. (p. 22)

Plano nodal Región plana (plano) del espacio con densidad electrónica cero. (p. 4)

Química orgánica Definición nueva: química de los compuestos de carbono. Definición antigua: estudio de los compuestos derivados de los organismos vivos y sus productos naturales. (p. 1)

Regla de Hund Cuando hay dos orbitales o más con la misma energía (orbitales degenerados) vacíos, la configuración de energía más baja se consigue colocando los electrones en orbitales diferentes (con espines paralelos), mejor que colocándolos apareados en el mismo orbital. (p. 6)

Regla del octeto Los átomos generalmente se enlazan para que sus capas de valencia se completen con electrones (configuración de gas noble). Para los elementos de la segunda fila de la tabla periódica, esta configuración tiene ocho electrones de valencia. (p. 6)

Valencia Número de enlaces que normalmente forma un átomo. (p. 9)

Vitalismo Creencia en que la síntesis de compuestos orgánicos requiere la presencia de una «fuerza vital». (p. 1)

Pautas esenciales para resolver los problemas del Capítulo 1

1. Escribir e interpretar las fórmulas estructurales de Lewis, condensadas y lineoangulares. Indicar qué átomos tienen cargas formales.
2. Escribir formas de resonancia y usarlas para predecir la estabilidad.
3. Calcular fórmulas empíricas y moleculares de composiciones elementales.
4. Predecir la acidez y la basicidad relativa basada en la estructura, en el enlace y en la resonancia de los pares ácido-base conjugados.
5. Calcular, usar e interpretar los valores de K_a y pK_a.
6. Identificar nucleófilos (bases de Lewis) y electrófilos (ácidos de Lewis) y escribir ecuaciones de reacciones ácido-base de Lewis utilizando flechas curvadas para mostrar el flujo de los electrones.

Problemas

Es fácil engañarse a uno mismo pensando que se entiende la química orgánica cuando realmente no se entiende. Según se van leyendo a lo largo de este libro, todos los conceptos y las ideas pueden tener sentido, pero todavía no se ha aprendido a combinar y a usar esos conceptos e ideas. Un examen es un trance duro para darse cuenta de que realmente no se han entendido los contenidos.

La mejor forma de aprender química orgánica es aplicarla. Por supuesto se necesita leer y releer todo el material del capítulo, pero este nivel de entendimiento es justamente el comienzo. Se proponen problemas para poder trabajar con las ideas, aplicándolas a nuevos compuestos y reacciones que no se han visto con anterioridad. Al resolver problemas, uno se ve obligado a utilizar los conceptos y a entender lo que antes no se había comprendido, también se aumenta el nivel de autoestima y de habilidad para realizar los exámenes.

En cada capítulo se incluyen varias clases de problemas. Hay problemas dentro de los capítulos, que se introducen como ejemplos y explican cómo se han de resolver. Se ha de realizar ese tipo de problemas según se vaya leyendo el capítulo para asegurarse de que se han entendido los conceptos. Las soluciones de muchos de estos problemas se encuentran al final de libro. Los Problemas del final de cada capítulo proporcionan una experiencia adicional en el uso de los conceptos y obligan a pensar con detenimiento sobre las ideas expuestas en el texto. Para algunos de estos problemas se incluyen soluciones breves al final del libro, sin embargo, se pueden encontrar soluciones más detalladas de los mismos en el *Manual de Soluciones*.

Estudiar química orgánica sin resolver problemas es como lanzarse al aire sin paracaídas. Al principio parece divertido, pero después puede resultar duro para aquellos que carezcan de preparación.

1.20 Defina y ponga un ejemplo para cada término:
(a) isótopos **(b)** orbital **(c)** nodo
(d) orbitales degenerados **(e)** electrones de valencia **(f)** enlace iónico
(g) enlace covalente **(h)** estructura de Lewis **(i)** electrones no enlazantes
(j) enlace sencillo **(k)** enlace doble **(l)** enlace triple
(m) enlace polar **(n)** cargas formales **(o)** formas de resonancia
(p) fórmula molecular **(q)** fórmula empírica **(r)** ácido y base de Arrhenius
(s) ácido y base de Brönsted-Lowry **(t)** ácido y base de Lewis **(u)** electrófilo
(v) nucleófilo

1.21 Nombre el elemento que corresponda a cada configuración electrónica.
(a) $1s^2\,2s^2\,2p^2$ **(b)** $1s^2\,2s^2\,2p^4$ **(c)** $1s^2\,2s^2\,2p^6\,3s^2\,3p^3$ **(d)** $1s^2\,2s^2\,2p^6\,3s^2\,3p^5$

1.22 Hay una pequeña sección de la tabla periódica que se debe conocer en química orgánica. Escriba de memoria esta parte, realizando los siguientes pasos:
(a) Haga una lista, de memoria, de los elementos de las dos primeras filas de la tabla periódica, junto con su número de electrones de valencia.
(b) Use esta lista para construir las dos primeras filas de la tabla periódica.
(c) Los compuestos orgánicos a veces contienen azufre, fósforo, cloro, bromo y yodo. Añada estos elementos a la tabla periódica.

1.23 Para cada compuesto, diga si el enlace es covalente, iónico, o intermedio entre covalente e iónico.
(a) NaCl **(b)** NaOH **(c)** CH_3Li **(d)** CH_2Cl_2 **(e)** $NaOCH_3$ **(f)** HCO_2Na **(g)** CF_4

1.24 **(a)** El PCl_3 y el PCl_5 son compuestos estables. Escriba la estructura de Lewis para los dos compuestos.
(b) El NCl_3 es un compuesto conocido, pero todos los intentos de sintetizar el NCl_5 han fracasado. Escriba las estructuras de Lewis para el NCl_3 y una hipotética para el NCl_5, y explique por qué el NCl_5 es una estructura improbable.

1.25 Escriba una estructura de Lewis para cada una de las especies.
(a) N_2H_4 **(b)** N_2H_2 **(c)** $(CH_3)_4NCl$ **(d)** CH_3CN **(e)** CH_3CHO **(f)** $CH_3S(O)CH_3$
(g) H_2SO_4 **(h)** CH_3NCO **(i)** $CH_3OSO_2OCH_3$ **(j)** $CH_3C(NH)CH_3$ **(k)** $(CH_3)_3CNO$

1.26 Escriba una estructura de Lewis para cada compuesto. Incluya todos los pares de electrones no enlazantes.
(a) $CH_3CHCHCH_2CHCHCOOH$ **(b)** $NCCH_2COCH_2CHO$
(c) $CH_2CHCH(OH)CH_2CO_2H$ **(d)** $CH_3CH(CH_3)CH_2C(CH_2CH_3)_2CHO$

1.27 Escriba la fórmula lineoangular de todos los compuestos del Problema 1.26.

1.28 Escriba las estructuras de Lewis para:
(a) dos compuestos de fórmula C_4H_{10} **(b)** dos compuestos de fórmula C_2H_7N
(c) dos compuestos de fórmula $C_3H_8O_2$ **(d)** dos compuestos de fórmula C_2H_4O

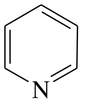
1.29 Represente una fórmula estructural completa y una fórmula estructural condensada para:
(a) tres compuestos de fórmula C_3H_8O **(b)** cinco compuestos de fórmula C_3H_6O

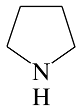
1.30 Alguna de las siguientes fórmulas moleculares corresponde a compuestos estables. Represente, cuando sea posible, una estructura estable para cada fórmula.

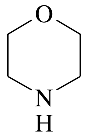
CH_2 CH_3 CH_4 CH_5
C_2H_2 C_2H_3 C_2H_4 C_2H_5 C_2H_6 C_2H_7
C_3H_3 C_3H_4 C_3H_5 C_3H_6 C_3H_7 C_3H_8 C_3H_9

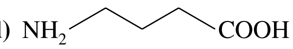
Proponga una regla general que dé el número de átomos de hidrógeno en los hidrocarburos estables.

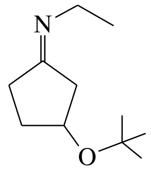
1.31 Representa estructuras de Lewis completas, incluyendo pares solitarios, para los siguientes compuestos:

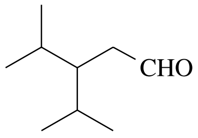
(a) 
piridina

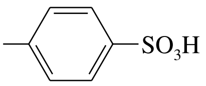
(b) 
pirrolidina

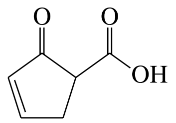
(c) 
morfina

(d) 
ácido γ-aminobutírico
(neurotransmisor)

(e) 

(f) 

(g) 

(h) 

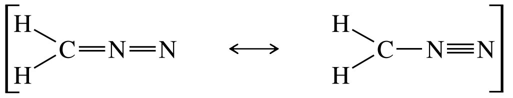
1.32 Escriba la fórmula molecular de todos los compuestos del Problema 1.31.

1.33 Un compuesto X, aislado de la lanolina (grasa de la lana de oveja), tiene un fuerte aroma a calcetines sucios sudados. Un análisis cuidadoso mostró que el compuesto X contenía un 62.0% de carbono y un 10.4% de hidrógeno. No se encontró nitrógeno ni halógenos.

(a) Escriba la fórmula empírica del compuesto X.
(b) La determinación del peso molecular mostró que el compuesto X tenía un peso molecular aproximadamente igual a 117; encuentre la fórmula molecular del compuesto X.
(c) Hay muchas estructuras posibles que tienen esa fórmula molecular. Represente las fórmulas estructurales completas de cuatro de ellas.

1.34 Para cada una de las siguientes estructuras:

(1) Represente una estructura de Lewis, poniendo también los electrones no enlazantes.
(2) Calcule la carga formal de todos los átomos excepto del hidrógeno. Todos son eléctricamente neutros excepto aquellos en los que se indica su carga.

(a) 

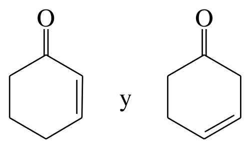
(b) $(CH_3)_3NO$
(óxido de trimetilamina)

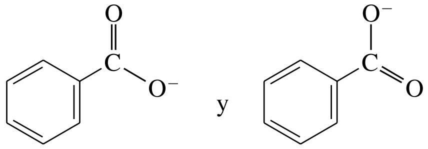
(c) $[CH_2{=}CH{-}CH_2]^+$ **(d)** CH_3NO_2 **(e)** $[(CH_3)_3O]^+$

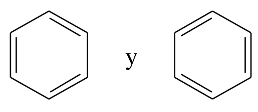
1.35 (1) Teniendo en cuenta la electronegatividad, establezca la dirección de los momentos dipolares de los siguientes enlaces.
(2) En cada caso, prediga si el momento dipolar es relativamente grande o pequeño.

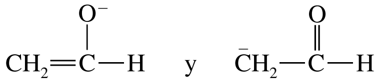
(a) C—Cl **(b)** C—H **(c)** C—Li **(d)** C—N **(e)** C—O
(f) C—B **(g)** C—Mg **(h)** N—H **(i)** O—H **(j)** C—Br

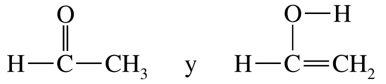
1.36 Determine si los siguientes pares de estructuras son diferentes compuestos o solamente formas de resonancia del mismo compuesto.

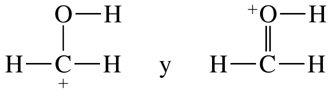
(a) 

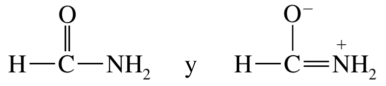
(b) 

(c) 

(d) 

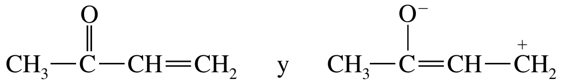
(e) 

(f) 

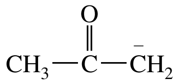
(g) 

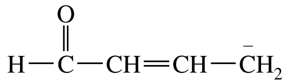
(h) $CH_2{=}C{=}O$ y $H{-}C{\equiv}C{-}OH$

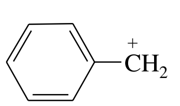
(i) $CH_2{=}CH{-}\overset{+}{C}H_2$ y $\overset{+}{C}H_2{-}CH{=}CH_2$

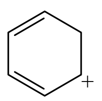
(j) 

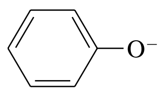
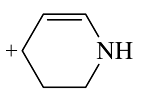
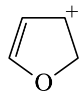
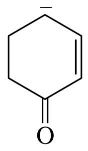
1.37 Represente las formas de resonancia importantes para mostrar la deslocalización de cargas en los iones siguientes:

(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

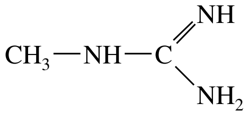
(d) 

(e)  **(f)**  **(g)**  **(h)** 

(i) $CH_3-CH=CH-CH=CH-\overset{+}{C}H-CH_3$ **(j)** $CH_3-CH=CH-CH=CH-CH_2-\overset{+}{C}H_2$

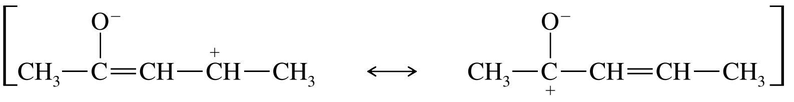
1.38 **(a)** Represente las formas de resonancia para el SO_2 (conectividad O—S—O).
(b) Represente las formas de resonancia para el ozono (conectividad O—O—O).
(c) El dióxido de azufre tiene una forma de resonancia más que el ozono, explique por qué esa estructura no es posible para el ozono.

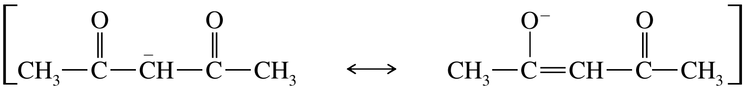
*1.39 El compuesto siguiente puede protonarse en cualquiera de los átomos de nitrógeno, no obstante, uno de esos nitrógenos es mucho más básico que los otros.
(a) Represente las formas de resonancia importantes de los productos de protonación de cada uno de los tres átomos de nitrógeno.
(b) Determine qué átomo de nitrógeno es el más básico.



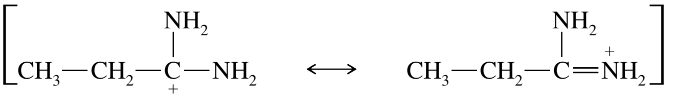
1.40 En los siguientes apartados de formas de resonancia, señale los contribuyentes mayor y menor, y diga qué estructuras tienen la misma energía. Si falta alguna forma de resonancia, añádala.

(a) $[CH_3-\overset{-}{\ddot{C}}H-C\equiv N: \longleftrightarrow CH_3-CH=C=\ddot{N}:^-]$

(b) 

(c) 

(d) $[CH_3-\overset{-}{C}H-CH=CH-NO_2 \longleftrightarrow CH_3-CH=CH-\overset{-}{C}H-NO_2]$

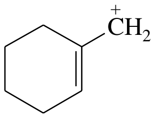
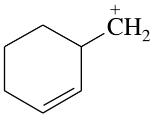
(e) 

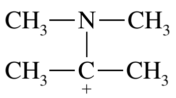
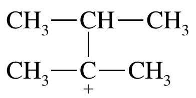
1.41 Para cada par de iones, determine cuál es más estable. Use formas de resonancia para explicar las respuestas.

(a) $CH_3-\overset{+}{C}H-CH_3$ o $CH_3-\overset{+}{C}H-OCH_3$

(b) $CH_2=CH-\overset{+}{C}H-CH_3$ o $CH_2=CH-CH_2-\overset{+}{C}H_2$

(c) $\overset{-}{C}H_2-CH_3$ o $\overset{-}{C}H_2-C\equiv N:$

(d)  o 

(e)  o 

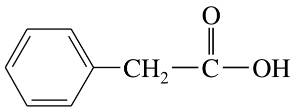
1.42 Ordene las siguientes especies por orden creciente de acidez, explicando las razones de este ordenamiento.

NH_3 H_2SO_4 CH_3OH CH_3COOH

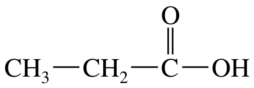
1.43 Ordene las siguientes especies por orden creciente de basicidad, explicando las razones de este ordenamiento.

CH_3O^- CH_3COOH CH_3COO^- NaOH NH_2^- HSO_4^-

1.44 La K_a del ácido fenilacético es 5.2×10^{-5} y el pK_a del ácido propiónico es 4.87.



ácido fenilacético, $K_a = 5.2 \times 10^{-5}$

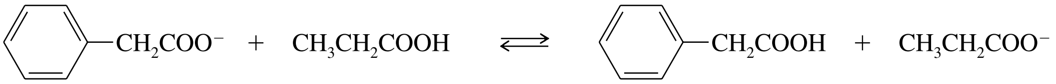


ácido propiónico, pK_a = 4.87

(a) Calcule el pK_a del ácido fenilacético y la K_a del ácido propiónico.

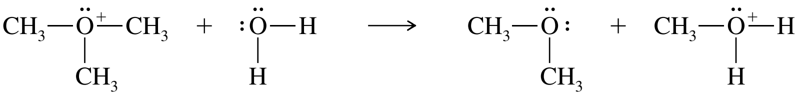
(b) ¿Cuál de los dos ácidos es el más fuerte? Calcule cuánto más fuerte es uno que otro.

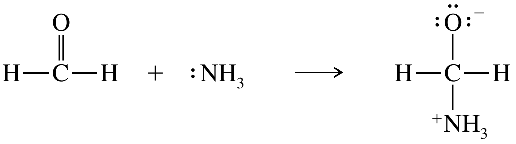
(c) Prediga si el siguiente equilibrio favorecerá a los reactivos o a los productos.



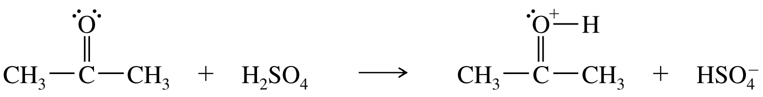
1.45 En las siguientes reacciones ácido-base clasifique los reactivos como ácidos de Lewis (electrófilos) o bases de Lewis (nucleófilos). Utilice flechas curvadas para indicar el movimiento de los pares de electrones en las reacciones.

(a) $CH_3\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{O}}\!:^- \;+\; CH_3{-}\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{Cl}}\!: \;\longrightarrow\; CH_3{-}\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{O}}{-}CH_3 \;+\; :\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{Cl}}\!:^-$

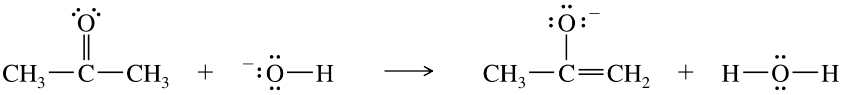
(b) 

(c) 

(d) $CH_3{-}\ddot{N}H_2 \;+\; CH_3{-}CH_2{-}\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{Cl}}\!: \;\longrightarrow\; CH_3{-}\overset{+}{N}H_2{-}CH_2CH_3 \;+\; :\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{Cl}}\!:^-$

(e) 

(f) $(CH_3)_3CCl \;+\; AlCl_3 \;\longrightarrow\; (CH_3)_3C^+ \;+\; {}^-AlCl_4$

(g) 

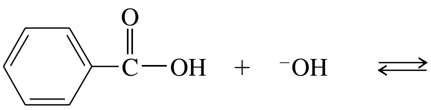
(h) $CH_2{=}CH_2 \;+\; BF_3 \;\longrightarrow\; \overset{-}{B}F_3{-}CH_2{-}\overset{+}{C}H_2$

(i) $\overset{-}{B}F_3{-}CH_2{-}\overset{+}{C}H_2 \;+\; CH_2{=}CH_2 \;\longrightarrow\; \overset{-}{B}F_3{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}\overset{+}{C}H_2$

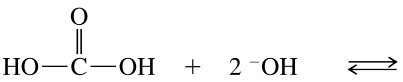
1.46 Prediga los productos de las siguientes reacciones ácido-base:

(a) $H_2SO_4 \;+\; CH_3COO^- \;\rightleftarrows$

(b) $CH_3COOH \;+\; (CH_3)_3N: \;\rightleftarrows$

(c) 

(d) $(CH_3)_3\overset{+}{N}H \;+\; {}^-OH \;\rightleftarrows$

(e) 

(f) $H_2O \;+\; NH_3 \;\rightleftarrows$

(g) $HCOOH \;+\; CH_3O^- \;\rightleftarrows$

***1.47** El metillitio (CH_3Li) a menudo se usa como base en reacciones orgánicas.

(a) Prediga los productos de la siguiente reacción ácido-base:

$$CH_3CH_2{-}OH \;+\; CH_3{-}Li \;\longrightarrow$$

(b) ¿Cuál es el ácido conjugado del CH_3Li? ¿Qué es el CH_3Li?, ¿una base fuerte o débil?

***1.48** En 1984, Edward A. Doisy de la Universidad de Washington extrajo 1 360 kg de ovarios de cerda para aislar unos pocos miligramos de estradiol puro, una potente hormona femenina. Doisy quemó 5.00 mg de esa preciada muestra en oxígeno y encontró que se obtenían 14.54 mg de CO_2 y 3.97 mg de H_2O.

(a) Determine la fórmula empírica del estradiol.

(b) La masa molecular del estradiol se determinó posteriormente y se encontró que era de 272. Determine la fórmula molecular del estradiol.

Chemsoft ®

Química Orgánica

Recopilación

José A. - UNMSM

2009

Química Orgánica

Recopilación

Por: Jose07070012

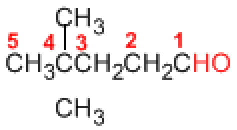
Índice:

i. Nomenclatura de Aldehídos y Cetonas
ii. Preparación de Aldehídos y Cetonas
iii. Formación de Hidratos
iv. Formación de Hemiacetales
v. Formación de Acetales
vi. Formación de Acetales Cíclicos
vii. Acetales Como Grupos Protectores
viii. Formación de Iminas
ix. Formación de Oximas
x. Formación de Hidrazonas
xi. Formación de Azinas
xii. Formación de Semicarbazonas
xiii. Ensayo de la 2,4 - Dinitrofenilhidrazina
xiv. Formación de Cianhídrinas
xv. Reacción de Wittig
xvi. Oxidación de Baeyer Villiger
xvii. Problemas Nomenclatura Aldehídos y Cetonas
xviii. Problemas Resueltos de Aldehídos y Cetonas
xix. Teorías de Enoles y Enolatos

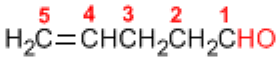
Por: Jose07070012

Nomenclatura de Aldehídos y Cetonas

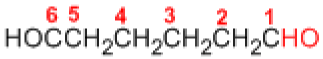
Los aldehídos se nombran reemplazando la terminación -ano del alcano correspondiente por -al. No es necesario especificar la posición del grupo aldehído, puesto que ocupa el extremo de la cadena (localizador 1).
Cuando la cadena contiene dos funciones aldehído se emplea el sufijo -dial.



4,4-Dimetilpentanal

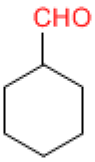


Hex-4-enal

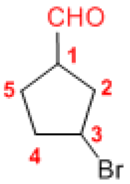


Pentanodial

El grupo -CHO unido a un ciclo se llama -carbaldehído. La numeración del ciclo se realiza dando localizador 1 al carbono del ciclo que contiene el grupo aldehído.

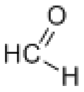


Ciclohexanocarbaldehído



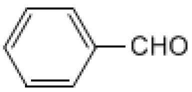
3-Bromociclopentanocarbaldehído

Algunos nombres comunes de aldehídos aceptados por la IUPAC son:



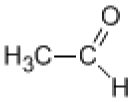
Formaldehído

(Metanal)



Benzaldehído

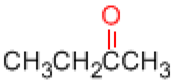
(Bencenocarbaldehído)



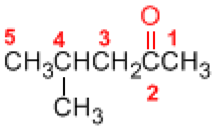
Acetaldehído

(Etanal)

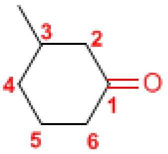
Las cetonas se nombran sustituyendo la terminación -ano del alcano con igual longitud de cadena por -ona. Se toma como cadena principal la de mayor longitud que contiene el grupo carbonilo y se numera para que éste tome el localizador más bajo.



Butanona

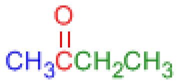


4-Metil-2-pentanona

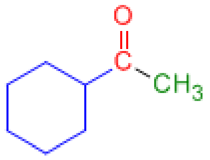


3-Metilciclohexanona

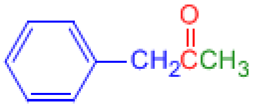
Existe un segundo tipo de nomenclatura para las cetonas, que consiste en nombrar las cadenas como sustituyentes, ordenándolas alfabéticamente y terminando el nombre con la palabra cetona.



Etil metil cetona



Ciclohexil metil cetona

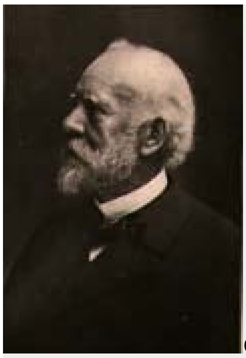


Fenil metil cetona

Siguiente >

[Volver]

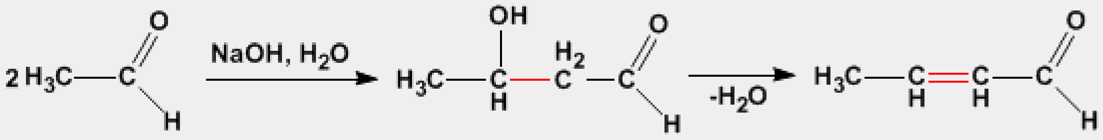
Charles Friedel (1832 - 1899)



Origen: Quimico frances..
Lugar de nacimiento: Estrasburgo.
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: Profesor en la Universidad de la Sorbona.
Investigación: Obtuvo el alcohol propílico. En 1877, Friedel y Crafts describieron por primera vez la reacción del benceno con un haloalcano en presencia de un ácido de Lewis. Esta reacción produce la alquilación del benceno y se conoce como alquilación de Friedl-Crafts.
Premio Nobel:

Aldólica (Condensación)

La condensación aldólica es una reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** que forma 3-hidroxicarbonilos (aldoles) **[2]**. El 3-hidroxialdehído **[2]** bajo condiciones de deshidratación por calentamiento rinde un aldehído alfa,beta-insaturado **[3]**.

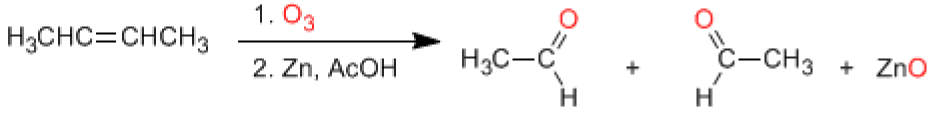


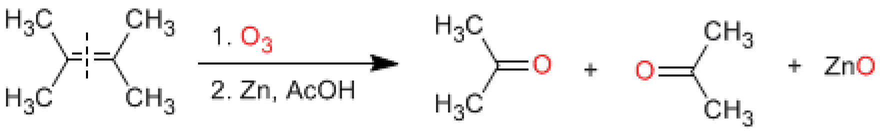
[1] [2] [3]

Preparación de aldehídos y cetonas

Los aldehídos y cetonas pueden ser preparados por oxidación de alcoholes, ozonólisis de alquenos, hidratación de alquinos y acilación de Friedel-Crafts como métodos de mayor importancia.

a) Ozonólisis de alquenos: Los alquenos rompen con ozono formando aldehídos y/o cetonas. Si el alqueno tiene hidrógenos vinílicos da aldehídos. Si tiene dos cadenas carbonadas forma cetonas.

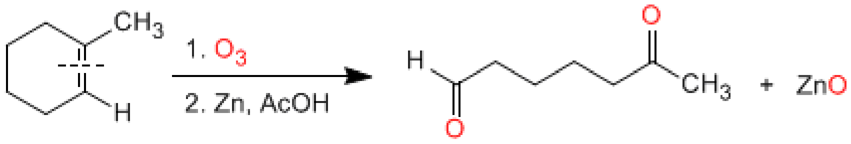




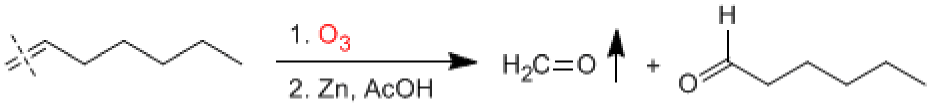
Ozonólisis

Los alquenos simétricos y terminales permiten la preparación de carbonilos mediante ozonólisis

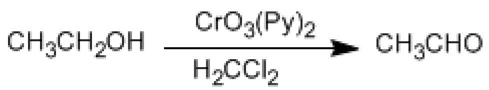
La ozonólisis de alquenos cíclicos produce compuestos dicarbonílicos:

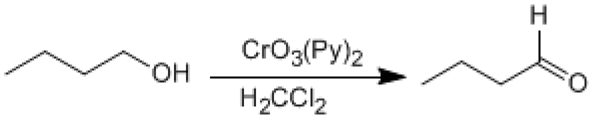


Los alquenos terminales rompen formando metanal, que separa fácilmente de la mezcla por su bajo punto de ebullición.

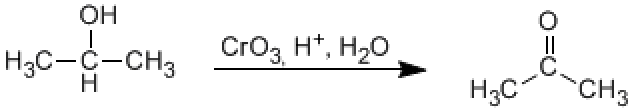


b) Oxidación de alcoholes: Los alcoholes primarios y secundarios se oxidan para dar aldehídos y cetonas respectivamente. Deben tomarse precauciones en la oxidación de alcoholes primarios, puesto que sobreoxidan a ácidos carboxílicos en presencia de oxidantes que contengan agua. En estos caso debe trabajarse con reactivos anhídros, como el clorocromato de piridino en diclorometano (PCC), a temperatura ambiente.

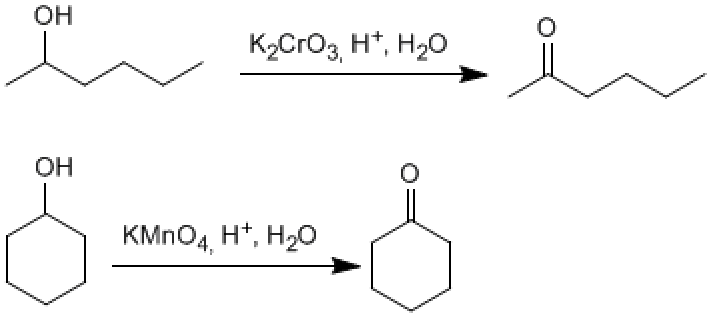




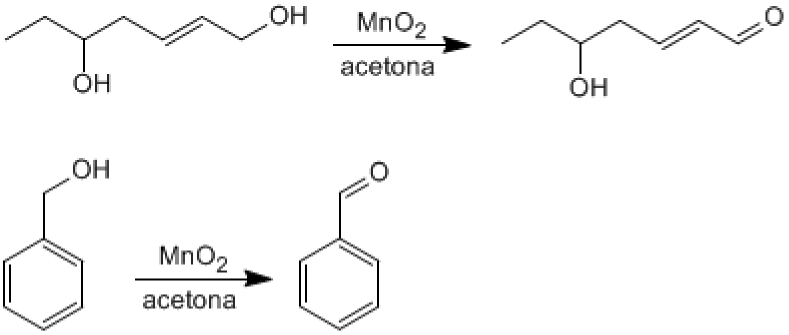
Los alcoholes secundarios dan cetonas por oxidación. Se emplean como oxidantes permanganato, dicromato, trióxido de cromo.



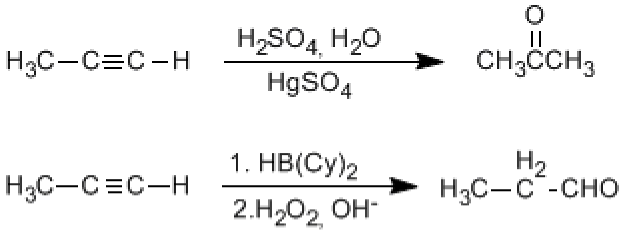
La oxidación supone la pérdida de dos hidrógenos del alcohol. Los alcoholes terciarios no pueden oxidar puesto que carecen de hidrógeno sobre el carbono.



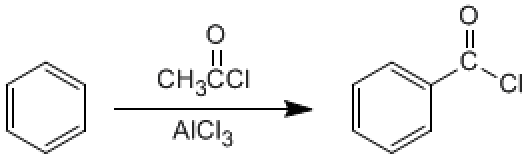
Los alcoholes alílicos y bencílicos se transforman en aldehídos o cetonas por oxidación con dióxido de manganeso en acetona. Esta reacción tiene una elevada selectividad y no oxida alcoholes que no se encuentren en dichas posiciones.



c) Hidratación de alquinos: Los alquinos se pueden hidratar Markovnikov, formando cetonas, o bien antiMarkovnivov, para formar aldehídos.



d) Acilación de Friedel-Crafts: La introducción de grupos acilo en el benceno permite la preparación de cetonas con cadenas aromáticas.

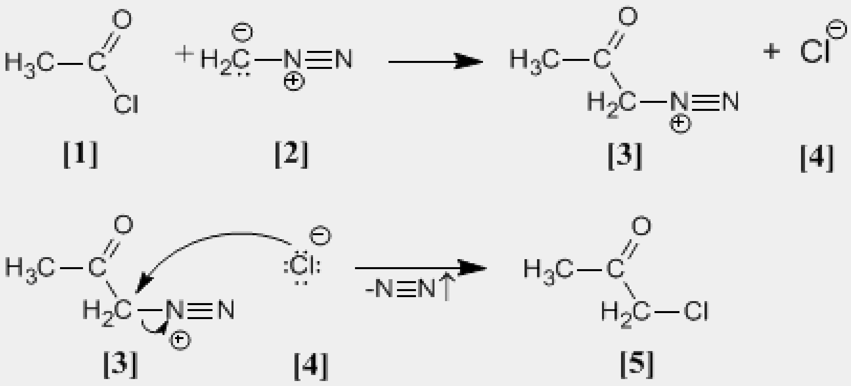


Otto Paul Hermann Diels (1876 - 1954)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: profesor y jefe del departamento de química en la Universidad de Berlín. En 1916, tomó el puesto de profesor de Química en la Universidad de Kiel, cargo que no dejó hasta su jubilación en 1945.
Investigación: En 1906 descubrió el anhídrido malónico. Investigó en reacciones de deshidrogenación con selenio. Síntesis de α-dicetonas. Pero su trabajo más importante es la reacción de Diels - Alder.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Kurt Alder

Arndt Eistert (Síntesis)

Cloruro de acetilo **[1]** se trata con diazometano **[2]** rindiendo la sal de diazonio **[3]**. El cloruro **[4]** producido reacciona con la sal de diazonio para dar la α-clorocetona **[5]**.

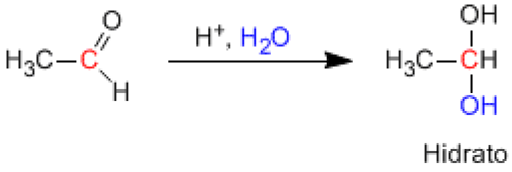


Síntesis de Arndt Eistert

Esta reacción permite transformar haluros de alcanoilo en cetonas halogenadas en su posición alfa.

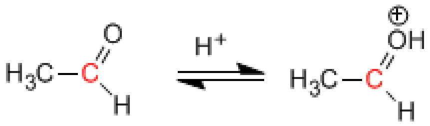
Formación de Hidratos

Los aldehídos y cetonas reaccionan en medio ácido acuoso para formar hidratos. El mecanismo consta de tres etapas. La primera y más rapìda consiste en la protonación del oxígeno carbonílico. Esta protonación produce un aumento de la polaridad sobre el carbono y favorece el ataque del nucleófilo. En la segunda etapa el agua ataca al carbono carbonilo, es la etapa lenta del mecanismo. En la tercera etapa se produce la desprotonación del oxígeno formándose el hidrato final.

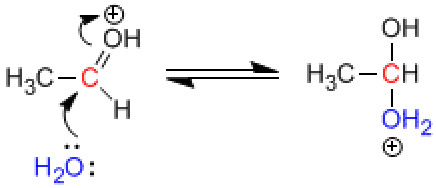


Mecanismo de la reacción

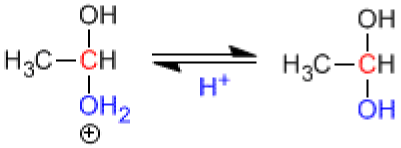
Etapa 1. Protonación del oxígeno carbonílico.



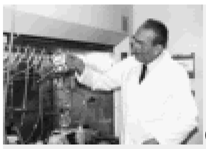
Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del agua al carbonilo protonado.



Etapa 3. Desprotonación del hidrato

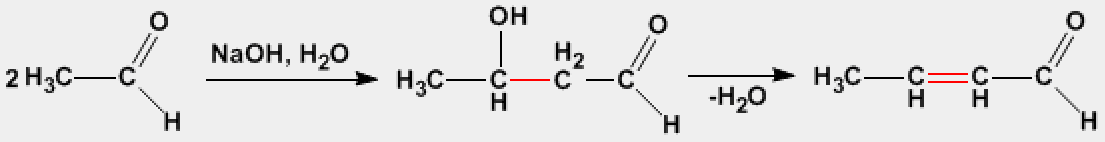


George A. Olah (1927 -)

**Origen:** Químico estadounidense.
Lugar de nacimiento: Budapest
Formación: Se doctoró en la Universidad de Budapest en 1949
Docencia: Trabajó en el departamento de química orgánica de la Academia de Ciencias de Hungría y posteriormente en la Universidad de Cleveland.
Industria: Trabajó en los laboratorios de la Dow Chemical de Ontario
Investigación: Olah consiguió preparar carbocationes estables utilizando componentes extremadamente ácidos.
Premio Nobel: En 1994 obtuvo el premio Nobel de Química por sus investigaciones sobre los carbocationes

Aldólica (Condensación)

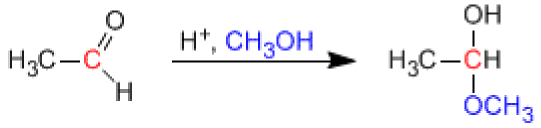
La condensación aldólica es una reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** que forma 3-hidroxicarbonilos (aldoles) **[2]**. El 3-hidroxialdehído **[2]** bajo condiciones de deshidratación por calentamiento rinde un aldehído alfa,beta-insaturado **[3]**.



[1] [2] [3]

Formación de Hemiacetales

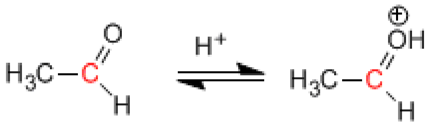
Los hemiacetales se forman por reacción de un equivalente de alcohol con el grupo carbonilo de un aldehído o cetona. Esta reacción se cataliza con ácido y es equivalente a la formación de hidratos.



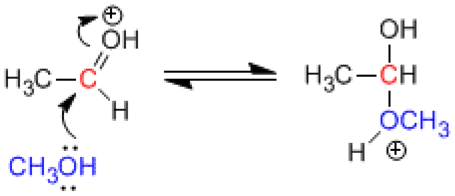
Hemiacetal

Mecanismo de la reacción:

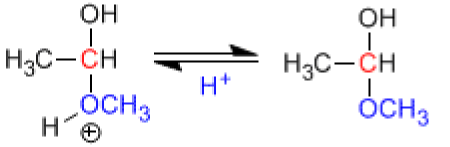
Etapa 1. Protonación del oxígeno carbonílico.



Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del metanol al carbonilo protonado.



Etapa 3. Desprotonación del hemiacetal

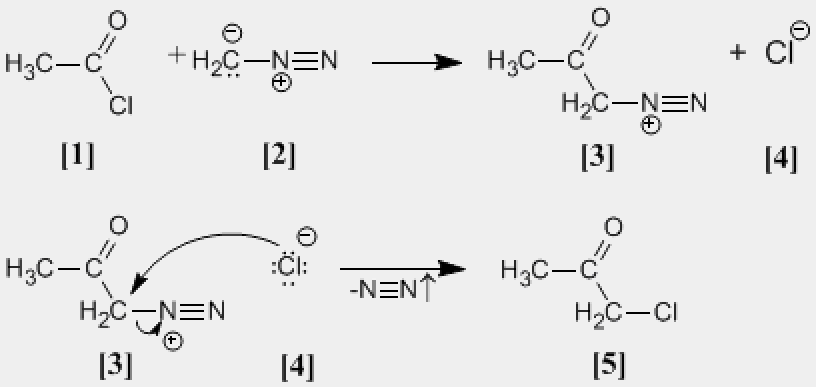


Otto Paul Hermann Diels (1876 - 1954)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: profesor y jefe del departamento de química en la Universidad de Berlín. En 1916, tomó el puesto de profesor de Química en la Universidad de Kiel, cargo que no dejó hasta su jubilación en 1945.
Investigación: En 1906 descubrió el anhídrido malónico. Investigó en reacciones de deshidrogenación con selenio. Síntesis de α-dicetonas. Pero su trabajo más importante es la reacción de Diels - Alder.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Kurt Alder

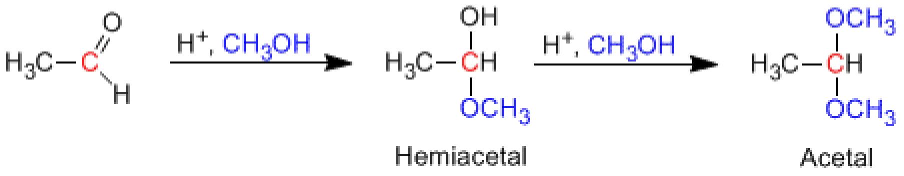
Arndt Eistert (Síntesis)

Cloruro de acetilo **[1]** se trata con diazometano **[2]** rindiendo la sal de diazonio **[3]**. El cloruro **[4]** producido reacciona con la sal de diazonio para dar la α-clorocetona **[5]**.



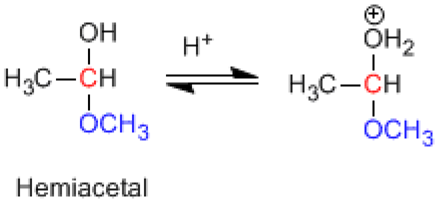
Formación de Acetales

Los aldehídos y cetonas reaccionan con alcoholes bajo condiciones de catálisis ácida, formando en una primera etapa hemiacetales, que posteriormene evolucionan por reacción con un segundo equivalente de alcohol a acetales.

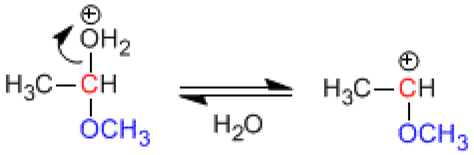


Mecanismo para la formación de acetales

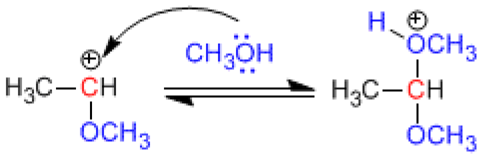
Etapa 1. Protonación del grupo hidroxilo



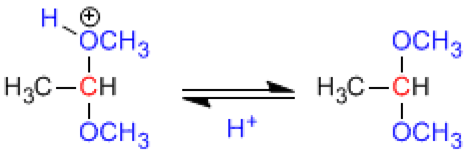
Etapa 2. Pérdida de agua.



Etapa 3. Ataque del alcohol al carbocatión



Etapa 4. Desprotonación del acetal

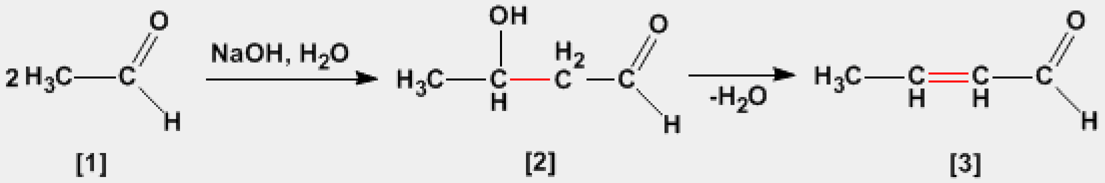


Otto Paul Hermann Diels (1876 - 1954)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: profesor y jefe del departamento de química en la Universidad de Berlín. En 1916, tomó el puesto de profesor de Química en la Universidad de Kiel, cargo que no dejó hasta su jubilación en 1945.
Investigación: En 1906 descubrió el anhídrido malónico. Investigó en reacciones de deshidrogenación con selenio. Síntesis de α-dicetonas. Pero su trabajo más importante es la reacción de Diels - Alder.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Kurt Alder

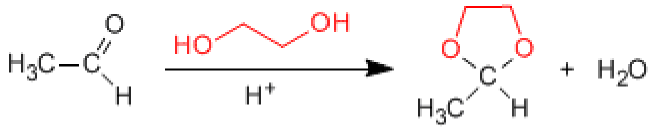
Aldólica (Condensación)

La condensación aldólica es una reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** que forma 3-hidroxicarbonilos (aldoles) **[2]**. El 3-hidroxialdehído **[2]** bajo condiciones de deshidratación por calentamiento rinde un aldehído alfa,beta-insaturado **[3]**.



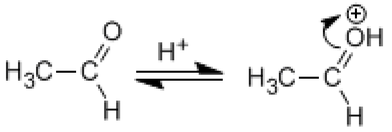
Formación de acetales cíclicos

Los 1,2- y 1,3-dioles reaccionan con aldehídos y cetonas formando acetales cíclicos. Los equilibrios se desplazan hacia el producto final eliminando el agua formada por destilación azeotrópica con benceno o tolueno.

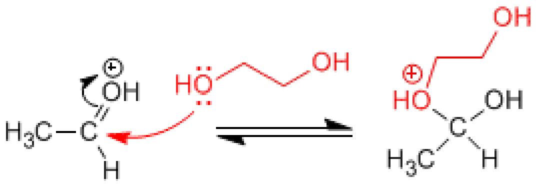


Mecanismo para la formación de acetales cíclicos:

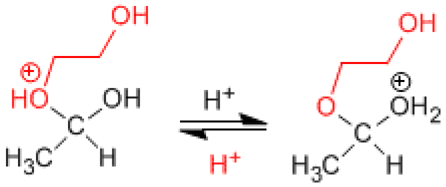
Etapa 1. Protonación del carbonilo



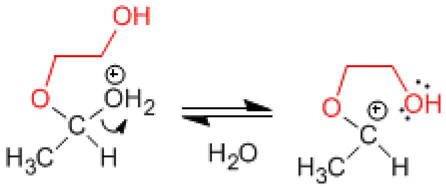
Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del diol al carbonilo.



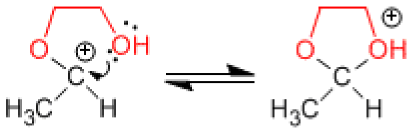
Etapa 3. Equilibrio ácido base entre el éter y el alcohol



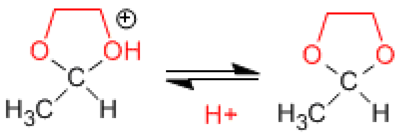
Etapa 4. Perdida de agua



Etapa 5. Ciclación



Etapa 6. Desprotonación del acetal cíclico

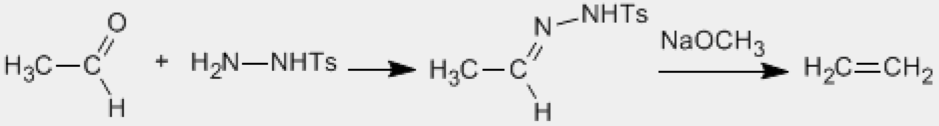


Kurt Alder (1902 - 1958)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió en la Universidad de Kiel. Bajo la supervisión del químico alemán Otto Diels, su jefe e instructor en Kiel.
Docencia: Alder ejerció como profesor de química en las universidades de Kiel y Colonia.
Investigación: Alder se especializó en la síntesis diénica (conocida más tarde como la reacción Diels - Alder) que consiste fundamentalmente en el análisis y formación de compuestos orgánicos complejos. Ya en 1928 ambos fueron coautores de un ensayo sobre este proceso.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Diels

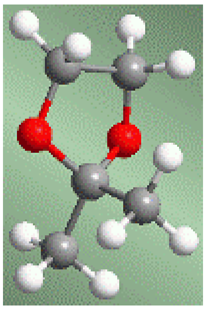
Bamford Stevens (Reacción)

Tosilhidrazonas **[2]** de aldehídos o cetonas alifáticos **[1]** reaccionan con bases fuertes para dar alquenos **[3]**.



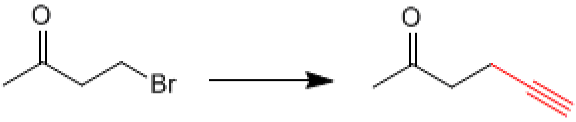
[1] [2] [3]

Acetales como grupos protectores

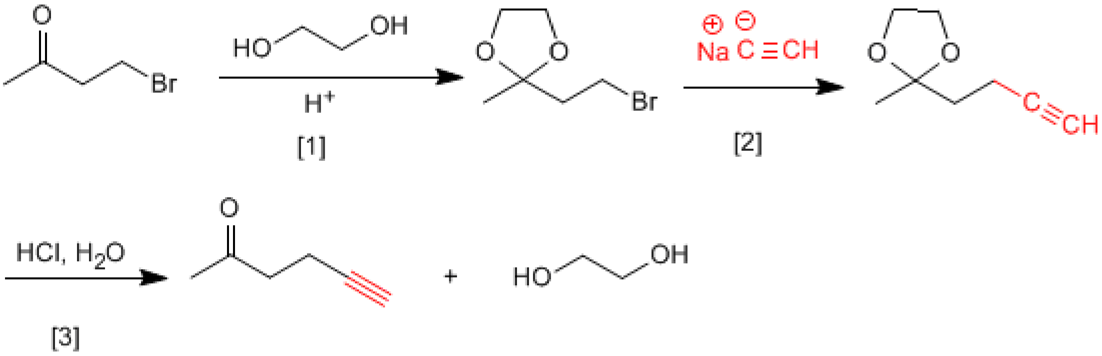


Los acetales pueden emplearse, por su estabilidad, como grupos protectores del carbonilo. El acetal es un éter, muy estable en medios básicos, aunque rompe en presencia de medios ácidos. En muchos procesos de síntesis el grupo carbonilo es incompatible con el reactivo utilizado. En estos casos debe protegerse para evitar que reaccione. La inestabilidad del acetal en medio ácido puede emplearse para desproteger el carbonilo.

Veamos algunos ejemplos:

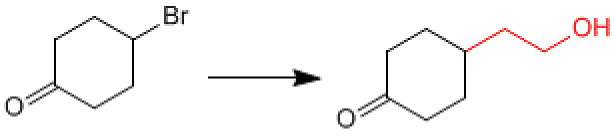


Esta transformación requiere una sustitución, empleando como nucleófilo en acetiluro de sodio. El nucleófilo puede atacar también al grupo carbonilo, para evitarlo vamos a protegerlo.

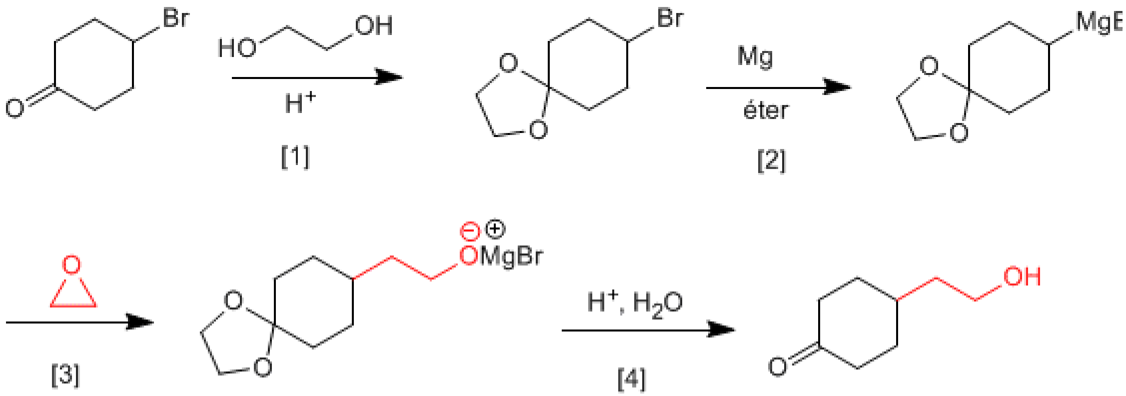


[1] Protección de la cetona.
[2] Ataque del acetiluro al carbono del bromo.
[3] Desprotección del carbonilo

Veamos un segundo ejemplo:



Es necesario proteger la cetona antes de formar el organometálico para evitar la dimerización del compuesto.



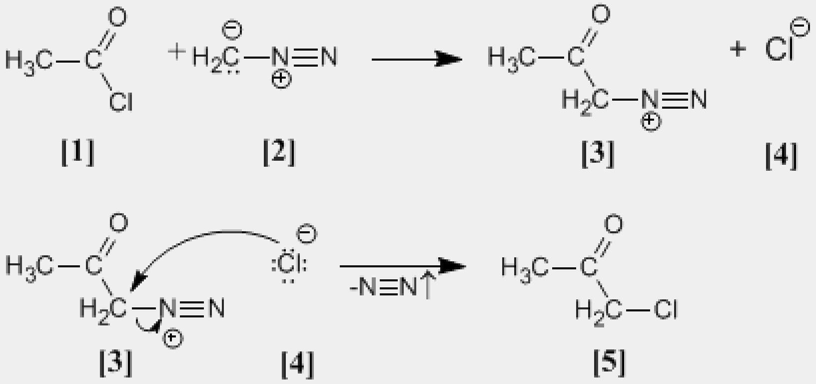
[1] Protección de la cetona.
[2] Formación del magnesiano.
[3] Apertura del oxaciclopropano.
[4] Desprotección y protonación del alcóxido.

Otto Paul Hermann Diels (1876 - 1954)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: profesor y jefe del departamento de química en la Universidad de Berlín. En 1916, tomó el puesto de profesor de Química en la Universidad de Kiel, cargo que no dejó hasta su jubilación en 1945.
Investigación: En 1906 descubrió el anhídrido malónico. Investigó en reacciones de deshidrogenación con selenio. Síntesis de α-dicetonas. Pero su trabajo más importante es la reacción de Diels - Alder.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Kurt Alder

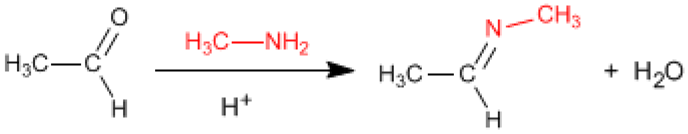
Arndt Eistert (Síntesis)

Cloruro de acetilo **[1]** se trata con diazometano **[2]** rindiendo la sal de diazonio **[3]**. El cloruro **[4]** producido reacciona con la sal de diazonio para dar la α-clorocetona **[5]**.



Formación de Iminas

La reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** con aminas primarias genera iminas **[2]**. La reacción se favorece en un medio ligeramente ácido (pH=4.5).



[1] [2]

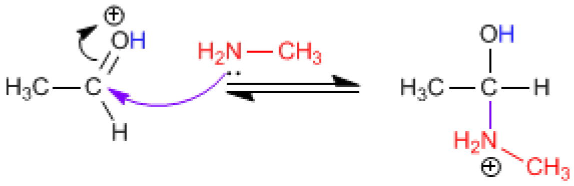
El control del pH es fundamental, puesto que se requiere la protonación del oxígeno del carbonilo para favorecer el ataque nucleófilo.

Mecanismo:

Etapa 1. Protonación del grupo carbonilo que aumenta la polaridad positiva sobre el carbono y favorece el ataque nucleófilo.

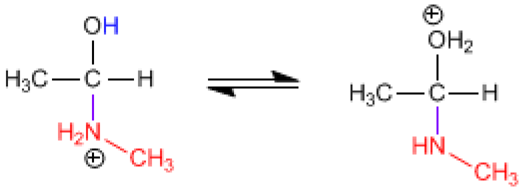
[1] [3]

Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo de la amina primaria al carbono carbonilo.



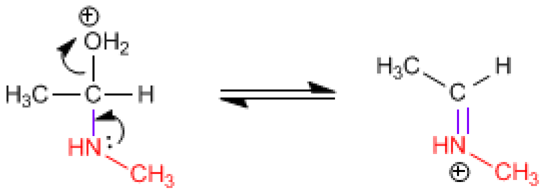
[3] [4]

Etapa 3. Protonación del grupo hidroxilo para transformarlo en buen grupo saliente.



[4] [5]

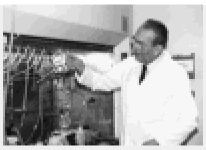
Etapa 4. Perdida de agua y formación de la imina protonada.



[5] [6]

Etapa 5. Desprotonación del catión.

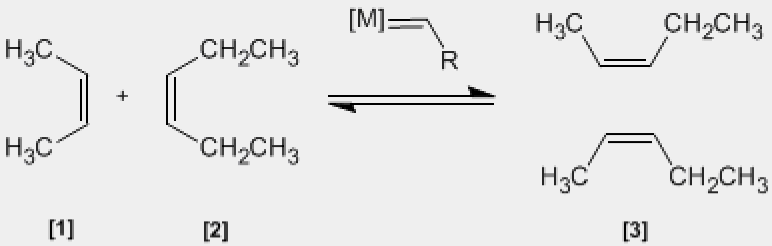
George A. Olah (1927 -)



Origen: Químico estadounidense.
Lugar de nacimiento: Budapest
Formación: Se doctoró en la Universidad de Budapest en 1949
Docencia: Trabajó en el departamento de química orgánica de la Academia de Ciencias de Hungría y posteriormente en la Universidad de Cleveland.
Industria: Trabajó en los laboratorios de la Dow Chemical de Ontario
Investigación: Olah consiguió preparar carbocationes estables utilizando componentes extremadamentes ácidos.
Premio Nobel: En 1994 obtuvo el premio Nobel de Química por sus investigaciones sobre los carbocationes

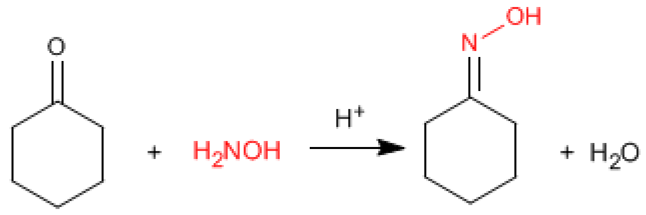
Metátesis de Alquenos

En esta reacción dos alquenos **[1]** y **[2]** son tratados con un metal de transición que actúa como catalizador, dando una mezcla de alquenos **[3]** (incluyendo isómeros Z/E). Este productos se obtiene por intercambio de grupos alquilideno.



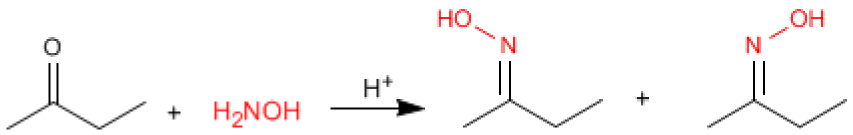
Formación de Oximas

Las oximas **[3]** se obtienen por reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** e hidroxilamina **[2]** en un medio débilmente ácido. El mecanismo es análogo al de formación de iminas.



[1] [2] [3]

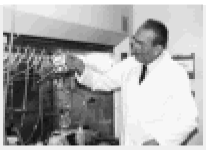
Las oximas de aldehídos y cetona asimétricas presentan isomería Z/E dependiendo de la posición del grupo hidroxilo.



(E) (Z)

Las iminas e hidrazonas (que comentaremos a continuación) también presentan esta característica.

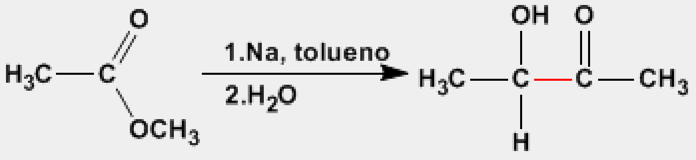
George A. Olah (1927 -)



Origen: Químico estadounidense.
Lugar de nacimiento: Budapest
Formación: Se doctoró en la Universidad de Budapest en 1949
Docencia: Trabajó en el departamento de química orgánica de la Academia de Ciencias de Hungría y posteriormente en la Universidad de Cleveland.
Industria: Trabajó en los laboratorios de la Dow Chemical de Ontario
Investigación: Olah consiguió preparar carbocationes estables utilizando componentes extremadamentes ácidos.
Premio Nobel: En 1994 obtuvo el premio Nobel de Química por sus investigaciones sobre los carbocationes

Aciloínica (Condensación)

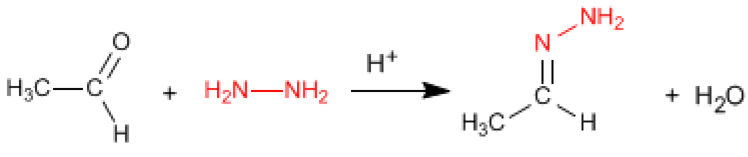
La condensación aciloínica transforma esteres [1] en alfa-hidroxicetonas [2]. Esta reacción se realiza con sodio metal en disolvente inerte.



[1] [2]

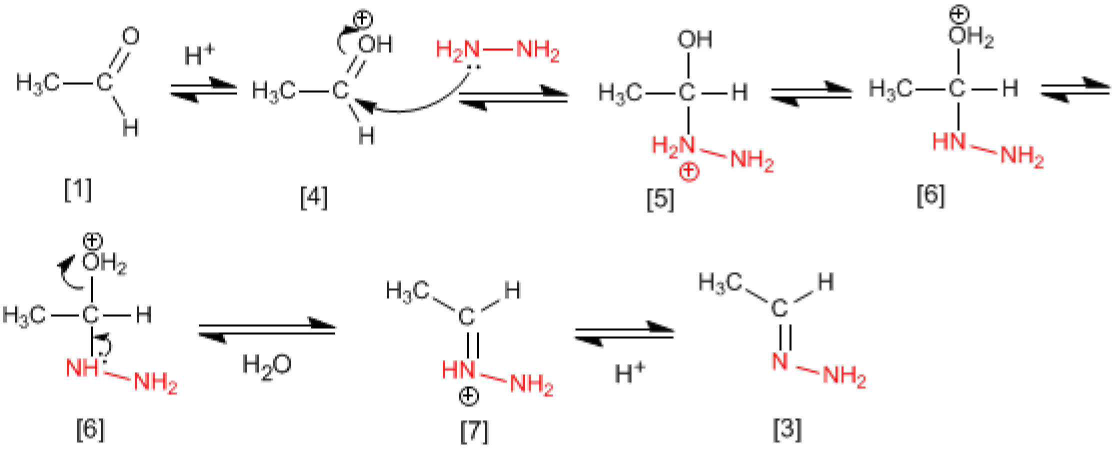
Formación de Hidrazonas

Las hidrazonas **[3]** se obtienen por reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** con hidrazina **[2]**. Igual que en el caso de las iminas y oximas requiere pH=4.



[1] [2] [3]

Aunque el mecanismo es análogo al de formación de iminas, comentaremos de nuevo los pasos.



El etanal **[1]** se protona formando su ácido conjugado **[4]**. La importante polaridad del carbono carbonilo de **[4]** favorece el ataque de la hidrazina **[2]** para formando el intermedio **[5]**. El compuesto **[5]** intercambia un protón entre el nitrógeno y el oxígeno, transformando el grupo hidroxilo en agua (buen grupo saliente). El intermedio **[6]** pierde una molécula de agua transformándose en **[7]**, cuya desprotonación da la hidrazona final **[3].**

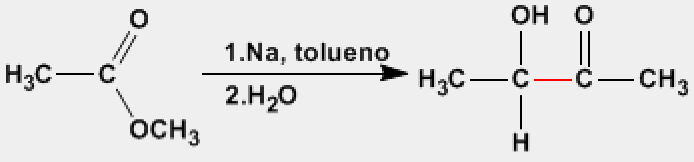
Kurt Alder (1902 - 1958)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió en la Universidad de Kiel. Bajo la supervisión del químico alemán Otto Diels, su jefe e instructor en Kiel.
Docencia: Alder ejerció como profesor de química en las universidades de Kiel y Colonia.
Investigación: Alder se especializó en la síntesis diénica (conocida más tarde como la reacción Diels - Alder) que consiste fundamentalmente en el análisis y formación de compuestos orgánicos complejos.

Ya en 1928 ambos fueron coautores de un ensayo sobre este proceso.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Diels

Aciloínica (Condensación)

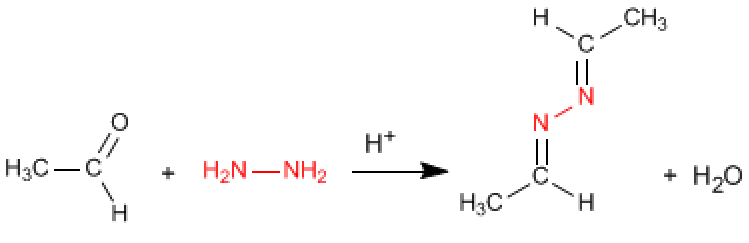
La condensación aciloínica transforma esteres [1] en alfa-hidroxicetonas [2]. Esta reacción se realiza con sodio metal en disolvente inerte.



[1] [2]

Formación de Azinas

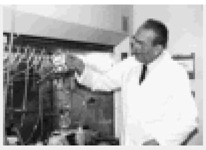
La hidrazina **[2]** reacciona con dos moleculas de aldehido **[1]** para formar azinas **[3].**



[1] [2] [3]

El mecanismo es análogo al de formación de iminas, oximas e hidrazonas.

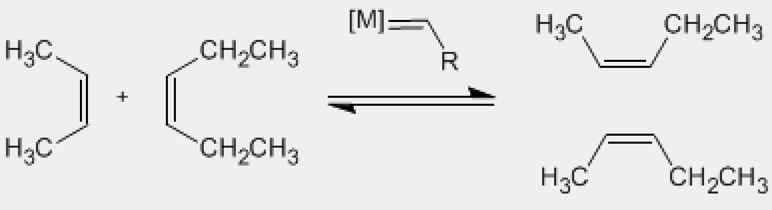
George A. Olah (1927 -)



Origen: Químico estadounidense.
Lugar de nacimiento: Budapest
Formación: Se doctoró en la Universidad de Budapest en 1949
Docencia: Trabajó en el departamento de química orgánica de la Academia de Ciencias de Hungría y posteriormente en la Universidad de Cleveland.
Industria: Trabajó en los laboratorios de la Dow Chemical de Ontario
Investigación: Olah consiguió preparar carbocationes estables utilizando componentes extremadamentes ácidos.
Premio Nobel: En 1994 obtuvo el premio Nobel de Química por sus investigaciones sobre los carbocationes

Metátesis de Alquenos

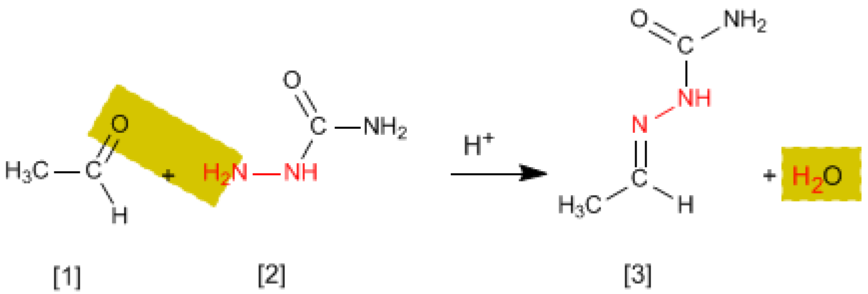
En esta reacción dos alquenos **[1]** y **[2]** son tratados con un metal de transición que actúa como catalizador, dando una mezcla de alquenos **[3]** (incluyendo isómeros Z/E). Este productos se obtiene por intercambio de grupos alquilideno.



[1] [2] [3]

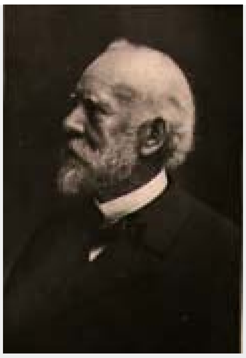
Formación de Semicarbazonas

Las semicarbazonas **[3]** se obtienen por reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** con semicarbazida **[2]**. Veamos un ejemplo:



El mecanismo es análogo al de formación de iminas, oximas e hidrazonas.

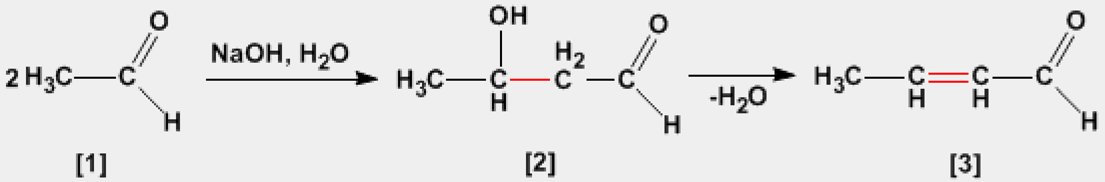
Charles Friedel (1832 - 1899)



Origen: Quimico frances..
Lugar de nacimiento: Estrasburgo.
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: Profesor en la Universidad de la Sorbona.
Investigación: Obtuvo el alcohol propílico. En 1877, Friedel y Crafts describieron por primera vez la reacción del benceno con un haloalcano en presencia de un ácido de Lewis. Esta reacción produce la alquilación del benceno y se conoce como alquilación de Friedl-Crafts.
Premio Nobel:

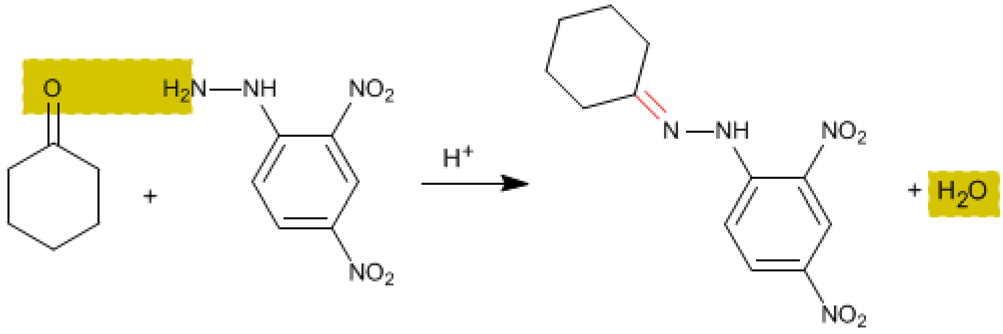
Aldólica (Condensación)

La condensación aldólica es una reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** que forma 3-hidroxicarbonilos (aldoles) **[2]**. El 3-hidroxialdehído **[2]** bajo condiciones de deshidratación por calentamiento rinde un aldehído alfa,beta-insaturado **[3]**.



Ensayo de la 2,4-Dinitrofenilhidrazina

Se trata de un ensayo analítico específico de aldehídos y cetonas. Los carbonilos **[1]** reaccionan con 2,4-Dinitrofenilhidrazina **[2]** formando fenilhidrazonas **[3]** que precipitan de color amarillo. La aparicion de precipidado es un indicador de la presencia de carbonilos en el medio.



[1] [2] [3]

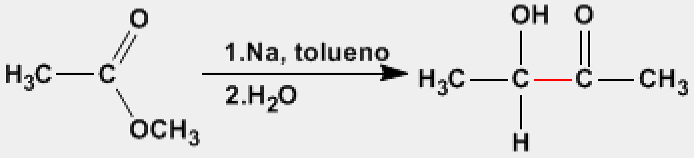
El mecanismo de la reacción es análogo al de formación de iminas.

Kurt Alder (1902 - 1958)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió en la Universidad de Kiel. Bajo la supervisión del químico alemán Otto Diels, su jefe e instructor en Kiel.
Docencia: Alder ejerció como profesor de química en las universidades de Kiel y Colonia.
Investigación: Alder se especializó en la síntesis diénica (conocida más tarde como la reacción Diels - Alder) que consiste fundamentalmente en el análisis y formación de compuestos orgánicos complejos. Ya en 1928 ambos fueron coautores de un ensayo sobre este proceso.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Diels

Aciloínica (Condensación)

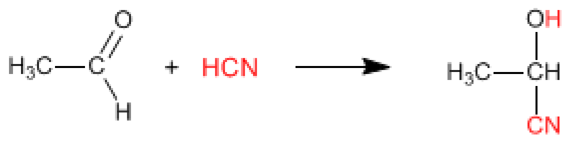
La condensación aciloínica transforma esteres [1] en alfa-hidroxicetonas [2]. Esta reacción se realiza con sodio metal en disolvente inerte.



[1] [2]

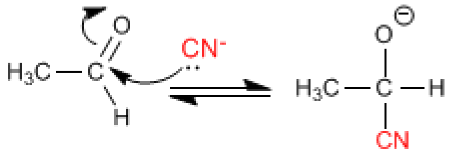
Formación de Cianhidrinas

Las cianhidrinas **[3]** se forman por reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** con ácido cianhídrico **[2]** y son compuestos que contienen un grupo cinano y un hidroxi sobre el mismo carbono.



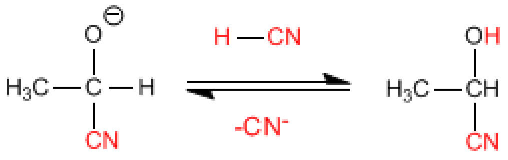
[1] [2] [3]

El mecanismo de la reacción transcurre en dos etapas:
Etapa 1. Los iones cianuro actúan como nucleófilos atacando al carbono carbonilo. El ácido cianhídrico es demasiado débil para generar cantidades importantes de cianuro, por ello, se añade cianuro de sodio o potasio al medio, garantizando la cantidad suficiente de cianuro para que la reacción transcurra en buen rendimiento.



[1] [4]

Etapa 2. En este paso el ión alcóxido **[4]** se protona arrancando hidrógenos al ácido cianhídrico. En esta etapa se regeneran los iones cianuro.



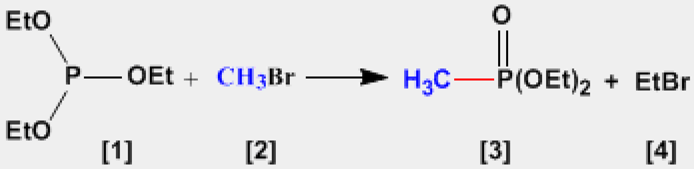
[4] [3]

Kurt Alder (1902 - 1958)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió en la Universidad de Kiel. Bajo la supervisión del químico alemán Otto Diels, su jefe e instructor en Kiel.
Docencia: Alder ejerció como profesor de química en las universidades de Kiel y Colonia.
Investigación: Alder se especializó en la síntesis diénica (conocida más tarde como la reacción Diels - Alder) que consiste fundamentalmente en el análisis y formación de compuestos orgánicos complejos. Ya en 1928 ambos fueron coautores de un ensayo sobre este proceso.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Diels

Arbuzov (Reacción)

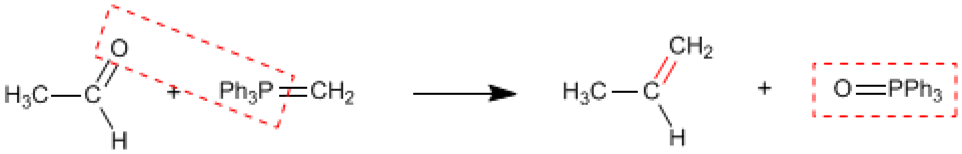
La reacción de Abuzov se emplea en la síntesis de fosfonatos **[3]** a partir de fosfitos **[1]**. Los fosfonatos obtenidos en la síntesis de Abuzov se emplean como materiales de partida en la síntesis de Horner-Wittig.



[1] [2] [3] [4]

Reacción de Wittig

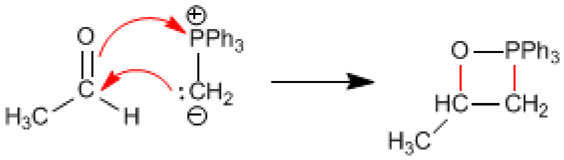
La reacción de Wittig emplea Iluros de fósforo **[2]** para transformar aldehídos y cetonas **[1]** en alquenos **[3]**. Como subproducto se obtiene el óxido de trifenilfosfina **[4].**



[1] [2] [3] [4]

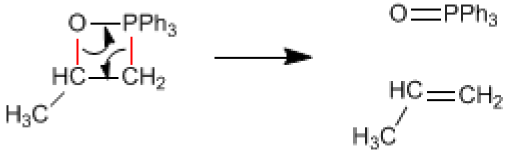
En el mecanismo de la reacción el iluro y el carbonilo se combinan para formar un oxafosfetano que rompe dejando libre el alqueno final.

Etapa 1. El etanal y el iluro se combian formando el fosfetano.



[1] [2] [5]

Etapa 2. El fosfetano rompe formando el alqueno y oxido de trifenilfosfina.

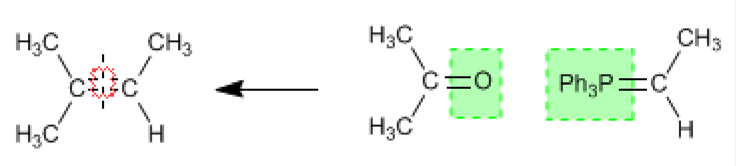


[4]

[3]

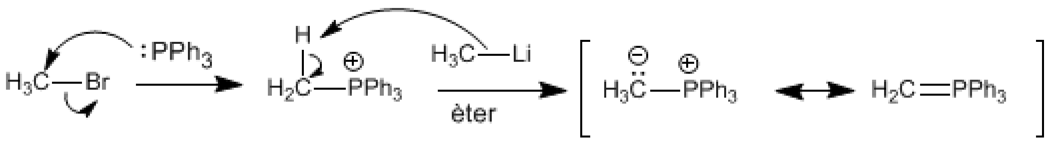
[5]

Ejemplo - Obtener mediante Wittig el 2-Metilbut-2-eno

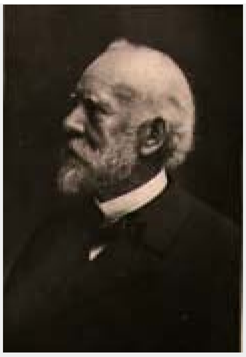


Se rompe el alqueno por el doble enlace y a cada carbono se le agrega el grupo encerrado en verde.

Los **iluros de fósforo** se preparan mediante reacción de haloalcanos y trifenilfosfina, seguido de desprotonación del carbono con base fuerte (organometálicos de litio).



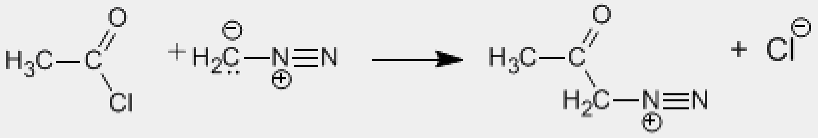
Charles Friedel (1832 - 1899)



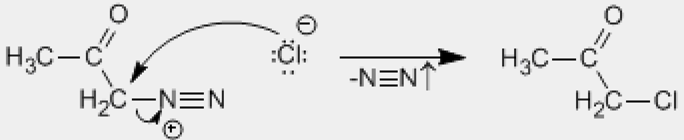
Origen: Quimico frances..
Lugar de nacimiento: Estrasburgo.
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: Profesor en la Universidad de la Sorbona.
Investigación: Obtuvo el alcohol propílico. En 1877, Friedel y Crafts describieron por primera vez la reacción del benceno con un haloalcano en presencia de un ácido de Lewis. Esta reacción produce la alquilación del benceno y se conoce como alquilación de Friedl-Crafts.
Premio Nobel:

Arndt Eistert (Síntesis)

Cloruro de acetilo **[1]** se trata con diazometano **[2]** rindiendo la sal de diazonio **[3]**. El cloruro **[4]** producido reacciona con la sal de diazonio para dar la α-clorocetona **[5]**.



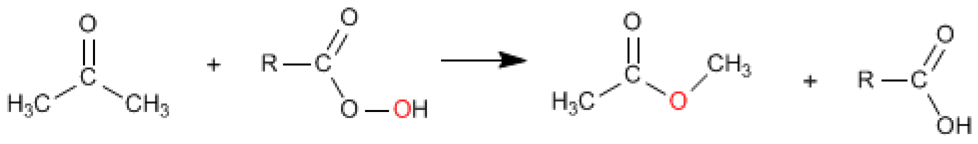
[1] [2] [3] [4]



[3] [4] [5]

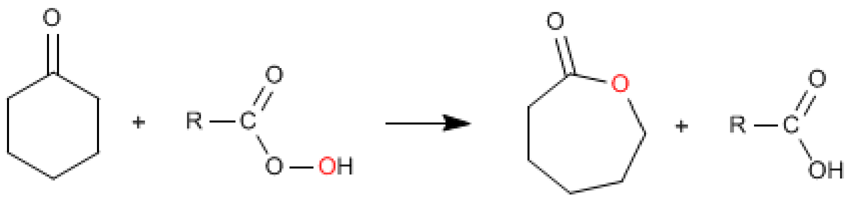
Oxidación de Baeyer Villiger

La reacción de cetonas **[1]** con perácidos **[2]** produce ésteres **[3]**. El oxígeno del perácido se inserta entre el carbono carbonilo y el carbono alfa de la cetona. Esta reacción fue descrita por Adolf von Baeyer y Victor Villiger in 1899.



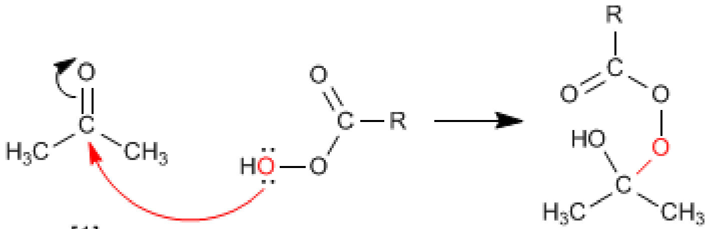
[1] [2] [3] [4]

A partir de cetonas cíclicas se obtienen ésteres cíclicos (lactonas)



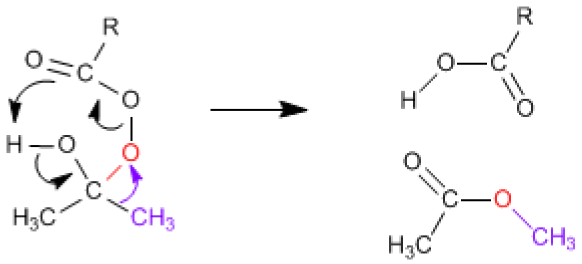
El mecanismo de Baeyer Villiger comienza con el ataque nucleófilo del perácido sobre el carbonilo, seguido de la migración del sustituyente desde el grupo carbonilo al oxígeno del perácido.

Etapa 1. Adición del perácido al carbonilo



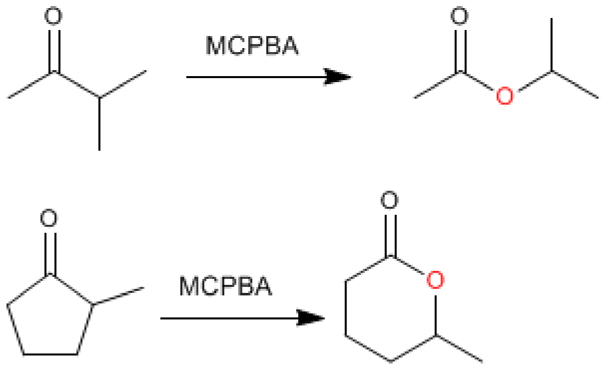
[1] [2]

Etapa 2. Migración del sustituyente desde carbono carbonilo hacia el oxígeno (rojo)

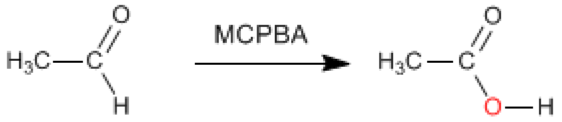


Cuando la cetona tiene dos sustituyentes diferentes migra mejor el más sustituido. Existe un orden de migración que nos ayuda a decidir que sustituyente pasa a unirse al oxígeno del perácido.

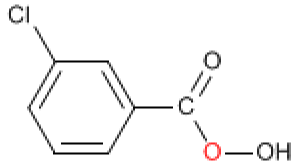
Orden de migración: H > carbono terciario > ciclohexilo > carbono secundario » fenilo > carbono primario > metilo



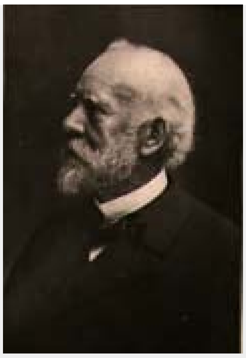
Como puede observarse en el orden de migración, el grupo que mejor migra, por su pequeño tamaño, es el hidrógeno, por ello, al tratar aldehídos con perácidos se produce la migración del hidrógeno formándose ácidos carboxílicos.



El **MCPBA** (Ácido meta-cloroperoxibenzoico) es un perácido ampliamente utilizado en la epoxidación de alquenos y también en Baeyer-Villger. La fórmula del MCPBA se muestra a continuación.



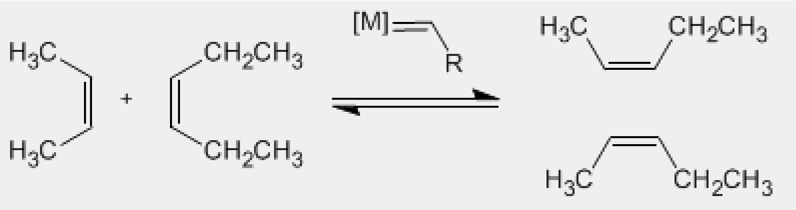
Charles Friedel (1832 - 1899)



Origen: Quimico frances..
Lugar de nacimiento: Estrasburgo.
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: Profesor en la Universidad de la Sorbona.
Investigación: Obtuvo el alcohol propílico. En 1877, Friedel y Crafts describieron por primera vez la reacción del benceno con un haloalcano en presencia de un ácido de Lewis. Esta reacción produce la alquilación del benceno y se conoce como alquilación de Friedl-Crafts.
Premio Nobel:

Metátesis de Alquenos

En esta reacción dos alquenos **[1]** y **[2]** son tratados con un metal de transición que actúa como catalizador, dando una mezcla de alquenos **[3]** (incluyendo isómeros Z/E). Este productos se obtiene por intercambio de grupos alquilideno.

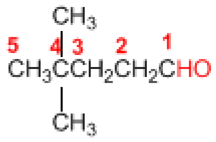


[1] [2] [3]

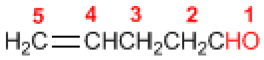
Nomenclatura de Aldehídos y Cetonas - Reglas IUPAC

Regla 1. Los aldehídos se nombran reemplazando la terminación -ano del alcano correspondiente por -al. No es necesario especificar la posición del grupo aldehído, puesto que ocupa el extremo de la cadena (localizador 1).

Cuando la cadena contiene dos funciones aldehído se emplea el sufijo -dial.



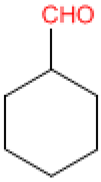
4,4-Dimetilpentanal



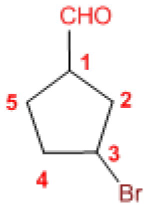
Hex-4-enal

Hexanodial

Regla 2. El grupo -CHO se denomina -carbaldehído. Este tipo de nomenclatura es muy útil cuando el grupo aldehído va unido a un ciclo. La numeración del ciclo se realiza dando localizador 1 al carbono del ciclo que contiene el grupo aldehído.

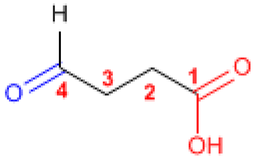


Ciclohexanocarbaldehído

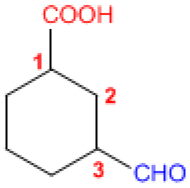


3-Bromociclopentanocarbaldehido

Regla 3. Cuando en la molécula existe un grupo prioritario al aldehído, este pasa a ser un sustituyente que se nombra como oxo- o formil-.



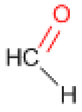
Àcido 4-oxobutanoico



Àcido 3-formilciclohexanocarboxílico

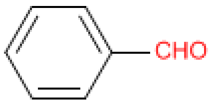
Tanto -carbaldehído como formil- son nomenclaturas que incluyen el carbono del grupo carbonilo. -carbaldehído se emplea cuando el aldehído es grupo funcional, mientras que formil- se usa cuando actúa de sustituyente.

Regla 4. Algunos nombres comunes de aldehídos aceptados por la IUPAC son:



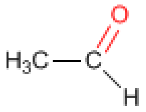
Formaldehído

(Metanal)



Benzaldehído

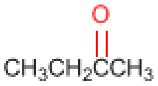
(Bencenocarbaldehído)



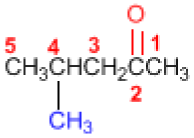
Acetaldehído

(Etanal)

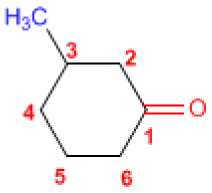
Regla 5. Las cetonas se nombran sustituyendo la terminación -ano del alcano con igual longitud de cadena por -ona. Se toma como cadena principal la de mayor longitud que contiene el grupo carbonilo y se numera para que éste tome el localizador más bajo.



Butanona

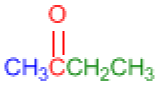


4-Metil-2-pentanona

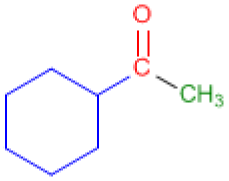


3-Metilciclohexanona

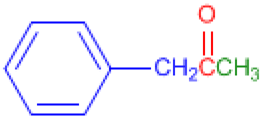
Regla 6. Existe un segundo tipo de nomenclatura para las cetonas, que consiste en nombrar las cadenas como sustituyentes, ordenándolas alfabéticamente y terminando el nombre con la palabra cetona.



Etil metil cetona

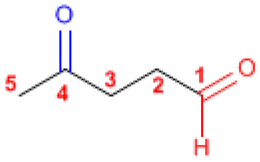


Ciclohexil metil cetona

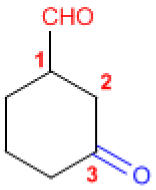


Fenil metil cetona

Regla 7. Cuando la cetona no es el grupo funcional de la molécula pasa a llamarse oxo-.



4-Oxopentanal

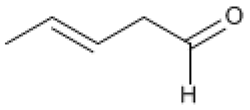


3-Oxociclohexanocarbaldehído

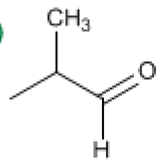
Nomenclatura de Aldehídos y Cetonas - Problema 9.1

Nombra los siguientes aldehídos y cetonas:

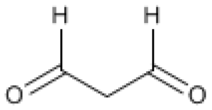
a)



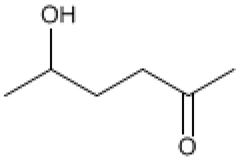
b)



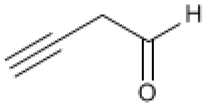
c)



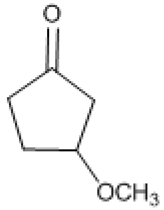
d)



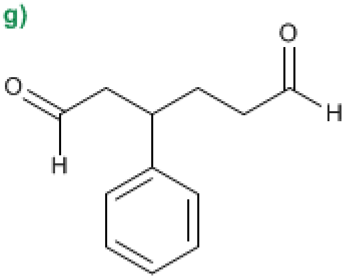
e)



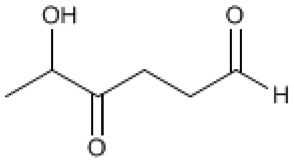
f)



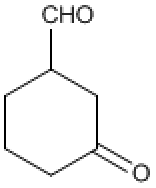
g)



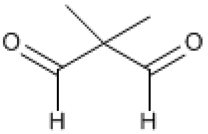
h)



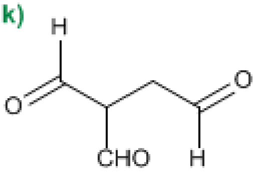
i)



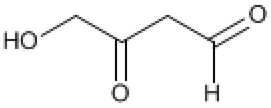
j)



k)

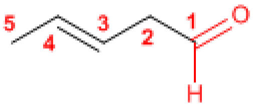


l)

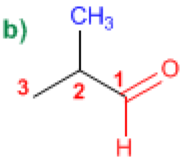


Solución

a)



b)



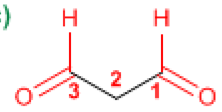
1. Cadena principal: 5 carbonos (pentano)

2. Numeración: comienza en el aldehído (grupo funcional)
Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Nombre: Pent-3-enal

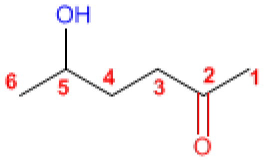
1. Cadena principal: 3 carbonos (propano)
2. Numeración: localizador más bajo al aldehído.
3. Grupo funcional: aldehído
4. Sustituyentes: metilo en 2.
5. Nombre: 2-Metilpropanal

Los aldehídos y cetonas son prioritarios sobre alquenos y alquinos, y se numeran otorgándoles el localizador más bajo

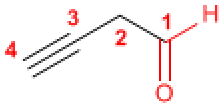
c)



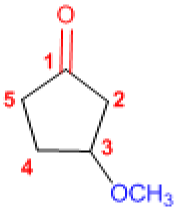
d)



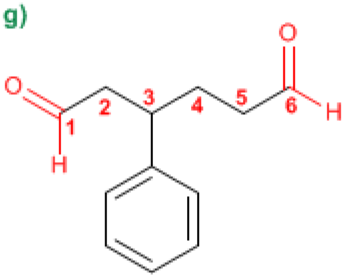
e)



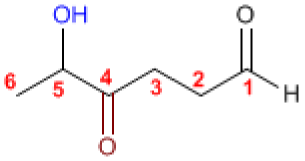
f)



g)



h)



1. Cadena principal: 3 carbonos (propano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído (dialdehido)
3. Nombre: Propanodial

1. Cadena principal: 6 carbonos (hexano)
2. Grupo funcional: cetona
3. Numeración: asignar el menor localizador a la cetona
4. Sustituyentes: hidroxi en 5.
5. Nombre: 5-Hidroxihexan-2-ona

1. Cadena principal: 4 carbonos (butano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Numeración: asignar el menor localizador al aldehído
4. Nombre: But-3-inal

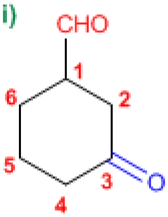
1. Cadena principal: ciclo de 5 miembros (ciclopentano)
2. Grupo funcional: cetona
3. Numeración: comienza en la cetona y prosigue hacia el sustituyente
4. Sustituyentes: metoxi en 3.
5. Nombre: 3-Metoxiciclopentanona

1. Cadena principal: 6 carbonos (hexano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehido (dialdehido)
3. Numeración: comienza en el extremo que otorga al fenilo el localizador más bajo.
4. Sustituyentes: fenilo en 3.
5. Nombre: 3-Fenilhexanodial

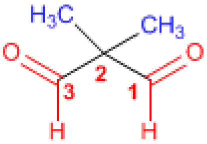
1. Cadena principal: 6 carbonos (hexano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Numeración: asignar el menor localizador al aldehído
4. Sustituyentes: hidroxi en 5 y oxo en 4.
5. Nombre: 5-Hidroxi-4-oxohexanal

Los aldehídos son prioritarios sobre las cetonas que pasan a nombrarse como sustituyentes (oxo-)

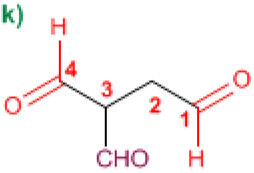
i)



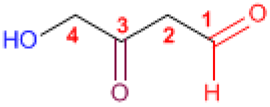
j)



k)



l)



1. Cadena principal: ciclo de 6 miembros (ciclohexano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído (-carbaldehído)
3. Numeración: menor localizador al grupo -CHO (este no se numera)
4. Sustituyentes: cetona (oxo-) en 3
5. Nombre: 3-Oxociclohexanocarbaldehído

1. Cadena principal: 3 carbonos (propano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído (dialdehído)
3. Sustituyentes: metilos en 2,2.
4. Nombre: 2,2-Dimetilpropanodial

1. Cadena principal: 4 carbonos (butano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Sustituyentes: formil en 3
4. Nombre: 3-Formilbutanodial

1. Cadena principal: 4 carbonos (butano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Numeración: asignar el menor localizador al aldehído
4. Sustituyentes: hidroxi en 4 y oxo en 3.
5. Nombre: 4-Hidroxi-3-oxobutanal

Nomenclatura de Aldehídos y Cetonas - Problema 9.2

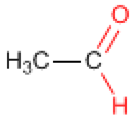
PRINT EMAIL

Dibuja la estructura de los siguientes aldehídos y cetonas:

a) Etanal (acetaldehído)
b) 3-Metilbutanal
c) Benzaldehído
d) 4-Hidroxiciclohexanocarbaldehído
e) 3-Hidroxi-4-metil-5-oxociclohexanocarbaldehído
f) 2-Metil-2,5-octanodiona
g) 2,5-Dioxooctanodial
h) 1,3-Ciclohexanodiona
i) 3-Metil-3-pentenal
j) 3-Oxobutanal
k) 3-Hidroxiciclopentanona
l) 4-Etoxi-5-fenil-3-oxoheptanal

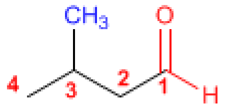
Solución

a)



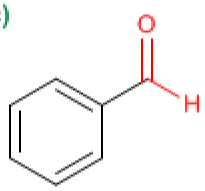
Etanal (acetaldehído)

b)



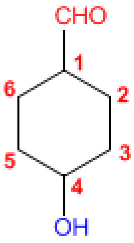
3-Metilbutanal

c)



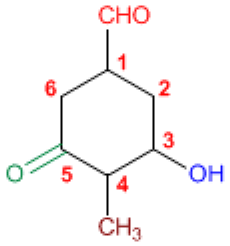
Benzaldehído

d)



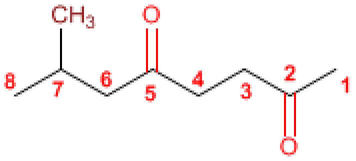
4-Hidroxiciclohexanocarbaldehído

e)



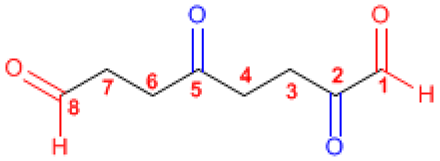
3-Hidroxi-4-metil-5-oxociclohexanocarbaldehído

f)



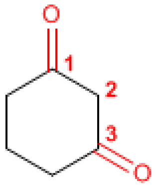
7-Metil-2,5-octanodiona

g)



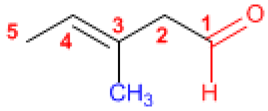
2,5-Dioxooctanodial

h)



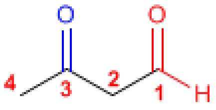
1,3-Ciclohexanodiona

i)



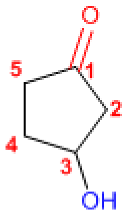
3-Metil-3-pentenal

j)



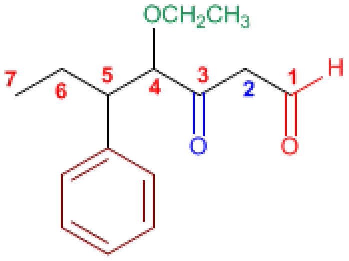
3-Oxobutanal

k)



3-Hidroxiciclopentanona

l)

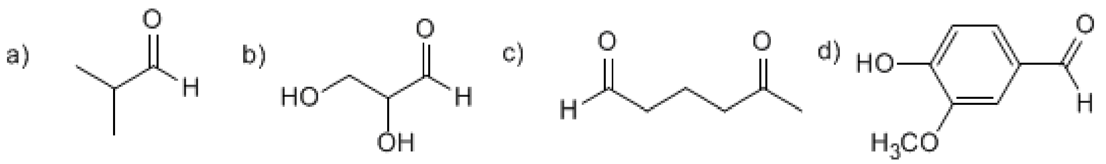


4-Etoxi-5-fenil-3-oxoheptanal

PROBLEMAS RESUELTOS DE ALDEHÍDOS Y CETONAS

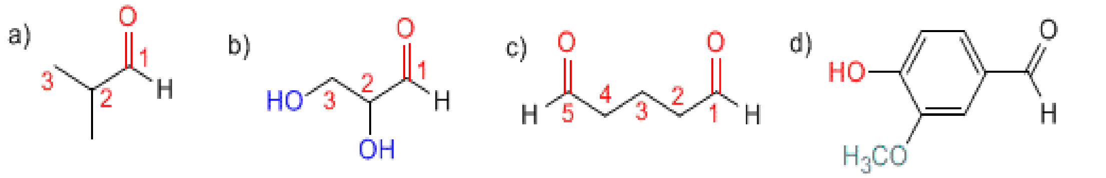
Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 1

1) A continuación se dan nombres comunes y las fórmulas estructurales de algunos compuestos carbonílicos. Indique el nombre correspondiente según la IUPAC.



isobutiraldehído gliceraldehído glutaraldehído vainillina

Solución

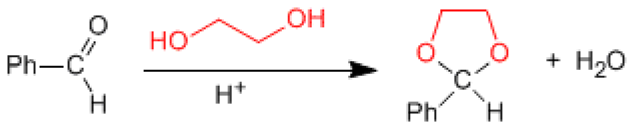


2-metilpropanal 2,3-dihidroxipropanal pentanodial 4-hidroxi-3-metoxibenzaldehído

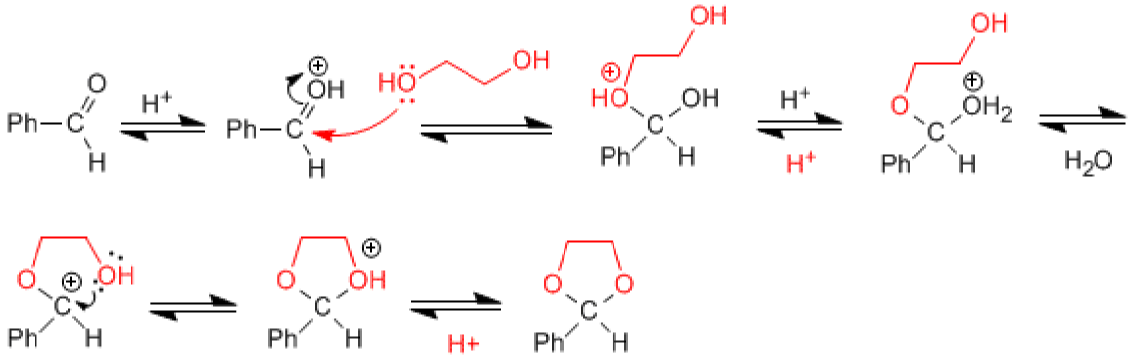
Aldehídos y cetonas: Problema 2

Dibuje la estructura del acetal que se forma cuando el benzaldehído se calienta con 1,2-etanodiol en medio ácido. Escriba un mecanismo detallado que justifique su formación. Describa paso a paso la hidrólisis de este acetal en medio ácido acuoso.

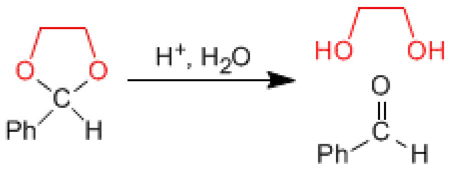
SOLUCIÓN



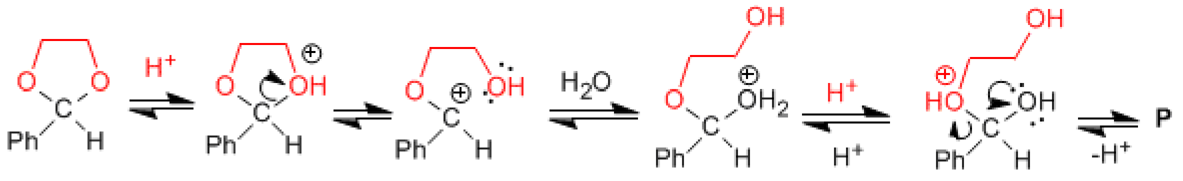
Mecanismo de formación del acetal:



La hidrólisis del acetal en medio ácido acuoso sigue es etapas inversas a la síntesis.



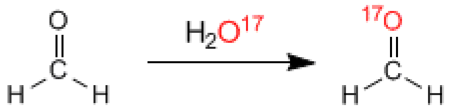
Mecanismo de hidrólisis del acetal cíclico.



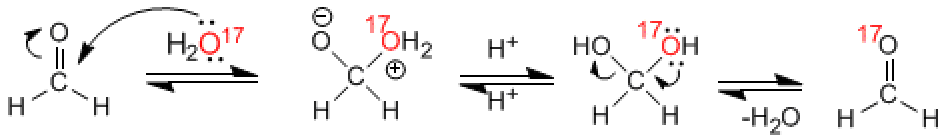
Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 3

Cuando se disuelve formaldehido en agua marcada con ^{17}O, se observa que después de unas horas tanto el hidrato del formaldehido como el formaldehido han incorporado el isótopo ^{17}O. Sugiera una explicación razonable de este hecho.

SOLUCION



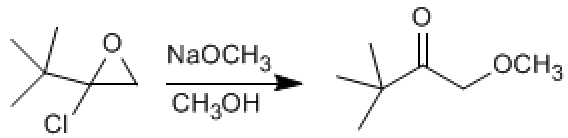
Mecanismo:



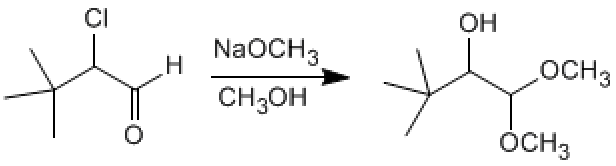
Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 4

Sugiera un mecanismo razonable para una de las siguientes reacciones:

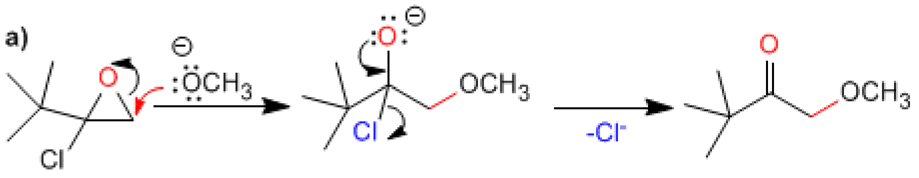
a)



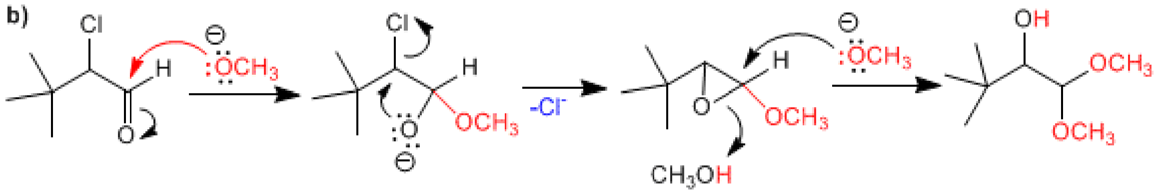
b)



SOLUCION



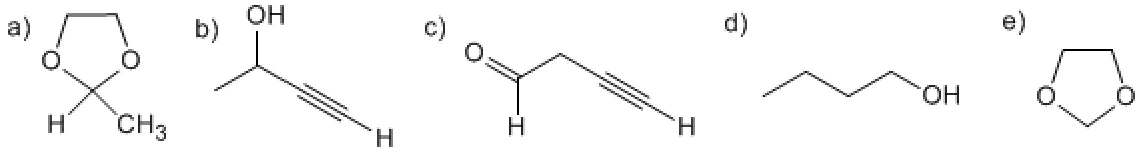
La primera etapa consiste en la apertura del oxaciclopropano sobre el carbono menos sustituido. En la segunda etpa, la cesión del par del oxígeno elimina el cloro, formándose un carbonilo.



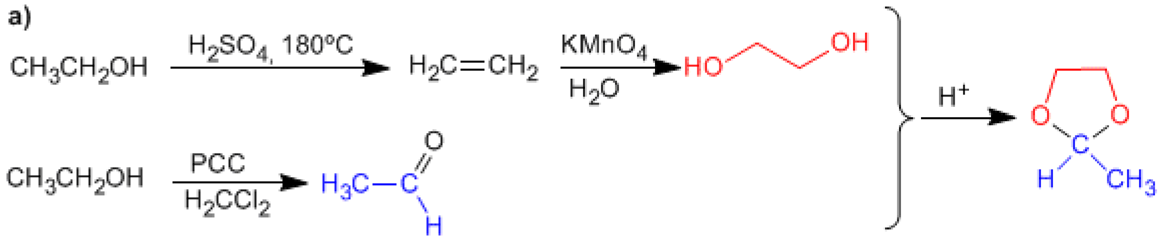
En el primer paso hay dos posibles posiciones de ataque; el carbono carbonilo y el carbono del cloro. Como el producto final no tiene metóxido en el carbono del cloro, atacamos al carbonilo. En la segunda etapa se produce una sustitución nucleófila intramolecular. Para terminar el metóxido abre el epóxido.

Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 5

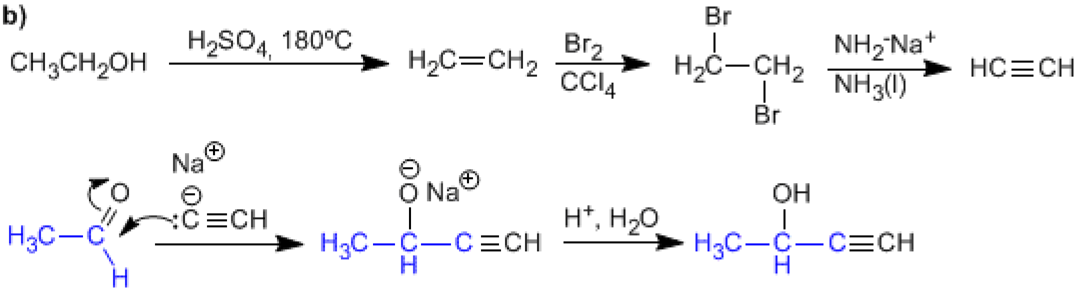
Usando etanol como fuente de todos los átomos de carbono y los reactivos que necesite, describa una síntesis eficiente de cada una de las sustancias siguientes:



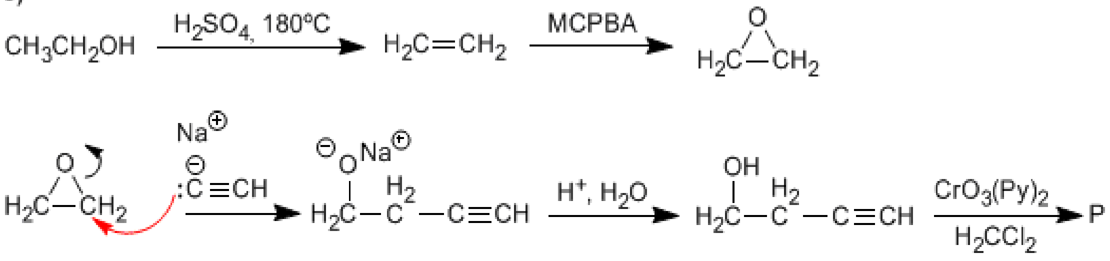
SOLUCIÓN



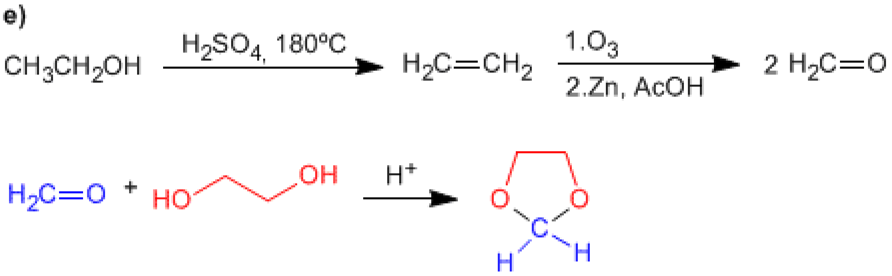
b)



c)

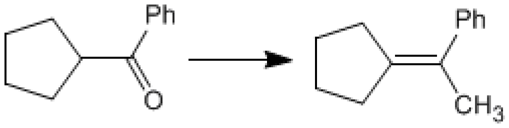


e)

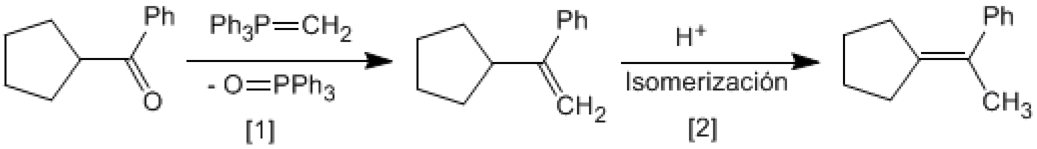


Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 6

Utilizando los reactivos necesarios, indicar las etapas que permiten realizar la siguiente transformación:



SOLUCIÓN

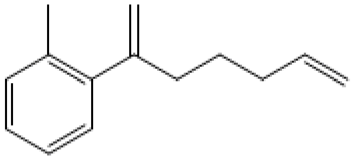


[1] Reacción de Wittig

[2] Isomerización en medio ácido, impulsada por la mayor estabilidad del alqueno interno.

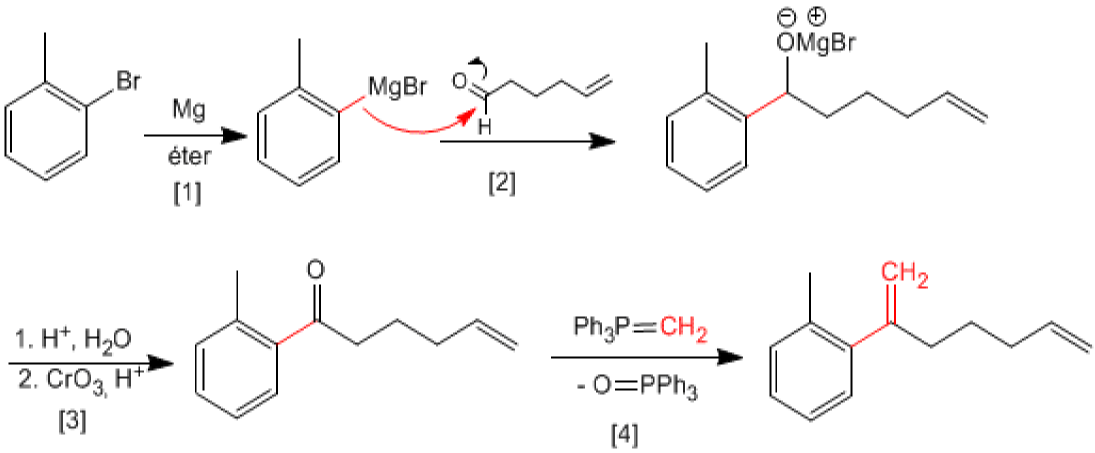
Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 7

A partir de 5-hexenal y o-bromotolueno obtener el siguiente producto.



Pueden ser necesarios reactivos orgánicos e inorgánicos adicionales.

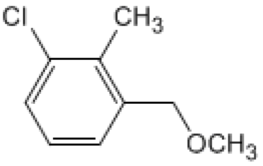
SOLUCIÓN



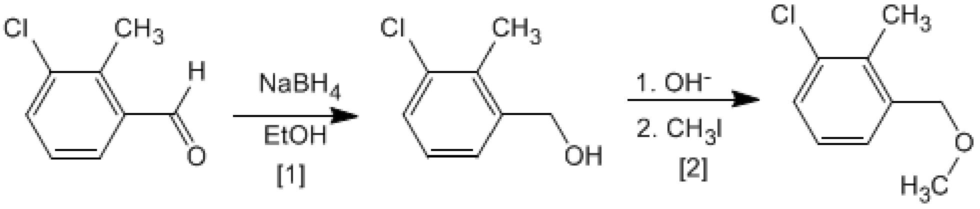
[1] Formación del magnesiano
[2] Ataque nucleófilo del magnesiano al carbonilo.
[3] Hidrólisis y posterior oxidación del alcohol secundario.
[4] Reacción de Wittig entre la cetona y el trifenilmetilenfosforano.

Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 8

Obtener a partir de 3-cloro-2-metilbenzaldehído y de los reactivos necesarios el compuesto siguiente:



SOLUCIÓN

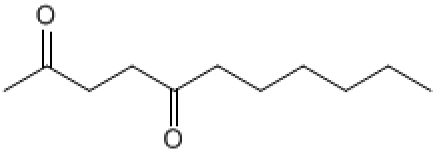


[1] Reducción del aldehído a alcohol

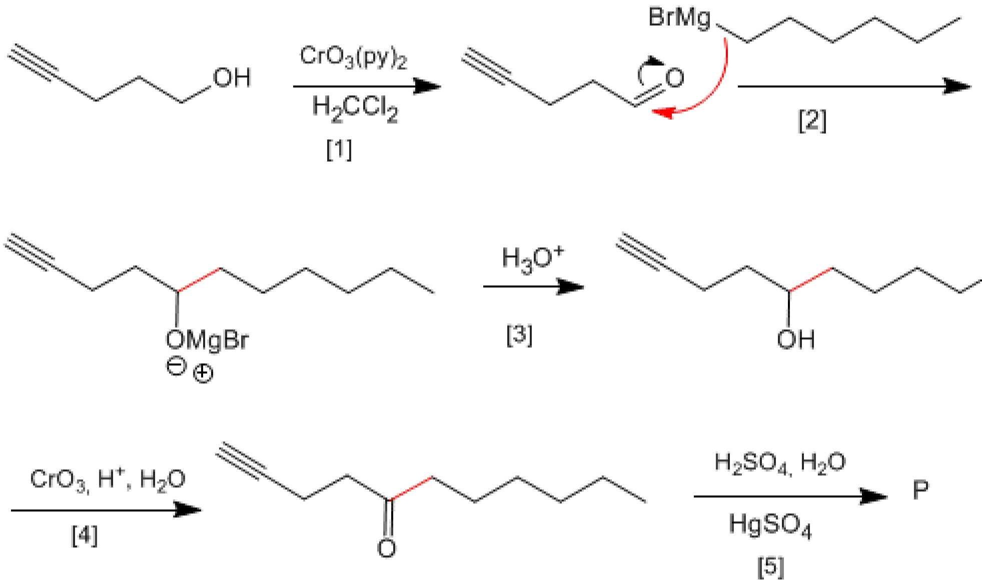
[2] Síntesis de Williamson de éteres.

Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 9

A partir de 4-pentin-1-ol obtener:



SOLUCIÓN

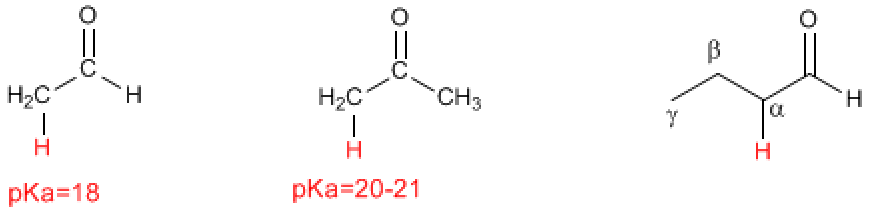


[1] Oxidación del alcohol a aldehído
[2] Formación del enlace carbono-carbono mediante organometálicos de magnesio
[3] Protonación del alcohol
[4] Oxidación del alcohol con Jones (Puedes utilizar también $CrO_3(py)_2$)
[5] Hidratación Markovnikov del alquino, para formar cetonas

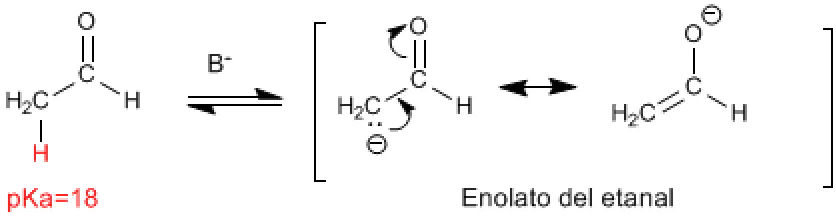
TEORÍA DE ENOLES Y ENOLATOS

Formación de Enolatos

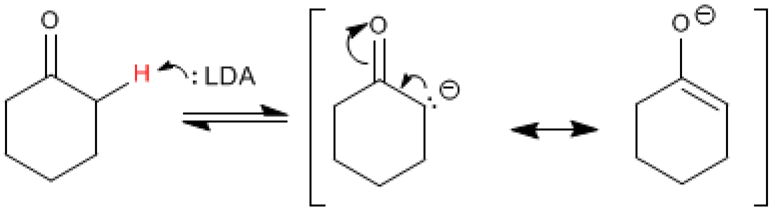
Los aldehídos y cetonas presentan hidrógenos ácidos en la posición vecina al grupo carbonilo, conocida como posición alfa. Estos hidrógenos presentan un pKa comprendido entre 18 y 21.



La acidez de los hidrógenos α es debida a la estabilización de la base conjugada (enolato) por resonancia.



Enolato del etanal

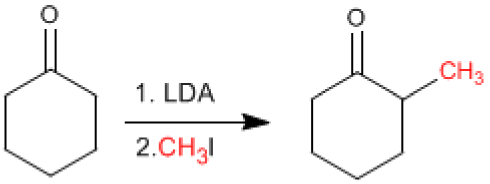


Enolato de la ciclohexanona

Alquilación de Enolatos

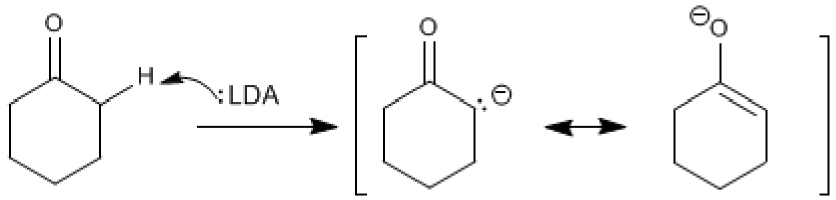
Los enolatos actúan como nucleófilos a través del carbono atacando a un gran número de electrófilos (haloalcanos, epóxidos, carbonilos, ésteres.....). En este punto nos fijaremos en la reacción entre enlolatos y haloalcanos, que permite añadir cadenas carbonadas a la posición a de la cadena.

La Ciclohexanona se convierte en 2-Metilciclhexanona por tratamiento con LDA seguido de yoduro de metilo.

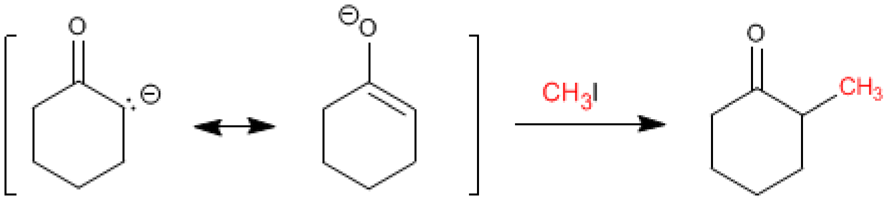


Etapas del mecanismo por el que se alquila la ciclohexanona:

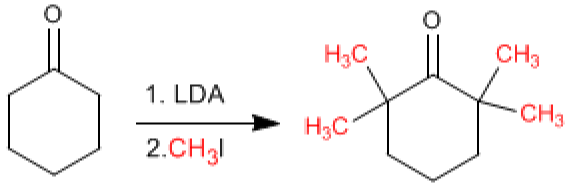
Etapa 1. Formación del enolato



Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enolato sobre el haloalcano (Reacción de tipo S_N2)



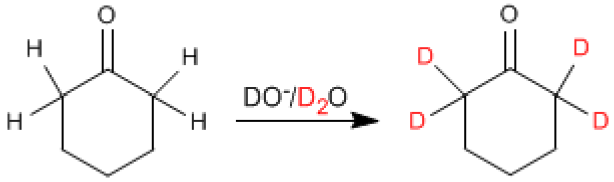
Las reacciones de alquilación tienen dos importantes problemas.
1. Competencia con la condensación aldólica. Los carbonilos en medio básico tienden a condensar para formar aldoles.
2. La reacción es difícil de controlar y tiende a polialquilar el carbonilo.



Ciclohexanona polialquilada

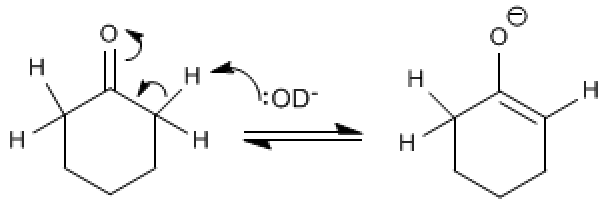
Intercambio hidrógeno - Deuterio

Los aldehídos y cetonas intercambian sus hidrógenos a por deuterios cuando se tratan con DO^-/D_2O o con D^+/D_2O. En medios básicos la reacción transcurre a través de enolatos y en medios ácidos los intermedios formados son enoles.

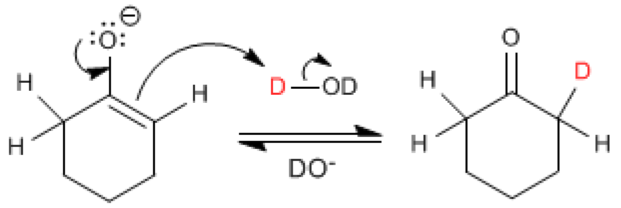


El mecanismo del intercambio hidrógeno-deuterio transcurre en los siguientes pasos:

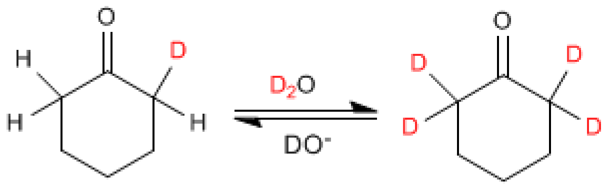
Etapa 1. Formación del enolato



Etapa 2. Transferencia del deuterio al enolato



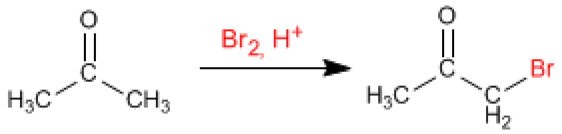
Etapa 3. Sustitución del resto de hidrógenos



Halogenación de aldehídos y cetonas

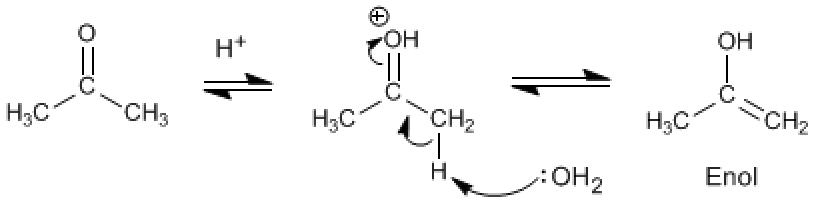
Los aldehídos y cetonas reaccionan con halógenos en medios ácidos o básicos produciéndose la sustitución de hidrógenos a por halógenos.

Halogenación de la propanona en medio ácido:

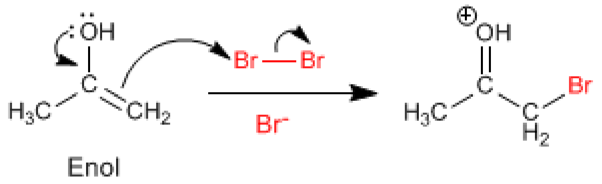


El mecanismo de halogenación en **medio ácido** tiene las siguientes etapas:

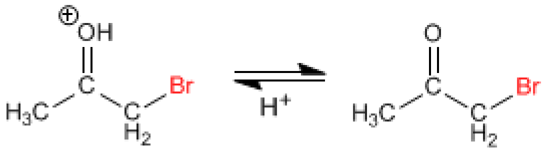
Etapa 1. Formación del enol



Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enol sobre el halógeno ayudado por la cesión del para del oxígeno.

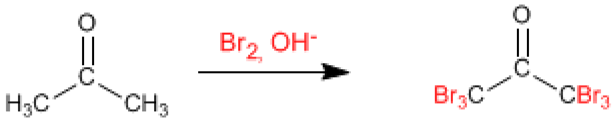


Etapa 3. Desprotonación



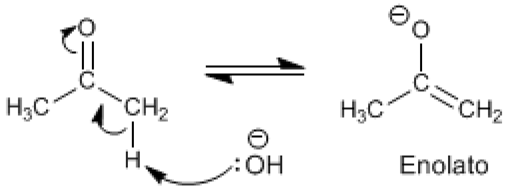
Trabajando con un equivalente de reactivo la halogenación para en una primera adición y no ocurren polialogenaciones. El paso clave del mecanismo es la formación del enol y esta etapa requiere protonar el oxígeno del carbonilo. Una vez halogenada la posición a el oxígeno se vuelve menos básico, debido al efecto electronegativo del bromo, protonándose peor .

Halogenación de la propanona en **medio basico**:

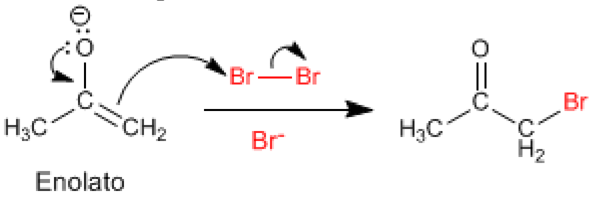


La halogenación en medio básico tiene el siguiente mecanismo:

Etapa 1. Formación del enolato



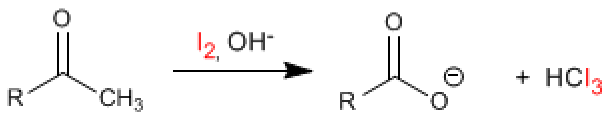
Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enolato sobre el halógeno ayudado por la cesión del para del oxígeno.



Este mecanismo se repite otras 5 veces sustituyendo todos los hidrógenos a por halógenos. En este caso la reacción no para puesto que el producto halogenado es más reactivo que la propanona de partida. La base arranca mejor los hidrógenos en el producto halogenado (son más ácidos), haciendo imposible parar la reacción.

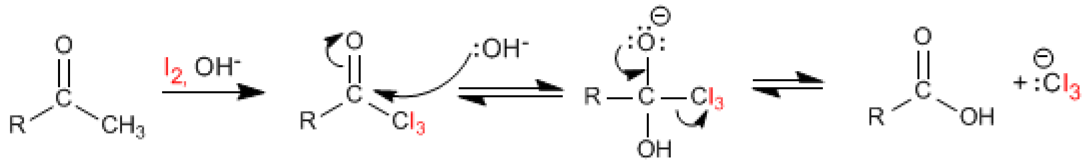
Reacción del Haloformo (Yodoformo)

Las cetonas metílicas **[1]** reaccionan con halógenos en medios básicos generando carboxilatos **[2]** y haloformo [**3**].



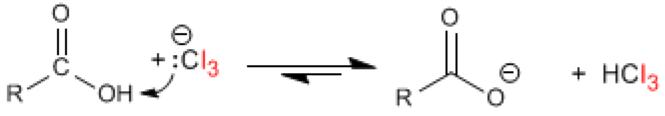
[1] [2] [3]

El mecanismo consiste en halogenar completamente el metilo, sustituyendo en una etapa posterior el grupo $-CX_3$ formado por -OH.



[1] [4] [5] [6] [7]

El grupo CI_3^- es muy básico y desprotona el ácido carboxílico formándose yodoformo y el carboxilato.

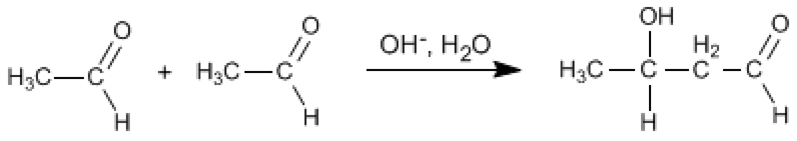


[6] [7] [2] [3]

Esta reacción (con yodo) puede emplearse como ensayo analítico para identificar cetonas metílicas aprovechando que el yodoformo precipita de color amarillo.

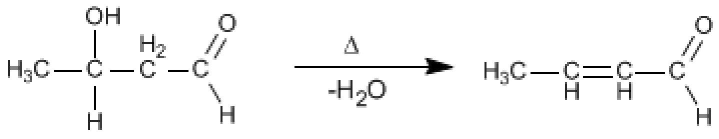
Condensación Aldólica

Aldehídos y cetonas [1] condensan en medios básicos formando aldoles [2]. Esta reacción se denomina condensación aldólica.



[1] [2]

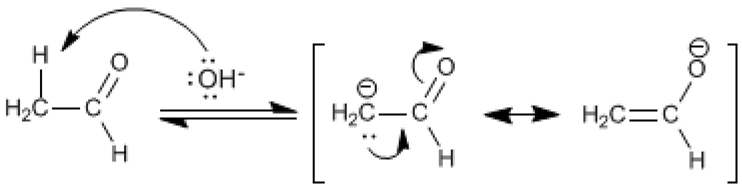
El aldol [2] formado deshidrata en el medio básico por calentamiento para formar un α,β-insaturado [3].



[2] [3]

El mecanismo de la condensación aldólica transcurre con formación de un enolato, que ataca al carbonilo de otra molécula. En esta condensación se forma un enlace carbono-carbono entre el carbonilo de una molécula y el carbono α de la otra.

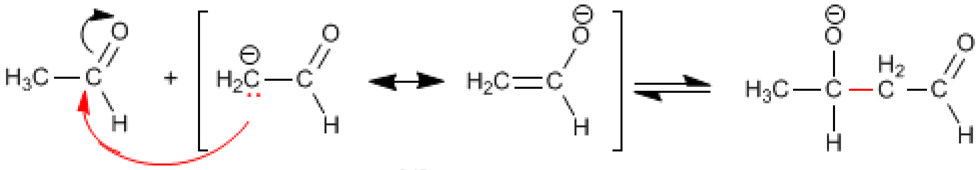
Etapa 1. Formación del enolato



[1] [4]

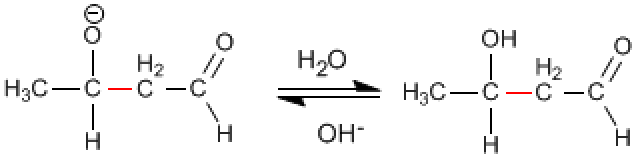
La base despotona el carbono alfa del etanal [1] generando el enolato [4] estabilizado por resonancia.

Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enolato sobre el carbonilo



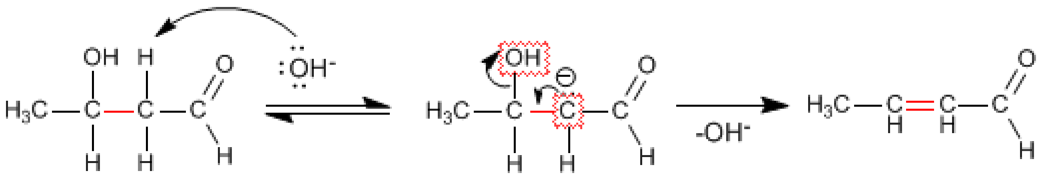
[1] [4] [5]

Etapa 3. Protonación



[5] [2]

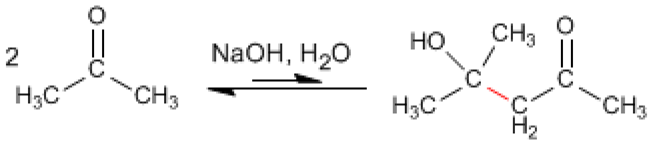
Etapa 4. Deshidratación del aldol



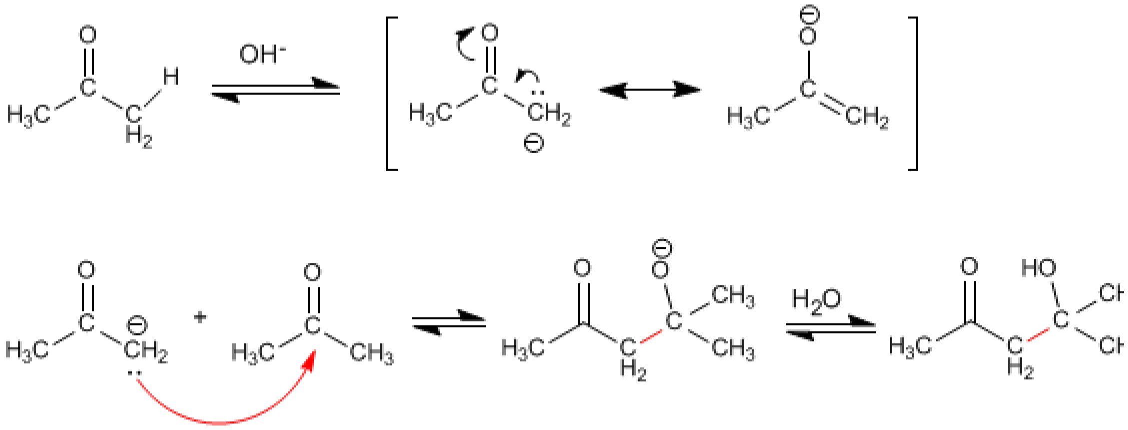
[2] [6] [3]

Condensación aldólica con cetonas

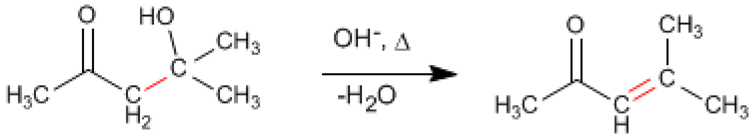
Las cetonas son menos reactivas que los aldehídos y dan un rendimiento muy bajo en la condensación aldólica. Asi, dos moléculas de propanona condensan para formar el aldol correspondiente con un rendimiento del 2%. Se pueden conseguir porcentajes elevados del producto separándolo del medio de reacción según se va formando, o bien, calentando para deshidratarlo. De ambas formas los equilibrios de la aldólica se desplazan hacia el producto final.



Mecanismo de la reacción:

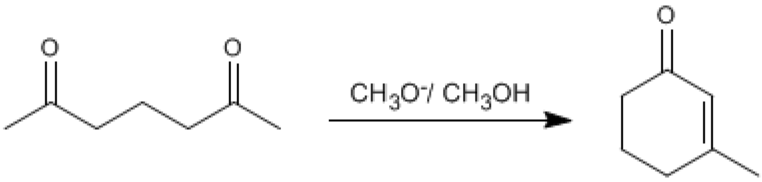


La deshidratación final permite el desplazamiento de los equilibrios. También se puede realizar una extracción del aldol del medio de reacción para favorecer la reacción.



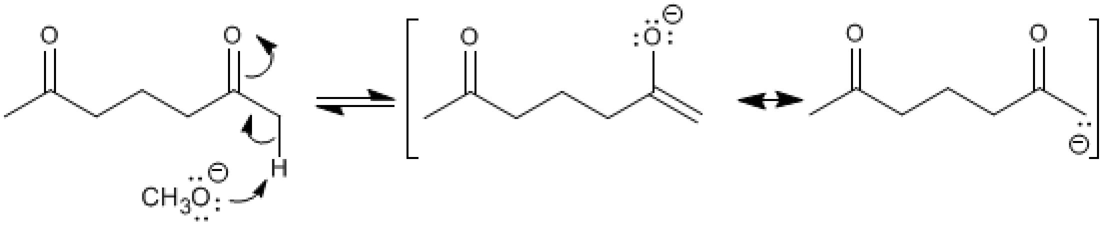
Condensación aldólica intramolecular

Los compuestos dicarbonílicos condensan mediante la aldólica intramolecular en medios básicos. En esta reacción se obtienen ciclos de cinco o seis miembros. Así, la 2,6-heptanodiona condensa con metóxido en metanol para formar el 3-metilciclohex-2-enona.

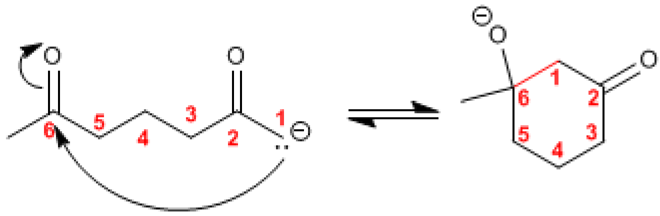


El mecanismo de la reacción transcurre a través de las siguientes etapas:

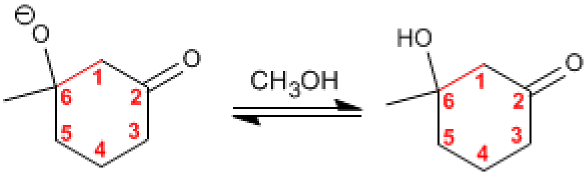
Etapa 1. Formación del enolato.



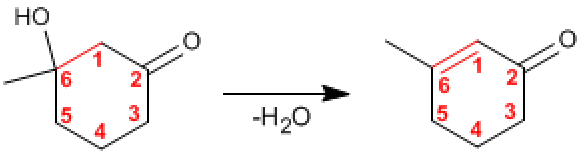
Etapa 2. Adición nucleófila intramolecular



Etapa 3. Protonación de la base del aldol



Etapa 4. Deshidratación del aldol

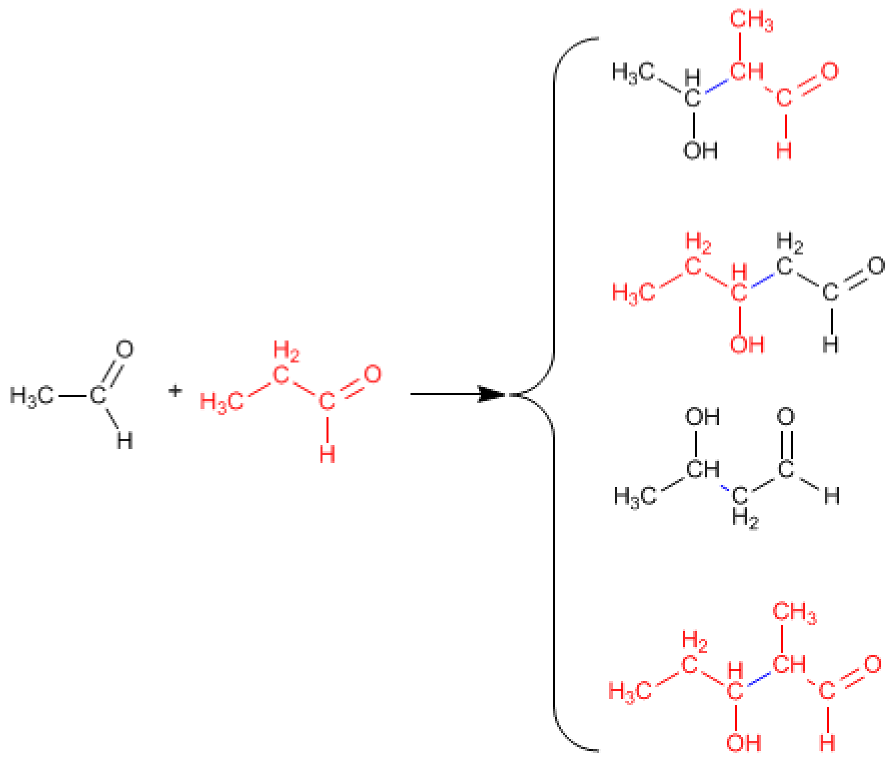


Condensación aldólica cruzada o mixta

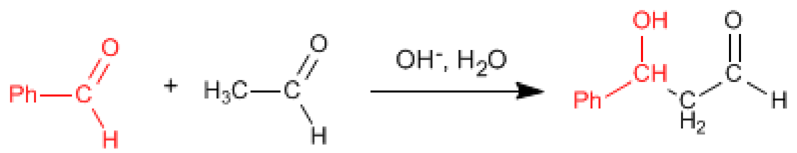
La reacción entre dos carbonilos diferentes se llama aldólica cruzada o mixta. Esta reacción sólo tiene utilidad sintética en dos casos:

1. Sólo uno de los carbonilos puede formar enolatos.
2. Uno de los carbonilos es mucho más reactivo que el otro.

En el resto de situaciones la aldólica mixta genera mezclas de cuatro productos. Veamos como ejemplo la condensación del etanal y propanal.

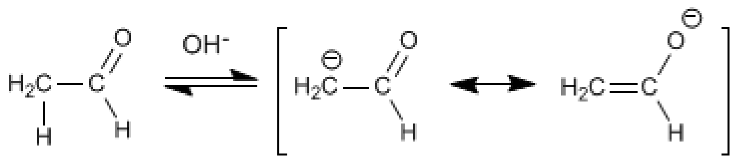


La condensación aldólica mixta del etanal con el benzaldehído genera un producto, cuando se trabaja en exceso de benzaldehído, debido a que el benzaldehído carece de hidrógenos en el carbono alfa y no puede formar enolatos.



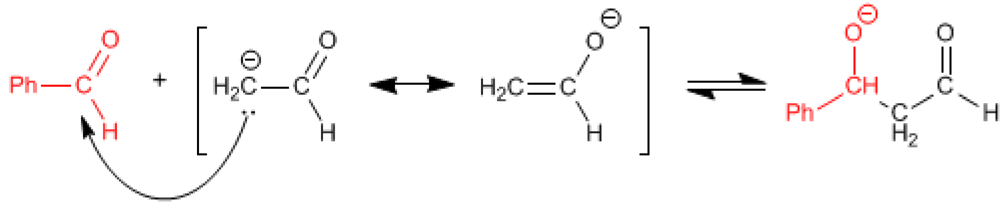
El mecanismo de esta reacción tiene lugar en las siguientes etapas:

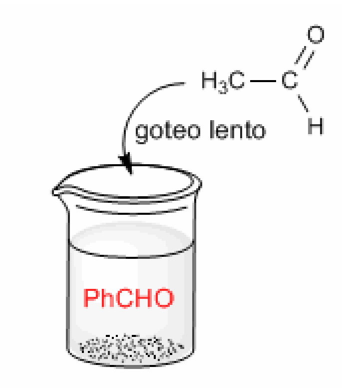
Etapa 1. Enolización del etanal



La formación de enolatos sólo puede tener lugar con el etanal, puesto que el benzaldehído carece de hidrógenos ácidos en el carbono alfa.

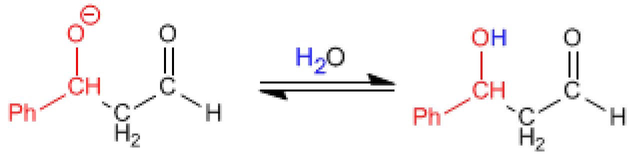
Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enolato al benzaldehído.





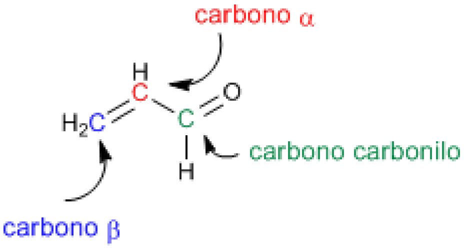
En esta etapa puede ocurrir el ataque del enolato de etanal sobre si
mismo. Para evitarlo debe trabajarse en exceso de benzaldehído. Un procedimiento experimental muy usado para evitar la condensación del etanal consigo mismo es gotear léntamente el etanal sobre una disolución básica de benzaldehído

Etapa 3. Protonación



Síntesis de carbonilos alfa,beta-insaturados

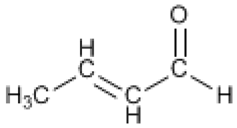
Los carbonilos α,β-insturados son compuestos orgánicos que tienen un doble enlace entre las posiciones α,β de un aldehído o cetona.



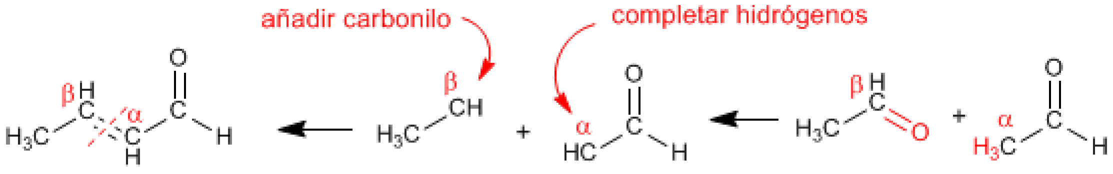
El propenal o acroleina es un carbonilo α,β-insaturado. Sus dos dobles enlaces conjugados le confieren una reactividad especial.

Existen 4 métodos importantes para la preparación de α,β-insaturados: condensación aldólica, halogenación del carbono α seguida de eliminación, oxidación de alcoholes alílicos y Wittig.

Método 1. Preparar mediante la condensación aldólica el siguiente compuesto.



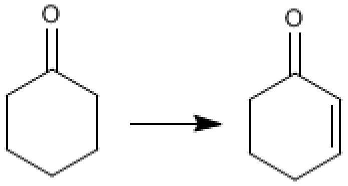
Empleamos la retrosíntesis para preparar el compuesto. Al ser de la familia de los α,β-insaturados se puede obtener mediante la condensación aldólica.



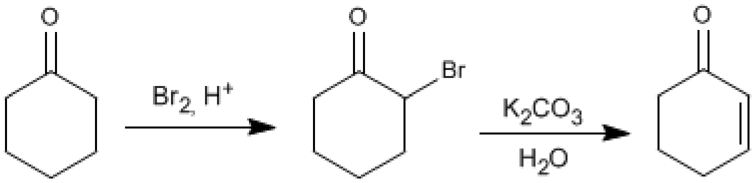
Sintones

Para obtener los reactivos que forman el α,β-insaturado se rompe por el doble enlace, obteniéndose los sintones (equivalentes sintéticos). Los reactivos se obtienen añadiendo al carbono β un carbonilo y completando los hidrógeno que faltan en el carbono α.

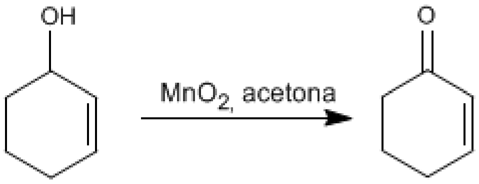
Ejemplo 2. Indicar como se puede realizar las siguiente transformación.



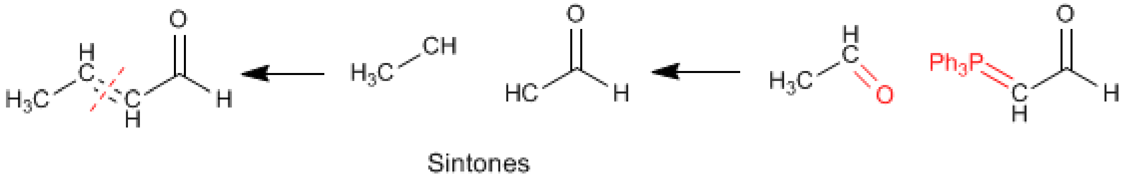
En una primera etapa se halogena la posición a del carbonilo. En la segunda etapa se realiza una eliminación que nos deja el producto final.



Método 3. La oxidación de alcoholes alílicos con dióxido de manganeso en acetona produce α,β-insaturados

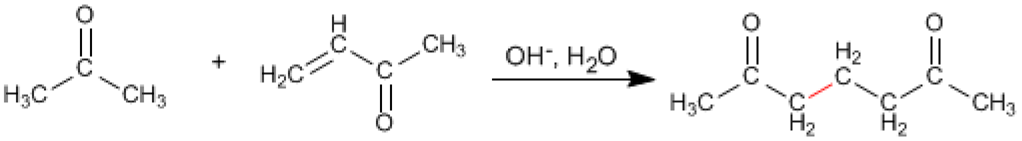


Método 4. Reacción de Wittig



Adición de Michael y anelación de Robinson

Los enolatos de aldehídos o cetonas se adicionan a los α,β-insaturados para formar 1,5-dicarbonilos. Esta reacción se denomina adición de Michael.



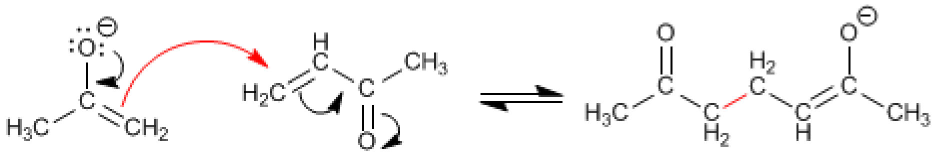
[1] [2] [3]

La propanona [1] reacciona con el α,β-insaturado [2] para formar el 1,5-dicarbonilo [3]

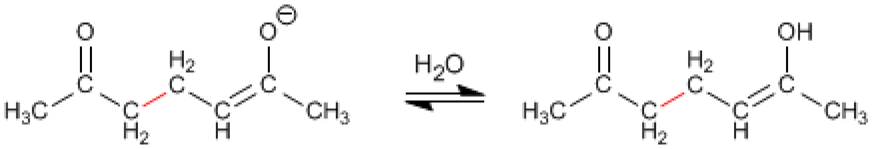
Mecanismo de la Adición de Michael:

Etapa 1. Formación del enolato.

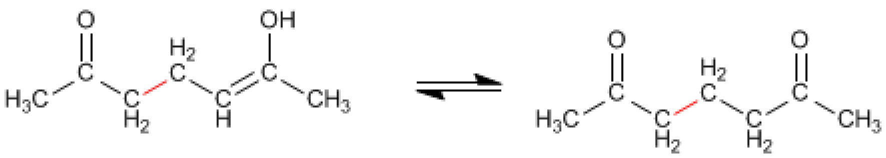
Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enolato al carbono β del α,β-insaturado.



Etapa 3. Equilibrio ácido-base



Etapa 4. Tautomería ceto-enol



El producto de Michael puede condensar mediante una aldólica intramolecular, formando un α,β-insaturado. El conjunto de la adición de Michael y la aldólica final se conoce como reacción de Robinson

Chemsoft ®

Química Orgánica

Recopilación : 2da Edición - 2009

José A.

Química Orgánica

Recopilación: 2da Edición

Diciembre 2009

Por: José07070012

Índice:

i. Alcoholes

ii. Éteres

iii. Aldehídos y Cetonas

iv. Enoles y Enolatos

v. Benceno

Por: José07070012

SÍNTESIS Y REACTIVIDAD DE ALCOHOLES

Alcoholes - características generales

Los alcoholes son compuesto orgánicos que contienen el grupo hidroxilo (-OH). El metanol es el alcohol más sencillo, se obtiene por reducción del monóxido de carbono con hidrógeno.

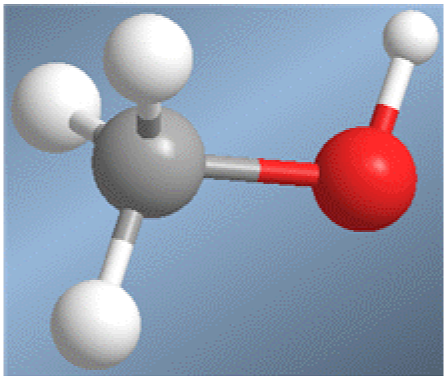
$$CO + 2H_2 \xrightarrow[400^oC]{ZnO\ /\ Cr_2O_3} CH_3OH$$

El metanol es un líquido incoloro, su punto de ebullición es 65ºC, miscible en agua en todas las proporciones y venenoso (35 ml pueden matar una persona)
La mitad del metanol producido se oxida a metanal (formaldehído), material de partida para la fabricación de resinas y plásticos.

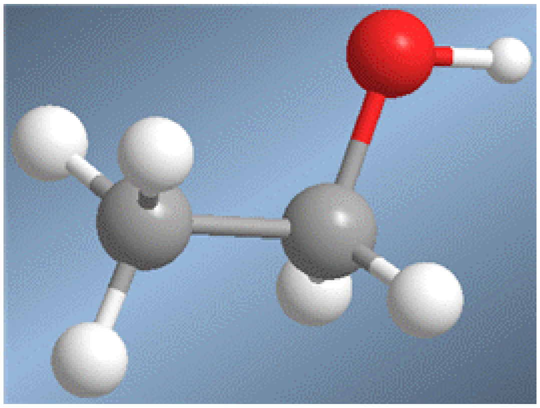
El etanol se obtiene por fermentación de materia vegetal, obteniéndose una concentración máxima de 15% en etanol. Por destilación se puede aumentar esta concentración hasta el 98%.
También se puede obtener etanol por hidratación del etileno (eteno) que se obtiene a partir del petróleo.

$$H_2C{=}CH_2 \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4,\ H_2O} CH_3CH_2OH$$

El etanol es un líquido incoloro, miscible en agua en todas proporciones, con punto de ebullición de 78ºC. Es fácilmente metabolizado por nuestros organismos, aunque su abuso causa alcoholismo.



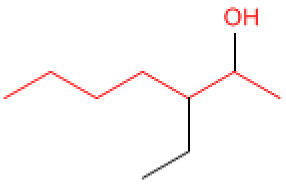
(metanol) CH_3OH

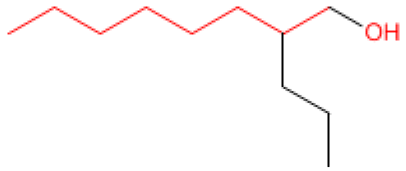


(etanol) CH_3CH_2OH

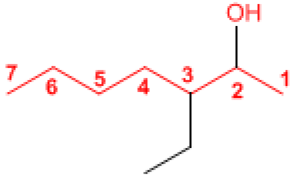
Nomenclatura de Alcoholes

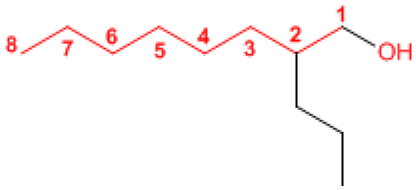
Regla 1. Se elige como cadena principal la de mayor longitud que contenga el grupo -OH.



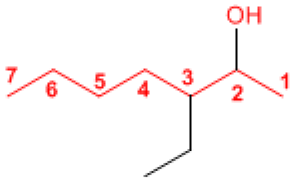


Regla 2. Se numera la cadena principal para que el grupo -OH tome el localizador más bajo. El grupo hidroxilo tiene preferencia sobre cadenas carbonadas, halógenos, dobles y triples enlaces.

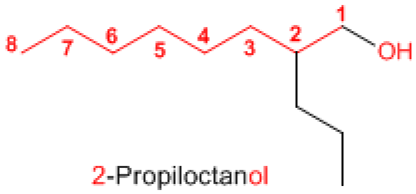




Regla 3. El nombre del alcohol se construye cambiando la terminación -o del alcano con igual número de carbonos por -ol

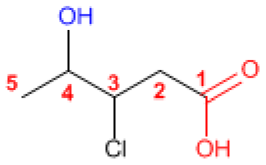


3-Etilheptanol

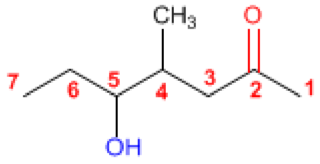


2-Propiloctanol

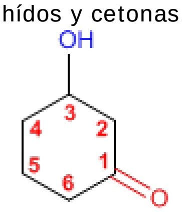
Regla 4. Cuando en la molécula hay grupos grupos funcionales de mayor prioridad, el alcohol pasa a serun mero sustituyente y se llama hidroxi-. Son prioritarios frente a los alcoholes: ácidos carboxílicos, anhídridos, ésteres, haluros de alcanoilo, amidas, nitrilos, aldehídos y cetonas.



Ácido 3-cloro-4-hidroxipentanoico

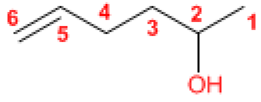


5-Hidroxi-4-metilheptanona

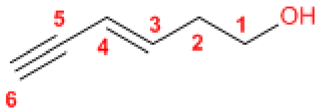


3-Hidroxiciclohexanona

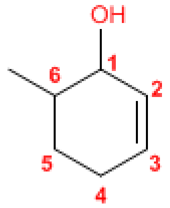
Regla 5. El grupo -OH es prioritario frente a los alquenos y alquinos. La numeración otorga el localizador más bajo al -OH y el nombre de la molécula termina en -ol.



Hex-5-en-2-ol



Hex-3-en-5-in-1-ol



6-Metilciclohex-2-en-1-ol

Acidez y basicidad de alcoholes

Los alcoholes son especies anfóteras (anfipróticas), pueden actuar como ácidos o bases. En disolución acuosa se establece un equilibrio entre el alcohol, el agua y sus bases conjugadas.

$$CH_3OH + H_2O \overset{Ka}{\rightleftharpoons} CH_3O^- + H_3O^+$$

Escribiendo la constante del equilibrio (Ka)

$$Ka = \frac{[H_3O^+][CH_3O^-]}{[CH_3OH]} = 10^{-15.5}$$

El pequeño valor de la constante nos indica que el equilibrio está totalmente desplazado a la izquierda. El logaritmo cambiado de signo de la constante de equilibrio nos da el pKa del metanol, parámetro que indica el grado de acidez de un compuesto orgánico.

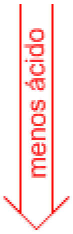
pKa = - log ka = 15.5

El aumento del pKa supone una disminución de la acidez. Asi, el metanol con un pka de 15.5 es ligeramente más ácido que el etanol con pka de 15.9.

El pKa de los alcoholes se ve influenciado por algunos factores como son el tamaño de la cadena carbonada y los grupos electronegativos

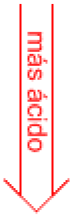
Al aumentar el tamaño de la cadena carbonada el alcohol se vuelve menos ácido.

CH_3OH	pKa = 15.5
CH_3CH_2OH	pKa = 15.9
$(CH_3)_2CHOH$	pKa = 17.1
$(CH_3)_3COH$	pKa = 18



Los grupos electronegativos (halógenos) aumentan la acidez de los alcoholes (bajan el pKa)

CH_3CH_2OH	pKa = 15.9
$ClCH_2CH_2OH$	pKa = 14,3
F_3CCH_2OH	pKa = 12,4



Síntesis de Alcoholes a partir de Haloalcanos

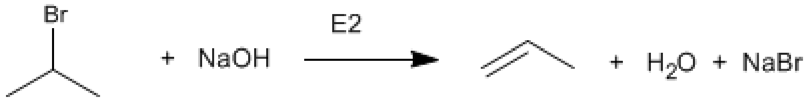
Los alcoholes se pueden obtener a partir de haloalcanos mediante reacciones S_N2 y S_N1

Síntesis de alcoholes mediante S_N2

Los haloalcanos primarios reaccionan con hidróxido de sodio para formar alcoholes. Haloalcanos secundarios y terciarios eliminan para formar alquenos.

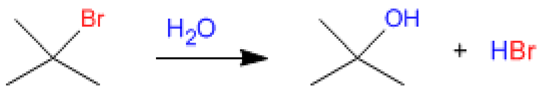
$$CH_3CH_2Br + NaOH \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2OH + NaBr$$

El bromuro de isopropilo (sustrato secundario) elimina al reaccionar con el ión hidróxido.



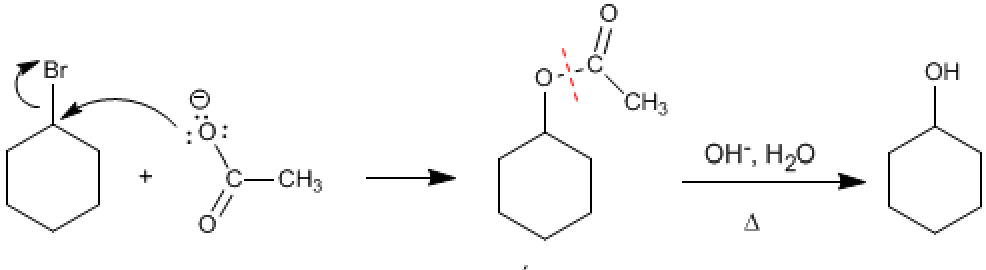
Síntesis de alcoholes mediante SN1

Los sustratos secundarios y terciarios reaccionan con agua mediante mecanismo S_N1 para formar alcoholes.



Hidrólisis de ésteres

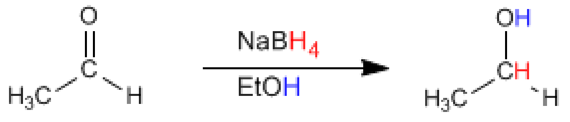
Es un método interesante para preparar alcoholes a partir de haloalcanos secundarios. El haloalcano se convierte en éster por reacción con acetato de sodio, para después hidrolizarse en medio ácido o básico, obteniéndose el alcohol.



Éster

Síntesis de Alcoholes por reducción de carbonilos

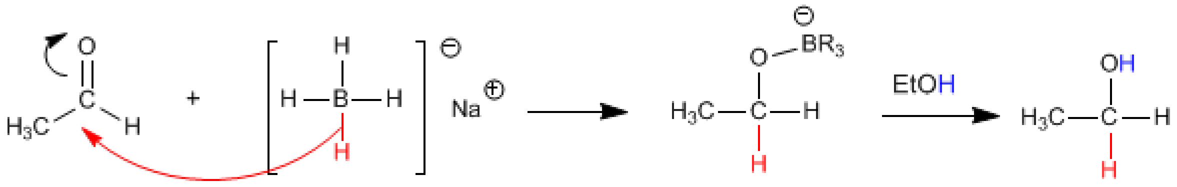
Tanto el borohidruro de sodio ($NaBH_4$) como el hidruro de litio y aluminio ($LiAlH_4$) reducen aldehídos y cetonas a alcoholes.



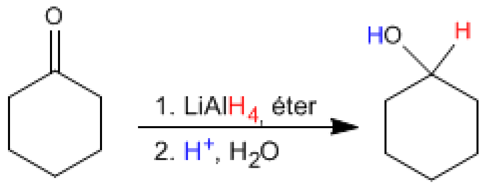
[1] [2]

El etanal [1] se transforma por reducción con el borohidruro de sodio en etanol [2].

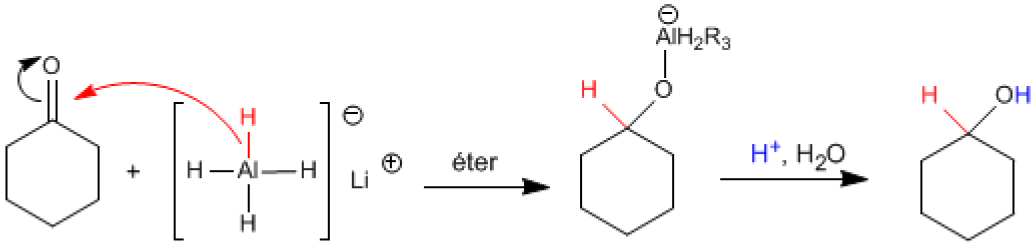
El mecanismo transcurre por ataque del hidruro procedente del reductor sobre el carbono carbonilo. En una segunda etapa el disolvente protona el oxígeno del alcóxido.



El hidruro de litio y aluminio trabaja en medio éter y transforma aldehídos y cetonas en alcoholes después de una etapa de hidrólisis ácida.



El mecanismo es análogo al del borohidruro de sodio.



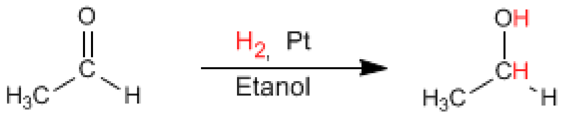
El reductor de lítio y aluminio es más reactivo que el de boro, reacciona con el agua y los alcoholes desprendiendo hidrógeno. Por ello, debe disolverse en medios apróticos (éter).

$$LiAlH_4 + 4CH_3OH \longrightarrow LiAl(OCH_3)_4 + 4H\text{-}H$$

El reductor de boro, menos reactivo, descompone lentamente en medios próticos, lo que permite utilizarlo disuelto en etanol o agua.

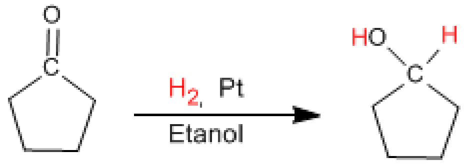
Síntesis de Alcoholes por hidrogenación de Carbonilos

Otro método para preparar alcoholes consiste en la reducción de aldehídos o cetonas a alcoholes. El método más simple es la hidrogenación del doble enlace carbono-oxígeno, utilizando hidrógeno en presencia de un catalizador de platino, paladio, niquel o rutenio.



[1] [2]

El etanal [1] se transforma por hidrogenación del doble enlace en etanol [2]

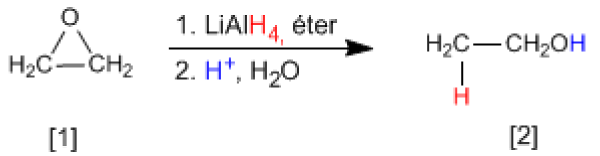


[1] [2]

La ciclopentanona [1] se transforma por hidrogenación en ciclopentanol [2]

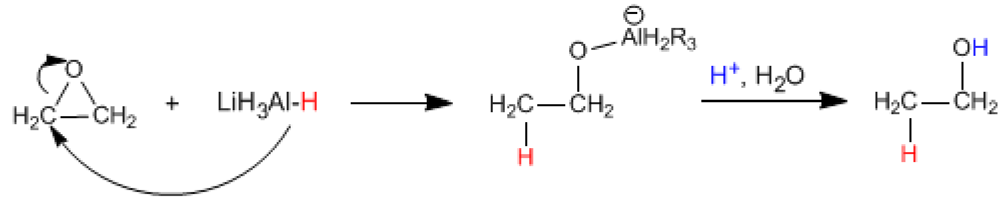
Síntesis de Alcoholes a partir de Epóxidos

Los alcoholes se pueden obtener por apertura de epóxidos (oxaciclopropanos). Esta apertura se puede realizar empleando reactivos organometálicos o el reductor de litio y aluminio.

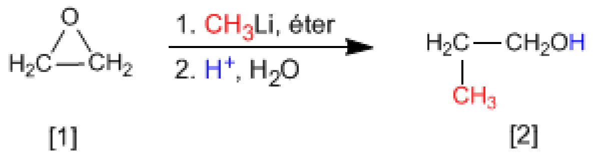


El oxaciclopropano [1] se transforma por reducción con hidruro de litio y aluminio en etanol [2].

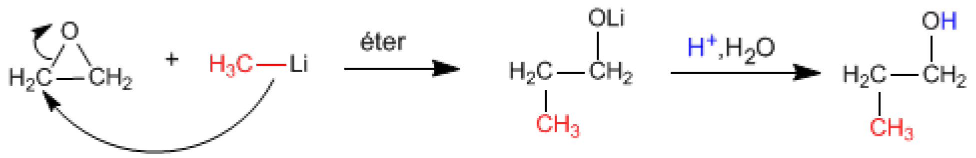
El mecanismo el mecanismo de la reacción comienza con el ataque el hidruro procedente del redutor sobre el carbono polarizado positivamente del epóxido, para terminar con la protonación del alcóxido



Los reactivos de Grignard (organometálicos de magnesio) y los organolíticos reaccionan con oxaciclopropano para dar un alcohol primario.



El metillitio ataca al oxaciclopropano [1] para formar propan-1-ol [2]

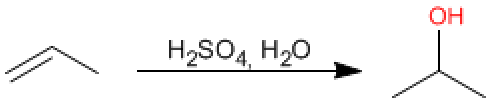


Síntesis de Alcoholes por Hidratación de Alquenos

Un método de síntesis para alcoholes, ya estudiado en la sección de alquenos, consiste en hidratar el alqueno. La adición del -OH puede ser en el carbono más sustituido del alqueno (Markovnikov), o bien, en el carbono menos sustituido (antiMarkovnikov).

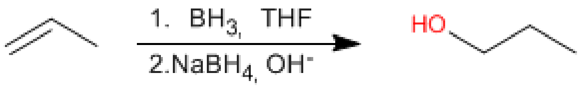
Hidratación Markovnikov

En esta hidratación el grupo hidroxilo va al carbono con más sustituyentes. Se emplea como reactivo sulfúrico acuoso, o bien, acetato de mercurio en agua, seguido de reducción con borohidruro de sodio.



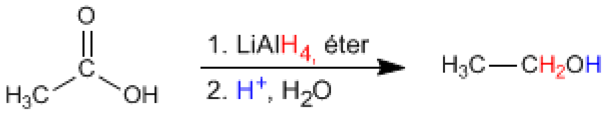
Hidratación antiMarkovnikov

El grupo hidroxilo se adiciona al carbono menos sustituido. El reactivo empleado es borano en THF seguido de oxidación con agua oxigenada en medio básico (hidroboración)



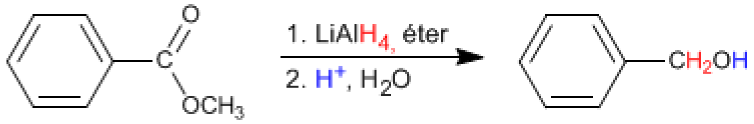
Síntesis de alcoholes por reducción de ácidos y ésteres

Los ácidos carboxílicos y los ésteres se reducen a alcoholes con el hidruro de litio y aluminio. Reductores más suaves como el borohidruro de sodio son incapaces de reducir estos compuestos.



[1] [2]

El ácido etanoico [1] se transforma por reducción con hidruro de litio y aluminio en etanol [2].

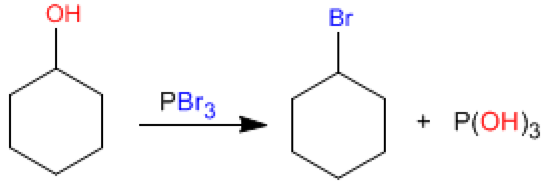


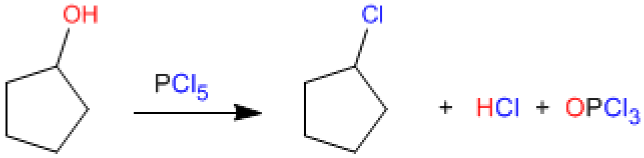
[1] [2]

El benzoato de metilo [1] se transforma en alcohol bencilico [2] por reducción con hidruro de litio y aluminio.

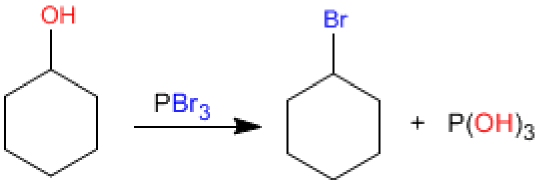
Síntesis de Haloalcanos a partir de Alcoholes

Los alcoholes primarios y secundarios pueden convertirse en haloalcanos con reactivos como: tribromuro de fósforo, tricloruro de fósforo, cloruro de tionilo y pentacloruro de fósforo.

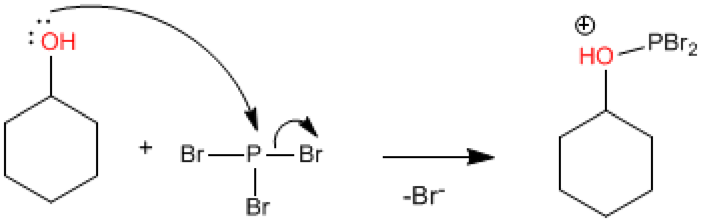




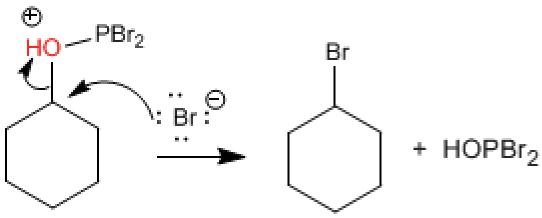
El mecanismo de estas reacciones es de tipo S_N2 y sólo los alcoholes primarios y secundarios reaccionan. Veamos el mecanismo de la primera reacción.



Etapa 1. Ataque del alcohol al tribromuro de fósforo



Etapa 2. Sustitución nucleófila bimolecular, actuando el bromuro como nucleófilo

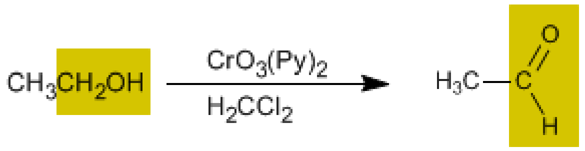


Todos los bromos del PBr_3 son reactivos y el mecanismo se repite dos veces más.

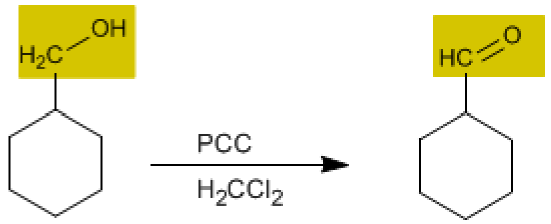
Oxidación de Alcoholes

La oxidación de alcoholes forma compuestos carbonilos. Al oxidar alcoholes primarios se obtienen aldehídos, mientras que la oxidación de alcoholes secundarios forma cetonas.

Oxidación de alcoholes primarios a aldehídos

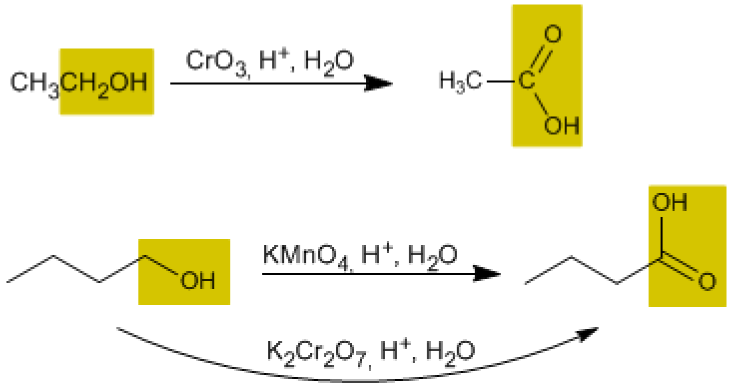


El trióxido de cromo con piridina en diclorometano permite aislar aldehídos con buen rendimiento a apartir de alcoholes primarios.
Se conoce como PCC (clorocromato de piridinio) al trióxido de cromo con piridina y ácido clorhídrico en diclorometano. Este reactivo también convierte alcoholes primarios en aldehídos.



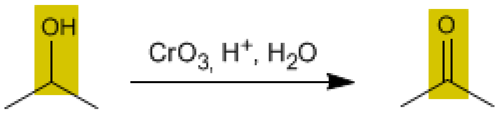
Oxidación de alcoholes primarios a ácidos carboxílicos

El trióxido de cromo en medio ácido acuoso (reactivo de Jones), el permanganato de potasio y el dicromato de potasio oxidan lo alcoholes primarios a ácidos carboxílicos.



Oxidación de alcoholes secundarios a cetonas

Los oxidantes convierten los alcoholes secundarios en cetonas. No es posible la sobreoxidación a ácido carboxílico.



Formación de Alcóxidos a partir de Alcoholes

Los alcóxidos son las bases de los alcoholes, se obtienen por reacción del alcohol con una base fuerte.

$$CH_3OH + OH^- \rightleftharpoons CH_3O^- + H_2O$$

pKa = 15.5 (metanol); metóxido; pKa = 15.7 (H_2O)

Los pKa de los ácidos conjugados son similares y el equilibrio no se encuentra desplazado. El ión hidróxido es una base demasiado débil para formar el alcóxido en cantidad importante.

$$CH_3OH + NH_2^- \rightleftharpoons CH_3O^- + NH_3$$

pKa = 15.5 (metanol); metóxido; pKa = 35 (NH_3)

El amiduro es una base muy fuerte y desplaza el equilibrio a la derecha, transformando el metanol en metóxido.

Otras bases fuertes que pueden ser usadas para formar alcóxidos son: hidruro de sodio, LDA, sodio metal.

$$CH_3OH + NaH \rightleftharpoons CH_3ONa + H_2$$

pKa = 15.5 (metanol); metóxido de sodio; pKa = 38 (H_2)

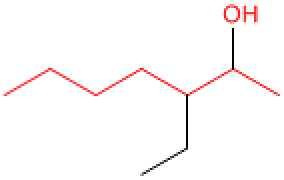
$$CH_3OH + Na \longrightarrow CH_3ONa + H_2$$

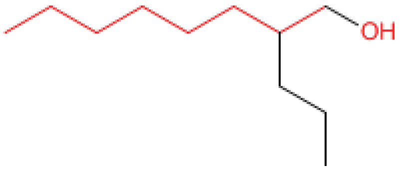
metóxido de sodio

PROBLEMAS NOMENCLATURA – ALCOHOLES

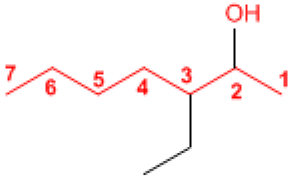
Nomenclatura de Alcoholes - Reglas IUPAC

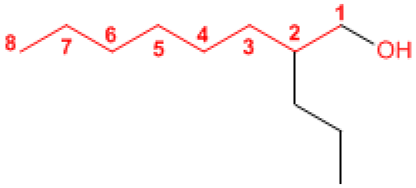
Regla 1. Se elige como cadena principal la de mayor longitud que contenga el grupo -OH.



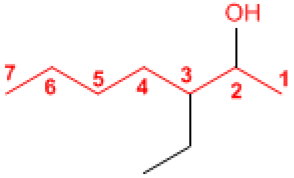


Regla 2. Se numera la cadena principal para que el grupo -OH tome el localizador más bajo. El grupo hidroxilo tiene preferencia sobre cadenas carbonadas, halógenos, dobles y triples enlaces.

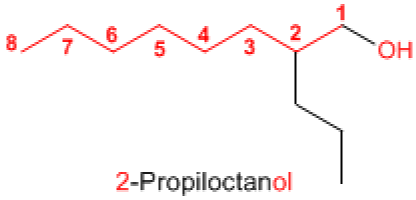




Regla 3. El nombre del alcohol se construye cambiando la terminación -o del alcano con igual número de carbonos por –ol

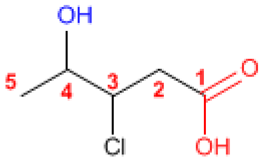


3-Etilheptanol

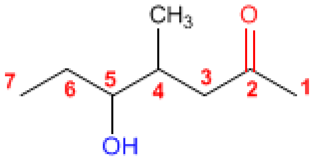


2-Propiloctanol

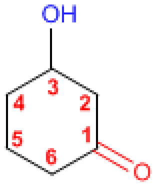
Regla 4. Cuando en la molécula hay grupos grupos funcionales de mayor prioridad, el alcohol pasa a serun mero sustituyente y se llama hidroxi-. Son prioritarios frente a los alcoholes: ácidos carboxílicos, anhídridos, ésteres, haluros de alcanoilo, amidas, nitrilos, aldehídos y cetonas.



Ácido 3-cloro-4-hidroxipentanoico



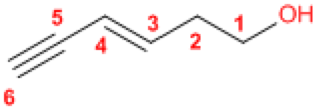
5-Hidroxi-4-metilheptanona



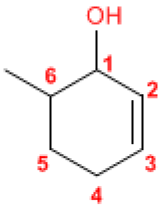
3-Hidroxiciclohexanona

Regla 5. El grupo -OH es prioritario frente a los alquenos y alquinos. La numeración otorga el localizador más bajo al -OH y el nombre de la molécula termina en -ol.

Hex-5-en-2-ol



Hex-3-en-5-in-1-ol

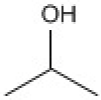


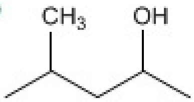
6-Metilciclohex-2-en-1-ol

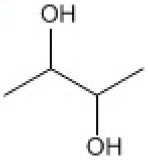
Nomenclatura de Alcoholes - Problema 0.1

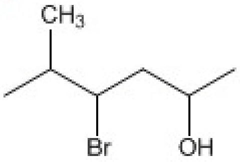
Nombra los siguientes alcoholes empleando reglas IUPAC

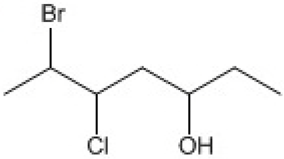
a)

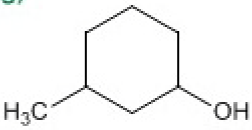
b) 

c) 

d) 

e) 

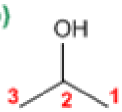
f) 

g) 

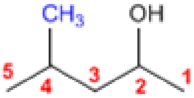
Solución:

a)

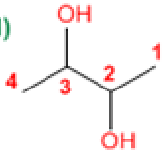
1. Cadena principal: la de mayor longitud que contenga el -OH (propano)
2. Numeración: otorga al -OH el localizador más bajo.
3. Sustituyentes: no
4. Nombre: Propan-1-ol

b) 

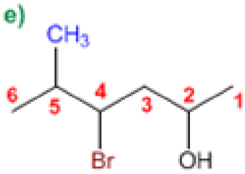
1. Cadena principal: la de mayor longitud que contenga el -OH (propano)
2. Numeración: indiferente.
3. Sustituyentes: no
4. Nombre: Propan-2-ol

c) 

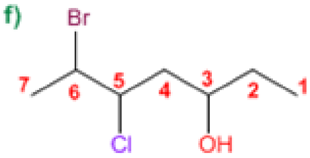
1. Cadena principal: la de mayor longitud que contenga el -OH (pentano)
2. Numeración: otorga al -OH el localizador más bajo (-OH preferente sobre cadenas)
3. Sustituyentes: metilo en 4
4. Nombre: 4-Metilpentan-2-ol

d) 

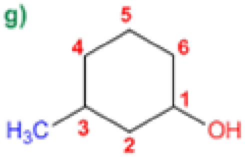
1. Cadena principal: mayor longitud (butano)
2. Numeración: comienza en uno de los extremos.
3. Sustituyentes: no
4. Nombre: Butano-2,3-diol

e) 

1. Cadena principal: mayor longitud (hexano)
2. Numeración: comienza en el extremo derecho, para otorgar al -OH el localizador más bajo.
3. Sustituyentes: bromo en posición 4 y metilo en 5.
4. Nombre: 4-Bromo-5-metilhexan-2-ol

f) 

1. Cadena principal: mayor longitud (heptano)
2. Numeración: comienza en extremo que otorga el localizador más bajo al -OH.
3. Sustituyentes: bromo en 6 y cloro en 5.
4. Nombre: 6-Bromo-5-clorohept-3-ol

g) 

1. Cadena principal: ciclo de seis miembros (ciclohexano)
2. Numeración: comienza en el carbono del -OH.
3. Sustituyentes: metilo en 3.
4. Nombre: 3-Metilciclohexanol

1. Cuando en una molécula hay más de un grupo -OH se pueden emplear los prefijos de cantidad di, tri, tetra, penta, hexa,....... La numeración debe otorgar los menores localizadores a los -OH.

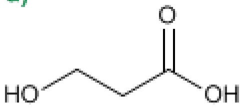
2. El nombre del alcohol se construye comenzando por los sustituyentes, precedidos por sus respectivos localizadores, terminando en el nombre de la cadena principal. La terminación -o del alcano correspondiente se sustituye por -ol.

3. En el caso de alcoholes cíclicos no es necesario indicar la posición del grupo hidroxilo, puesto que siempre toma localizador 1.

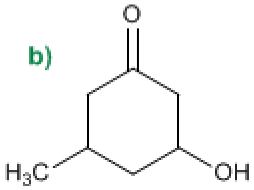
Nomenclatura de Alcoholes - Problema 0.2

Nombra los siguientes moléculas, en las que el alcohol actúa como sustituyente.

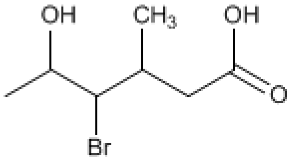
a)



b)

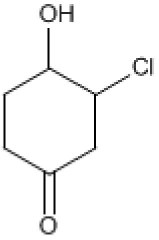


c)

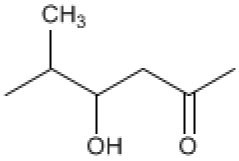


d)

e)

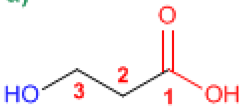


f)



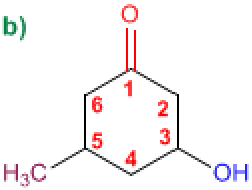
Solución

a)



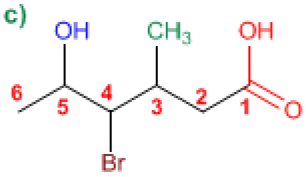
1. Cadena principal: más larga que contenga el grupo funcional (propano)
2. Grupo funcional: ácido carboxílico
3. Numeración: localizador más bajo al grupo ácido
4. Sustituyentes: grupo hidroxi en 3.
5. Nombre: Acido 3-hidroxipropanoico

b)



1. Cadena principal: ciclo de seis miembros (ciclohexano)
2. Grupo funcional: cetona
3. Numeración: localizador más bajo al grupo carbonilo
4. Sustituyentes: grupo hidroxi en 3 y metilo en 4.
5. Nombre: 2-Hidroxi-5-metilciclohexanona

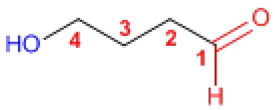
c)



1. Cadena principal: más larga que contenga el grupo funcional (hexano)
2. Grupo funcional: ácido carboxílico
3. Numeración: asigna el localizador más bajo al grupo ácido.
4. Sustituyentes: bromo en 4, grupo hidroxi en 5 y metilo en 3
5. Nombre: Acido 4-bromo-6-hidroxi-3-metilhexanoico

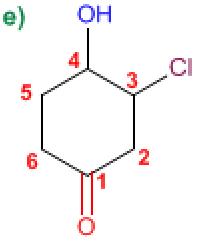
Los ácidos carboxílicos y las cetonas son prioritarios sobre los alcoholes.
El alcohol pasa a ser un sustituyente más de la molécula, ordenándose alfabé-ticamente con el resto de sustituyentes.

d)



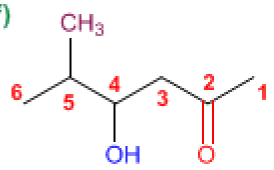
1. Cadena principal: más larga que contenga el grupo funcional (butano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Numeración: localizador más bajo al grupo carbonilo
4. Sustituyentes: grupo hidroxi en 4.
5. Nombre: 4-Hidroxibutanal

e)



1. Cadena principal: ciclo de seis miembros
2. Grupo funcional: cetona
3. Numeración: localizador más bajo al carbonilo
4. Sustituyentes: cloro en 3 e hidroxi en 4.
5. Nombre: 3-Cloro-4-hidroxiciclohexanona

f)



1. Cadena principal: más larga que contenga el grupo funcional (propano)
2. Grupo funcional: cetona
3. Numeración: localizador más bajo al grupo carbonilo
4. Sustituyentes: grupo hidroxi en 4 y metilo en 5.
5. Nombre: 3-Hidroxi-4-metilhexan-2-ona

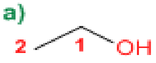
Nomenclatura de Alcoholes - Problema 0.3

Dibujar la estructura de los siguientes alcoholes:

a) Etanol
b) Butanol
c) 2-Metilpropan-1-ol
d) 2-Metilbutan-2-ol
e) 3-Metilbutan-2-ol
f) 3-Metilbutan-1-ol
g) 2,3-Pentanodiol
h) 2-Etil-pent-3-en-1-ol
i) Ciclopent-2-enol
j) 2,3-Dimetilciclohexanol
k) Octa-3,5-dien-2-ol
l) Hex-4-en-1-in-3-ol
m) 2-Bromohep-2-en-1,4-diol
n) 2-Fenil-5-metilheptan-2-ol
o) Alcohol bencílico
p) 1,2,3-Propanotriol (glicerina)

Solución:

a)

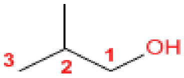


Etanol

b)

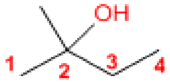
Butanol

c)



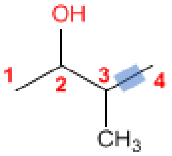
2-Metilpropan-1-ol

d)



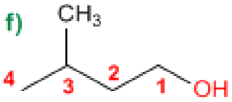
2-Metilbutan-2-ol

e)



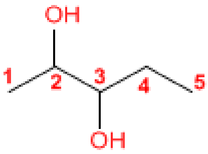
3-Metilbutan-2-ol

f)



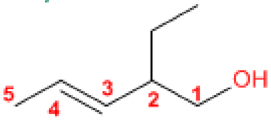
3-Metilbutan-1-ol

g)



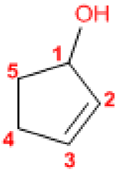
2,3-Pentanodiol

h)



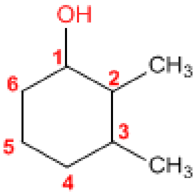
2-Etil-pent-3-en-1-ol

i)



Ciclopent-2-enol

j)

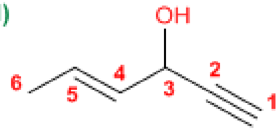


2,3-Dimetilciclohexanol

k)

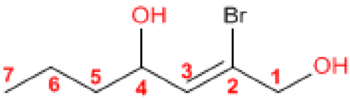
Octa-3,5-dien-2-ol

l)



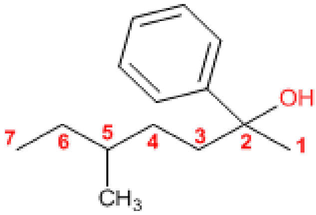
Hex-4-en-1-in-3-ol

m)



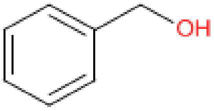
2-Bromohept-2-en-1,4-diol

n)



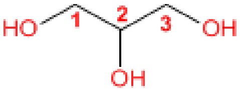
2-Fenil-5-metilheptan-2-ol

o)



Alcohol bencílico

p)

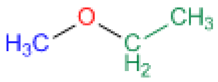


1,2,3-Propanotriol (glicerina)

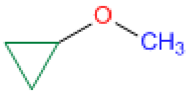
TEORÍA DE ÉTERES

Nomenclatura de éteres - epóxidos

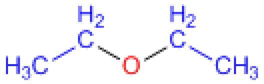
La nomenclatura de los ésteres consiste en nombrar alfabéticamente los dos grupos alquilo que parten del oxígeno, terminando el nombre en éter. Veamos algunos ejemplos:



Etil metil éter

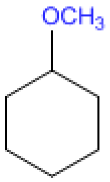


Ciclopropil metil éter

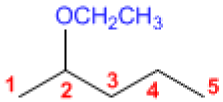


Dietil éter

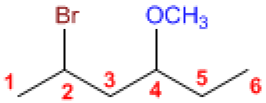
También se pueden nombrar los éteres como grupos alcoxi.



Metóxiciclohexano

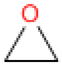


2-Etoxipentano

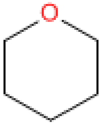


2-Bromo-4-metoxihexano

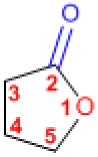
Los éteres cíclicos se forman sustituyendo -CH_2- del ciclo por -O-. Este cambio se indica con el prefijo oxa- .



Oxaciclopropano



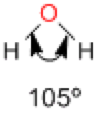
Oxaciclohexano

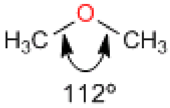


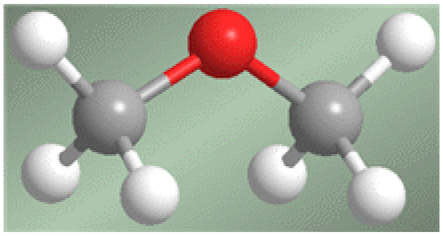
2-oxooxaciclopentano

Estructura y enlace en éteres y epóxidos

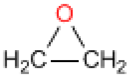
Los éteres son moléculas de estructura similar al agua y alcoholes. El ángulo entre los enlaces C-O-C es mayor que en el agua debido a las repulsiones estéricas entre grupos voluminosos.

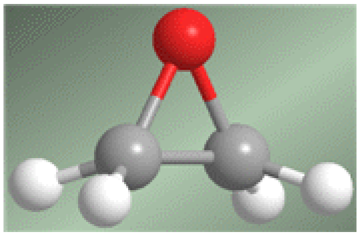






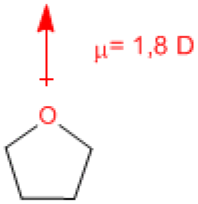
En el caso de los épóxidos la característica más relevante es la tensión del anillo, debida a angulos de enlace muy distantes a los 109º.

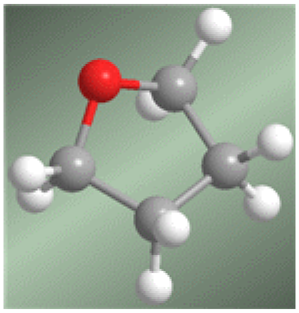




El enlace C-O-C presenta un ángulo de 61º.

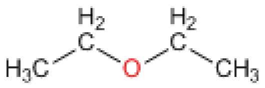
Los éteres son moléculas muy polares. Así, el Dietil éter presenta un momento dipolar de 1,2 D. Este momento dipolar es aún más importante en éteres cíclicos (oxaciclopropano, tetrahidrofurano) que presentan momentos dipolares sobre 1,8 D, similares al agua.





Propiedades físicas de los éteres

Los éteres presentan unos puntos de ebullición inferiores a los alcoholes, aunque su solubilidad en agua es similar. Dada su importante estabilidad en medios básicos, se emplean como disolventes inertes en numerosas reacciones.

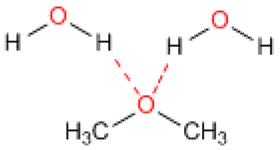


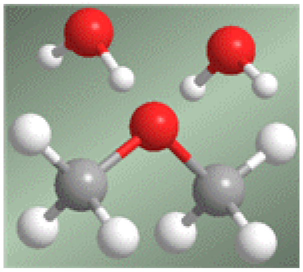
Dietil éter

P. ebull = 35ºC

Solubilidad agua = 7,5 g/100ml

La importante solubilidad en agua se explica por los puentes de hidrógeno que se establecen entre los hidrógenos del agua y el oxígeno del éter.





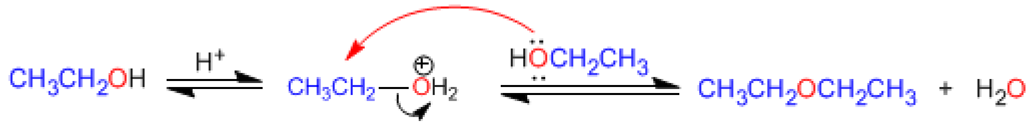
Síntesis de éteres por condensación de alcoholes

1. Éteres a partir de alcoholes primarios

Los éteres simétricos pueden prepararse por condensación de alcoholes. La reacción se realiza bajo calefacción (140ºC) y con catálisis ácida. Así, dos moléculas de etanol condensan para formar dietil éter.

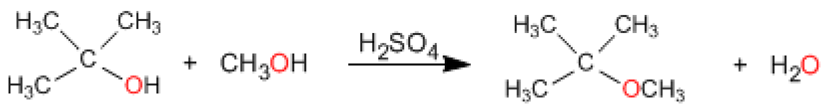
$$2\,CH_3CH_2OH \xrightarrow[140^{o}C]{H_2SO_4} CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3 + H_2O$$

El mecanismo de la reacción transcurre en las siguientes etapas:



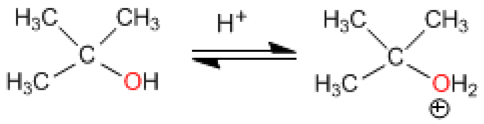
2. Uno de los alcoholes es secundario o terciario

En este caso la reacción transcurre en condiciones más suaves, a través de mecanismos S**N**1.

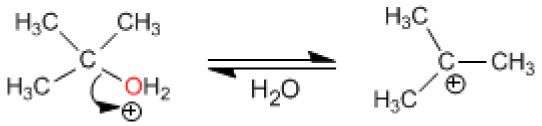


El mecanismo transcurre con formación de un carbocatión terciario de gran estabilidad

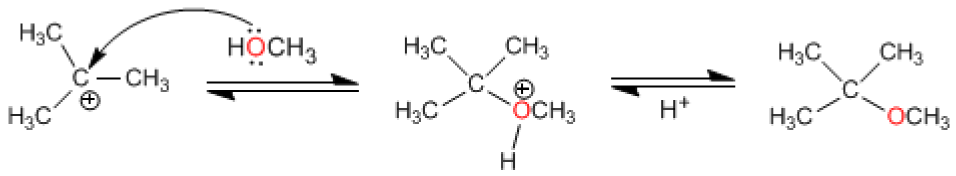
Etapa 1. Protonación del alcohol terciario



Etapa 2. Formación del carbocatión por pérdida de agua



Etapa 3. Ataque nucleófilo del metanol



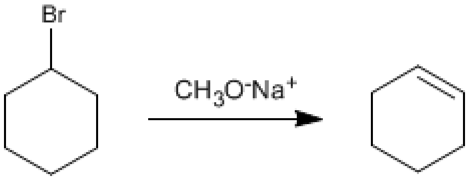
Síntesis de Williamson de los éteres

La reacción entre un haloalcano primario y un alcóxido (o bien alcohol en medio básico) es el método más importante para preparar éteres. Esta reacción es conocida como síntesis de Williamson.

$$H_3C{-}Br + CH_3O^-Na^+ \longrightarrow H_3C{-}OCH_3 + NaBr$$

Esta reacción transcurre a través del mecanismo S_N2.

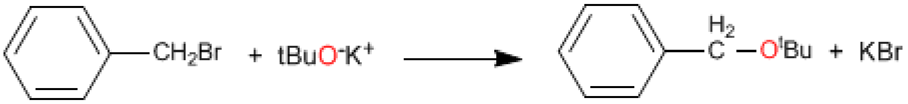
La importante basicidad de los alcóxidos produce reacciones de eliminación con sustratos secundarios y terciarios, formando alquenos en lugar de éteres.



Otra situación en la que Williamson no rinde éteres, es en el caso de emplear alcóxidos impedidos, como *tert*-butóxido de potasio. Debido a su gran tamaño el *tert*-butóxido elimina incluso con sustratos primarios.

$$CH_3CH_2Br \xrightarrow{^tBuO^-K^+} H_2C{=}CH_2 + {}^tBuOH + KBr$$

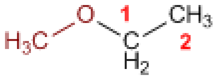
Con haloalcanos primarios y sobre todo con haloalcanos que carecen de hidrógenos β el rendimiento de Williamson es muy bueno.



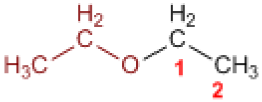
PROBLEMAS NOMENCLATURA – ÉTERES

Nomenclatura de Éteres - Reglas IUPAC

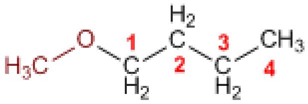
Regla 1. Los éteres pueden nombrarse como alcoxi derivados de alcanos (nomenclatura IUPAC sustitutiva). Se toma como cadena principal la de mayor longitud y se nombra el alcóxido como un sustituyente.



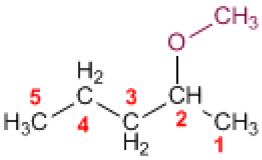
Metoxietano



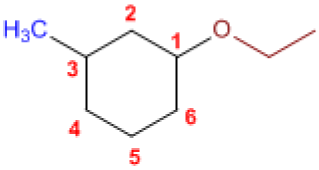
Etoxietano



1-Metoxibutano

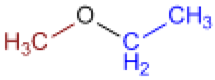


2-Metoxipentano

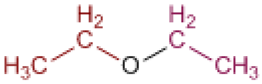


1-Etoxi-3-metilciclohexano

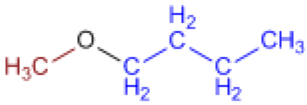
Regla 2. La nomenclatura funcional (IUPAC) nombra los éteres como derivados de dos grupos alquilo, ordenados alfabéticamente, terminando el nombre en la palabra éter.



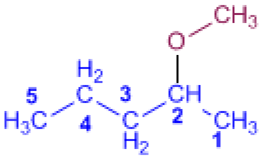
Etil metil éter



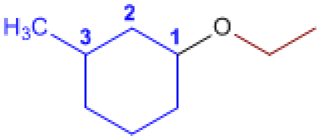
Dietil éter



Butil metil éter

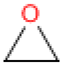


Metil pent-2-il éter

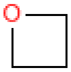


Etil 3-metilciclohexil éter

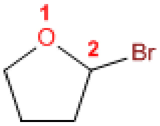
Regla 3. Los éteres cíclicos se forman sustituyendo un $-CH_2-$ por -O- en un ciclo. La numeración comienza en el oxígeno y se nombran con el prefio oxa- seguido del nombre del ciclo.



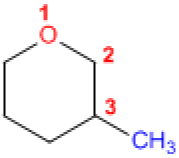
Oxaciclopropano



Oxaciclobutano



2-Bromooxaciclopentano

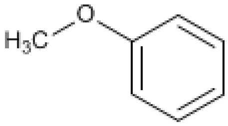


3-Metiloxaciclohexano

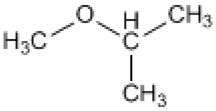
Nomenclatura de Éteres - Problema 0.1

Nombra los siguientes éteres:

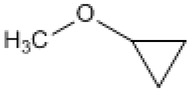
a)



b)

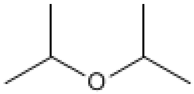


c)

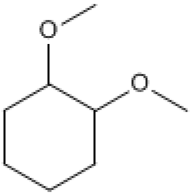


d)

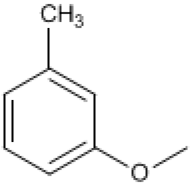
e)



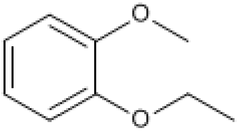
f)



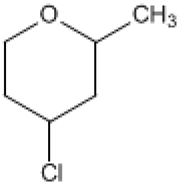
g)



h)

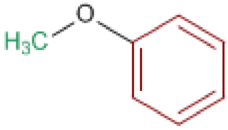


i)



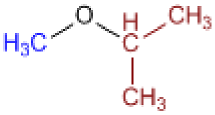
Solución:

a)



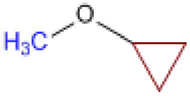
1. Sustituyentes: fenil y metil
2. Nombre: Fenil metil éter

b)



1. Sustituyentes: isopropil y metil
2. Nombre: Isopropil metill éter

c)



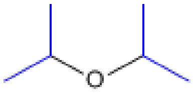
1. Sustituyentes: ciclopropil y metil
2. Nombre: Ciclopropil metil éter

El nombre de los éteres se construye terminando en la palabra éter el nombre de las cadenas que parten del oxígeno. Estas cadenas se nombran como sustituyentes y se ordenan alfabéticamente. Obsérvese el espacio de separación entre las palabras.

d)

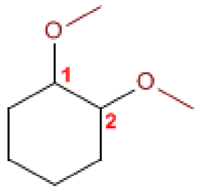
1. Sustituyentes: etilo y propilo
2. Nombre: Etil propil éter

e)



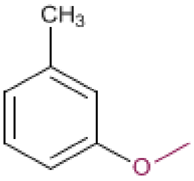
1. Sustituyentes: isopropilos
2. Nombre: Diisopropil éter

f)



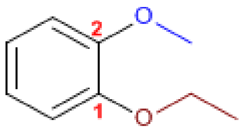
1. Cadena principal: ciclo de seis miembros (ciclohexano)
2. Numeración: otorga localizadores más bajos a sustituyentes
3. Sustituyentes: metoxidos en 1,2
4. Nombre: 1,2-Dimetoxiciclohexano

g)



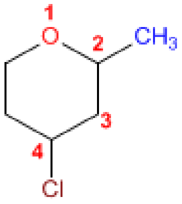
1. Cadena principal: Tolueno
2. Numeración: metilo y metóxido en meta.
3. Sustituyentes: metoxido
4. Nombre: *m*-Metoxitolueno

h)



1. Cadena principal: Benceno
2. Numeración: Comienza en el etoxi (antes alfabéticamente)
3. Sustituyentes: etoxido en 1 y metoxido en 2. (posición meta)
4. Nombre: *m*-Etoximetoxibenceno

i)



1. Cadena principal: ciclo de 6 miembros (oxaciclohexano)
2. Numeración: comienza en el oxígeno, prosigue a la derecha para otorgar a los sustituyentes los menores localizadores.
3. Sustituyentes: cloro y metilo
4. Nombre: 4-Cloro-2-metiloxaciclohexano

Nomenclatura de Éteres - Problema 0.2

Dibuja las estructuras de los siguientes éteres:

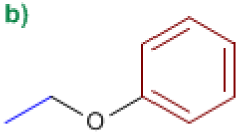
a) Butil etil éter
b) Etil fenil éter
c) Difenil éter
d) Divinil éter
e) Isopropoxibutano
f) Bencil fenil éter
g) Metoxiciclohexano
h) 4-Metoxipent-2-eno
i) 4-Etoxibut-1-ino
j) Ciclohexil fenil éter
k) 2-Clorofenil fenil éter
l) tert-butil isopropil éter
m) 2-Metoxi-3-fenilbutan-1-ol
n) Dietil éter
o) m-Etoxifenol
p) 2,3-Dimetiloxaciclopropano
q) 3-Metoxioxaciclohexano
r) 2-Etil-3-metiloxaciclopentano
s) Ciclohexil ciclopropil éter
t) 2-Metoxipentano

Solución

a)

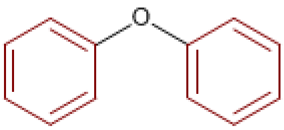
Butil etil éter

b)



Etil fenil éter

c)

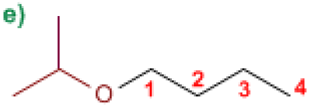


Difenil éter

d)

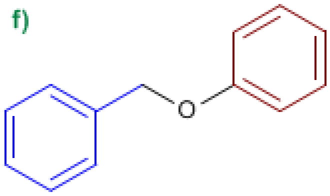
Divinil éter

e)



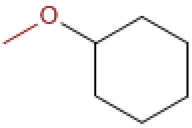
1-Isopropoxibutano

f)



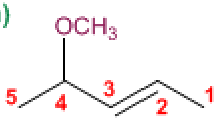
Bencil fenil éter

g)



Metoxiciclohexano

h)

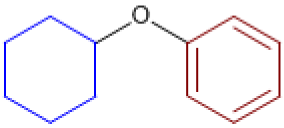


4-Metoxipent-2-eno

i)

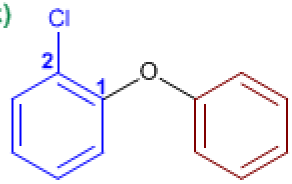
4-Etoxibut-1-ino

j)



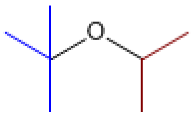
Ciclohexil fenil éter

k)



2-Clorofenil fenil éter

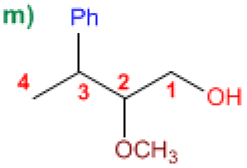
l)



tert-butil isopropil éter

Los grupos alcóxido (metóxido, etóxido....) se ordenan alfabéticamente con los demás sustituyentes de la molécula y no tienen ninguna preferencia sobre ellos

m)

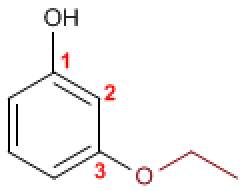


2-Metoxi-3-fenilbutan-1-ol

n)

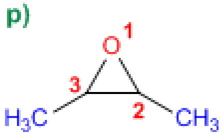
Dietil éter

o)



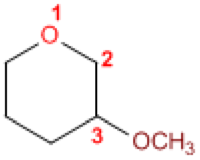
m-Etoxifenol

p)



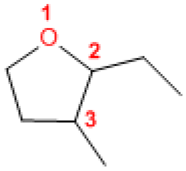
2,3-Dimetiloxaciclopropano

q)



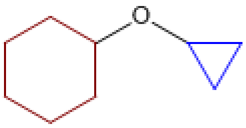
3-Metoxioxaciclohexano

r)



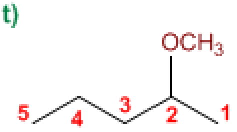
2-Etil-3-metiloxaciclopentano

s)



Ciclohexil ciclopropil éter

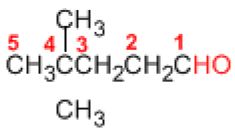
t)



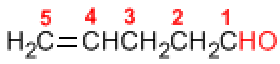
2-Metoxipentano

Nomenclatura de Aldehídos y Cetonas

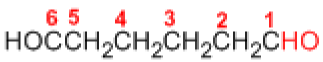
Los aldehídos se nombran reemplazando la terminación -ano del alcano correspondiente por -al. No es necesario especificar la posición del grupo aldehído, puesto que ocupa el extremo de la cadena (localizador 1).
Cuando la cadena contiene dos funciones aldehído se emplea el sufijo -dial.



4,4-Dimetilpentanal

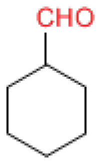


Hex-4-enal

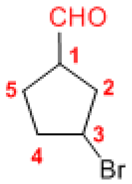


Pentanodial

El grupo -CHO unido a un ciclo se llama -carbaldehído. La numeración del ciclo se realiza dando localizador 1 al carbono del ciclo que contiene el grupo aldehído.

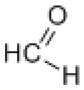


Ciclohexanocarbaldehído



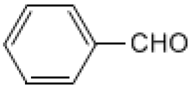
3-Bromociclopentanocarbaldehído

Algunos nombres comunes de aldehídos aceptados por la IUPAC son:



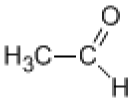
Formaldehído

(Metanal)



Benzaldehído

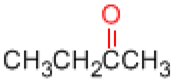
(Bencenocarbaldehído)



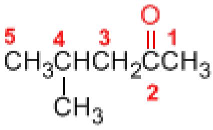
Acetaldehído

(Etanal)

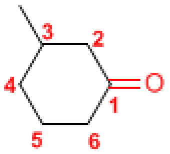
Las cetonas se nombran sustituyendo la terminación -ano del alcano con igual longitud de cadena por -ona. Se toma como cadena principal la de mayor longitud que contiene el grupo carbonilo y se numera para que éste tome el localizador más bajo.



Butanona

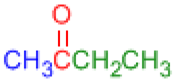


4-Metil-2-pentanona

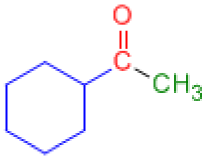


3-Metilciclohexanona

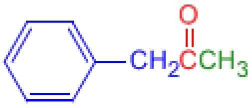
Existe un segundo tipo de nomenclatura para las cetonas, que consiste en nombrar las cadenas como sustituyentes, ordenándolas alfabéticamente y terminando el nombre con la palabra cetona.



Etil metil cetona



Ciclohexil metil cetona

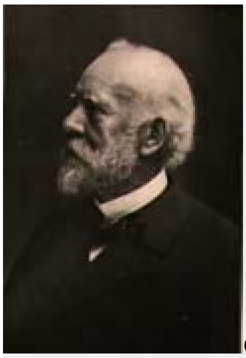


Fenil metil cetona

Siguiente >

[Volver]

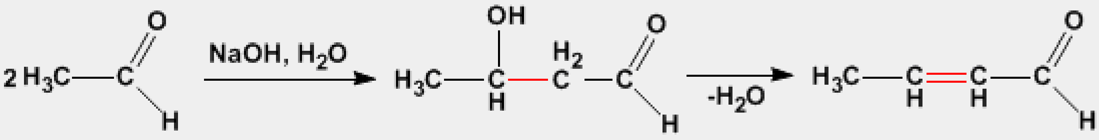
Charles Friedel (1832 - 1899)



Origen: Quimico frances..
Lugar de nacimiento: Estrasburgo.
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: Profesor en la Universidad de la Sorbona.
Investigación: Obtuvo el alcohol propílico. En 1877, Friedel y Crafts describieron por primera vez la reacción del benceno con un haloalcano en presencia de un ácido de Lewis. Esta reacción produce la alquilación del benceno y se conoce como alquilación de Friedl-Crafts.
Premio Nobel:

Aldólica (Condensación)

La condensación aldólica es una reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** que forma 3-hidroxicarbonilos (aldoles) **[2]**. El 3-hidroxialdehído **[2]** bajo condiciones de deshidratación por calentamiento rinde un aldehído alfa,beta-insaturado **[3]**.

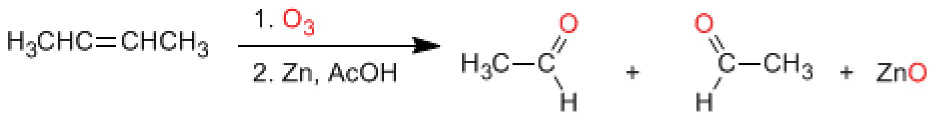


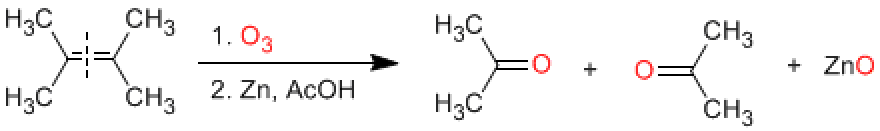
[1] [2] [3]

Preparación de aldehídos y cetonas

Los aldehídos y cetonas pueden ser preparados por oxidación de alcoholes, ozonólisis de alquenos, hidratación de alquinos y acilación de Friedel-Crafts como métodos de mayor importancia.

a) Ozonólisis de alquenos: Los alquenos rompen con ozono formando aldehídos y/o cetonas. Si el alqueno tiene hidrógenos vinílicos da aldehídos. Si tiene dos cadenas carbonadas forma cetonas.

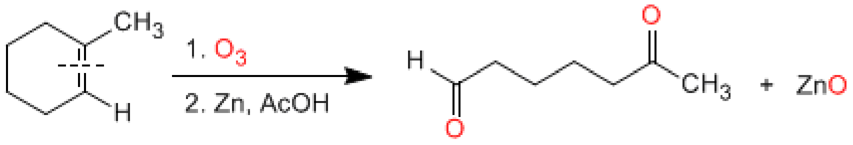




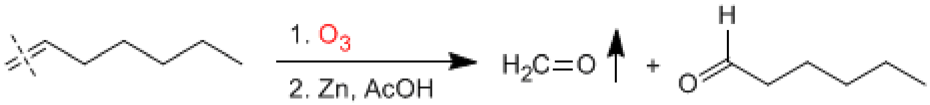
Ozonólisis

Los alquenos simétricos y terminales permiten la preparación de carbonilos mediante ozonólisis

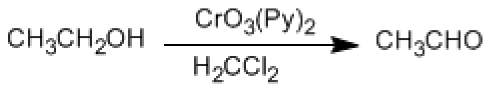
La ozonólisis de alquenos cíclicos produce compuestos dicarbonílicos:

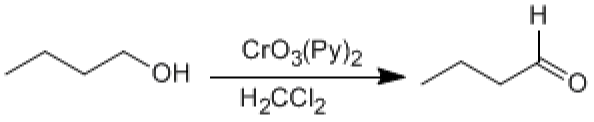


Los alquenos terminales rompen formando metanal, que separa fácilmente de la mezcla por su bajo punto de ebullición.

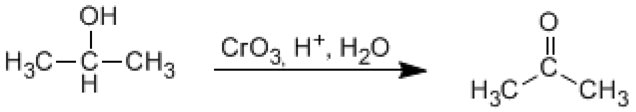


b) Oxidación de alcoholes: Los alcoholes primarios y secundarios se oxidan para dar aldehídos y cetonas respectivamente. Deben tomarse precauciones en la oxidación de alcoholes primarios, puesto que sobreoxidan a ácidos carboxílicos en presencia de oxidantes que contengan agua. En estos caso debe trabajarse con reactivos anhídros, como el clorocromato de piridino en diclorometano (PCC), a temperatura ambiente.

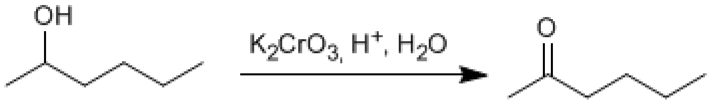


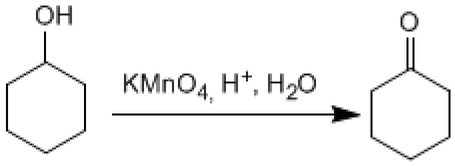


Los alcoholes secundarios dan cetonas por oxidación. Se emplean como oxidantes permanganato, dicromato, trióxido de cromo.

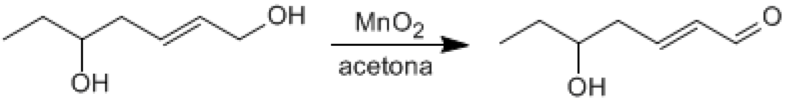


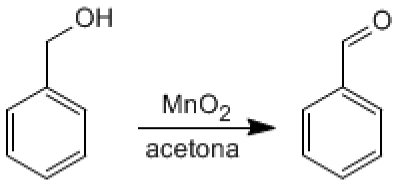
La oxidación supone la pérdida de dos hidrógenos del alcohol. Los alcoholes terciarios no pueden oxidar puesto que carecen de hidrógeno sobre el carbono.



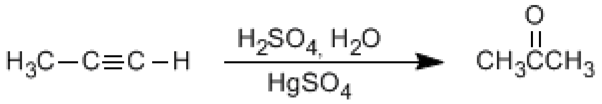


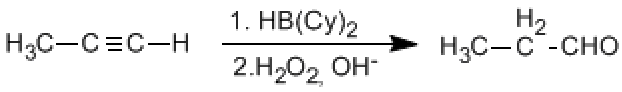
Los alcoholes alílicos y bencílicos se transforman en aldehídos o cetonas por oxidación con dióxido de manganeso en acetona. Esta reacción tiene una elevada selectividad y no oxida alcoholes que no se encuentren en dichas posiciones.



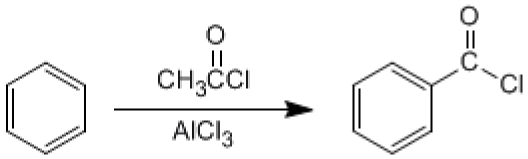


c) Hidratación de alquinos: Los alquinos se pueden hidratar Markovnikov, formando cetonas, o bien antiMarkovnivov, para formar aldehídos.





d) Acilación de Friedel-Crafts: La introducción de grupos acilo en el benceno permite la preparación de cetonas con cadenas aromáticas.

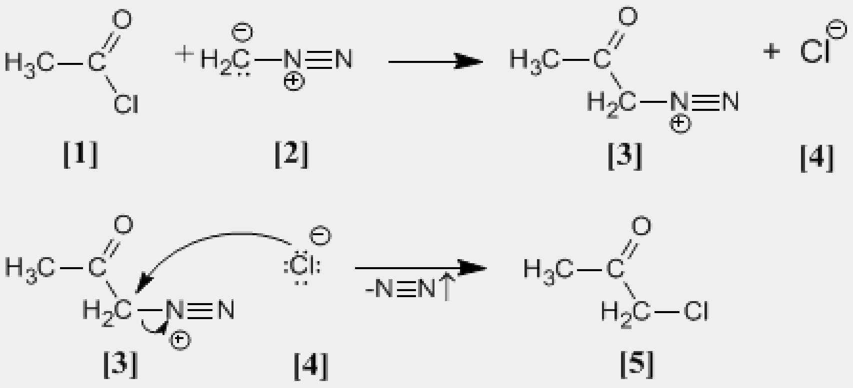


Otto Paul Hermann Diels (1876 - 1954)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: profesor y jefe del departamento de química en la Universidad de Berlín. En 1916, tomó el puesto de profesor de Química en la Universidad de Kiel, cargo que no dejó hasta su jubilación en 1945.
Investigación: En 1906 descubrió el anhídrido malónico. Investigó en reacciones de deshidrogenación con selenio. Síntesis de α-dicetonas. Pero su trabajo más importante es la reacción de Diels - Alder.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Kurt Alder

Arndt Eistert (Síntesis)

Cloruro de acetilo **[1]** se trata con diazometano **[2]** rindiendo la sal de diazonio **[3]**. El cloruro **[4]** producido reacciona con la sal de diazonio para dar la α-clorocetona **[5]**.

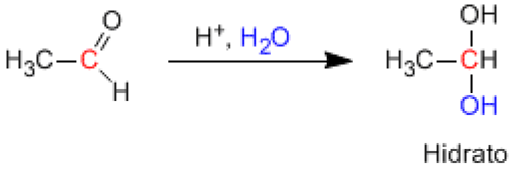


Síntesis de Arndt Eistert

Esta reacción permite transformar haluros de alcanoilo en cetonas halogenadas en su posición alfa.

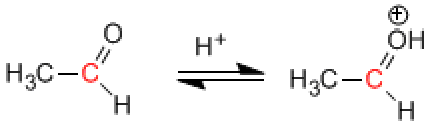
Formación de Hidratos

Los aldehídos y cetonas reaccionan en medio ácido acuoso para formar hidratos. El mecanismo consta de tres etapas. La primera y más rápìda consiste en la protonación del oxígeno carbonílico. Esta protonación produce un aumento de la polaridad sobre el carbono y favorece el ataque del nucleófilo. En la segunda etapa el agua ataca al carbono carbonilo, es la etapa lenta del mecanismo. En la tercera etapa se produce la desprotonación del oxígeno formándose el hidrato final.

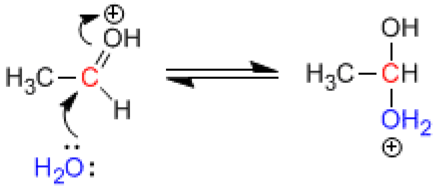


Mecanismo de la reacción

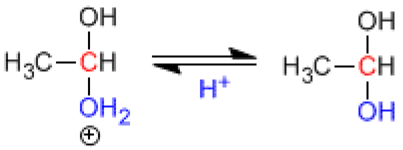
Etapa 1. Protonación del oxígeno carbonílico.



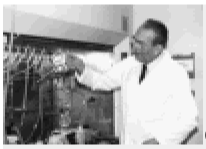
Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del agua al carbonilo protonado.



Etapa 3. Desprotonación del hidrato

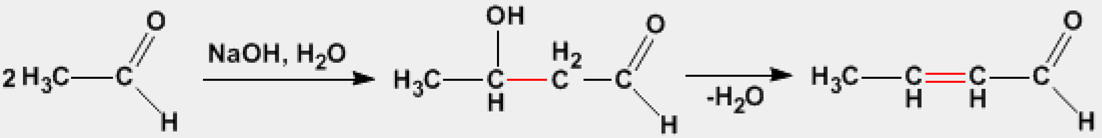


George A. Olah (1927 -)

**Origen:** Químico estadounidense.
Lugar de nacimiento: Budapest
Formación: Se doctoró en la Universidad de Budapest en 1949
Docencia: Trabajó en el departamento de química orgánica de la Academia de Ciencias de Hungría y posteriormente en la Universidad de Cleveland.
Industria: Trabajó en los laboratorios de la Dow Chemical de Ontario
Investigación: Olah consiguió preparar carbocationes estables utilizando componentes extremadamente ácidos.
Premio Nobel: En 1994 obtuvo el premio Nobel de Química por sus investigaciones sobre los carbocationes

Aldólica (Condensación)

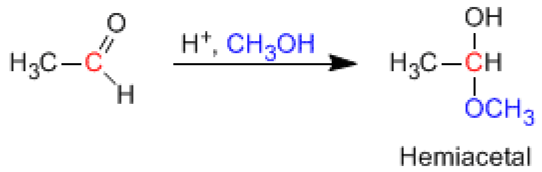
La condensación aldólica es una reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** que forma 3-hidroxicarbonilos (aldoles) **[2]**. El 3-hidroxialdehído **[2]** bajo condiciones de deshidratación por calentamiento rinde un aldehído alfa,beta-insaturado **[3]**.



[1] [2] [3]

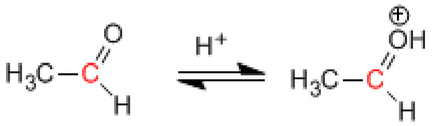
Formación de Hemiacetales

Los hemiacetales se forman por reacción de un equivalente de alcohol con el grupo carbonilo de un aldehído o cetona. Esta reacción se cataliza con ácido y es equivalente a la formación de hidratos.

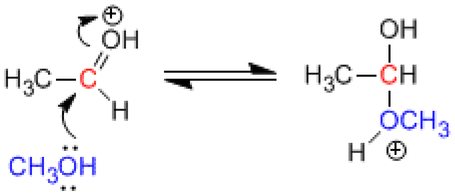


Mecanismo de la reacción:

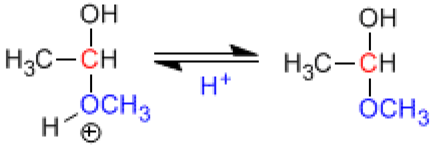
Etapa 1. Protonación del oxígeno carbonílico.



Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del metanol al carbonilo protonado.



Etapa 3. Desprotonación del hemiacetal

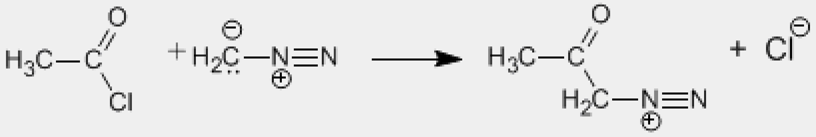


Otto Paul Hermann Diels (1876 - 1954)

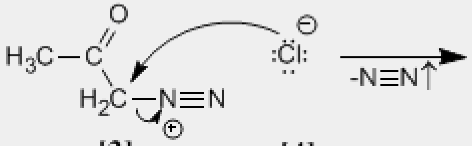
Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: profesor y jefe del departamento de química en la Universidad de Berlín. En 1916, tomó el puesto de profesor de Química en la Universidad de Kiel, cargo que no dejó hasta su jubilación en 1945.
Investigación: En 1906 descubrió el anhídrido malónico. Investigó en reacciones de deshidrogenación con selenio. Síntesis de α-dicetonas. Pero su trabajo más importante es la reacción de Diels - Alder.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Kurt Alder

Arndt Eistert (Síntesis)

Cloruro de acetilo **[1]** se trata con diazometano **[2]** rindiendo la sal de diazonio **[3]**. El cloruro **[4]** producido reacciona con la sal de diazonio para dar la α-clorocetona **[5]**.



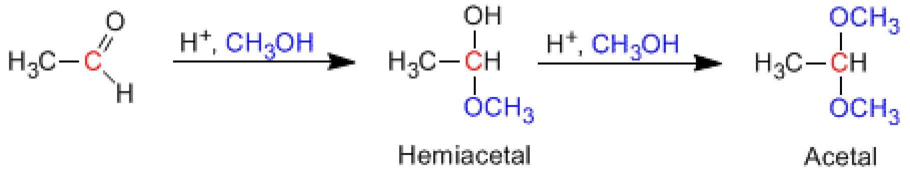
[1] [2] [3] [4]



[3] [4] [5]

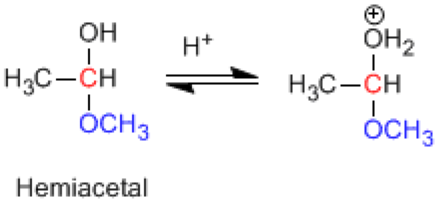
Formación de Acetales

Los aldehídos y cetonas reaccionan con alcoholes bajo condiciones de catálisis ácida, formando en una primera etapa hemiacetales, que posteriormene evolucionan por reacción con un segundo equivalente de alcohol a acetales.

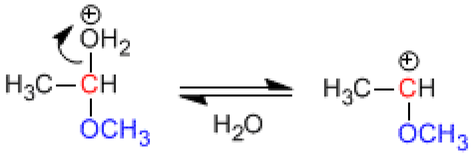


Mecanismo para la formación de acetales

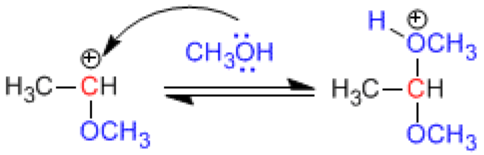
Etapa 1. Protonación del grupo hidroxilo



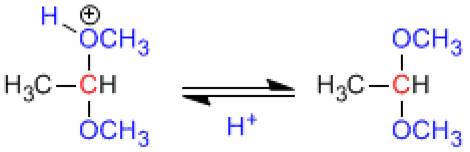
Etapa 2. Pérdida de agua.



Etapa 3. Ataque del alcohol al carbocatión



Etapa 4. Desprotonación del acetal

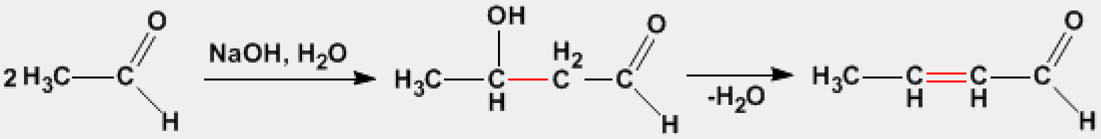


Otto Paul Hermann Diels (1876 - 1954)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: profesor y jefe del departamento de química en la Universidad de Berlín. En 1916, tomó el puesto de profesor de Química en la Universidad de Kiel, cargo que no dejó hasta su jubilación en 1945.
Investigación: En 1906 descubrió el anhídrido malónico. Investigó en reacciones de deshidrogenación con selenio. Síntesis de α-dicetonas. Pero su trabajo más importante es la reacción de Diels - Alder.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Kurt Alder

Aldólica (Condensación)

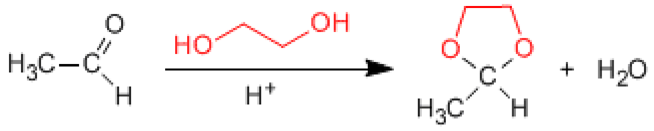
La condensación aldólica es una reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** que forma 3-hidroxicarbonilos (aldoles) **[2]**. El 3-hidroxialdehído **[2]** bajo condiciones de deshidratación por calentamiento rinde un aldehído alfa,beta-insaturado **[3]**.



[1] [2] [3]

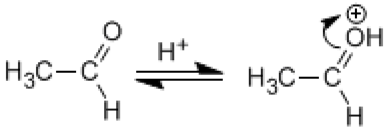
Formación de acetales cíclicos

Los 1,2- y 1,3-dioles reaccionan con aldehídos y cetonas formando acetales cíclicos. Los equilibrios se desplazan hacia el producto final eliminando el agua formada por destilación azeotrópica con benceno o tolueno.

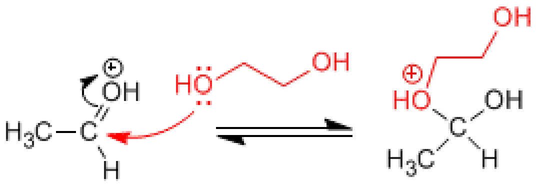


Mecanismo para la formación de acetales cíclicos:

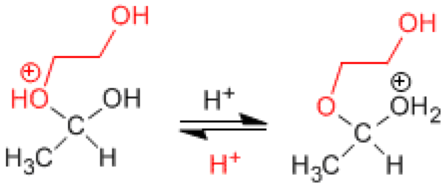
Etapa 1. Protonación del carbonilo



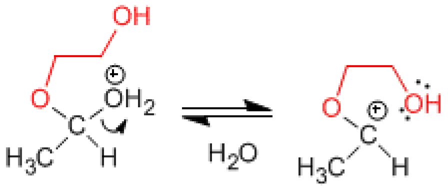
Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del diol al carbonilo.



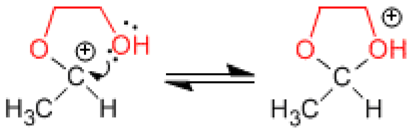
Etapa 3. Equilibrio ácido base entre el éter y el alcohol



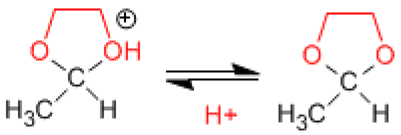
Etapa 4. Perdida de agua



Etapa 5. Ciclación



Etapa 6. Desprotonación del acetal cíclico

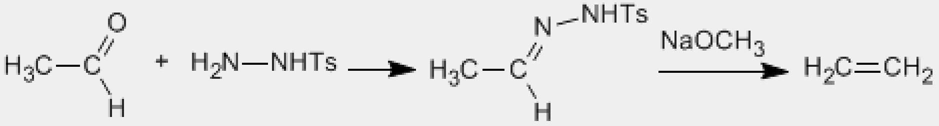


Kurt Alder (1902 - 1958)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió en la Universidad de Kiel. Bajo la supervisión del químico alemán Otto Diels, su jefe e instructor en Kiel.
Docencia: Alder ejerció como profesor de química en las universidades de Kiel y Colonia.
Investigación: Alder se especializó en la síntesis diénica (conocida más tarde como la reacción Diels - Alder) que consiste fundamentalmente en el análisis y formación de compuestos orgánicos complejos. Ya en 1928 ambos fueron coautores de un ensayo sobre este proceso.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Diels

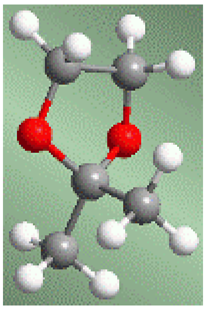
Bamford Stevens (Reacción)

Tosilhidrazonas **[2]** de aldehídos o cetonas alifáticos **[1]** reaccionan con bases fuertes para dar alquenos **[3]**.



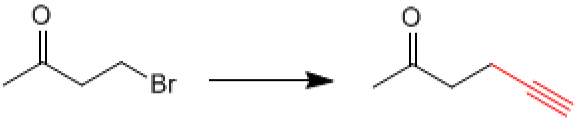
[1] [2] [3]

Acetales como grupos protectores

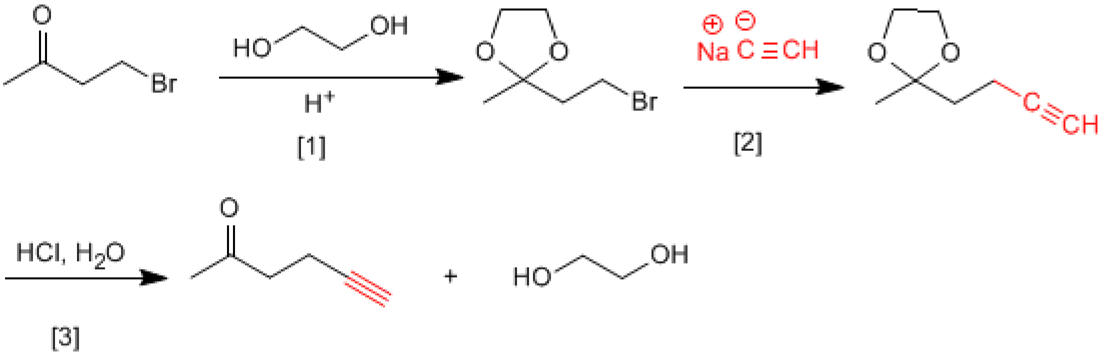


Los acetales pueden emplearse, por su estabilidad, como grupos protectores del carbonilo. El acetal es un éter, muy estable en medios básicos, aunque rompe en presencia de medios ácidos. En muchos procesos de síntesis el grupo carbonilo es incompatible con el reactivo utilizado. En estos casos debe protegerse para evitar que reaccione. La inestabilidad del acetal en medio ácido puede emplearse para desproteger el carbonilo.

Veamos algunos ejemplos:

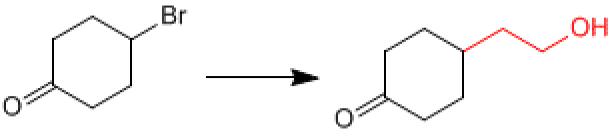


Esta transformación requiere una sustitución, empleando como nucleófilo en acetiluro de sodio. El nucleófilo puede atacar también al grupo carbonilo, para evitarlo vamos a protegerlo.

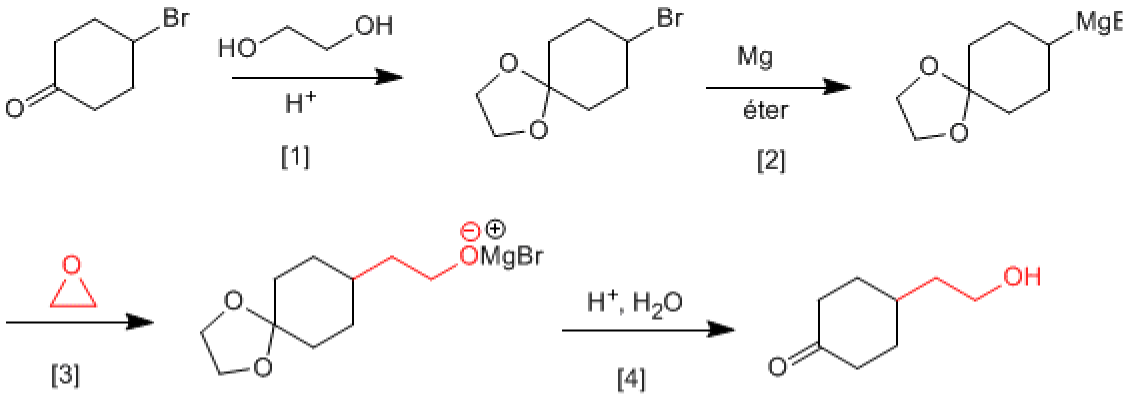


[1] Protección de la cetona.
[2] Ataque del acetiluro al carbono del bromo.
[3] Desprotección del carbonilo

Veamos un segundo ejemplo:



Es necesario proteger la cetona antes de formar el organometálico para evitar la dimerización del compuesto.



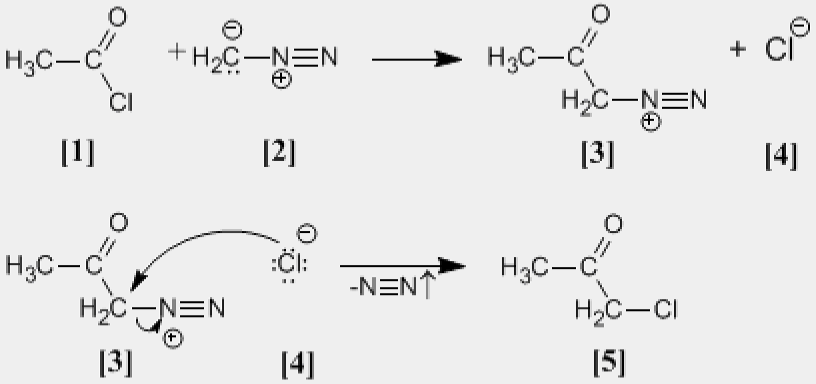
[1] Protección de la cetona.
[2] Formación del magnesiano.
[3] Apertura del oxaciclopropano.
[4] Desprotección y protonación del alcóxido.

Otto Paul Hermann Diels (1876 - 1954)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: profesor y jefe del departamento de química en la Universidad de Berlín. En 1916, tomó el puesto de profesor de Química en la Universidad de Kiel, cargo que no dejó hasta su jubilación en 1945.
Investigación: En 1906 descubrió el anhídrido malónico. Investigó en reacciones de deshidrogenación con selenio. Síntesis de α-dicetonas. Pero su trabajo más importante es la reacción de Diels - Alder.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Kurt Alder

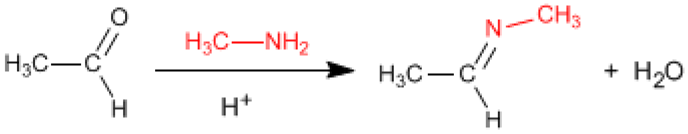
Arndt Eistert (Síntesis)

Cloruro de acetilo **[1]** se trata con diazometano **[2]** rindiendo la sal de diazonio **[3]**. El cloruro **[4]** producido reacciona con la sal de diazonio para dar la α-clorocetona **[5]**.



Formación de Iminas

La reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** con aminas primarias genera iminas **[2]**. La reacción se favorece en un medio ligeramente ácido (pH=4.5).



[1] [2]

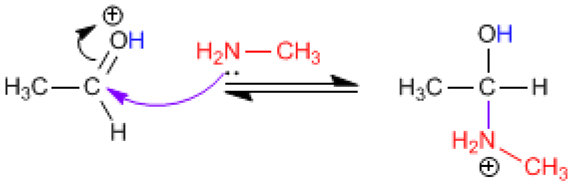
El control del pH es fundamental, puesto que se requiere la protonación del oxígeno del carbonilo para favorecer el ataque nucleófilo.

Mecanismo:

Etapa 1. Protonación del grupo carbonilo que aumenta la polaridad positiva sobre el carbono y favorece el ataque nucleófilo.

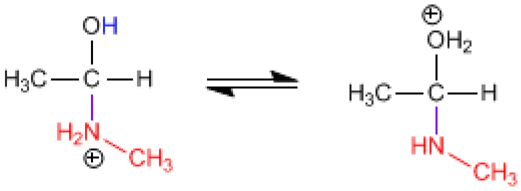
[1] [3]

Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo de la amina primaria al carbono carbonilo.



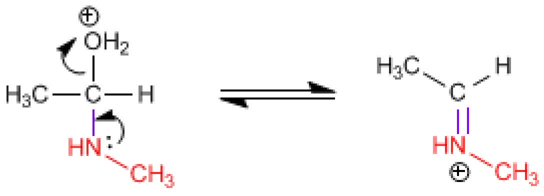
[3] [4]

Etapa 3. Protonación del grupo hidroxilo para transformarlo en buen grupo saliente.



[4] [5]

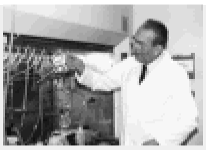
Etapa 4. Perdida de agua y formación de la imina protonada.



[5] [6]

Etapa 5. Desprotonación del catión.

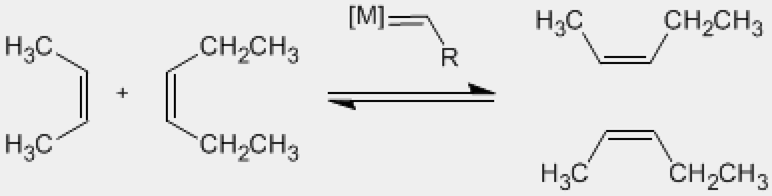
George A. Olah (1927 -)



Origen: Químico estadounidense.
Lugar de nacimiento: Budapest
Formación: Se doctoró en la Universidad de Budapest en 1949
Docencia: Trabajó en el departamento de química orgánica de la Academia de Ciencias de Hungría y posteriormente en la Universidad de Cleveland.
Industria: Trabajó en los laboratorios de la Dow Chemical de Ontario
Investigación: Olah consiguió preparar carbocationes estables utilizando componentes extremadamentes ácidos.
Premio Nobel: En 1994 obtuvo el premio Nobel de Química por sus investigaciones sobre los carbocationes

Metátesis de Alquenos

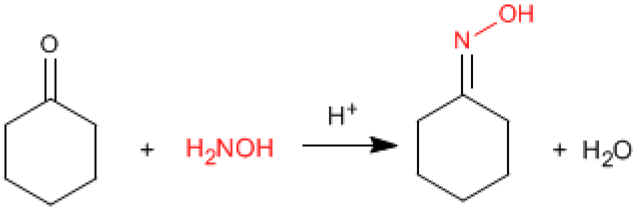
En esta reacción dos alquenos **[1]** y **[2]** son tratados con un metal de transición que actúa como catalizador, dando una mezcla de alquenos **[3]** (incluyendo isómeros Z/E). Este productos se obtiene por intercambio de grupos alquilideno.



[1] [2] [3]

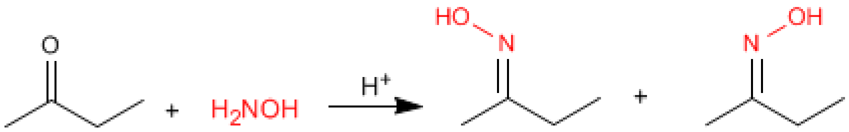
Formación de Oximas

Las oximas **[3]** se obtienen por reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** e hidroxilamina **[2]** en un medio débilmente ácido. El mecanismo es análogo al de formación de iminas.



[1] [2] [3]

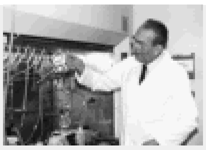
Las oximas de aldehídos y cetona asimétricas presentan isomería Z/E dependiendo de la posición del grupo hidroxilo.



(E) (Z)

Las iminas e hidrazonas (que comentaremos a continuación) también presentan esta característica.

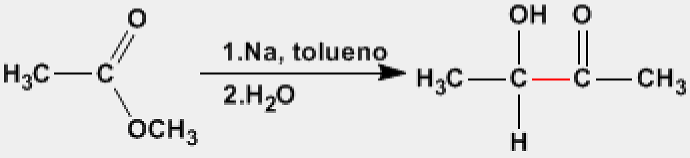
George A. Olah (1927 -)



Origen: Químico estadounidense.
Lugar de nacimiento: Budapest
Formación: Se doctoró en la Universidad de Budapest en 1949
Docencia: Trabajó en el departamento de química orgánica de la Academia de Ciencias de Hungría y posteriormente en la Universidad de Cleveland.
Industria: Trabajó en los laboratorios de la Dow Chemical de Ontario
Investigación: Olah consiguió preparar carbocationes estables utilizando componentes extremadamentes ácidos.
Premio Nobel: En 1994 obtuvo el premio Nobel de Química por sus investigaciones sobre los carbocationes

Aciloínica (Condensación)

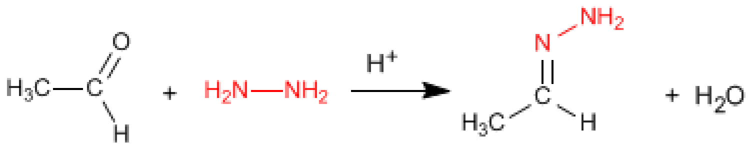
La condensación aciloínica transforma esteres [1] en alfa-hidroxicetonas [2]. Esta reacción se realiza con sodio metal en disolvente inerte.



[1] [2]

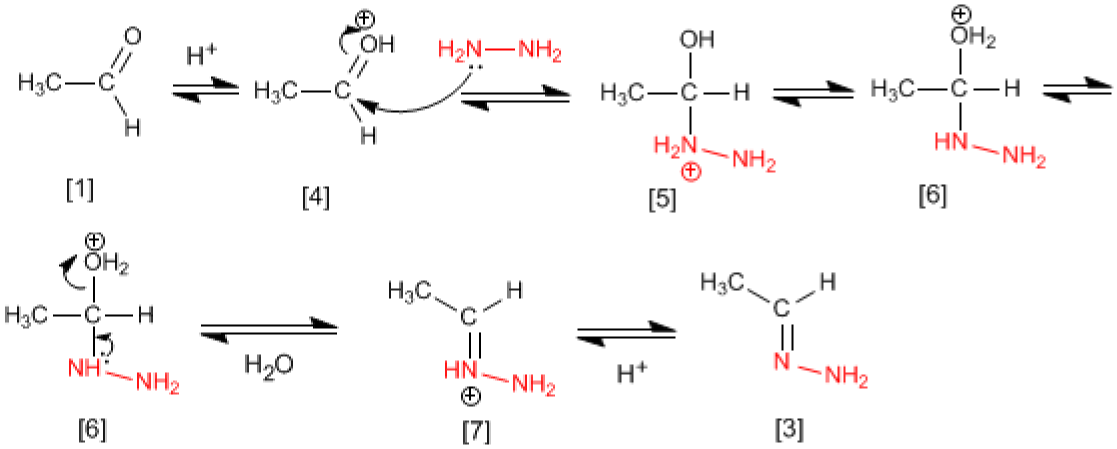
Formación de Hidrazonas

Las hidrazonas **[3]** se obtienen por reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** con hidrazina **[2]**. Igual que en el caso de las iminas y oximas requiere pH=4.



[1] [2] [3]

Aunque el mecanismo es análogo al de formación de iminas, comentaremos de nuevo los pasos.



El etanal **[1]** se protona formando su ácido conjugado **[4]**. La importante polaridad del carbono carbonilo de **[4]** favorece el ataque de la hidrazina **[2]** para formando el intermedio **[5]**. El compuesto **[5]** intercambia un protón entre el nitrógeno y el oxígeno, transformando el grupo hidroxilo en agua (buen grupo saliente). El intermedio **[6]** pierde una molécula de agua transformándose en **[7]**, cuya desprotonación da la hidrazona final **[3].**

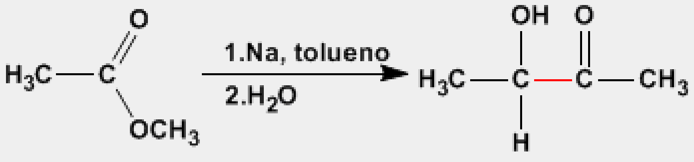
Kurt Alder (1902 - 1958)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió en la Universidad de Kiel. Bajo la supervisión del químico alemán Otto Diels, su jefe e instructor en Kiel.
Docencia: Alder ejerció como profesor de química en las universidades de Kiel y Colonia.
Investigación: Alder se especializó en la síntesis diénica (conocida más tarde como la reacción Diels - Alder) que consiste fundamentalmente en el análisis y formación de compuestos orgánicos complejos.

Ya en 1928 ambos fueron coautores de un ensayo sobre este proceso.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Diels

Aciloínica (Condensación)

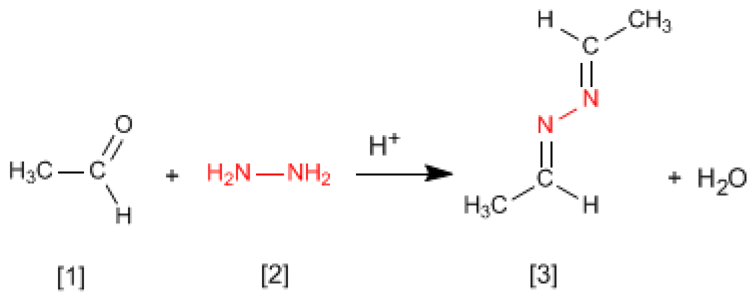
La condensación aciloínica transforma esteres [1] en alfa-hidroxicetonas [2]. Esta reacción se realiza con sodio metal en disolvente inerte.



[1] [2]

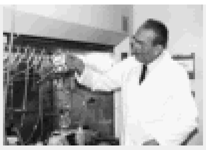
Formación de Azinas

La hidrazina **[2]** reacciona con dos moleculas de aldehido **[1]** para formar azinas **[3].**



El mecanismo es análogo al de formación de iminas, oximas e hidrazonas.

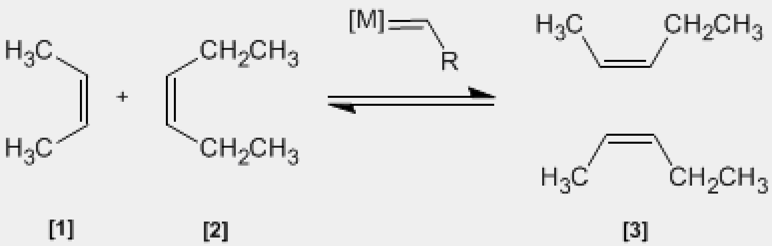
George A. Olah (1927 -)



Origen: Químico estadounidense.
Lugar de nacimiento: Budapest
Formación: Se doctoró en la Universidad de Budapest en 1949
Docencia: Trabajó en el departamento de química orgánica de la Academia de Ciencias de Hungría y posteriormente en la Universidad de Cleveland.
Industria: Trabajó en los laboratorios de la Dow Chemical de Ontario
Investigación: Olah consiguió preparar carbocationes estables utilizando componentes extremadamentes ácidos.
Premio Nobel: En 1994 obtuvo el premio Nobel de Química por sus investigaciones sobre los carbocationes

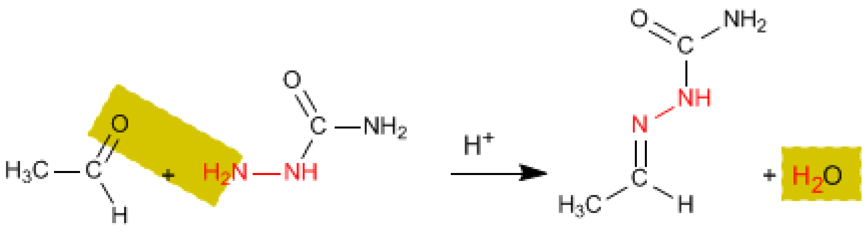
Metátesis de Alquenos

En esta reacción dos alquenos **[1]** y **[2]** son tratados con un metal de transición que actúa como catalizador, dando una mezcla de alquenos **[3]** (incluyendo isómeros Z/E). Este productos se obtiene por intercambio de grupos alquilideno.



Formación de Semicarbazonas

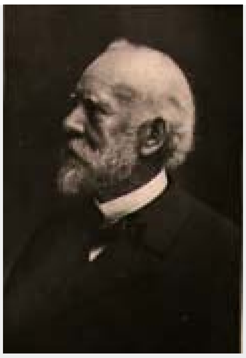
Las semicarbazonas **[3]** se obtienen por reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** con semicarbazida **[2]**. Veamos un ejemplo:



[1] [2] [3]

El mecanismo es análogo al de formación de iminas, oximas e hidrazonas.

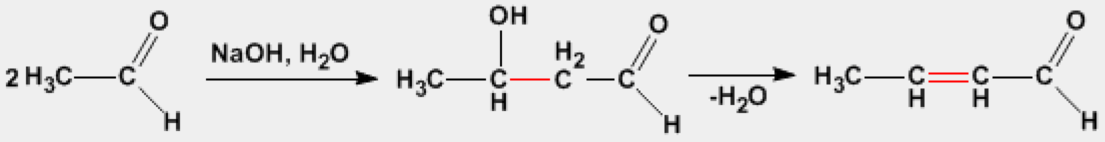
Charles Friedel (1832 - 1899)



Origen: Quimico frances..
Lugar de nacimiento: Estrasburgo.
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: Profesor en la Universidad de la Sorbona.
Investigación: Obtuvo el alcohol propílico. En 1877, Friedel y Crafts describieron por primera vez la reacción del benceno con un haloalcano en presencia de un ácido de Lewis. Esta reacción produce la alquilación del benceno y se conoce como alquilación de Friedl-Crafts.
Premio Nobel:

Aldólica (Condensación)

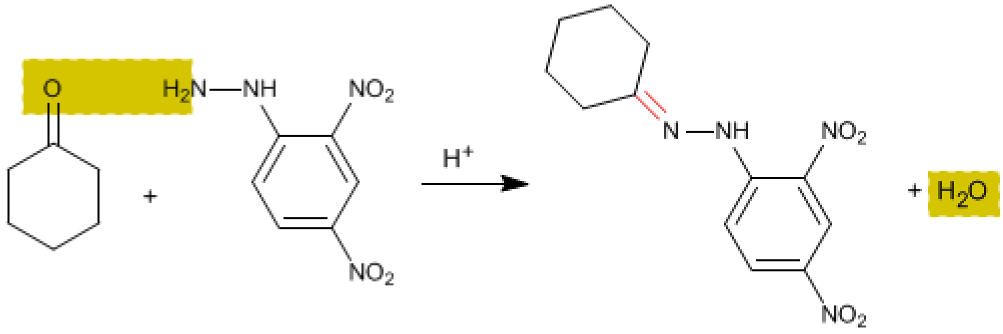
La condensación aldólica es una reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** que forma 3-hidroxicarbonilos (aldoles) **[2]**. El 3-hidroxialdehído **[2]** bajo condiciones de deshidratación por calentamiento rinde un aldehído alfa,beta-insaturado **[3]**.



[1] [2] [3]

Ensayo de la 2,4-Dinitrofenilhidrazina

Se trata de un ensayo analítico específico de aldehídos y cetonas. Los carbonilos **[1]** reaccionan con 2,4-Dinitrofenilhidrazina **[2]** formando fenilhidrazonas **[3]** que precipitan de color amarillo. La aparicion de precipidado es un indicador de la presencia de carbonilos en el medio.



[1] [2] [3]

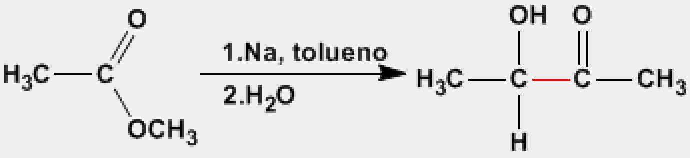
El mecanismo de la reacción es análogo al de formación de iminas.

Kurt Alder (1902 - 1958)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió en la Universidad de Kiel. Bajo la supervisión del químico alemán Otto Diels, su jefe e instructor en Kiel.
Docencia: Alder ejerció como profesor de química en las universidades de Kiel y Colonia.
Investigación: Alder se especializó en la síntesis diénica (conocida más tarde como la reacción Diels - Alder) que consiste fundamentalmente en el análisis y formación de compuestos orgánicos complejos. Ya en 1928 ambos fueron coautores de un ensayo sobre este proceso.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Diels

Aciloínica (Condensación)

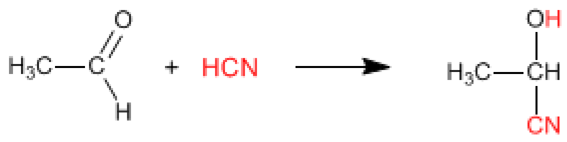
La condensación aciloínica transforma esteres [1] en alfa-hidroxicetonas [2]. Esta reacción se realiza con sodio metal en disolvente inerte.



[1] [2]

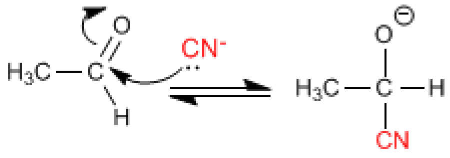
Formación de Cianhidrinas

Las cianhidrinas **[3]** se forman por reacción de aldehídos o cetonas **[1]** con ácido cianhídrico **[2]** y son compuestos que contienen un grupo cinano y un hidroxi sobre el mismo carbono.



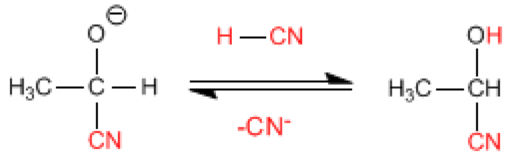
[1] [2] [3]

El mecanismo de la reacción transcurre en dos etapas:
Etapa 1. Los iones cianuro actúan como nucleófilos atacando al carbono carbonilo. El ácido cianhídrico es demasiado débil para generar cantidades importantes de cianuro, por ello, se añade cianuro de sodio o potasio al medio, garantizando la cantidad suficiente de cianuro para que la reacción transcurra en buen rendimiento.



[1] [4]

Etapa 2. En este paso el ión alcóxido **[4]** se protona arrancando hidrógenos al ácido cianhídrico. En esta etapa se regeneran los iones cianuro.



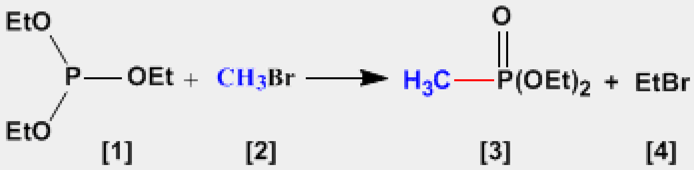
[4] [3]

Kurt Alder (1902 - 1958)

Origen: Químico alemán.
Lugar de nacimiento: Königshütte (hoy Chorzów, Polonia).
Formación: estudió en la Universidad de Kiel. Bajo la supervisión del químico alemán Otto Diels, su jefe e instructor en Kiel.
Docencia: Alder ejerció como profesor de química en las universidades de Kiel y Colonia.
Investigación: Alder se especializó en la síntesis diénica (conocida más tarde como la reacción Diels - Alder) que consiste fundamentalmente en el análisis y formación de compuestos orgánicos complejos. Ya en 1928 ambos fueron coautores de un ensayo sobre este proceso.
Premio Nobel: En 1950 recibió el Premio Nobel junto a Diels

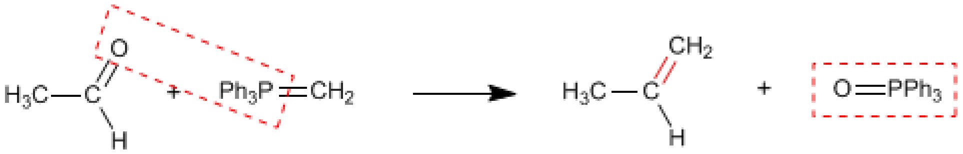
Arbuzov (Reacción)

La reacción de Abuzov se emplea en la síntesis de fosfonatos **[3]** a partir de fosfitos **[1]**. Los fosfonatos obtenidos en la síntesis de Abuzov se emplean como materiales de partida en la síntesis de Horner-Wittig.



Reacción de Wittig

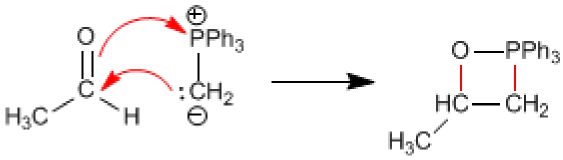
La reacción de Wittig emplea Iluros de fósforo **[2]** para transformar aldehídos y cetonas **[1]** en alquenos **[3]**. Como subproducto se obtiene el óxido de trifenilfosfina **[4].**



[1] [2] [3] [4]

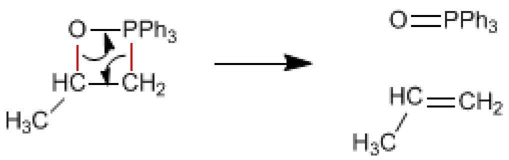
En el mecanismo de la reacción el iluro y el carbonilo se combinan para formar un oxafosfetano que rompe dejando libre el alqueno final.

Etapa 1. El etanal y el iluro se combian formando el fosfetano.



[1] [2] [5]

Etapa 2. El fosfetano rompe formando el alqueno y oxido de trifenilfosfina.

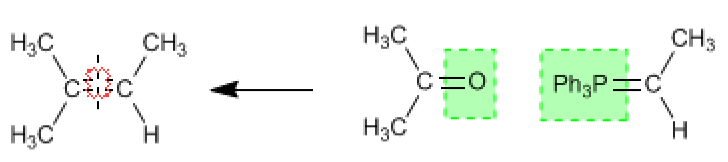


[4]

[3]

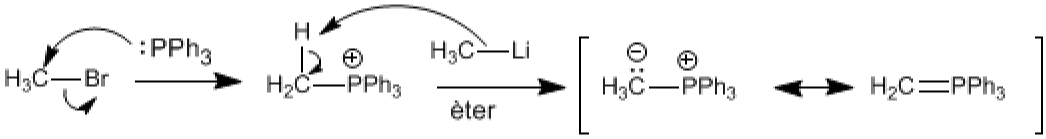
[5]

Ejemplo - Obtener mediante Wittig el 2-Metilbut-2-eno

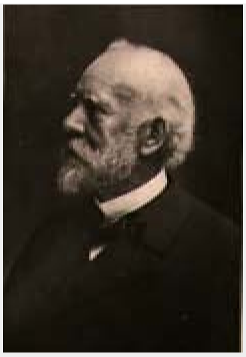


Se rompe el alqueno por el doble enlace y a cada carbono se le agrega el grupo encerrado en verde.

Los **iluros de fósforo** se preparan mediante reacción de haloalcanos y trifenilfosfina, seguido de desprotonación del carbono con base fuerte (organometálicos de litio).



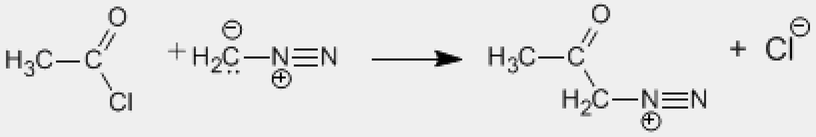
Charles Friedel (1832 - 1899)



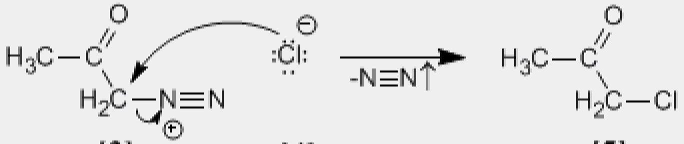
Origen: Quimico frances..
Lugar de nacimiento: Estrasburgo.
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: Profesor en la Universidad de la Sorbona.
Investigación: Obtuvo el alcohol propílico. En 1877, Friedel y Crafts describieron por primera vez la reacción del benceno con un haloalcano en presencia de un ácido de Lewis. Esta reacción produce la alquilación del benceno y se conoce como alquilación de Friedl-Crafts.
Premio Nobel:

Arndt Eistert (Síntesis)

Cloruro de acetilo **[1]** se trata con diazometano **[2]** rindiendo la sal de diazonio **[3]**. El cloruro **[4]** producido reacciona con la sal de diazonio para dar la α-clorocetona **[5]**.



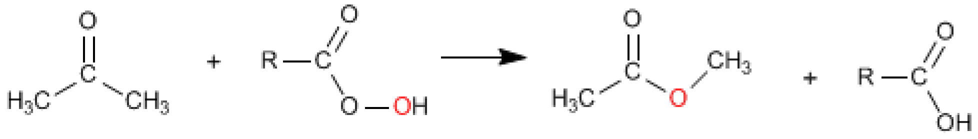
[1] [2] [3] [4]



[3] [4] [5]

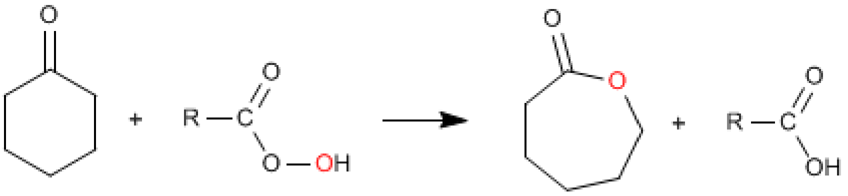
Oxidación de Baeyer Villiger

La reacción de cetonas **[1]** con perácidos **[2]** produce ésteres **[3]**. El oxígeno del perácido se inserta entre el carbono carbonilo y el carbono alfa de la cetona. Esta reacción fue descrita por Adolf von Baeyer y Victor Villiger in 1899.



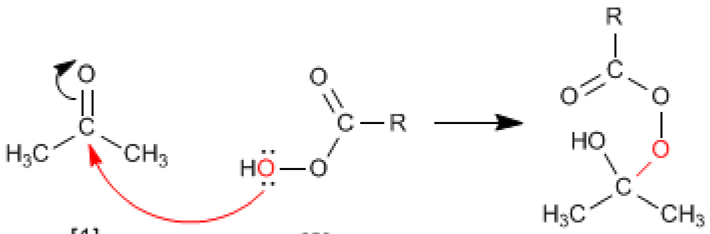
[1] [2] [3] [4]

A partir de cetonas cíclicas se obtienen ésteres cíclicos (lactonas)



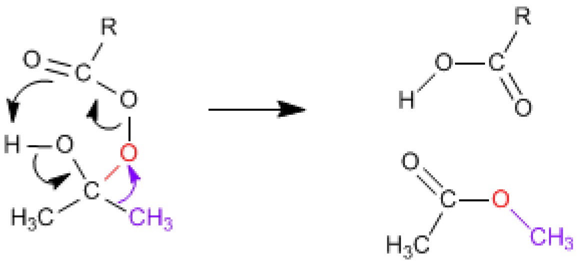
El mecanismo de Baeyer Villiger comienza con el ataque nucleófilo del perácido sobre el carbonilo, seguido de la migración del sustituyente desde el grupo carbonilo al oxígeno del perácido.

Etapa 1. Adición del perácido al carbonilo



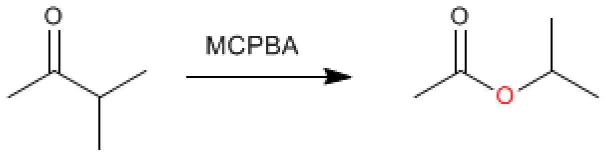
[1] [2]

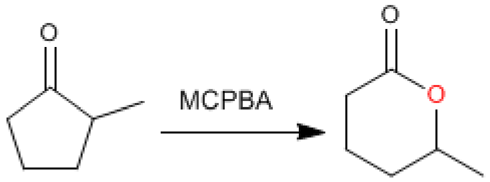
Etapa 2. Migración del sustituyente desde carbono carbonilo hacia el oxígeno (rojo)



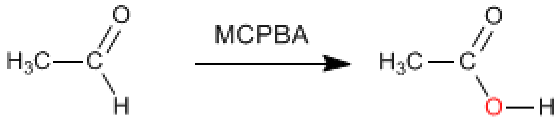
Cuando la cetona tiene dos sustituyentes diferentes migra mejor el más sustituido. Existe un orden de migración que nos ayuda a decidir que sustituyente pasa a unirse al oxígeno del perácido.

Orden de migración: H > carbono terciario > ciclohexilo > carbono secundario » fenilo > carbono primario > metilo

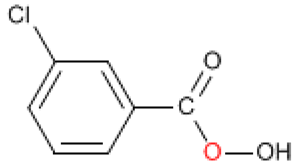




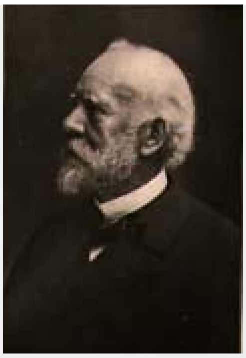
Como puede observarse en el orden de migración, el grupo que mejor migra, por su pequeño tamaño, es el hidrógeno, por ello, al tratar aldehídos con perácidos se produce la migración del hidrógeno formándose ácidos carboxílicos.



El **MCPBA** (Ácido meta-cloroperoxibenzoico) es un perácido ampliamente utilizado en la epoxidación de alquenos y también en Baeyer-Villger. La fórmula del MCPBA se muestra a continuación.



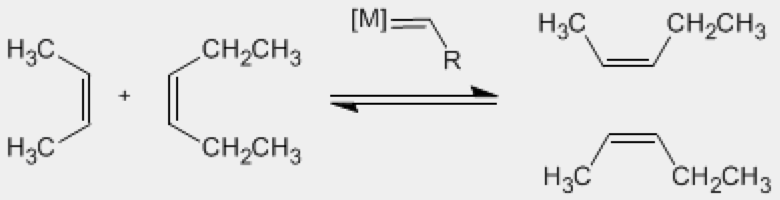
Charles Friedel (1832 - 1899)



Origen: Quimico frances..
Lugar de nacimiento: Estrasburgo.
Formación: estudió química en la Universidad de Berlín entre 1895 y 1899, consiguiendo el doctorado este año.
Docencia: Profesor en la Universidad de la Sorbona.
Investigación: Obtuvo el alcohol propílico. En 1877, Friedel y Crafts describieron por primera vez la reacción del benceno con un haloalcano en presencia de un ácido de Lewis. Esta reacción produce la alquilación del benceno y se conoce como alquilación de Friedl-Crafts.
Premio Nobel:

Metátesis de Alquenos

En esta reacción dos alquenos **[1]** y **[2]** son tratados con un metal de transición que actúa como catalizador, dando una mezcla de alquenos **[3]** (incluyendo isómeros Z/E). Este productos se obtiene por intercambio de grupos alquilideno.

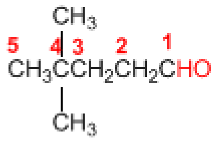


[1] [2] [3]

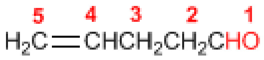
Nomenclatura de Aldehídos y Cetonas - Reglas IUPAC

Regla 1. Los aldehídos se nombran reemplazando la terminación -ano del alcano correspondiente por -al. No es necesario especificar la posición del grupo aldehído, puesto que ocupa el extremo de la cadena (localizador 1).

Cuando la cadena contiene dos funciones aldehído se emplea el sufijo -dial.



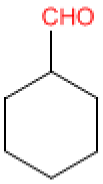
4,4-Dimetilpentanal



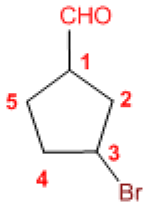
Hex-4-enal

Hexanodial

Regla 2. El grupo -CHO se denomina -carbaldehído. Este tipo de nomenclatura es muy útil cuando el grupo aldehído va unido a un ciclo. La numeración del ciclo se realiza dando localizador 1 al carbono del ciclo que contiene el grupo aldehído.

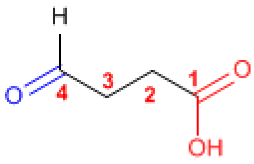


Ciclohexanocarbaldehído

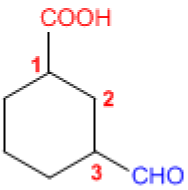


3-Bromociclopentanocarbaldehido

Regla 3. Cuando en la molécula existe un grupo prioritario al aldehído, este pasa a ser un sustituyente que se nombra como oxo- o formil-.



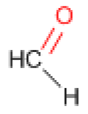
Àcido 4-oxobutanoico



Àcido 3-formilciclohexanocarboxílico

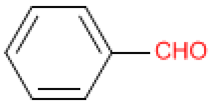
Tanto -carbaldehído como formil- son nomenclaturas que incluyen el carbono del grupo carbonilo. -carbaldehído se emplea cuando el aldehído es grupo funcional, mientras que formil- se usa cuando actúa de sustituyente.

Regla 4. Algunos nombres comunes de aldehídos aceptados por la IUPAC son:



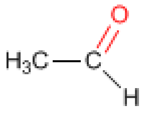
Formaldehído

(Metanal)



Benzaldehído

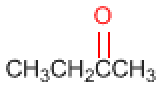
(Bencenocarbaldehído)



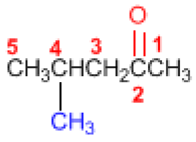
Acetaldehído

(Etanal)

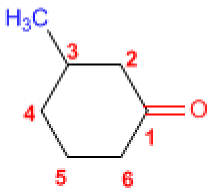
Regla 5. Las cetonas se nombran sustituyendo la terminación -ano del alcano con igual longitud de cadena por -ona. Se toma como cadena principal la de mayor longitud que contiene el grupo carbonilo y se numera para que éste tome el localizador más bajo.



Butanona

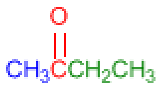


4-Metil-2-pentanona

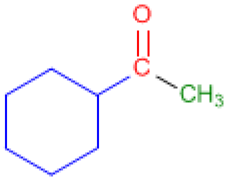


3-Metilciclohexanona

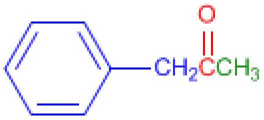
Regla 6. Existe un segundo tipo de nomenclatura para las cetonas, que consiste en nombrar las cadenas como sustituyentes, ordenándolas alfabéticamente y terminando el nombre con la palabra cetona.



Etil metil cetona

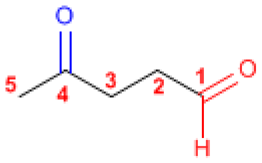


Ciclohexil metil cetona

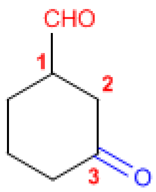


Fenil metil cetona

Regla 7. Cuando la cetona no es el grupo funcional de la molécula pasa a llamarse oxo-.



4-Oxopentanal

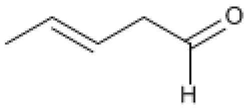


3-Oxociclohexanocarbaldehído

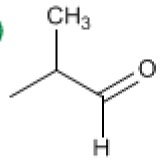
Nomenclatura de Aldehídos y Cetonas - Problema 9.1

Nombra los siguientes aldehídos y cetonas:

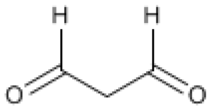
a)



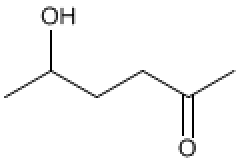
b)



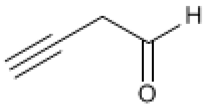
c)



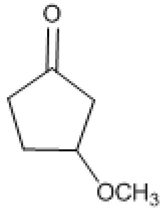
d)



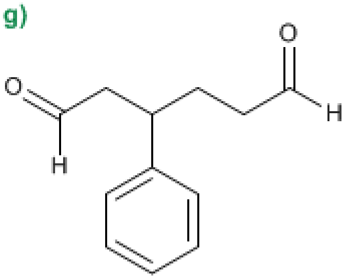
e)



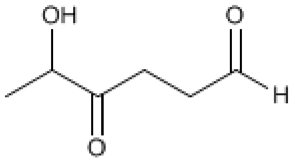
f)



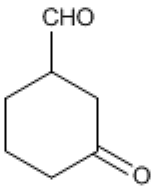
g)



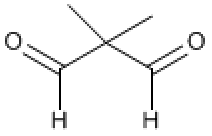
h)



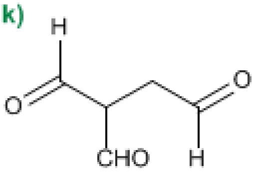
i)



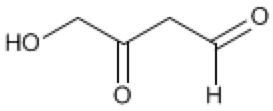
j)



k)

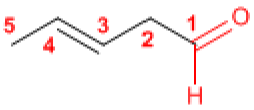


l)

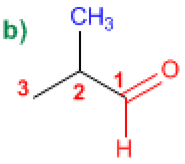


Solución

a)



b)



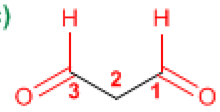
1. Cadena principal: 5 carbonos (pentano)

2. Numeración: comienza en el aldehído (grupo funcional)
Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Nombre: Pent-3-enal

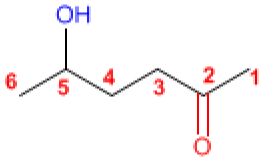
1. Cadena principal: 3 carbonos (propano)
2. Numeración: localizador más bajo al aldehído.
3. Grupo funcional: aldehído
4. Sustituyentes: metilo en 2.
5. Nombre: 2-Metilpropanal

Los aldehídos y cetonas son prioritarios sobre alquenos y alquinos, y se numeran otorgándoles el localizador más bajo

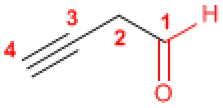
c)



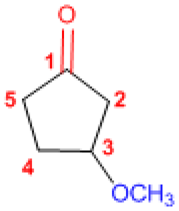
d)



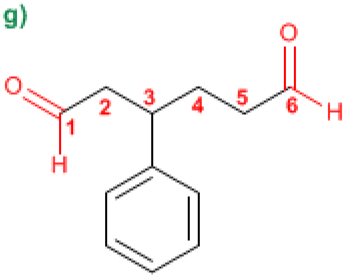
e)



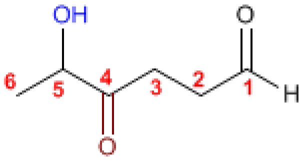
f)



g)



h)



1. Cadena principal: 3 carbonos (propano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído (dialdehido)
3. Nombre: Propanodial

1. Cadena principal: 6 carbonos (hexano)
2. Grupo funcional: cetona
3. Numeración: asignar el menor localizador a la cetona
4. Sustituyentes: hidroxi en 5.
5. Nombre: 5-Hidroxihexan-2-ona

1. Cadena principal: 4 carbonos (butano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Numeración: asignar el menor localizador al aldehído
4. Nombre: But-3-inal

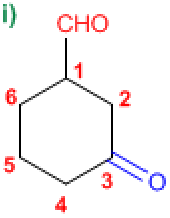
1. Cadena principal: ciclo de 5 miembros (ciclopentano)
2. Grupo funcional: cetona
3. Numeración: comienza en la cetona y prosigue hacia el sustituyente
4. Sustituyentes: metoxi en 3.
5. Nombre: 3-Metoxiciclopentanona

1. Cadena principal: 6 carbonos (hexano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehido (dialdehido)
3. Numeración: comienza en el extremo que otorga al fenilo el localizador más bajo.
4. Sustituyentes: fenilo en 3.
5. Nombre: 3-Fenilhexanodial

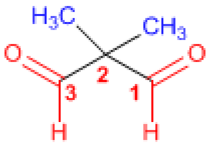
1. Cadena principal: 6 carbonos (hexano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Numeración: asignar el menor localizador al aldehído
4. Sustituyentes: hidroxi en 5 y oxo en 4.
5. Nombre: 5-Hidroxi-4-oxohexanal

Los aldehídos son prioritarios sobre las cetonas que pasan a nombrarse como sustituyentes (oxo-)

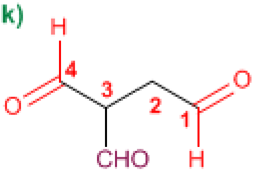
i)



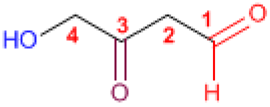
j)



k)



l)



1. Cadena principal: ciclo de 6 miembros (ciclohexano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído (-carbaldehído)
3. Numeración: menor localizador al grupo -CHO (este no se numera)
4. Sustituyentes: cetona (oxo-) en 3
5. Nombre: 3-Oxociclohexanocarbaldehído

1. Cadena principal: 3 carbonos (propano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído (dialdehído)
3. Sustituyentes: metilos en 2,2.
4. Nombre: 2,2-Dimetilpropanodial

1. Cadena principal: 4 carbonos (butano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Sustituyentes: formil en 3
4. Nombre: 3-Formilbutanodial

1. Cadena principal: 4 carbonos (butano)
2. Grupo funcional: aldehído
3. Numeración: asignar el menor localizador al aldehído
4. Sustituyentes: hidroxi en 4 y oxo en 3.
5. Nombre: 4-Hidroxi-3-oxobutanal

Nomenclatura de Aldehídos y Cetonas - Problema 9.2

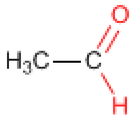
PRINT EMAIL

Dibuja la estructura de los siguientes aldehídos y cetonas:

a) Etanal (acetaldehído)
b) 3-Metilbutanal
c) Benzaldehído
d) 4-Hidroxiciclohexanocarbaldehído
e) 3-Hidroxi-4-metil-5-oxociclohexanocarbaldehído
f) 2-Metil-2,5-octanodiona
g) 2,5-Dioxooctanodial
h) 1,3-Ciclohexanodiona
i) 3-Metil-3-pentenal
j) 3-Oxobutanal
k) 3-Hidroxiciclopentanona
l) 4-Etoxi-5-fenil-3-oxoheptanal

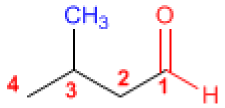
Solución

a)



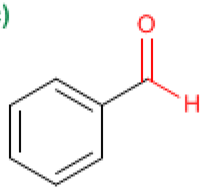
Etanal (acetaldehído)

b)



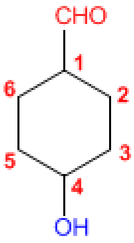
3-Metilbutanal

c)



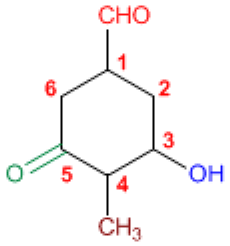
Benzaldehído

d)



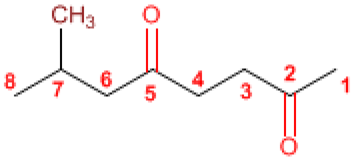
4-Hidroxiciclohexanocarbaldehído

e)



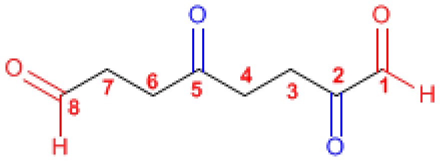
3-Hidroxi-4-metil-5-oxociclohexanocarbaldehído

f)



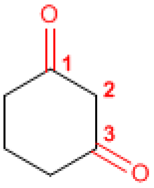
7-Metil-2,5-octanodiona

g)



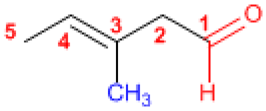
2,5-Dioxooctanodial

h)



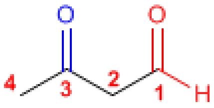
1,3-Ciclohexanodiona

i)



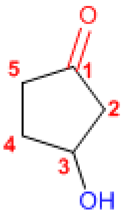
3-Metil-3-pentenal

j)



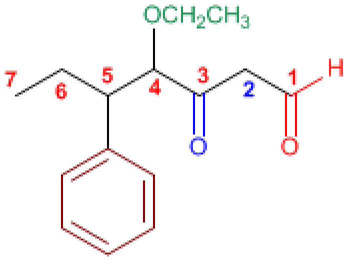
3-Oxobutanal

k)



3-Hidroxiciclopentanona

l)

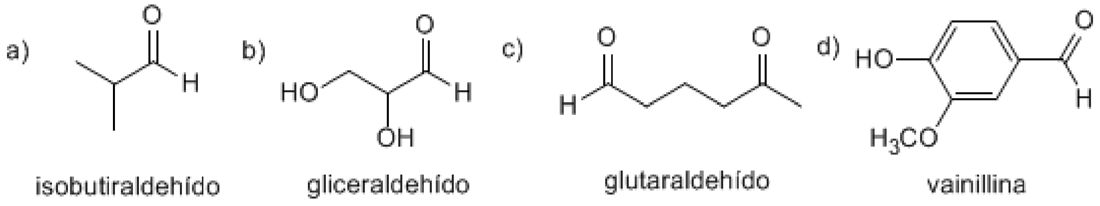


4-Etoxi-5-fenil-3-oxoheptanal

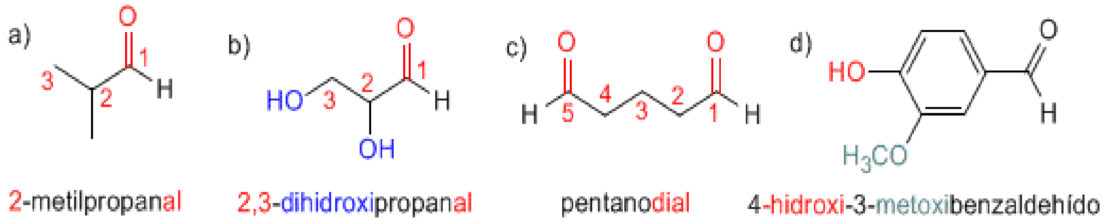
PROBLEMAS RESUELTOS DE ALDEHÍDOS Y CETONAS

Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 1

1) A continuación se dan nombres comunes y las fórmulas estructurales de algunos compuestos carbonílicos. Indique el nombre correspondiente según la IUPAC.



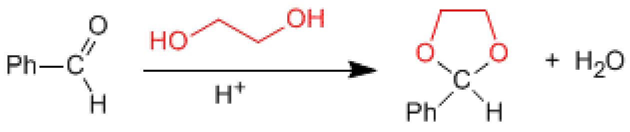
Solución



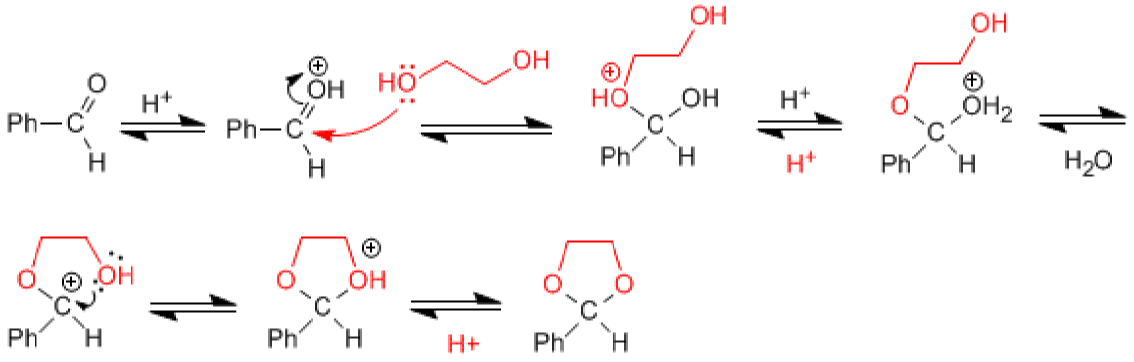
Aldehídos y cetonas: Problema 2

Dibuje la estructura del acetal que se forma cuando el benzaldehído se calienta con 1,2-etanodiol en medio ácido. Escriba un mecanismo detallado que justifique su formación. Describa paso a paso la hidrólisis de este acetal en medio ácido acuoso.

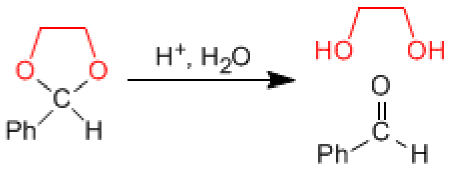
SOLUCIÓN



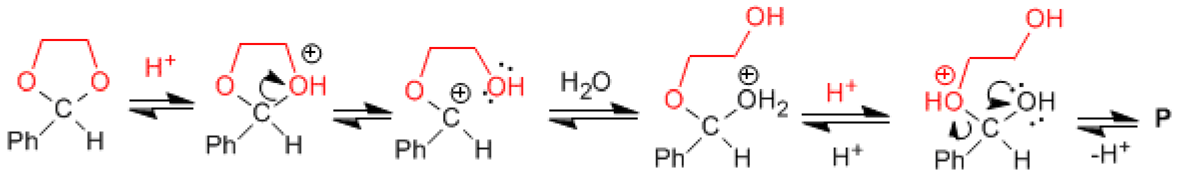
Mecanismo de formación del acetal:



La hidrólisis del acetal en medio ácido acuoso sigue es etapas inversas a la síntesis.



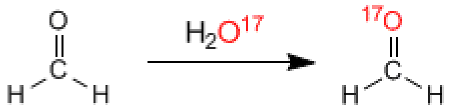
Mecanismo de hidrólisis del acetal cíclico.



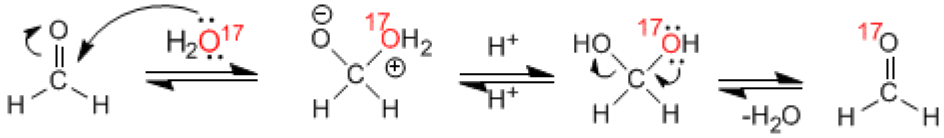
Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 3

Cuando se disuelve formaldehido en agua marcada con ^{17}O, se observa que después de unas horas tanto el hidrato del formaldehido como el formaldehido han incorporado el isótopo ^{17}O. Sugiera una explicación razonable de este hecho.

SOLUCION



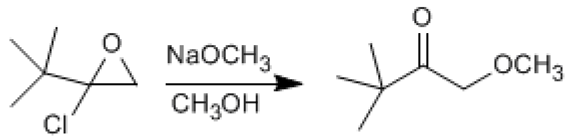
Mecanismo:



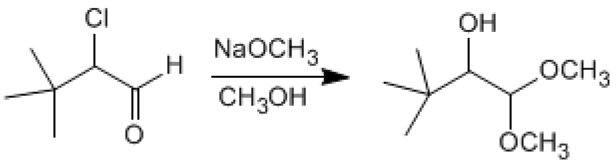
Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 4

Sugiera un mecanismo razonable para una de las siguientes reacciones:

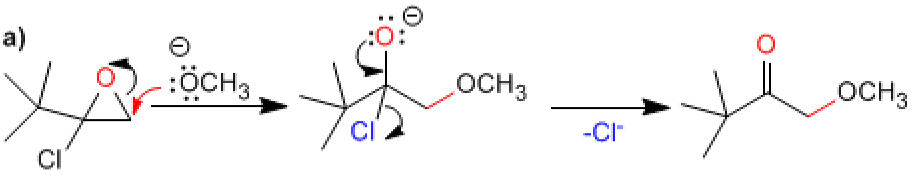
a)



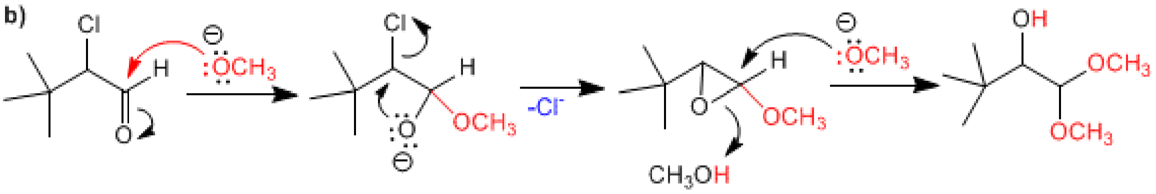
b)



SOLUCION



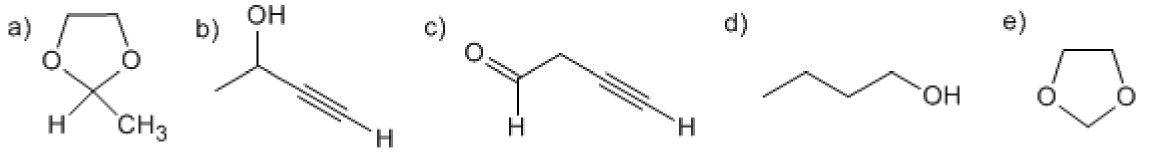
La primera etapa consiste en la apertura del oxaciclopropano sobre el carbono menos sustituido. En la segunda etpa, la cesión del par del oxígeno elimina el cloro, formándose un carbonilo.



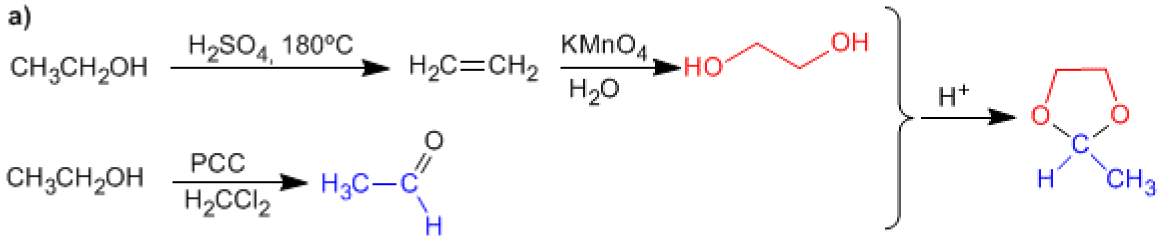
En el primer paso hay dos posibles posiciones de ataque; el carbono carbonilo y el carbono del cloro. Como el producto final no tiene metóxido en el carbono del cloro, atacamos al carbonilo. En la segunda etapa se produce una sustitución nucleófila intramolecular. Para terminar el metóxido abre el epóxido.

Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 5

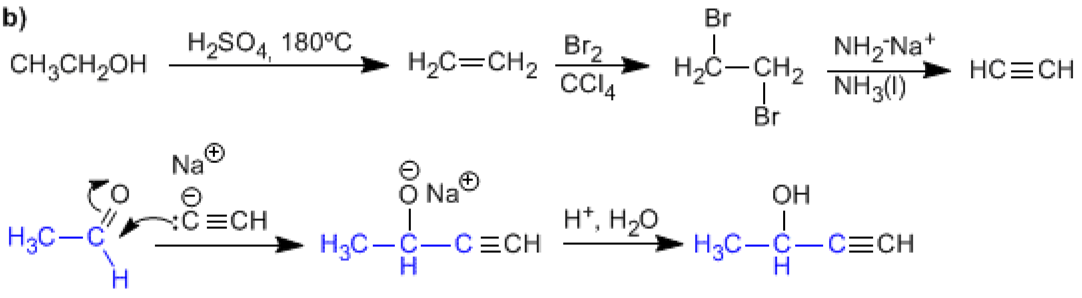
Usando etanol como fuente de todos los átomos de carbono y los reactivos que necesite, describa una síntesis eficiente de cada una de las sustancias siguientes:



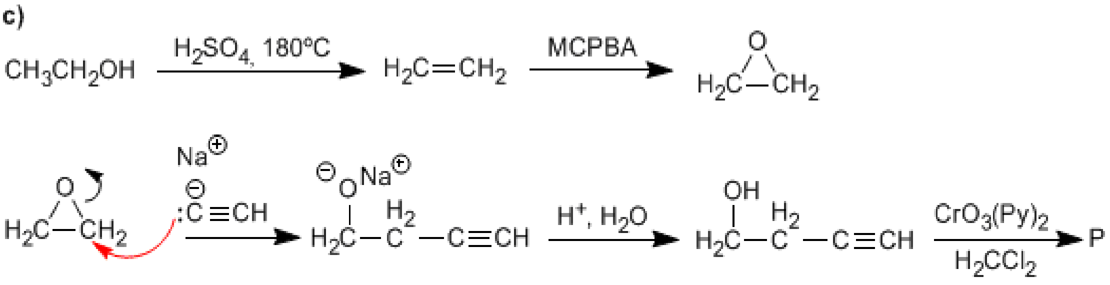
SOLUCIÓN



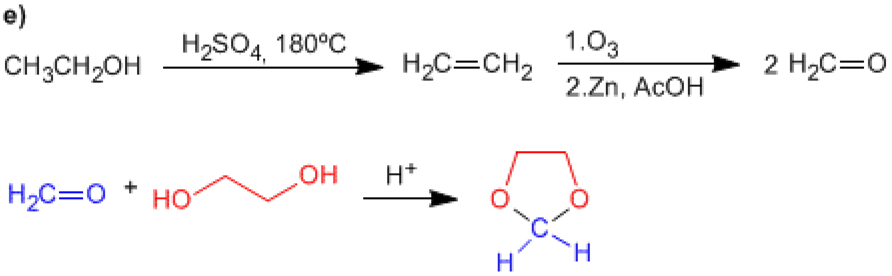
b)



c)

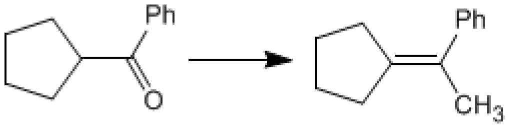


e)

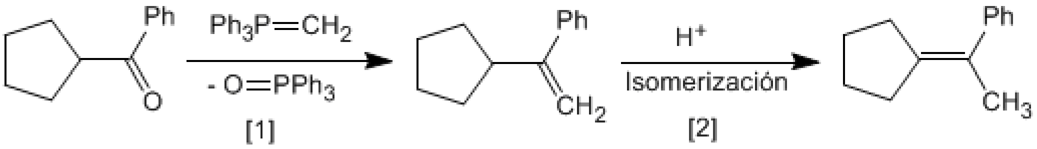


Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 6

Utilizando los reactivos necesarios, indicar las etapas que permiten realizar la siguiente transformación:



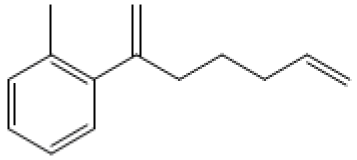
SOLUCIÓN



[1] Reacción de Wittig
[2] Isomerización en medio ácido, impulsada por la mayor estabilidad del alqueno interno.

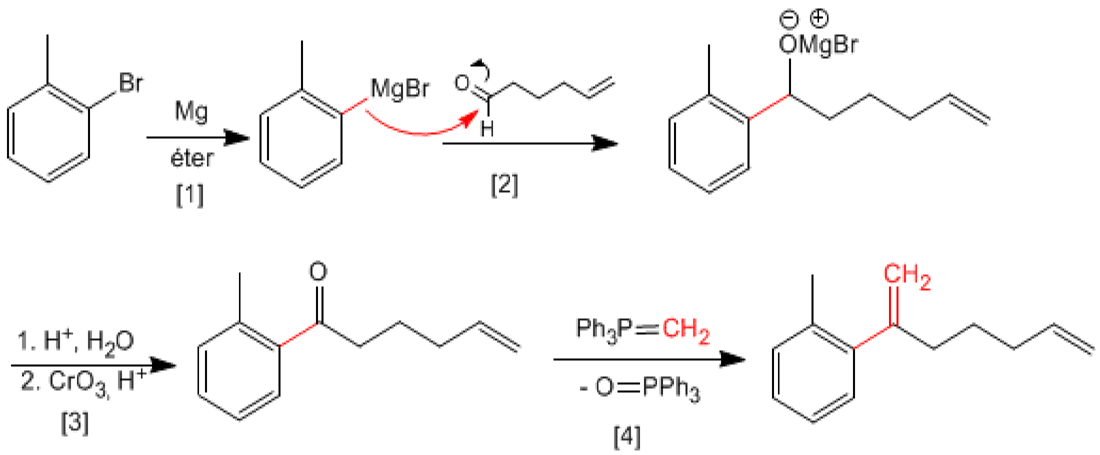
Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 7

A partir de 5-hexenal y o-bromotolueno obtener el siguiente producto.



Pueden ser necesarios reactivos orgánicos e inorgánicos adicionales.

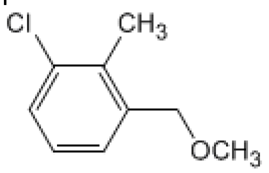
SOLUCIÓN



[1] Formación del magnesiano
[2] Ataque nucleófilo del magnesiano al carbonilo.
[3] Hidrólisis y posterior oxidación del alcohol secundario.
[4] Reacción de Wittig entre la cetona y el trifenilmetilenfosforano.

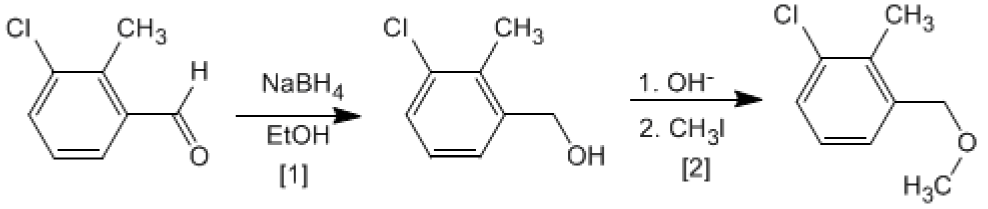
Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 8

Obtener a partir de 3-cloro-2-metilbenzaldehído y de los reactivos



necesarios
el compuesto siguiente:

SOLUCIÓN

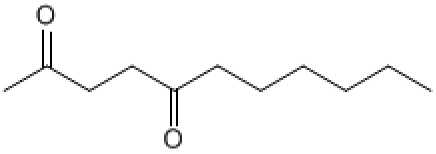


[1] Reducción del aldehído a alcohol

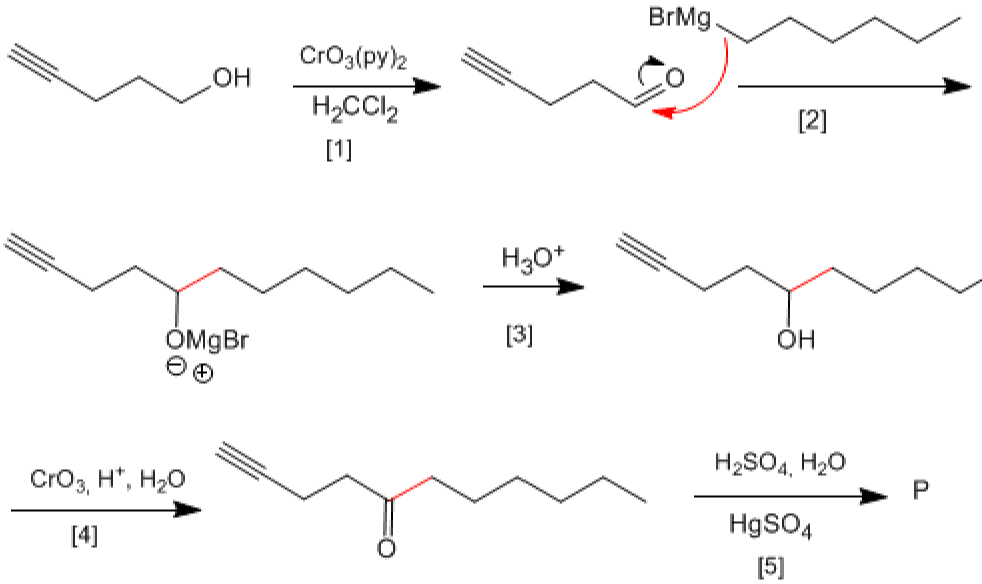
[2] Síntesis de Williamson de éteres.

Aldehídos y Cetonas: Problema 9

A partir de 4-pentin-1-ol obtener:



SOLUCIÓN

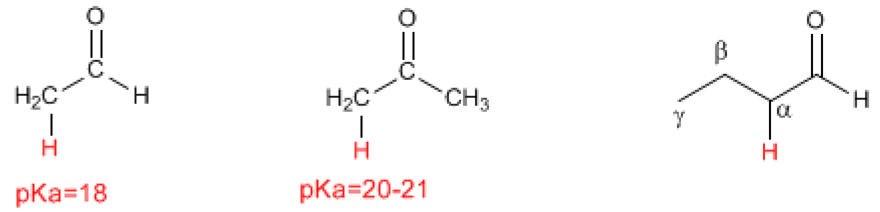


[1] Oxidación del alcohol a aldehído
[2] Formación del enlace carbono-carbono mediante organometálicos de magnesio
[3] Protonación del alcohol
[4] Oxidación del alcohol con Jones (Puedes utilizar también $CrO_3(py)_2$)
[5] Hidratación Markovnikov del alquino, para formar cetonas

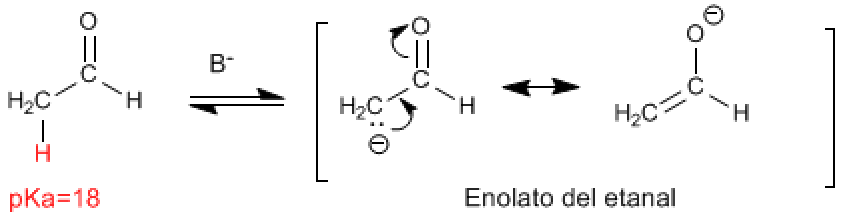
TEORÍA DE ENOLES Y ENOLATOS

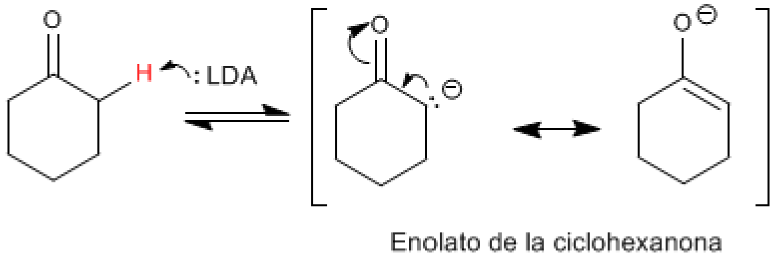
Formación de Enolatos

Los aldehídos y cetonas presentan hidrógenos ácidos en la posición vecina al grupo carbonilo, conocida como posición alfa. Estos hidrógenos presentan un pKa comprendido entre 18 y 21.



La acidez de los hidrógenos α es debida a la estabilización de la base conjugada (enolato) por resonancia.

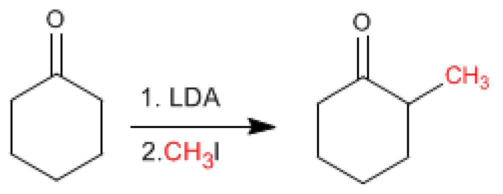




Alquilación de Enolatos

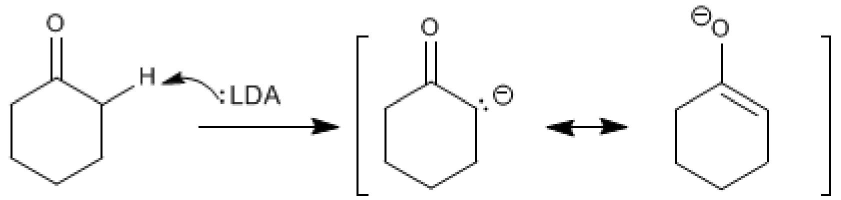
Los enolatos actúan como nucleófilos a través del carbono atacando a un gran número de electrófilos (haloalcanos, epóxidos, carbonilos, ésteres.....). En este punto nos fijaremos en la reacción entre enlolatos y haloalcanos, que permite añadir cadenas carbonadas a la posición a de la cadena.

La Ciclohexanona se convierte en 2-Metilciclhexanona por tratamiento con LDA seguido de yoduro de metilo.

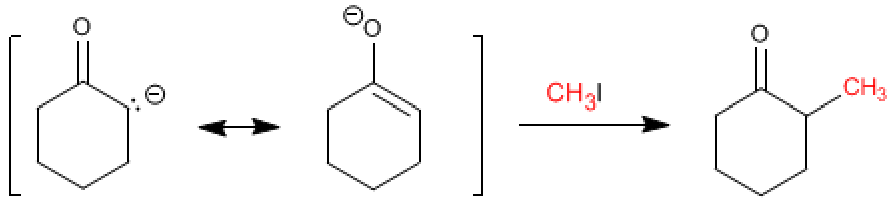


Etapas del mecanismo por el que se alquila la ciclohexanona:

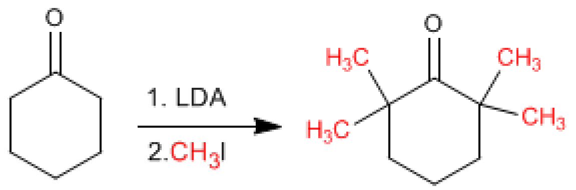
Etapa 1. Formación del enolato



Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enolato sobre el haloalcano (Reacción de tipo S_N2)



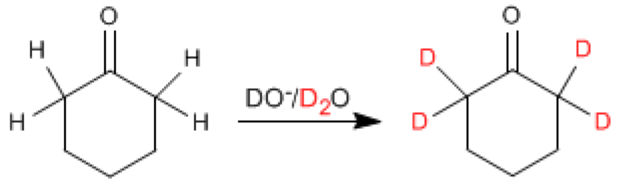
Las reacciones de alquilación tienen dos importantes problemas.
1. Competencia con la condensación aldólica. Los carbonilos en medio básico tienden a condensar para formar aldoles.
2. La reacción es difícil de controlar y tiende a polialquilar el carbonilo.



Ciclohexanona polialquilada

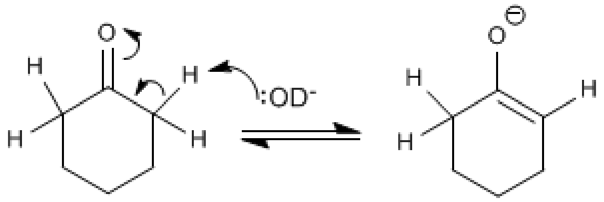
Intercambio hidrógeno - Deuterio

Los aldehídos y cetonas intercambian sus hidrógenos a por deuterios cuando se tratan con DO^-/D_2O o con D^+/D_2O. En medios básicos la reacción transcurre a través de enolatos y en medios ácidos los intermedios formados son enoles.

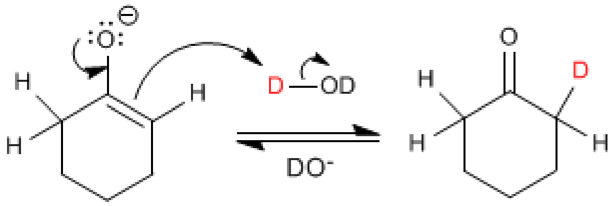


El mecanismo del intercambio hidrógeno-deuterio transcurre en los siguientes pasos:

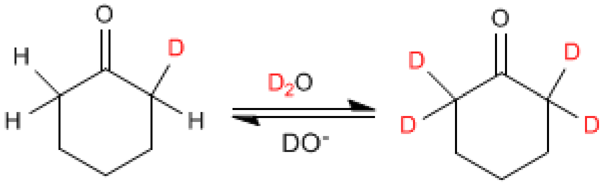
Etapa 1. Formación del enolato



Etapa 2. Transferencia del deuterio al enolato



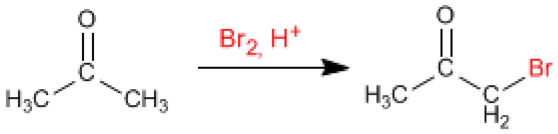
Etapa 3. Sustitución del resto de hidrógenos



Halogenación de aldehídos y cetonas

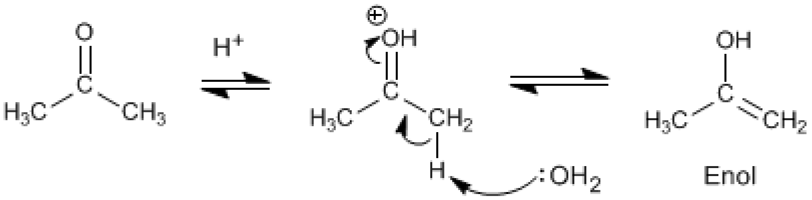
Los aldehídos y cetonas reaccionan con halógenos en medios ácidos o básicos produciéndose la sustitución de hidrógenos a por halógenos.

Halogenación de la propanona en medio ácido:

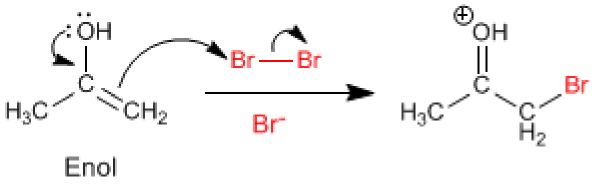


El mecanismo de halogenación en **medio ácido** tiene las siguientes etapas:

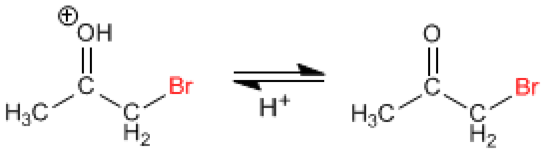
Etapa 1. Formación del enol



Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enol sobre el halógeno ayudado por la cesión del para del oxígeno.

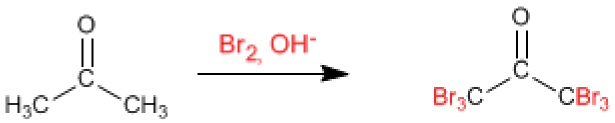


Etapa 3. Desprotonación



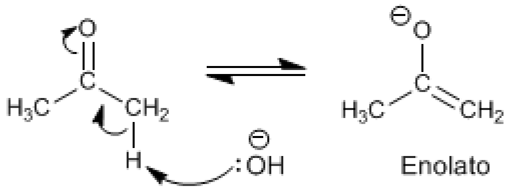
Trabajando con un equivalente de reactivo la halogenación para en una primera adición y no ocurren polialogenaciones. El paso clave del mecanismo es la formación del enol y esta etapa requiere protonar el oxígeno del carbonilo. Una vez halogenada la posición a el oxígeno se vuelve menos básico, debido al efecto electronegativo del bromo, protonándose peor .

Halogenación de la propanona en **medio basico**:

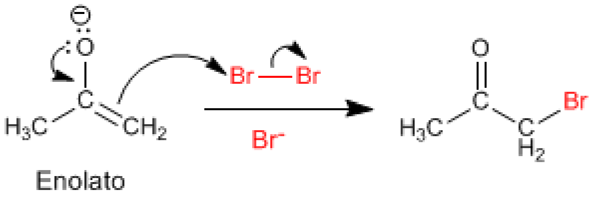


La halogenación en medio básico tiene el siguiente mecanismo:

Etapa 1. Formación del enolato



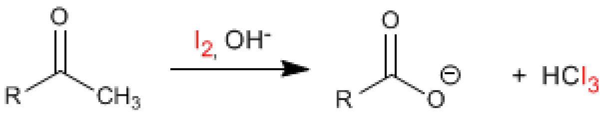
Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enolato sobre el halógeno ayudado por la cesión del para del oxígeno.



Este mecanismo se repite otras 5 veces sustituyendo todos los hidrógenos a por halógenos. En este caso la reacción no para puesto que el producto halogenado es más reactivo que la propanona de partida. La base arranca mejor los hidrógenos en el producto halogenado (son más ácidos), haciendo imposible parar la reacción.

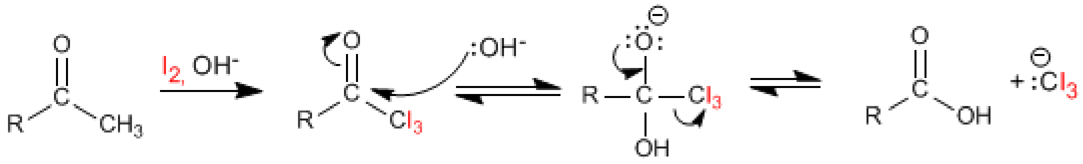
Reacción del Haloformo (Yodoformo)

Las cetonas metílicas **[1]** reaccionan con halógenos en medios básicos generando carboxilatos **[2]** y haloformo [**3**].



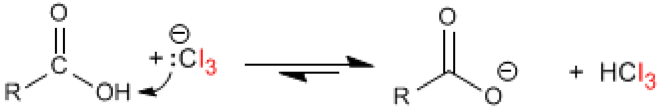
[1] [2] [3]

El mecanismo consiste en halogenar completamente el metilo, sustituyendo en una etapa posterior el grupo -CX_3 formado por -OH.



[1] [4] [5] [6] [7]

El grupo CI_3^- es muy básico y desprotona el ácido carboxílico formándose yodoformo y el carboxilato.

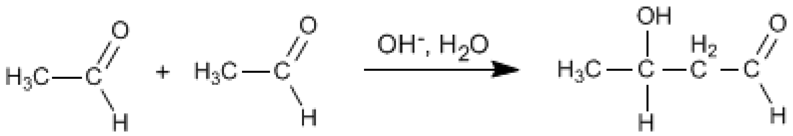


[6] [7] [2] [3]

Esta reacción (con yodo) puede emplearse como ensayo analítico para identificar cetonas metílicas aprovechando que el yodoformo precipita de color amarillo.

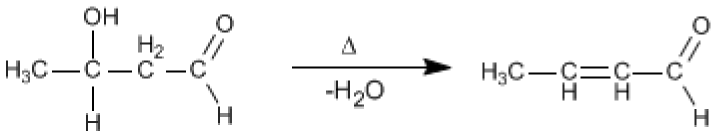
Condensación Aldólica

Aldehídos y cetonas [1] condensan en medios básicos formando aldoles [2]. Esta reacción se denomina condensación aldólica.



[1] [2]

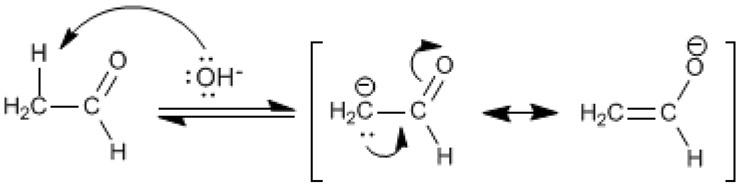
El aldol [2] formado deshidrata en el medio básico por calentamiento para formar un α,β-insaturado [3].



[2] [3]

El mecanismo de la condensación aldólica transcurre con formación de un enolato, que ataca al carbonilo de otra molécula. En esta condensación se forma un enlace carbono-carbono entre el carbonilo de una molécula y el carbono α de la otra.

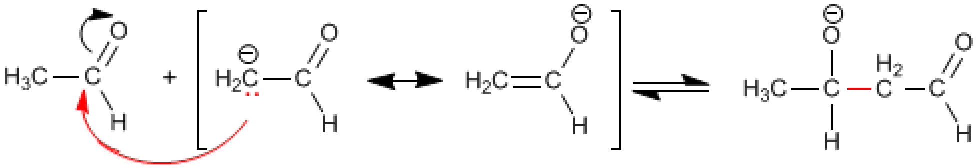
Etapa 1. Formación del enolato



[1] [4]

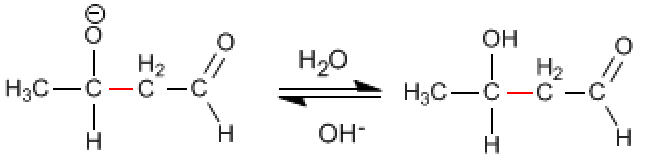
La base despotona el carbono alfa del etanal [1] generando el enolato [4] estabilizado por resonancia.

Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enolato sobre el carbonilo



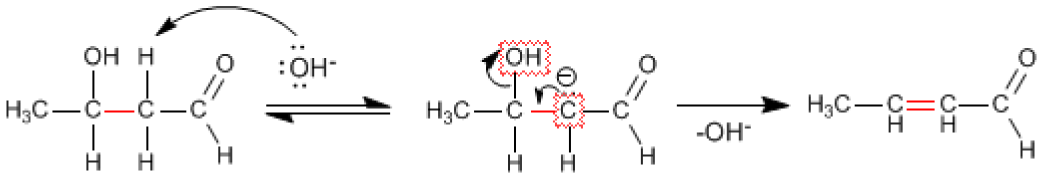
[1] [4] [5]

Etapa 3. Protonación



[5] [2]

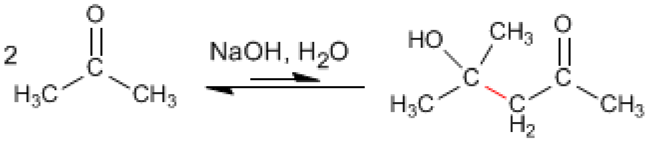
Etapa 4. Deshidratación del aldol



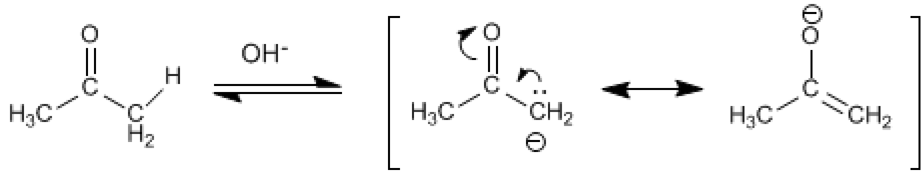
[2] [6] [3]

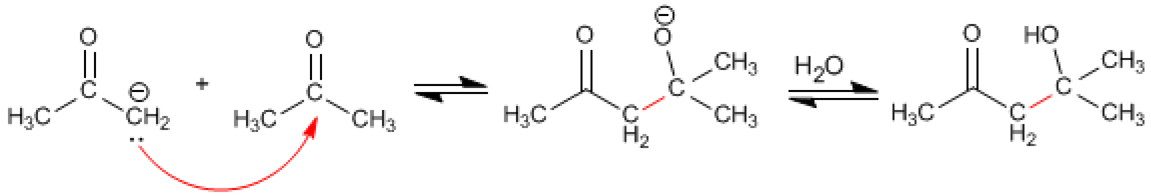
Condensación aldólica con cetonas

Las cetonas son menos reactivas que los aldehídos y dan un rendimiento muy bajo en la condensación aldólica. Asi, dos moléculas de propanona condensan para formar el aldol correspondiente con un rendimiento del 2%. Se pueden conseguir porcentajes elevados del producto separándolo del medio de reacción según se va formando, o bien, calentando para deshidratarlo. De ambas formas los equilibrios de la aldólica se desplazan hacia el producto final.

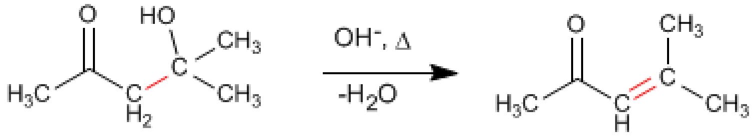


Mecanismo de la reacción:



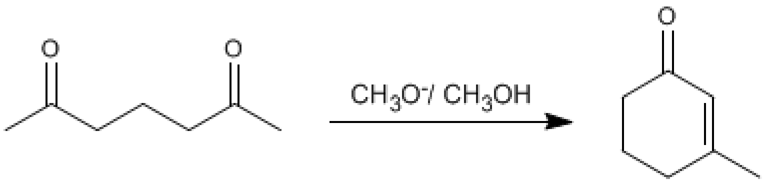


La deshidratación final permite el desplazamiento de los equilibrios. También se puede realizar una extracción del aldol del medio de reacción para favorecer la reacción.



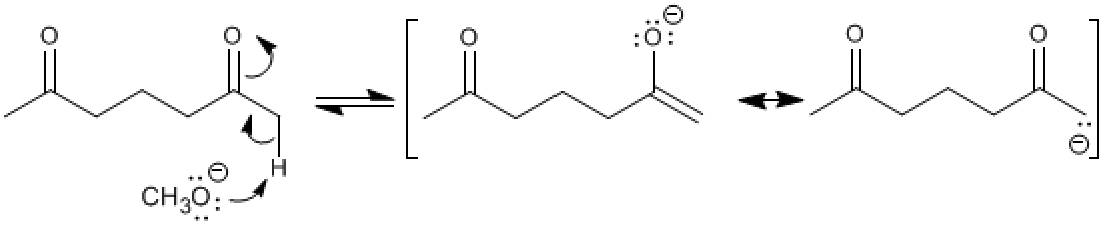
Condensación aldólica intramolecular

Los compuestos dicarbonílicos condensan mediante la aldólica intramolecular en medios básicos. En esta reacción se obtienen ciclos de cinco o seis miembros.
Así, la 2,6-heptanodiona condensa con metóxido en metanol para formar el 3-metilciclohex-2-enona.

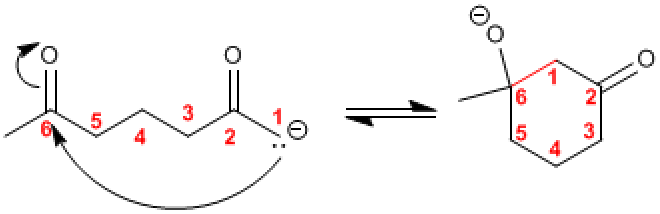


El mecanismo de la reacción transcurre a través de las siguientes etapas:

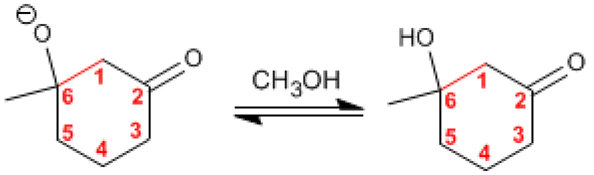
Etapa 1. Formación del enolato.



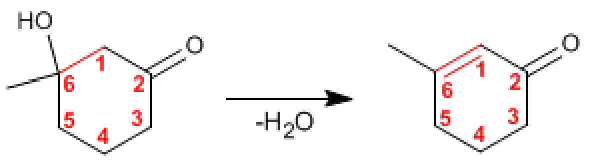
Etapa 2. Adición nucleófila intramolecular



Etapa 3. Protonación de la base del aldol



Etapa 4. Deshidratación del aldol



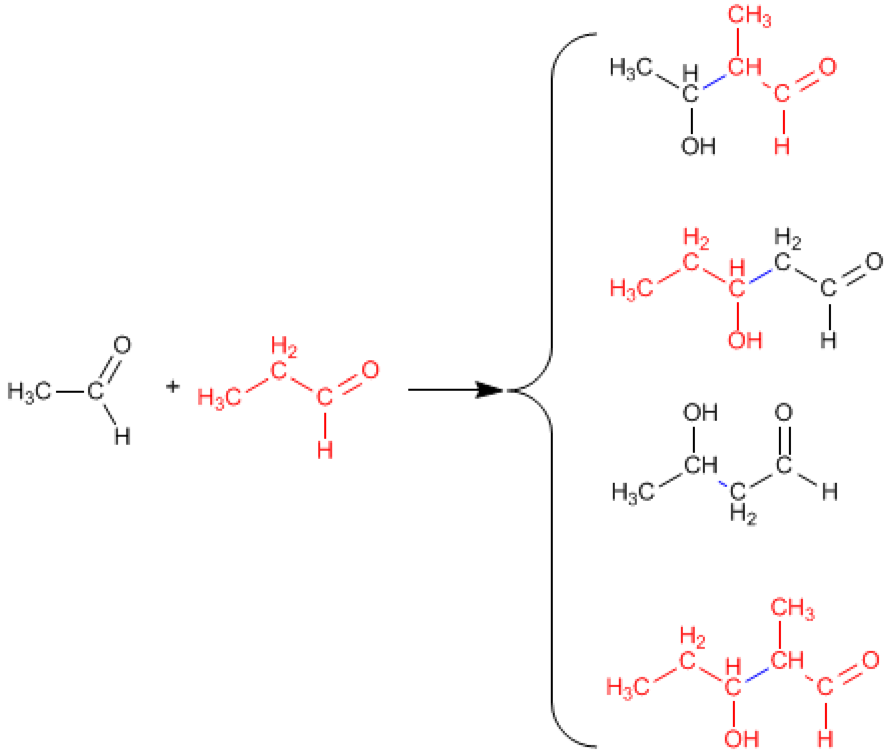
Condensación aldólica cruzada o mixta

La reacción entre dos carbonilos diferentes se llama aldólica cruzada o mixta. Esta reacción sólo tiene utilidad sintética en dos casos:

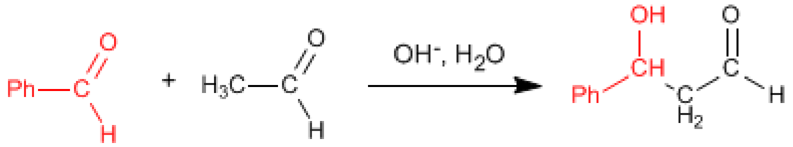
1. Sólo uno de los carbonilos puede formar enolatos.

2. Uno de los carbonilos es mucho más reactivo que el otro.

En el resto de situaciones la aldólica mixta genera mezclas de cuatro productos. Veamos como ejemplo la condensación del etanal y propanal.

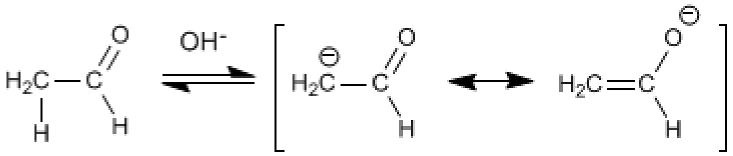


La condensación aldólica mixta del etanal con el benzaldehído genera un producto, cuando se trabaja en exceso de benzaldehído, debido a que el benzaldehído carece de hidrógenos en el carbono alfa y no puede formar enolatos.



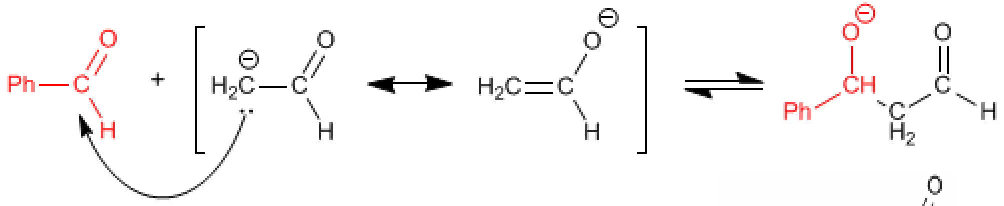
El mecanismo de esta reacción tiene lugar en las siguientes etapas:

Etapa 1. Enolización del etanal

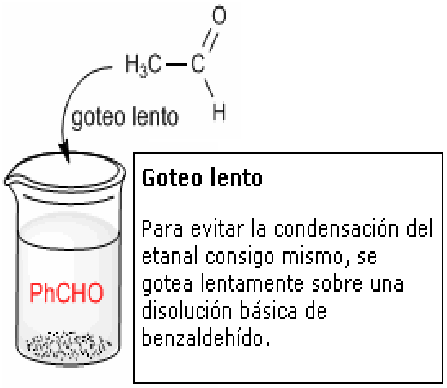


La formación de enolatos sólo puede tener lugar con el etanal, puesto que el benzaldehído carece de hidrógenos ácidos en el carbono alfa.

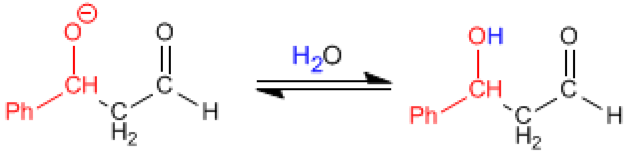
Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enolato al benzaldehído.



En esta etapa puede ocurrir el ataque del enolato de etanal sobre si mismo. Para evitarlo debe trabajarse en exceso de benzaldehído. Un procedimiento experimental muy usado para evitar la condensación del etanal consigo mismo es gotear léntamente el etanal sobre una disolución básica de benzaldehído

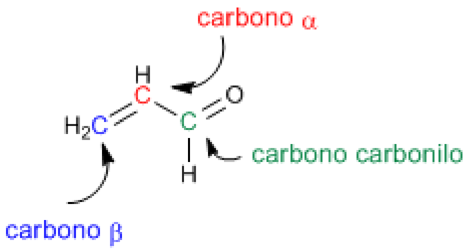


Etapa 3. Protonación



Síntesis de carbonilos alfa,beta-insaturados

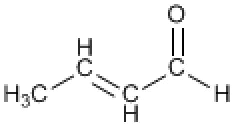
Los carbonilos α,β-insturados son compuestos orgánicos que tienen un doble enlace entre las posiciones α,β de un aldehído o cetona.



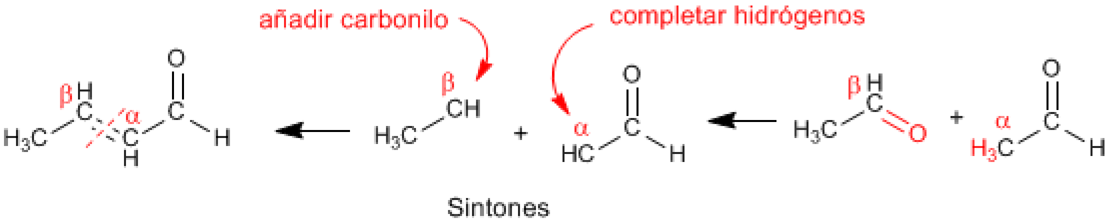
El propenal o acroleina es un carbonilo α,β-insaturado. Sus dos dobles enlaces conjugados le confieren una reactividad especial.

Existen 4 métodos importantes para la preparación de α,β-insaturados: condensación aldólica, halogenación del carbono α seguida de eliminación, oxidación de alcoholes alílicos y Wittig.

Método 1. Preparar mediante la condensación aldólica el siguiente compuesto.

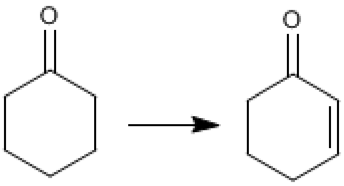


Empleamos la retrosíntesis para preparar el compuesto. Al ser de la familia de los α,β-insaturados se puede obtener mediante la condensación aldólica.

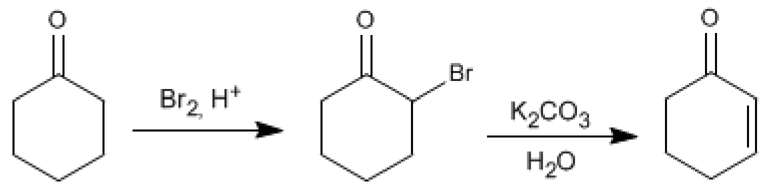


Para obtener los reactivos que forman el α,β-insaturado se rompe por el doble enlace, obteniéndose los sintones (equivalentes sintéticos). Los reactivos se obtienen añadiendo al carbono β un carbonilo y completando los hidrógeno que faltan en el carbono α.

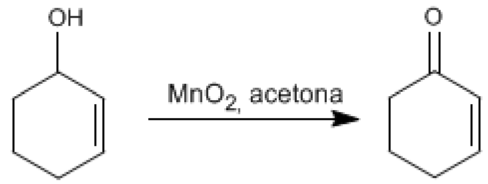
Ejemplo 2. Indicar como se puede realizar las siguiente transformación.



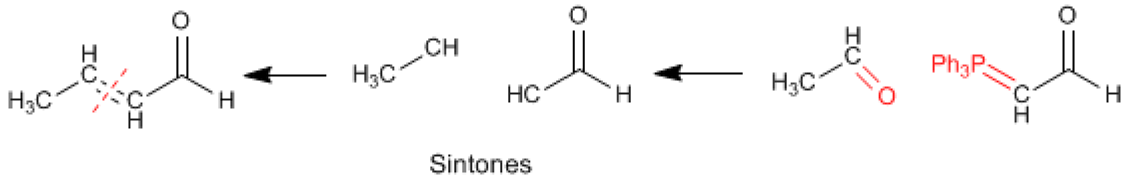
En una primera etapa se halogena la posición a del carbonilo. En la segunda etapa se realiza una eliminación que nos deja el producto final.



Método 3. La oxidación de alcoholes alílicos con dióxido de manganeso en acetona produce α,β-insaturados



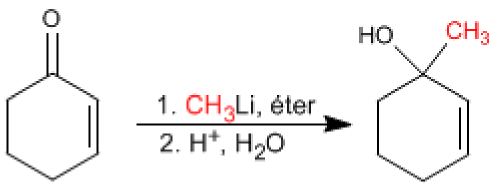
Método 4. Reacción de Wittig



Reactividad de carbonilos alfa,beta-insaturados

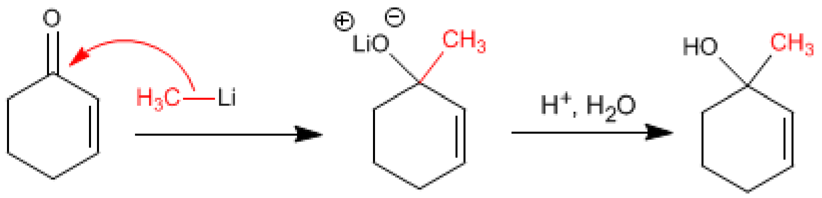
Los α,β-insaturados son compuestos que poseen dos posiciones electrófilas: el carbono carbonilo y el carbono β.

Adiciones 1,2. Los organometálicos de litio atacan al carbono carbonilo dando lugar a adiciones 1,2.



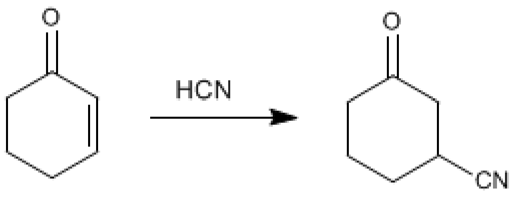
Los organometálicos de litio y magnesio atacan al carbono carbonilo de los α,β-insaturados

Mecanismo de la adición 1,2

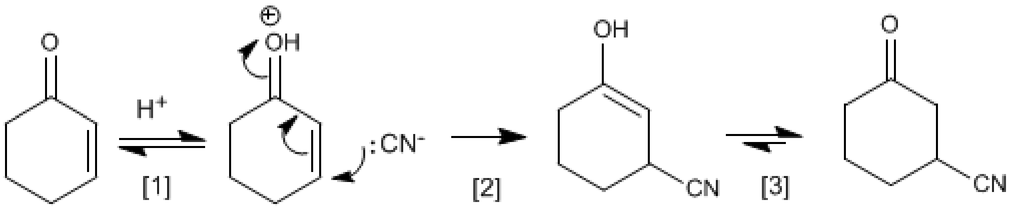


Adiciones 1,4. Los cupratos, cianuro y otros nucleófilos atacan al carbono β de los α,β-insaturados, dando adiciones 1,4.

El ácido cianhídrico da adiciones 1,4 con los α,β-insaturados. El ciano se une al carbono β.

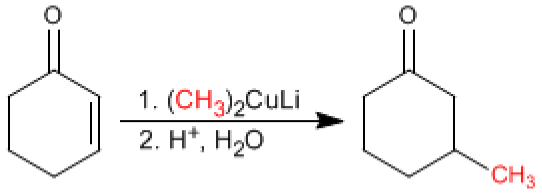


Mecanismo de adición del ácido cianhídrico a la Ciclohex-2-enona

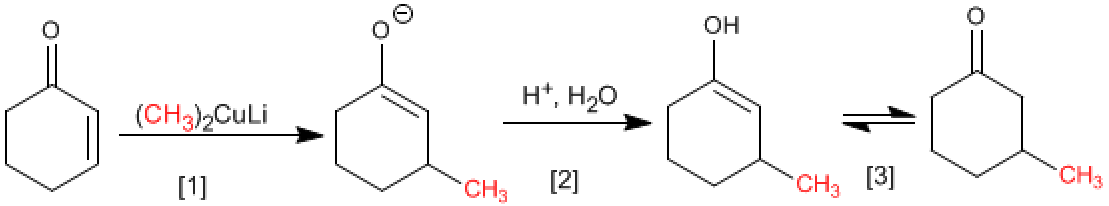


[1] Protonación del carbonilo
[2] Ataque nucleófilo del cianuro al carbono β.
[3] Tautomería ceto-enol.

Los cupratos son organometálicos de cobre que se adicionan al carbono β de los α,β-insaturados.



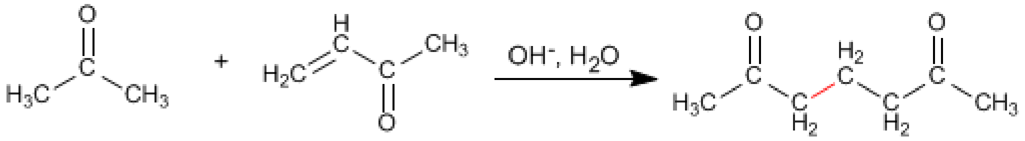
El mecanismo de la reacción comienza con el ataque nucleófilo del cuprato sobre el carbono β, formando un enolato, que se protona en la segunda etapa para dar un enol. El enol tautomeriza a cetona generando el producto final.



[1] Adición nucleófila del cuprato.
[2] Protonación del enolato
[3] Tautomería ceto-enol

Adición de Michael y anelación de Robinson

Los enolatos de aldehídos o cetonas se adicionan a los α,β-insaturados para formar 1,5-dicarbonilos. Esta reacción se denomina adición de Michael.

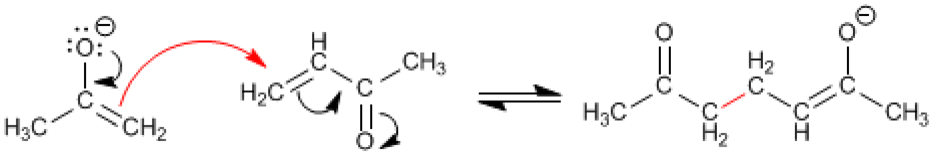


[1] [2] [3]

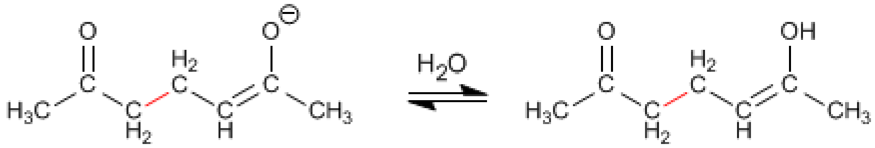
La propanona [1] reacciona con el α,β-insaturado [2] para formar el 1,5-dicarbonilo [3]
Mecanismo de la Adición de Michael:

Etapa 1. Formación del enolato.

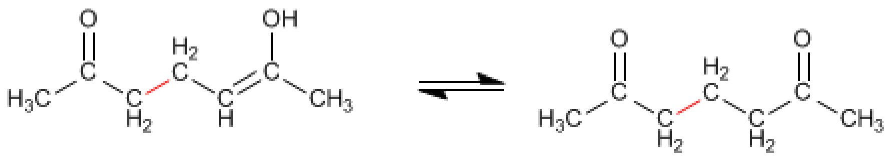
Etapa 2. Ataque nucleófilo del enolato al carbono β del α,β-insaturado.



Etapa 3. Equilibrio ácido-base



Etapa 4. Tautomería ceto-enol

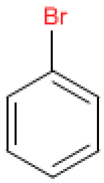


El producto de Michael puede condensar mediante una aldólica intramolecular, formando un α,β-insaturado. El conjunto de la adición de Michael y la aldólica final se conoce como reacción de Robinson

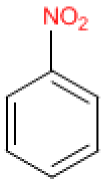
TEORÍA DEL BENCENO

Nomenclatura del Benceno

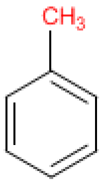
Los bencenos monosustituidos se nombran terminando el nombre del sustituyente en benceno.



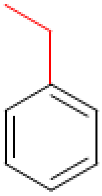
Bromobenceno



Nitrobenceno

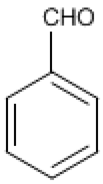


Metilbenceno

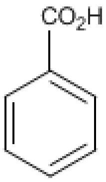


Etilbenceno

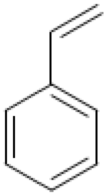
Algunos derivados monosustituidos del benceno tienen nombres comunes ampliamente aceptados.



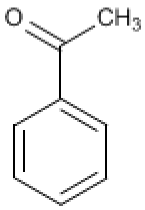
Benzaldehído



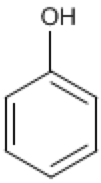
Ácido benzoico



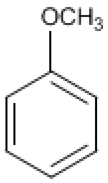
Estireno



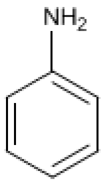
Acetofenona



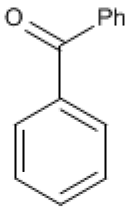
Fenol



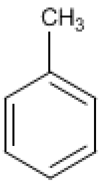
Anisol



Anilina

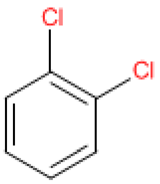


Benzofenona



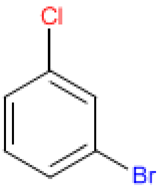
Tolueno

En bencenos disustituidos se emplean los prefijos *orto* (benceno 1,2-disustituido), *meta* (benceno 1,3-disustituido) y *para* (benceno 1,4-disustituido) para indicar la posición de los sustituyentes en el anillo.



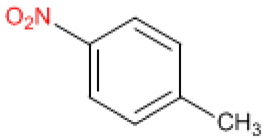
o-Diclorobenceno

(1,2-Diclorobenceno)



m-Bromoclorobenceno

(1-Bromo-3-clorobenceno)

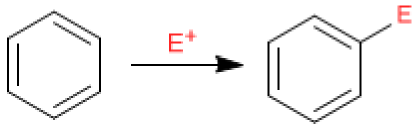


p-Nitrotolueno

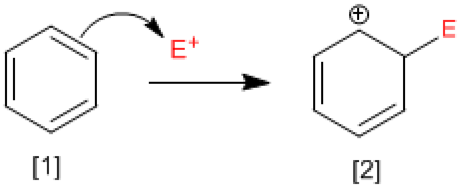
(4-Nitrotolueno)

Sustitución Electrófila Aromática

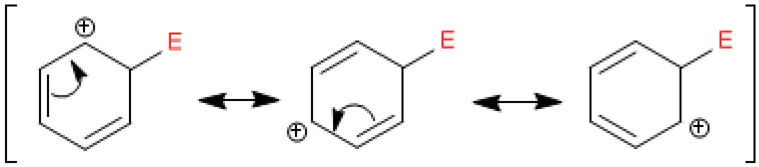
El benceno actúa como nucleófilo, atacando a un número importante y variado de electrófilos.



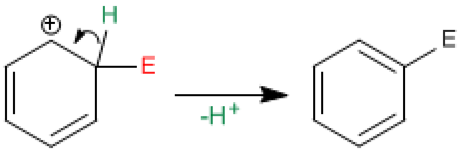
Etapa 1. En la primera etapa de la reacción el electrófilo acepta un par de electrones porcedentes de la nube π del benceno, formándose un carbocatión estabilizado por resonancia.



El catión ciclohexadienilo [2] deslocaliza la carga positiva según las siguientes estructuras:

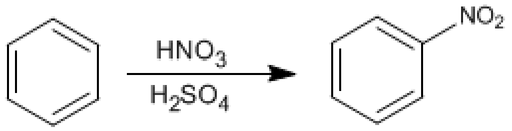


Etapa 2. En la segunda etapa el benceno recupera su aromaticidad por perdida de un protón. Es una etapa rápida conocida como rearomatización del anillo.

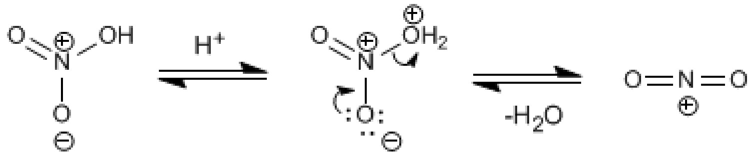


Nitración del Benceno

El benceno reacciona con la mezcla nitrico-sulfurico adicionando grupos nitro.

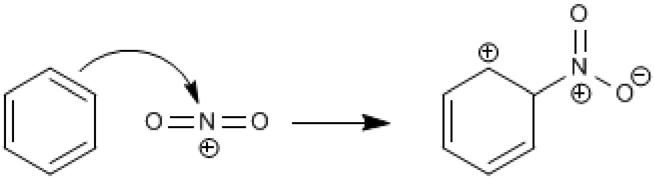


El electrófilo de esta reacción es el catión nitronio. NO_2^+. Las concentraciones de este catión en el ácido nitrico son muy bajas para nitrar el benceno, por ello es necesario añadir ácido sulfúrico.

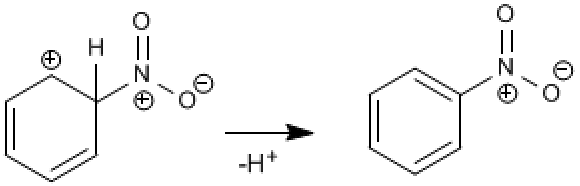


Mecanismo para la nitración del benceno:

Etapa 1. Ataque del benceno al catión nitronio

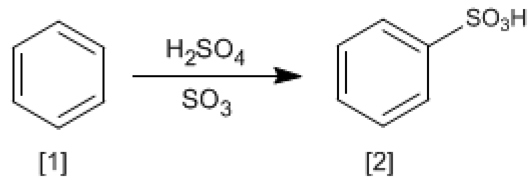


Etapa 2. Recuperación de la aromaticidad por pérdida de un protón



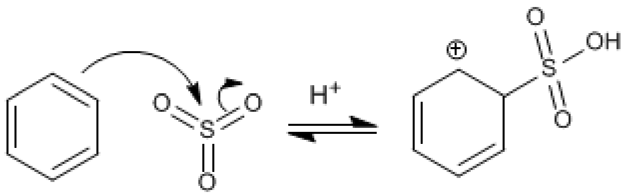
Sulfonación del Benceno

La reaccion del benceno [1] con una disolución de trióxido de azufre en ácido sulfúrico produce ácidos bencenosulfónicos [2].

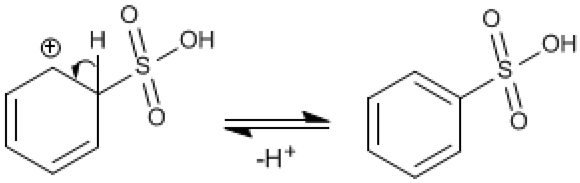


El mecanismo de la sulfonación tiene lugar con las siguientes etapas:

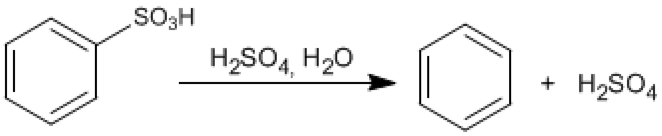
Etapa 1. Ataque del benceno al trióxido de azufre



Etapa 2. Recuperación de la aromaticidad por pérdida de un protón.

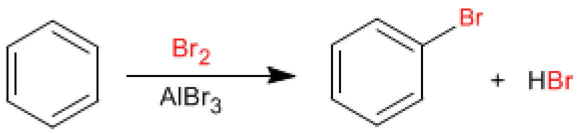


El mecanismo de la sulfonación es reversible, lo cual permite eliminar el grupo $-SO_3H$ por tratamiento con sulfúrico acuoso. Esta propiedad es utilizada para proteger posiciones del benceno, ocupándolas con el grupo $-SO_3H$.



Halogenación del Benceno

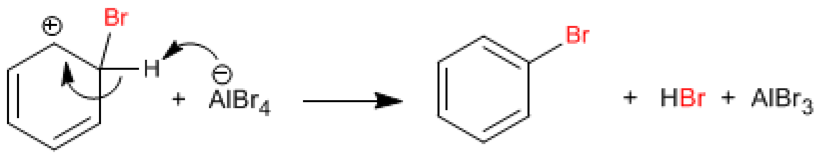
El benceno reacciona con halógenos en presencia de ácidos de Lewis para formar derivados halogenados.



El mecanismo de la halogenación tiene lugar con las siguientes etapas:

Etapa 1. La molécula de bromo se polariza al interaccionar con el ácido de Lewis. El benceno ataca al bromo polarizado positivamente para formar el catión ciclohexadienilo.

Etapa 2. Recuperación de la aromaticidad por pérdida de un protón.

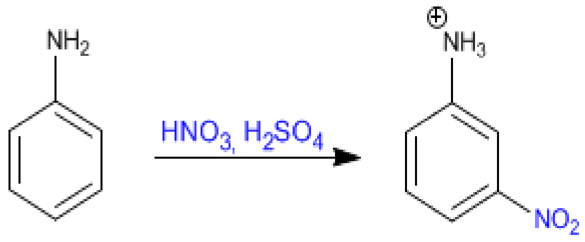


La cloración se puede llevar a cabo de forma similar a la bromación. La reacción con flúor y yodo se realiza muy poco frecuentemente. En el caso del flúor la reacción es dificil de controlar por su elevada reactividad. Por el contrario, el yodo reacciona lentamente y tiene un equilibrio desfavorable.

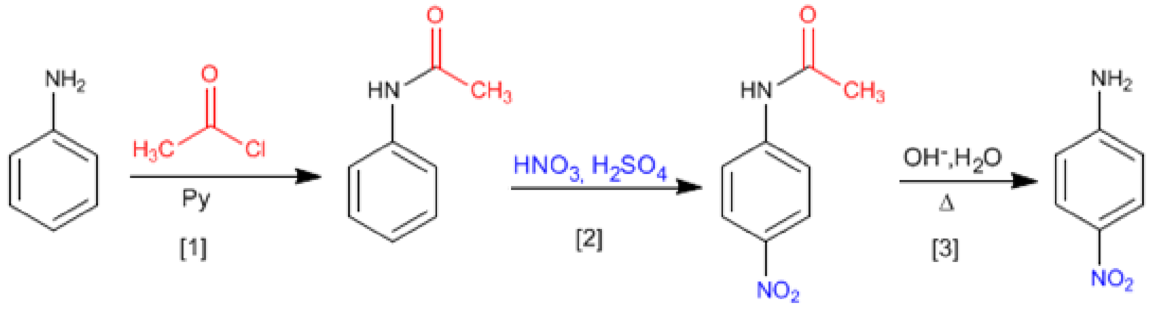
Benceno - Protección y desprotección del grupo amino

El grupo amino es un activante fuerte, que orienta a orto/para. Sin embargo, en medios ácidos se protona transformándose en un desactivante fuerte (sal de amonio) que orienta a posición meta. Se puede evitar la protonación del amino protegiéndolo con cloruro de etanoilo en piridina.

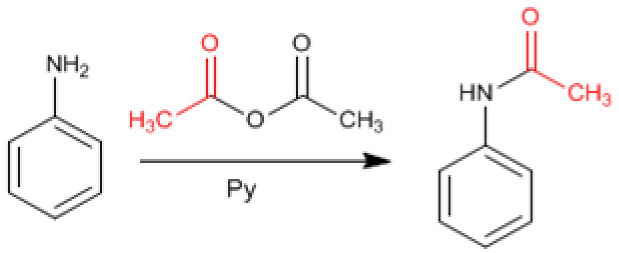
Nitración de la anilina sin protección del amino

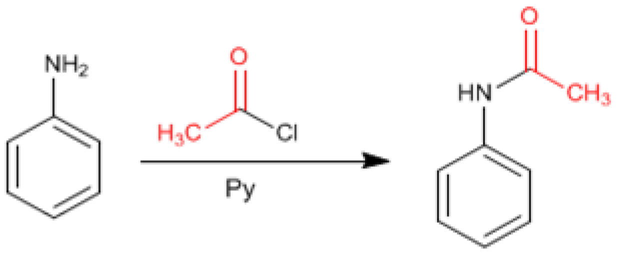


Nitración de la anilina con protección del grupo amino, empleando cloruro de etanoílo



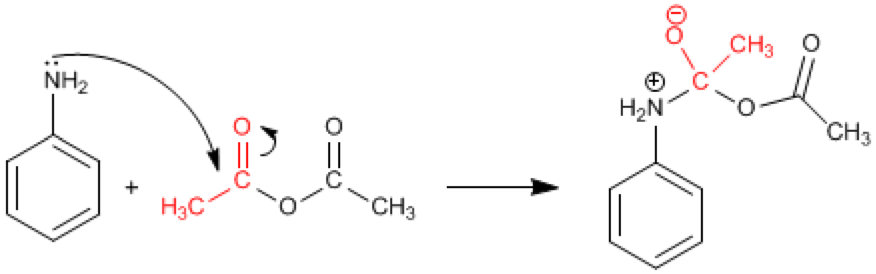
La protección del amino puede realizarse con anhídrido etanoico en piridina, o con cloruro de etanoílo en piridina



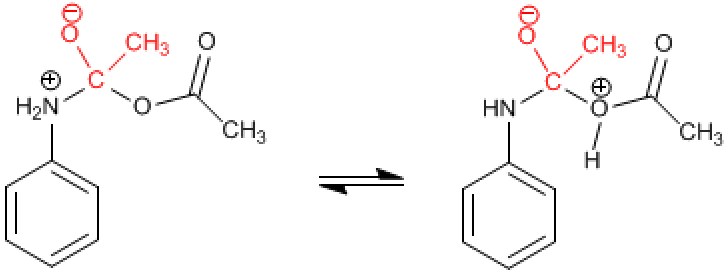


El producto final es una amida, mucho menos básica que la amina de partida y con menos tendencia a protonarse. El mecanismo de la reacción es el siguiente:

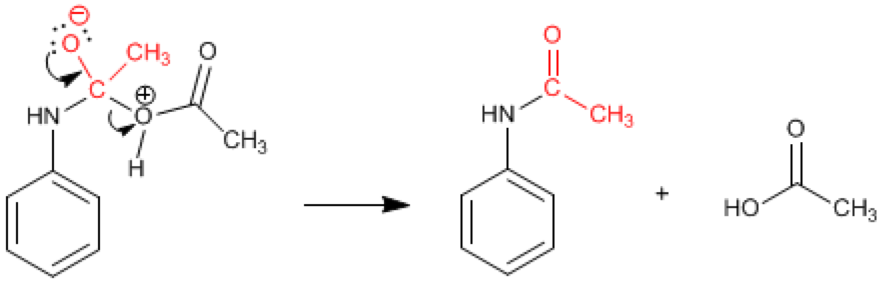
Etapa 1. Adición



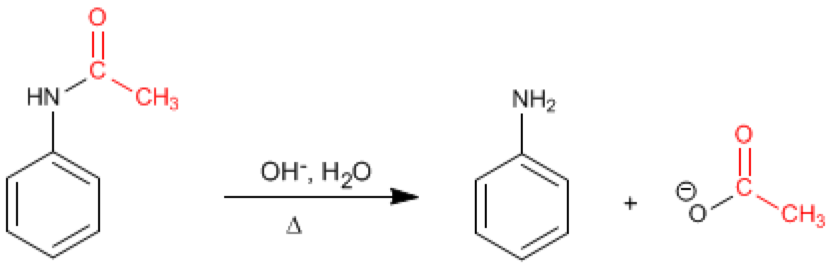
Etapa 2. Equilibrio ácido-base



Etapa 3. Eliminación

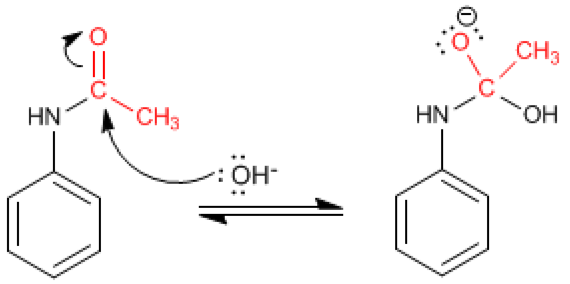


La amida formada se desprotege por hidrólisis ácida o básica, dejando libre la anilina.

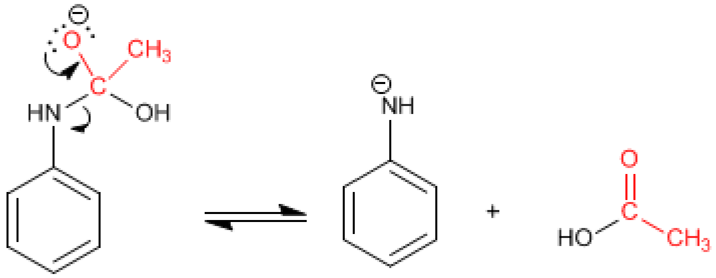


Mecanismo de desprotección en medio básico.

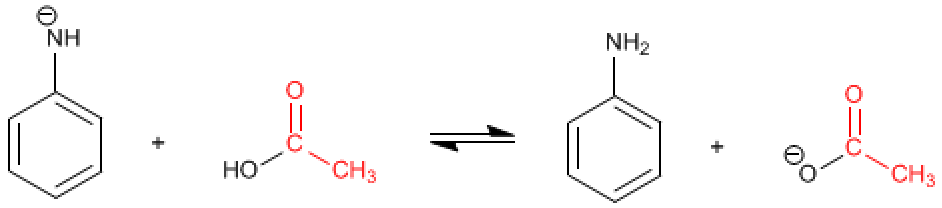
Etapa 1. Adición del grupo hidroxilo a la amida



Etapa 2. Eliminación

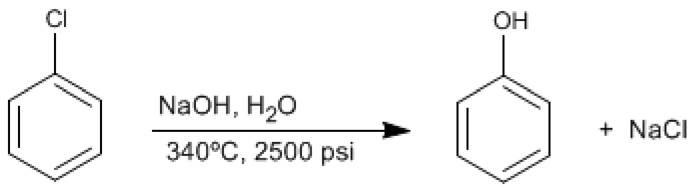


Etapa 3. Equilibrio ácido-base



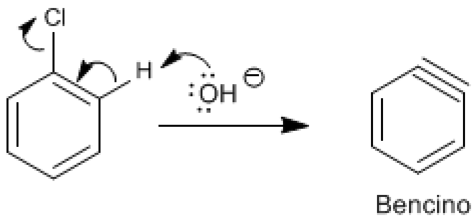
Sustitución nucleófila aromática: Bencino

Los bencenos halogenados reaccionan con sosa diluida en condiciones de alta presión y temperatura, para formar fenoles. Esta reacción no requiere grupos desactivantes en posición orto/para y sigue un mecanismo diferente al de la sustitución nucleófila aromática por adición-eliminación.

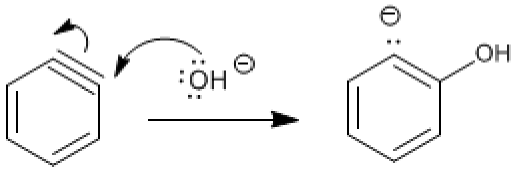


Esta reacción fue descubierta en 1928 por los químicos de la compañía Dow Chemical. El mecanismo consiste en la eliminación de HCl con formación de un intermedio inestable llamado bencino, el cual es atacado por los iones hidróxido del medio, para formar fenol.

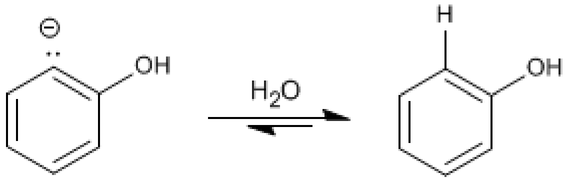
Etapa 1. Eliminación de HCl



Etapa 2. Adición del ion hidróxido al bencino



Etapa 3. Protonación

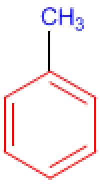


El mecanismo de esta reacción recibe el nombre de sustitución nucleófila aromática por eliminación-adición.
Cuando en el benceno existen sustituyentes produce mezclas, debido al ataque del nucleófilo sobre los dos carbonos del triple enlace.

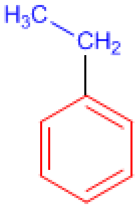
PROBLEMAS NOMENCLATURA – BENCENO

Nomenclatura de Benceno - Reglas IUPAC

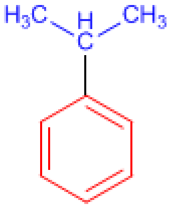
Regla 1. En bencenos monosustituidos, se nombra primero el radical y se termina en la palabra benceno.



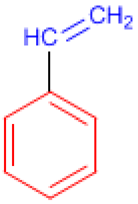
Metilbenceno



Etilbenceno

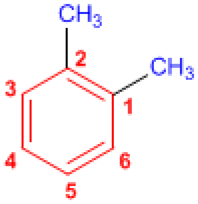


Isopropilbenceno



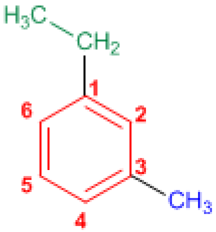
Vinilbenceno

Regla 2. En bencenos disustituidos se indica la posición de los radicales mediante los prefijos *orto*- (*o*-), *meta* (*m*-) y *para* (*p*-). También pueden emplearse los localizadores 1,2-, 1,3- y 1,4-.



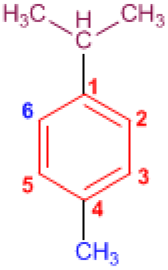
o-Dimetilbenceno

(1,2-Dimetilbenceno)



m-Etilmetilbenceno

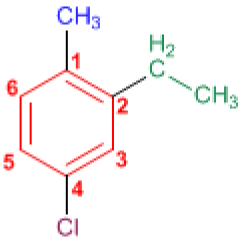
(1-Etil-3-metilbenceno)



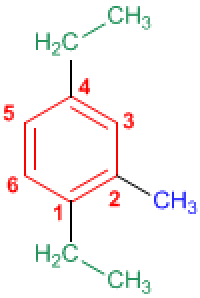
p-Isopropilmetilbenceno

(1-Isopropil-4-metilbenceno)

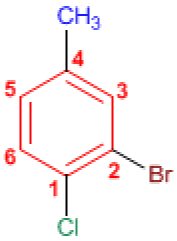
Regla 3. En bencenos con más de dos sustituyentes, se numera el anillo de modo que los sustituyentes tomen los menores localizadores. Si varias numeraciones dan los mismos localizadores se da preferencia al orden alfabético.



4-Cloro-2-etil-1-metilbenceno

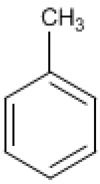


1,4-Dietil-2-metilbenceno

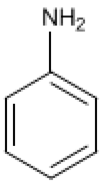


2-Bromo-1-cloro-4-metilbenceno

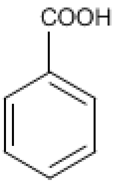
Regla 4. Existen numerosos derivados del benceno con nombres comunes que conviene saber:



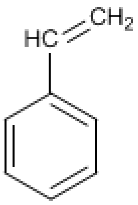
Tolueno



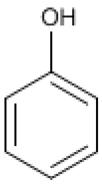
Anilina



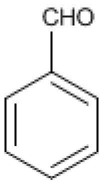
Ac. Benzoico



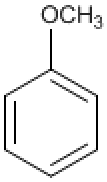
Estireno



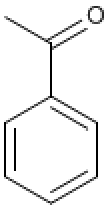
Fenol



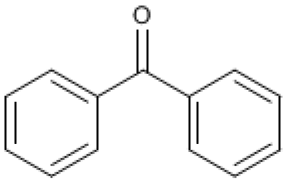
Benzaldehído



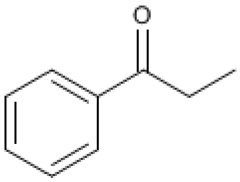
Anisol



Acetofenona



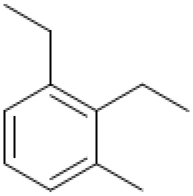
Benzofenona

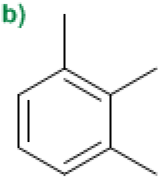


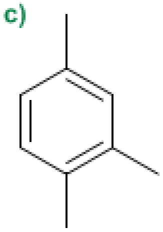
Propiofenona

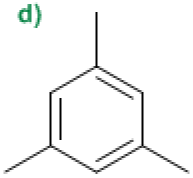
Nomenclatura de Benceno - Problema 0.1

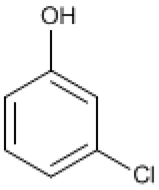
Nombra los siguientes derivados del benceno:

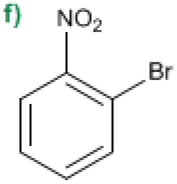
a) 

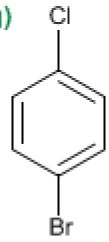
b) 

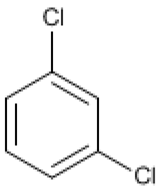
c) 

d) 

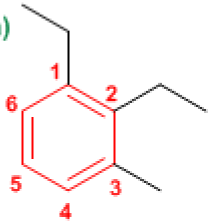
e) 

f) 

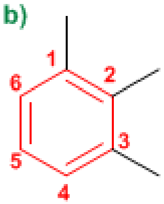
g) 

h) 

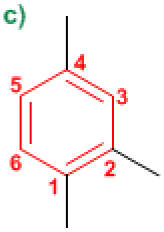
Solución

a) 

1. Cadena principal: benceno
2. Numeración: los sustituyentes deben tomar los menores localizadores, y además, se asignan los localizadores menores a los grupos que van antes en el orden alfabético (etilo antes que metilo)
3. Sustituyentes: etilos en 1,2 y metilo en 3.
4. Nombre: 1,2-Dietil-3-metilbenceno

b) 

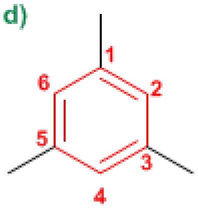
1. Cadena principal: benceno
2. Numeración: los sustituyentes deben tomar los menores localizadores.
3. Sustituyentes: metilos en posición 1,2,3.
4. Nombre: 1,2,3-Trimetilbenceno

c) 

1. Cadena principal: benceno
2. Numeración: los sustituyentes deben tomar los menores localizadores.
3. Sustituyentes: metilos en posición 1,2,4.
4. Nombre: 1,2,4-Trimetilbenceno

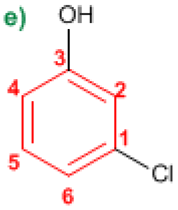
El anillo se numera para que los sustituyentes tomen los localizadores más bajos. En caso de empate se tiene en cuenta el orden alfabético

d)



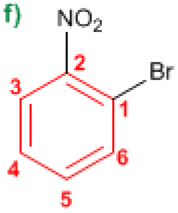
1. Cadena principal: benceno
2. Numeración: se parte de un metilo y se numera en cualquier dirección.
3. Sustituyentes: metilos en 1,3,5.
4. Nombre: 1,3,5-Trimetilbenceno

e)



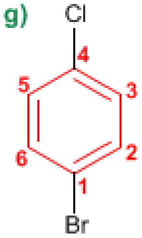
1. Cadena principal: benceno
2. Numeración: la numeración comienza en el cloro (va antes alfabéticamente) y prosigue por el camino más corto hacia el hidroxilo.
3. Sustituyentes: cloro en posición 1 e hidroxi en posición 3 (posición meta)
4. Nombre: 1-Cloro-3-hidroxibenceno (*m*-Clorohidroxibenceno)

f)



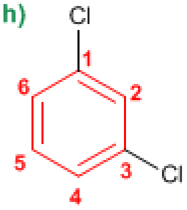
1. Cadena principal: benceno
2. Numeración: la numeración comienza en el bromo (preferencia alfabética)
3. Sustituyentes: bromo en posición 1 y nitro en posición 3 (posición orto)
4. Nombre: 1-Bromo-3-nitrobenceno (*o*-Bromonitrobenceno)

g)



1. Cadena principal: benceno
2. Numeración: comienza en el bromo (preferencia alfabética sobre el cloro)
3. Sustituyentes: bromo en 1 y cloro en 4 (posición para)
4. Nombre:1-Bromo-4-clorobenceno (*p*-Bromoclorobenceno)

h)



1. Cadena principal: benceno
2. Numeración: localizadores más bajos posibles a los cloros.
3. Sustituyentes: cloros en posición 1,3.
4. Nombre: 1,3-Diclorobenceno (*m*-Diclorobenceno)

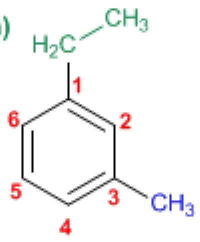
Nomenclatura de Benceno - Problema 0.2

Formular los siguientes derivados del benceno:

a) 1-Etil-3-metilbenceno
b) p-Dimetilbenceno
c) 1-Butil-3-etilbenceno
d) o-Cloronitrobenceno
e) m-Bromoclorobenceno
f) p-Diisopropilbenceno
g) 1-tert-Butil-4-metilbenceno
h) o-Alilvinilbenceno
i) m-Etilpropilbenceno
j) 2-Etil-1,4-dimetilbenceno
k) 4,5-Difenil-1-octeno
l) 2-Fenil-4-metilhexeno
m) 1-(metiletil)-4-(2-metilpropil)benceno
n) 6-Fenil-3-metilhexa-1,4-dieno
o) cis-1-Fenil-1-buteno
p) trans-2-Fenil-2-buteno
q) 7-Etil-4,5-difenildec-5-en-1-ino
r) m-Diciclohexilbenceno
s) p-Ciclobutilciclobutilbenceno
t) 3-(1,1-Difeniletil)-3-metilhex-1-en-5-ino.

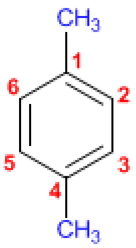
Solución

a)



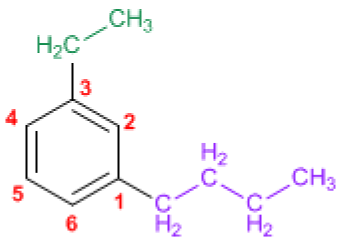
1-Etil-3-metilbenceno

b)



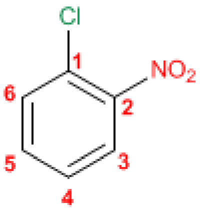
p-Dimetilbenceno

c)



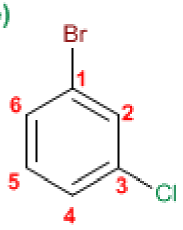
1-Butil-3-etilbenceno

d)



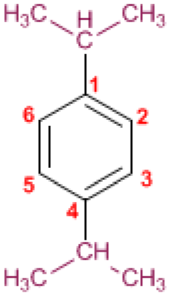
o-Cloronitrobenceno

e)



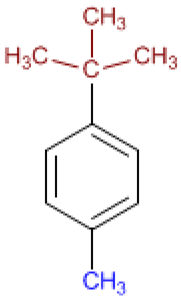
m-Bromoclorobenceno

f)



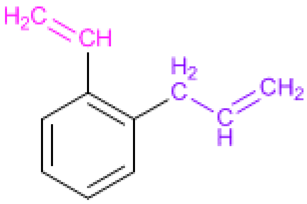
p-Diisopropilbenceno

g)



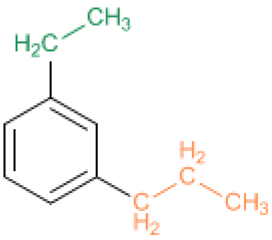
1-*tert*-Butil-4-metilbenceno

h)



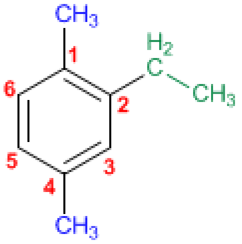
o-Alilvinilbenceno

i)



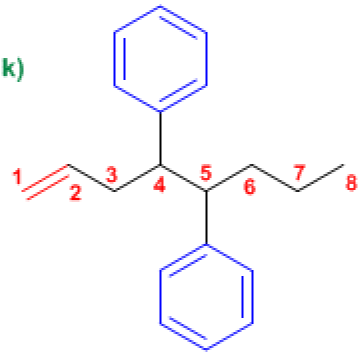
m-Etilpropilbenceno

j)



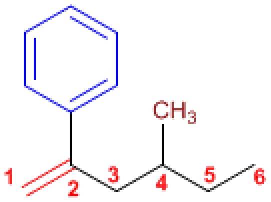
2-Etil-1,4-dimetilbenceno

k)



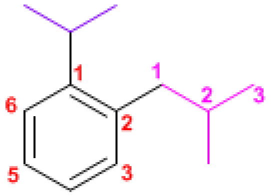
4,5-Difeniloct-1-eno

l)



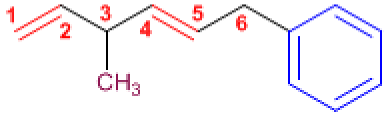
2-Fenil-4-metilhex-1-eno

m)



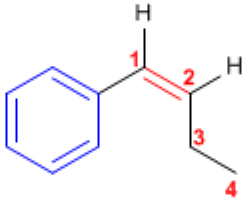
1-(metiletil)-2-(2-metilpropil)benceno

n)



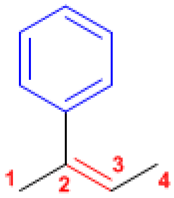
6-Fenil-3-metilhexa-1,4-dieno

o)



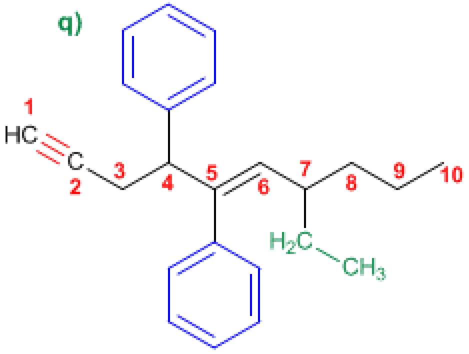
cis-1-Fenil-1-buteno

p)



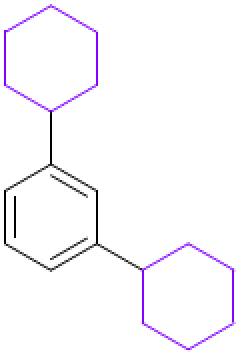
trans-2-Fenil-2-buteno

q)



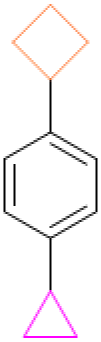
7-Etil-4,5-difenildec-5-en-1-ino

r)



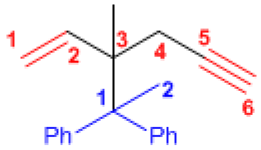
m-Diciclohexilbenceno

s)



p-Ciclobutilciclopropilbenceno

t)



3-(1,1-Difeniletil)-3-metilhex-1-en-5-ino.

Agradecimientos:

- http://www.quimicaorganica.org

- http://www.taringa.net/perfil/jose07070012